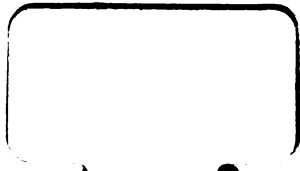


*H. Eastman*

Eng 1609.15.3



HARVARD  
COLLEGE  
LIBRARY



**TEXT-BOOK OF ADVANCED MACHINE WORK**

**By Robert Henry Smith**

**Massachusetts Institute of Technology**

---

**Text-Book of the Principles of Machine Work**

333 pp., 5 x 8, 342 Illustrations.

**Text-Book of Advanced Machine Work**

575 pp., 5 x 8, 609 Illustrations.

---

**INDUSTRIAL EDUCATION BOOK COMPANY**

BOSTON, U. S. A.

°  
TEXT-BOOK OF ADVANCED  
**MACHINE WORK**

PREPARED FOR  
STUDENTS IN TECHNICAL, MANUAL TRAINING,  
AND TRADE SCHOOLS, AND FOR THE  
APPRENTICE IN THE SHOP

BY  
**ROBERT H. SMITH**  
MASSACHUSETTS INSTITUTE OF TECHNOLOGY

**609 Illustrations**

*THIRD EDITION,  
REVISED AND ENLARGED*

INDUSTRIAL EDUCATION BOOK COMPANY  
BOSTON, U. S. A.

Eng 1609.15.3

✓

**BERNARD COLLEGE LIBRARY  
GIFT OF  
HAROLD F. EASTMAN**

**FEB 6 1940**

**COPYRIGHT, 1910, 1912, 1915,  
BY  
ROBERT H. SMITH**

**Stanbope Press  
F. H. GILSON COMPANY  
BOSTON, U.S.A.**

**THIS TEXT-BOOK IS DEDICATED**

To the Teachers of Technical and Industrial Education, and to the Experts of Shop and Factory, Who, with Exceptional Ability and Devotion, Are Increasing the World's Knowledge and Power and, Consequently, Its Prosperity and Happiness.

FOREWORD  
TO  
PRINCIPLES OF MACHINE WORK  
AND  
ADVANCED MACHINE WORK

**Text-books.**— To teach any subject rapidly, good text-books are a necessity. For the study of languages, mathematics, physics, chemistry, etc., in the class-room and the laboratory, excellent text-books are obtainable scientifically arranged to lead the student progressively and rapidly through elementary and advanced principles.

**Lack of Text-Books on Machine Work.**— In this Age of Machinery, teachers, students, apprentices, machine operators and all those who are interested in the art and science of machine construction have been handicapped by the lack of text-books comparable with those that aid the student and teacher in other subjects.

**Need of Text-books on Machine Building.**— To meet the urgent demand for such text-books, the author prepared and published two books in 1910, — *The Elements of Machine Work*, and *The Principles of Machine Work* and promised the early issue of the third book, *Advanced Machine Work*, that beginners might have the advantages of text-books as in the older subjects and be able to acquire in a short time, the fundamental and the advanced principles of machine building, logically, systematically and progressively.

**Two Books Preferred.**— In this, the third edition of these books, all the material published in *Elements of Machine Work* and *Principles of Machine Work*, and the matter prepared for *Advanced Machine Work* have been revised, and rearranged, and published in two books, — *Principles of Machine Work* and *Advanced Machine Work*.

“**Principles of Machine Work.**” describes the metals and materials used in machine construction and names the tools

and instruments and schedules of operations of hand processes. It treats of Laying Out Work; Chipping, Filing and Scraping; Hardening and Tempering Carbon and High-speed Steels; Pipe Fitting; Soldering and Brazing; Lacing Belts, Alining Shafting and Installing Machines; Drills and Drilling; Taps and Tapping; Speed Lathes, Hand Tools and Hand Turning; Pneumatic Chipping and Riveting; Autogenous Welding.

“**Advanced Machine Work**” treats of Engine Lathe Work; Cutting Tools; Measuring; Turning; Fitting; Threading; Chucking; Reaming; Mandrels or Arbors; Curve Turning and Forming; Inside Calipers and Inside Micrometers; Boring and Inside Threading; Brass Finishing; Broaching; Drilling Jigs; Boring, Boring Bars and Boring Machines; Eccentric Turning; Nurling; Cylindrical, Internal, Surface and Cutter Grinding; Planing; Milling; Spur, Bevel, Worm and Spiral Gear Cutting; Toolmaking; Spiral Milling; The Plug and Button Methods of Locating Holes of Precision in Jigs and Fixtures; Sine Bar.

**Books in Sectional Form.** — These text-books are divided into Sections. Each Section is complete in itself.

**Illustrations.** — Machines, mechanisms and tools, problems and processes, methods and operations are graphically illustrated by perspective and mechanical drawings.

The drawings have been made especially for these books and are so clearly marked with letters, words, and figures, that many of them are self-explanatory of the operations and processes which they represent and tell things far better than could be told by words.

**Schedules of Operations.** — To secure efficiency in teaching or manufacturing, it is necessary to be equipped with a well-defined plan of attack for the problem in hand. The schedules of operations in these text-books provide the student and teacher with a complete plan in table form, for the rapid production of standard and typical problems in machine construction. They name the time necessary to complete the work, the materials, machines, speeds, feeds, tools, jigs,



and fixtures for each consecutively numbered or lettered operation, and the accompanying illustration is numbered and lettered to correspond.

These schedules of operations have been used by the author for many years in his classes and are the methods now used in all modern manufacturing efficiency systems.

**To the Student.** — These text-books constitute a complete treatise on the indispensable principles and processes of modern machine-shop practice for the production of machine parts, machines and tools. They tell how to do things with that theory which connects principles and practice and no person can build machines or superintend the construction of machinery without consciously or unconsciously understanding and applying these principles. The basic operations and processes have been reduced to problem form. The study and practice of these problems and methods supplemented by lectures, demonstrations, and instruction, will give the student not only an excellent training in machine work, but also, a broader training by teaching him to plan methods of doing things, to study his movements and avoid wasting steps and motions, and thus to conserve his time and his energy, thereby obtaining mental and physical precision and scientific efficiency.

**To the Instructor** these text-books will be of great assistance by furnishing an organized course. They will supplement the lectures, enrich the individual instruction, and supply information and answers to the innumerable questions of the students, thereby conserving the instructor's time and enabling the students to work with greater efficiency and dispatch.

To obtain the greatest benefit, the use is urged of as many of the problems as time and conditions will permit, and in the order given in the books, so far as the equipment of special machines will allow. These books will be found valuable in experimental work and in building apparatus and machines, as the schedules of operations and the processes give the correct methods for making machine parts, tools, and for building machines.

In fact, the schedules of problems and processes are complete and condensed lessons in scientific efficiency, and teach the shortest, quickest and easiest way to obtain results.

These books do not teach casual ideas but *scientific principles* developed by thirty years' study of the subject. These *powerful* lessons enable the student to make the most of his efforts and time without waste of energy.

**To the Machine Operator.** — To the man who has been trained on one machine, or to perform but few operations, these text-books open the door of opportunity to a broader training, increased efficiency, and *greater earning power*.

**To the Apprentice.** — These books will be of great value to apprentices and to young machinists for any problem which may arise in the machine shop, as neither the superintendent, foremen, toolmakers nor machinists have the time to instruct the apprentices in the principles and processes presented.

An apprentice or young machinist may have worked a long time in the shop without seeing or doing a particular kind of work, for shop work depends on commercial requirements. When new work comes to such a man he will find the method of procedure so clearly set forth in these books that he will have but little difficulty in following directions.

As these principles and processes can be applied to all machine work, their faithful study by the apprentice or young machinist will not only increase his knowledge, develop high efficiency and rapid and accurate workmanship, but will also make him more valuable to his employer during his period of learning by largely increasing his power of production.

Furthermore, these text-books teach the apprentice to read and understand technical literature. They train him to translate printed matter into intelligent action. This is a great acquisition, for in no other way can an apprentice keep abreast of everything technical and scientific. It is self-evident that the training we have so briefly outlined will tend to increase his earning power and to fit him for a better position at the close of his apprenticeship.

**To the Machinist.** — To machinists who have served their apprenticeships in the small machine shops, with limited equipment and range of work; to those who were trained in the large machine shops well equipped with improved machinery, but where intensive methods of manufacturing and repetitional production may have limited their opportunities to acquire that broad fundamental training so necessary to future success; and to *all* machinists who wish to fit themselves for better positions by further study, these books will be an aid and an inspiration. Even to those who have had a superior training, such as managers, superintendents and foremen, they will be valuable as works of reference.

**The Increased Efficiency** obtained at the Massachusetts Institute of Technology by use of these text-books, and the kind reception given them by the technical press, schools and shops, teachers and students, apprentices and machinists, have shown the need of text-books on machine work and justified their production.

The increasing number of state universities, technical, trade, and manual training schools that are adopting these books as a required text is evidence that the want they meet is widespread.

**Grateful Acknowledgment.** — To the teachers and educators, manufacturers and engineers, foremen and mechanics, associates, and other friends in all parts of the country, who have kindly assisted with information, help and encouragement, I take this opportunity to express my indebtedness and appreciation.

R. H. S.

Boston, U. S. A., *May* 1, 1915.

# CONTENTS

## Section I

### LATHE WORK

	PAGE
<b>Special Index.</b>	
<b>Engine Lathes.</b> — Evolution of lathes, swing, length, and classes of lathes — Countershaft, line shaft, and belt connections described — Horizontal section of head-stock — Transparent view of lathe apron, showing the three distinct feed mechanisms — Care of machines, tools, and benches — Attachments for lathes — Engine lathe with rapid change-gear mechanism.....	101
<b>Electrically-driven Machine Tools.</b> — Electrically-driven engine lathe.....	111
<b>Truing and Alining Centers.</b> — Center gage — Requirements for successful use of engine lathe — Truing engine lathe centers with center truing tool — Grinding centers — Setting dead center in alinement for straight turning.....	113
<b>Center Holes.</b> — Table of center hole dimensions — Counter-sink — Hand and machine method of centering — Straightening shafting, rods, and bolts.....	117
<b>Cutting Tools.</b> — Rake, clearance, and cutting angle defined — Roughing and finishing.....	125
<b>Lathe Cutting Tools for Cast Iron.</b> — Right and left tools — Angles of lathe-cutting tools — Height of tools for cutting operations — Rough and finish squaring — Rough and finish turning.....	126
<b>Grinding Lathe Tools.</b> — Grinding round-nose, side, diamond-point, and threading tools — Grinding high-speed cutters — Grinding boring tools — Universal tool grinder for duplicating shapes and angles of lathe and planer tools — Oilstoning tools.....	135
<b>Setting and Using Outside Calipers.</b> — Adjusting tool to turn to desired diameter — Transferring settings from one pair of calipers to another.....	143
<b>Cutting Speeds, Cut Meter, and Feeds.</b> — Cut Meter — Attachment for speed indicator for obtaining surface speed — Rules for obtaining cutting speeds — Table of cutting speeds of various metals for carbon and high-speed steel tools — Cutting feeds....	145
<b>Lubricants for Cutting Tools.</b> — Table showing when to use a lubricant and when to machine dry.....	148
<b>Inspecting and Measuring Material (Stock).</b> — Oiling and cleaning machines — Lubricating bearings — Treatment when bearings	

	Page
"rough up" — Rust and corrosion — Changing speed belts of lathes — Warning against loose sleeves and careless actions near running belts, gears, milling cutters, etc.....	150

## Section 2

### LATHE WORK

<b>Time Element and Schedules of Operations.</b> — How to start lathe work — Mounting work on centers — Turning work of one diameter from end to end.....	201
<b>Centering, Squaring, and Straight Turning.</b> — Schedule of operations.	203
<b>Filing Lathe Work.</b> — (Mill files.) — Speed for filing — Method of filing — Filing inside rounds and fillets.....	205
<b>Micrometer Calipers.</b> — Micrometer principle of measuring — Measuring work and reading micrometer — Methods of holding micrometer to measure work held in the hand, lathe, or on the bench — Large micrometers — Table of decimal equivalents of common fractions.....	207
<b>Vernier Calipers.</b> — Vernier principle of measuring — Measuring work and reading vernier — Making inside measurements with vernier — A ten-thousand micrometer with vernier on the barrel.....	211
<b>Dimension-Limit System.</b> — Double dimensions.....	213
<b>Fits in Machine Construction, with Tables of Allowances.</b> — Typical examples of fits — Materials used for different kinds of bearings — Classes of fits — Allowances and limits for running, driving, and forcing fits — Taper forcing fits — Pressures and allowances for forcing fits — Examples of forcing and shrinking fits, with tables of allowances and limits — Standard holes — Turning and filing fits — Grinding fits.....	214
<b>Standard and Limit Gages.</b> — Ring, plug, and caliper gages and reference disks — Standard end-measuring rods and limit gages — Special gages.....	223
<b>Taper Turning and Fitting.</b> — How expressed — Standard and special — Method of turning — Calculating distance to set over footstock — Using a pattern to obtain set-over — Turning, filing, and fitting a Morse taper, with schedule of operations — Taper attachment for turning tapers in an engine lathe — Turning a taper on a large drill socket.....	226
<b>Straight Turning and Fitting.</b> — To turn and file a straight running fit, with schedule of operations.....	231
<b>Tables and Diagrams.</b> — Morse, Brown & Sharpe, and Jarno tapers — Set over for footstock — Surface speeds.....	233

Section 3

LATHE WORK

	PAGE
<b>Lathe Tools for Steel or Wrought Iron.</b> — Side and diamond-point tools — Roughing tools — Finishing tools — Spring and shear tools — Left side and left diamond-point tools — Half diamond-point tools.....	301
<b> HOLDERS and Cutters.</b> — Straight holders and cutters — Useful forms of cutters — Chart of lathe tool holders for squaring, turning, boring, threading, and forming — Off-set or bent holders — High-speed steel — Stellite.....	306
<b>Turning Steel.</b> — Making plain machine handle, with schedule of operations.....	310
<b>Double Holder and Cutters.</b> — Facing two sides of gear blank at once.....	312
<b>Cutting-Off Tools.</b> — Cutting off stock (material) with forged tool — Cutting-off tool holder and cutter — Preparing shaft blanks, with multiple schedule of operations.....	313
<b>Threading or Screw Cutting.</b> — Screw threads — Forms of threads — Right and left threads — Single and multiple threaded screws — Pitch and lead of thread — Threads per inch — Measuring threaded work — Counting threads — The Sharp V-thread — The United States Standard thread — Threading tools for United States Standard and Sharp V-threads — Setting tool — Threading taper work — Calculating simple gearing — Preparing screw and nut blanks, with schedule of operations — Description of screw-cutting mechanism — To set up lathe for screw cutting and cutting the thread, with schedule of operations — Fitting thread to nut — To reset tool to resume cut after regrinding — To cut left threads — To thread to a shoulder — Fractional threads and methods of calculating gearing — Compound gearing — To calculate gearing for a given lead — To calculate gearing for metric screw threads with English lead screws — Translating gears — Metric lead screw — Catching the thread or threading long screws without backing belt — Thread indicator — Whitworth (English) standard threads.....	318
<b>Bolt and Nut Making.</b> — Squaring and turning bolts — Nut mandrels — Squaring and chamfering nuts, with schedule of operations — Making clamp nut — To make finished bolt, with schedule of operations — Making pair of spring bolts, with schedule of operations.....	339
<b>Making Tensile Test Specimen.</b> — With schedule of operations.....	346
<b>Making a Stud,</b> with schedule of operations.....	348

	PAGE
<b>Tables.</b> — United States Standard bolt heads and nuts — International and French Standard threads.....	350
<b>Indexing in Engine Lathe.</b> — Dividing the circumference of work into equidistant parts for drilling, filing, etc.....	352
<b>Making Engine Lathe Live Center.</b> — With schedule of operations..	352
<b>Automobile Screws and Nuts.</b> — Lock washers — Constants for finding diameter at bottom of U. S. S., U. S. F. and V threads.....	354

## Section 4

### LATHE WORK

<b>Chucks.</b> — Independent, universal, combination, drill, draw-in, and special chucks — Use and care of chucks.....	401
<b>Face Plates.</b> — Holding work on face plate — Balancing work with counterweights — Holding work with angle plate on face plate .	406
<b>Chucking in engine lathe,</b> with schedule of operations — Chucking with drill holder and steady rest — Chucking with flat drills and reamers.....	408
<b>Reaming.</b> — Classes of reamers — Irregularly spaced teeth — Reamers for brass — Hand reaming in vise — Reaming in vertical drilling machine and engine lathe, with schedule of operations — Adjustable reamers — Reaming stands — Fluted chucking reamers — Power reaming in engine lathe, with schedule of operations — Rose chucking reamer — Fluted and broach reamers for taper pins — Taper reaming in speed lathe.....	413
<b>Machining Alloys, Etc.</b> — Bronze — Copper — Aluminum — Babbitt — Lead — Vulcanite or hard rubber — Fiber — Rawhide..	419
<b>Mandrels or Arbors.</b> — Solid, expanding, built-up, gang and special — Bridges in hollow castings — Revolving dead center for pipe turning — Special mandrels — Driving or pressing mandrels in or out of work — Mandrel or arbor block — Mandrel or arbor press	420
<b>Turning Flanges.</b> — Rough and finish facing and turning — Making a cast-iron flange, with schedule of operations.....	424
<b>Turning Pulleys.</b> — Tapering or crowning face — Making a pulley, with schedule of operations — Locating set screws.....	428
<b>Polishing Lathe Work.</b> — Abrasives, speeds, and machines used — Order of applying different numbers of emery cloth — Polishing flanges and shafts — Polishing brass and copper.....	432
<b>Curve Turning and Forming.</b> — Curve turning — Forming tools for engine lathe work — Forming cutter and holder.....	435
<b>Making Formed Machine Handles.</b> — Single handles — Templets as guides to uniform production — Making a formed machine handle, with schedule of operations.....	437
<b>Polishing, Buffing and Lacquering.</b> — Polishing and buffing with wheels and belts — Lacquering.....	440

## Section 5

## LATHE WORK

	PAGE
<b>Inside Calipers and Inside Micrometers.</b> — Measuring diameter of holes.— Inside micrometer calipers, and method of using and reading.....	501
<b>Boring and Inside Threading.</b> — Setting and using boring tools in lathe — Holders and cutters — Inside threading tools for United States Standard or Sharp V threads — Setting inside threading tools — Schedule of operations for inside threading — Finishing inside thread with tap — Interrupted thread taps — Cutting an inside thread to a shoulder.....	504
<b>Square Threads.</b> — Table of thread sizes — Square threading tools — Inclination — Holders and cutters — Setting square threading tools — Square thread taps — Method of cutting a square thread screw, with schedule of operations — Making the nut and fitting the screw.....	510
<b>Acme Standard or 29° Threads.</b> — Table of thread sizes — Making the tool — Setting 29° threading tools — 29° thread taps — Cutting a 29° thread screw, with schedule of operations — Making the nut and fitting the screw.....	521
<b>Multiple Threads.</b> — Cutting double square threads, with schedule of operations — Multiple threading tools.....	531
<b>Brass Finishing.</b> — Turning brass in engine lathe — Use of round-nose and front tools — Monel metal — Making binding post and nuts, with schedule of operations.....	533
<b>Alinement Drilling and Tapping.</b> — Fixed nuts — Drilling and tapping cross-feed screw nut in axial alinement, with schedule of operations — Making a bronze bushing, with schedule of operations.....	538
<b>Drilling, Tapping and Hand Threading in Speed Lathe.</b> .....	540
<b>Broaching Holes, Keyways and Slots.</b> — Machine broaching — Chart of broached holes — Lubricant for broaching — Preparation of holes for broaching — Hand broaching — Broaching circular holes.....	543

## Section 6

## DRILLING JIGS, BORING BARS, ECCENTRIC TURNING

**Drilling Jigs, and Multiple-Spindle Drilling Machines.** — Interchangeable machine parts — Classes of drilling jigs — Improved jigs — Plate jigs — Drilling and tapping engine cylinder heads — Multiple-spindle drilling machines — Box jigs — Use



	PAGE
of box jigs, with schedule of operations — Drilling, reaming, and tapping in different directions with box jig. . . . .	601
<b>Radial Drilling Machines.</b> — Plain and universal radial drilling machines — Automatic tapping attachment — Jig vise — Drilling and counterboring duplicate parts. . . . .	606
<b>Boring, Boring Bars and Boring Machines.</b> — Types of boring bars — Boring engine cylinder in engine lathe, with schedule of operations — Boring heads — Portable boring machine — Radial facing (star feed) — Drilling, reaming and counterboring in horizontal boring machines — Sliding bar type boring bar. . . . .	610
<b>Vertical Boring and Reaming.</b> — Vertical drilling machines — Shell reamers — Boring taper holes with boring bar — Hand alinement reaming, with schedule of operations — Power alinement reaming, with schedule of operations. . . . .	617
<b>Taper Holes, Taper Reamers and Spindle Making.</b> — Small taper holes, taper reamers — Stepping work for taper holes — Taper plug and ring gages — Stub mandrel for taper work — Making lathe spindle, with schedule of operations. . . . .	619
<b>Magnetic Chucks.</b> — Lathe chuck — Facing piston rings — Magnetic planer chuck — Demagnetizing work — Electrical units. . . . .	624
<b>Steady and Follower Rests.</b> — To turn slender shaft with steady rest set to spot, with schedule of operations — Use of cat head. . .	626
<b>Eccentric Turning.</b> — Laying out and turning an eccentric shaft, with schedule of operations — Turning an engine eccentric, with schedule of operations — Laying out two-throw 90° crankshaft center fixtures, with schedule of operations — Alining center fixtures, and laying out cranks — Turning crankshaft, with schedule of operations. . . . .	629
<b>Nurling.</b> — Hand and machine nurling, with schedule of operations. .	635

### Section 7

#### CYLINDRICAL GRINDING (EXTERNAL) INTERNAL GRINDING

<b>Cylindrical Grinding.</b> — Machine grinding. . . . .	701
<b>Grinding on Two Dead Centers.</b> — Principle of grinding on two dead centers. . . . .	701
<b>Universal Grinding Machines.</b> — Classes of grinding machines — Universal grinding machine, with schedule of parts. . . . .	702
<b>Grinding Wheels.</b> — Abrasives used in their composition — Chart of wheels — Vitrified, silicate, elastic, tanite, vulcanite, celluloid, and combination grinding wheels — Grading, shape, and selection of wheels — Mounting wheels — Table of speeds — Direction of rotation of wheel and work — Feed and depth of	

## CONTENTS

19

	PAGE
cut — Width of face of wheel — Truing wheels — Truing centers — Methods of driving work — Grinding work straight — Grinding work taper — Wet and dry grinding — Lubricants for grinding — Allowances for grinding — Rough and finish grinding — Expansion of work — Seasoning — Care of machine and work — Measuring tools.....	704
<b>Problems in Cylindrical Grinding.</b> — Adjustments and movements to operate universal grinder — Grinding running fit in universal grinding machine, with schedule of operations — Grinding a phosphor-bronze taper bushing — Adjustments and movements to operate universal and tool grinding machine — Grinding forcing fit in universal and tool-grinding machine, with schedule of operations — Grinding to a shoulder — Commercial grinding — Grinding a cast-iron roll in plain grinding machine — Grinding a shaft in plain grinding machine, with use of back rests — Duplicate grinding in the automatic magnetic sizing grinder — Grinding straight and taper bearing on same spindle — Grinding taper collet.....	715
<b>Internal Grinding.</b> — Machine used — Direction of rotation of work and wheel for internal grinding — Grade, shape, and selection of wheels — Grinding hole in automobile gear — Grinding hole in milling cutter — Grinding standard ring gage — Grinding taper hole in spindle — Grinding automobile engine cylinder.....	727

## Section 8

### SURFACE GRINDING CUTTER GRINDING

<b>Surface Grinding.</b> — Surface grinding machine, with schedule of parts.....	801
<b>Problems in Surface Grinding.</b> — Grinding thin work held by magnetic chuck — Magnetized master blocks — Grinding work square held with magnetized master blocks, with schedule of operations — Grinding angular work — Grinding surface of castings — Grinding with planer type surface grinding machine — Vertical spindle surface grinding machine — Grinding piston ring.....	802
<b>Cutter Grinding.</b> — Cutter grinding machines — Grinding centers — Grinding wheels — Speeds, feeds, and depth of cut.....	808
<b>Adjusting Tooth Rest and Wheel for Obtaining Clearance.</b> — Setting grinding wheel height of centers — Setting tooth rest height of center (rest fastened to table) — Setting tooth rest height of centers (rest fastened to wheel head) — Cutter and reamer clearances — Disk and Cup Wheels — Direction of rotation — Relation of tooth rest, milling cutter and wheel to grind tooth	

	PAGE
clearance — Calculating elevation for Disk Wheels — Calculating distance to lower tooth rest for Cup Wheels — Indexing cutters and reamers.....	810
<b>Problems in Cutter Grinding.</b> — Grinding plain milling cutter, with schedule of operations — Grinding inserted tooth milling cutter — Grinding radial teeth of side milling cutter — Grinding end mill — Grinding angular milling cutter — Grinding spiral milling cutter, with schedule of operations — Grinding hand reamer with Cup Wheel — Grinding hand reamer with Disk Wheel — Oilstoning reamer to size — Grinding taper reamer — Grinding gear cutter — Grinding formed cutter — Sharpening tap — Grinding flat cutter — Grinding convex cutter — Grinding side of slitting saw — Grinding caliper gage — Grinding straight edge — Grinding jig bushing — Grinding taper shank of end mill — Cutting off tubing — Grinding hardened lathe center..	814

## Section 9

### PLANING

<b>Planers.</b> — General methods of holding work — Types of planers — Spiral-gear planer, with schedule of parts — Planer head — Large planers.....	901
<b>Cutting Speeds and Feeds.</b> — Cutting speeds (F.P.M.) for various metals — Feed.....	904
<b>Cutting Tools.</b> — Chart of forged planer tools, tool holders and cutters.....	905
<b>Horizontal, Vertical and Angular Planing.</b> — Left diamond-point tool to rough plane cast iron — Diamond-point tool to finish plane steel or wrought iron — Round-nose tool to rough plane cast iron or brass — Small square-nose tool to finish plane cast iron or brass — Spring tool to finish plane cast iron — Fine versus coarse feed for finishing cut — Roughing tool to rough plane steel or wrought iron — Shear tool to finish plane steel or wrought iron — Side tool to finish plane vertical or angular surfaces — Holders and high-speed steel cutters — Setting planer cross rail in alinement — Redressing planer table — Setting head and apron swivel for vertical and angular planing.....	906
<b>Measuring Work.</b> — Steel rule — Gage blocks.....	912
<b>Holding Work, and Problems in Planing.</b> — Planer parallels — Iron clamps for planer and shaper — Leveling work with planer jacks — Planer bolts — Screw pins and screw bunters — Fingers or toe dogs — Methods of clamping work, good and bad — Holding rectangular or oblong work — Screw pins for clamping work against angle plates — Planing work at a right angle held by Tee	

## CONTENTS

21

	PAGE
fixture — Adjustable tongue fixture for holding thin work of any length — Time of feed — Direction of cut — Beveling end of castings — Planing rectangular work clamped to planer table, with schedule of operations — Oiling — Cleaning — Holding thin work by gluing or cementing — Spring of work — Alining work with surface gage.....	913
<b>Fixtures, Vises and Jigs.</b> — Planer jacks for leveling work — Planing duplicate work: planer clamps, planer shoe — Tee slot planing — Tool lifter — Planing keyway in shaft — String fixtures — Planer vises (chucks) — Planing keyway in flange, with schedule of operations — Planing taper keyway in hub of gear — Planing lathe bed — Planing V ways — Planing lathe head and footstock.....	921
<b>Shapers.</b> — Types of shapers — Geared shaper — Crank shaper — Feed mechanisms — Length of stroke — Geared shaper, with schedule of parts — Traveling-head shaper — Draw-cut shaper for heavy work — Vises — Cutting off work in vise — Planing taper work held in vise — Planing rectangular work held in shaper vise, with schedule of operations.....	930
<b>Slide Rule for Timing Planer Work</b> .....	936

## Section 10

### MILLING

<b>Introduction</b> .....	1001
<b>Milling Machines.</b> — Classes of milling machines — Column and knee type (plain and universal) — Planer type — Manufacturing type — Vertical type — Special types — Universal milling machine, with schedule of parts — Milling machine arbors..	1001
<b>Milling Cutters.</b> — Classes of milling cutters — Face or plain, side or radial, angular and formed — Form milling cutters — Chart of milling cutters — Right and left cutters — Direction of rotation — Opposite cutting movements of different machines — Mounting cutters.....	1005
<b>Speeds and Feeds.</b> — Cutting speeds for milling cutters — Feed for milling cutters — Lubricant for milling — Pickling and tumbling castings and forgings.....	1008
<b>Measuring Work.</b> — Setting cutter by trial and by measurement — Limits in milling.....	1010
<b>Plain Milling.</b> — Methods of holding work — Setting milling machine vises — Face milling — Graduated swivel vise — Setting universal vise for angular work — Shell fixture — Beginning and ending cuts in grooves, flutes, keyways and slots — Milling keyway in shaft, with schedule of operations — Slitting — Cutting off stock — Planer-type milling machine.....	1011

	PAGE
<b>Jigs and Fixtures.</b> — Multiple milling — Manufacturing type of milling machine — Milling duplicate work . . . . .	1017
<b>Index Milling.</b> — Methods of indexing — Milling bolt head and nut hexagonal, with schedule of operations — Index head and foot-stock — Plain indexing — Index plate — The sector — Adjustable crank — Index table — Differential indexing with simple gearing and with compound gearing . . . . .	1019
<b>Calculating Diameter of Blank to Mill Square or Hexagonal.</b> — Milling hexagonal bolt head or nut with heading mills, with schedule of operations — Milling square head with end mill, with schedule of operations . . . . .	1025
<b>Milling on Centers.</b> — Milling end of shaft square leaving curved shoulder — Supporting slender work, fluting rose reamers, with steady rest — Milling keyway in shaft with center-cut end mill or cotter mill . . . . .	1029
<b>Grooving Taps.</b> — Taps, number of grooves, rake of teeth — Grooving a tap, with schedule of operations — Grooving tap, trial method	1031
<b>Fluting Reamers.</b> — Principle of fluting — Fluting hand reamer, with schedule of operations — Electric alarm . . . . .	1034
<b>Milling Teeth of Milling Cutter.</b> — Milling teeth of plain milling cutter, with schedule of operations — Milling teeth of an angular cutter — Milling radial teeth of side milling cutter — Leveling taper work with surface gage — Milling taper work with special milling machine dogs — Graduating a dial . . . . .	1036
<b>Circular Milling.</b> — Milling end of work circular — Milling Tee slots in a circular table . . . . .	1040
<b>Vertical Milling.</b> — Vertical milling machine — Face milling — Bevel circular milling — Milling an inside boss — Milling ends of sliding heads . . . . .	1043
<b>Profiling.</b> — Milling irregular shapes . . . . .	1046
<b>Special Milling Cutters.</b> — Coarse tooth, rake tooth and helical tooth milling cutters . . . . .	1047

## Section II

### GEAR CUTTING

<b>Spur Gearing.</b> — Spur gears — Systems of Gearing: Involute, Epicycloidal — Chart of gear teeth, full size — Formed cutters — Gear cutters — Stocking cutters — Limit for sizing gear blanks — Diagram of gear teeth and parts — Diametral pitch — Circular pitch — Pitch diameter — Formulas used in gear cutting — Gear rule . . . . .	1101
<b>Preparing Spur Gear Blank.</b> — Preparing blank for spur-gear and pinion, with schedule of operations . . . . .	1108

## CONTENTS

23

	PAGE
<b>Cutting Spur Gear.</b> — Cutting spur pinion and gear, with schedule of operations — Setting gear cutter central — Cutting teeth in rack.....	1110
<b>Bevel Gearing.</b> — Uses of Bevel Gears — Bevel- and miter-gear cutters — Cutting angle for bevel gears.....	1113
<b>Cutting Bevel Gear.</b> — Cutting bevel gear and pinion with milling machine, with schedule of operations — Data for cutting bevel gears — Filing bevel gear teeth.....	1115
<b>Worm Gearing.</b> — Uses.....	1120
<b>Making Worm.</b> — Specifications.....	1121
<b>Preparing Worm Gear Blank.</b> .....	1122
<b>Gashing Worm Gear,</b> with schedule of operations.....	1122
<b>Hobbing Worm Gear,</b> with schedule of operations.....	1123
<b>Spiral Gearing.</b> — Uses.....	1125
<b>Cutting Spiral Gears,</b> with schedule of operations.....	1126
<b>Bevel Protractor.</b> — Measuring angles — Vernier bevel protractor — Finding taper per inch.....	1127
<b>Compound Rest,</b> for turning steep tapers or angles — Making a bevel gear blank — Fine tool adjustments with compound rest..	1131

### Section 12

#### TOOL MAKING

<b>Introduction.</b> — Selecting sizes of steel for tools.....	1201
<b>Making Mandrel.</b> — Preparing standard mandrel blank for hardening, tempering and grinding, with schedule of operations — Table of standard mandrel dimensions — Grinding standard mandrel, with schedule of operations — Making U. S. S. nut mandrel, with schedule of operations.....	1202
<b>Testing Lathe Work with Indicators.</b> — Test indicators — Testing mandrel — Setting center punch mark true to axis of rotation — Dial test indicator — Comparing the throw of both ends of an eccentric shaft — Lathe axis indicator.....	1210
<b>Thread Micrometer Calipers.</b> — Use of thread micrometer — Principle of thread micrometer — Measuring with thread micrometer — Tables of thread micrometer readings for U. S. S. and V threads.....	1214
<b>Making Taps.</b> — Cutting thread on tap blank with spring threading tool — Standard thread gages — Straightening hardened and tempered tools, with schedule of operations — Making U. S. S., Square, and 29° thread taps, with schedules of, operations....	1215
<b>Making Plain Milling Cutter,</b> with schedule of operations — Rough and finish facing large work in steel.....	1224
<b>Making Hand Reamer,</b> with schedule of operations.....	1226

	Page
<b>Lapping.</b> — Making lap for center holes — Lapping standard plug gage, with schedule of operations — Lapping a hole in a ring gage — Lapping a hole in a milling cutter — Lapping holes in machine parts.....	1228
<b>Making Plug Gage.</b> — Preparing standard plug-gage blank for grinding, with schedule of operations — Grinding standard plug gage, with schedule of operations.....	1232
<b>Measuring Machine.</b> — Twenty-four inch standard measuring machine — Measuring standard plug gage, with schedule of operations — Testing end measuring rod.....	1236
<b>Spiral Milling.</b> — Spirals — Finding angle for setting saddle graphically, approximately or by calculation — Calculating compound gears — To obtain lead for spiral milling cutter — Cutters for spiral mills — Cutters for twist drills.....	1239
<b>Cutting Teeth in Spiral Mill,</b> with schedule of operations.....	1241
<b>Grooving Twist Drill,</b> with schedule of operations — Milling land clearance on twist drill.....	1243
<b>Making Twist Drill.</b> — Making taper shank twist drill, with schedule of operations.....	1245
<b>Precision Methods of Locating Holes for Jigs and Accurate Machine Parts</b> — Plug Method, Button Method. — Introduction — Planing or milling jig castings accurately — The plug method — Locating angle plate accurately on boring mill table — Truing plug in spindle — Alining jig to angle plate and plug — Boring hole in jig — Locating one hole accurately from another hole by the use of two plugs — Adjustable boring tool — The button method — Locating button on jig — Setting jig on face plate with button true to axis of rotation — Boring button work — Locating two or more holes accurately by the button method — Locating holes an exact distance apart with boring mills or milling machine.....	1248
<b>Sine Bar.</b> — Setting adjustable angle plate with sine bar — Measuring and originating tapers with sine bar — Other uses for sine bar.....	1263
<b>General Index.</b>	

THIS BOOK CONTAINS  
**ONE HUNDRED SCHEDULES**  
 OF  
**PROBLEMS AND PROCESSES IN MACHINE WORK**

**SPECIAL INDEX \***

ARRANGED TO ENABLE STUDENTS TO FIND THE  
 PROBLEMS AND PROCESSES QUICKLY

**Problems in Black-face Type — Processes in Light-face Type**

	PAGE
<b>SECTION 1</b>	
1 To true engine-lathe centers . . . . .	114, 115
2 To set dead center in alinement to turn straight . . . . .	116, 117
3 Hand method of centering . . . . .	121, 122
4 Machine method of centering . . . . .	123, 124
<b>SECTION 2</b>	
5 To center, square and turn straight . . . . .	203-205
6 To turn, file and fit Morse taper, No. 3 . . . . .	228-230
7 To turn taper with taper attachment . . . . .	230, 231
8 To turn and file 1" straight running fit . . . . .	231, 232
9 To make a 1" running fit by allowance . . . . .	232, 233
<b>SECTION 3</b>	
10 To make plain machine handle . . . . .	310, 311
11 To prepare two shaft blanks . . . . .	314, 315
12 To turn and file 1" drive fit . . . . .	316, 317
13 To make 1" drive fit by allowance . . . . .	317
14 To turn and file 1 1/4" running fit by allowance . . . . .	317
15 To set U. S. Standard or V threading tool at height of center and at right angles to work . . . . .	324
16 To prepare screw and nut blanks and to practice screw cutting . . . . .	328, 329
17 To set up lathe for threading or screw cutting . . . . .	330
18 To operate lathe to cut the thread . . . . .	331
19 To cut long screw using thread indicator . . . . .	336
20 Chamfering bolt heads, nuts, and screws . . . . .	341
21 To make a clamp nut . . . . .	341
22 To make a finished bolt 3/4" diameter . . . . .	342, 343
23 To make a pair of spring bolts, duplicate process . . . . .	344, 345
24 To make tensile test specimen . . . . .	346, 347
25 To make a stud . . . . .	348, 349
26 To index in engine lathe . . . . .	352
27 To make 14" engine lathe live center . . . . .	352, 353
<b>SECTION 4</b>	
28 Chucking with twist drill in engine lathe . . . . .	409, 410
29 Chucking with a flat drill and chucking reamer in an engine lathe . . . . .	411, 412
30 Hand reaming work held in vise . . . . .	414
31 To ream a hole by hand in a vertical drilling machine . . . . .	415
32 To ream work by hand in the lathe with a hand reamer . . . . .	416-417
33 To ream in lathe by power with fluted chucking reamer . . . . .	417, 418
34 To make a cast-iron flange . . . . .	426-428
35 To make a pulley 5" in diameter . . . . .	430, 431
36 To make a formed machine handle . . . . .	438-440
<b>SECTION 5</b>	
37 To set and use boring tool in lathe . . . . .	505
38 To cut an inside thread in lathe . . . . .	507, 508
39 To cut right inside thread to shoulder . . . . .	510
40 To find inclination of thread and tool . . . . .	513, 514
41 To cut a Square thread screw . . . . .	516-518
42 To make a Square thread nut . . . . .	519-521
43 To fit screw to nut . . . . .	521
44 To file or grind Acme Standard or 29° threading tool . . . . .	524

\* See General Index at end of book.



	PAGE
45 To cut Acme Standard or 29° thread screw . . . . .	527-529
46 To make an Acme Standard or 29° thread nut . . . . .	529-531
47 To cut double Square thread . . . . .	532
48 To make brass binding post and nurl'd thumb nuts . . . . .	534-537
49 To make bronze bushing . . . . .	539, 540
<b>SECTION 6</b>	
50 To drill and ream bolt holes in coupling flange with jig . . . . .	604, 605
51 Hand alinement reaming with shell reamer . . . . .	618
52 Power alinement reaming with jig . . . . .	618, 619
53 To make small lathe spindle . . . . .	622, 623
54 To turn spot on shaft, then adjust jaws to that spot and turn shaft . . . . .	627
55 To make eccentric shaft . . . . .	630, 631
56 To turn engine eccentric . . . . .	632
57 To lay out two-throw 90° crankshaft center fixtures . . . . .	632, 633
58 To aline center fixtures and lay out cranks . . . . .	633, 634
59 To turn crankshaft . . . . .	634
60 Hand nurling . . . . .	635
61 Machine nurling . . . . .	636
<b>SECTION 7</b>	
62 To grind running fit on two dead centers . . . . .	716, 717
63 To grind forcing fit on two dead centers . . . . .	720, 721
<b>SECTION 8</b>	
64 To grind work square held with magnetized master blocks . . . . .	803
65 To grind clearance on teeth of plain milling cutter . . . . .	814-816
66 To grind clearance on teeth of spiral milling cutter . . . . .	819
<b>SECTION 9</b>	
67 To plane rectangular work clamped to planer table . . . . .	918, 919
68 To plane keyway in flange . . . . .	926, 927
69 To plane rectangular work held in shaper vise . . . . .	934, 935
<b>SECTION 10</b>	
70 To mill keyway or slot in shaft . . . . .	1015
71 To mill bolt head and nut hexagonal with heading mills, bolt head milling machine . . . . .	1020, 1021
72 To mill bolt head hexagonal with heading mills, universal or plain milling machine . . . . .	1026, 1027
73 To mill square head with end mill . . . . .	1028, 1029
74 To groove a tap. Direct method . . . . .	1032, 1033
75 To flute hand reamer . . . . .	1035, 1036
76 To mill teeth of plain milling cutter . . . . .	1036, 1037
<b>SECTION 11</b>	
77 To prepare spur pinion blank . . . . .	1108, 1109
78 To cut spur pinion and gear, plain or universal milling machine . . . . .	1110, 1111
79 To cut bevel gear and pinion with milling machine . . . . .	1115-1119
80 To make worm . . . . .	1122
81 To prepare worm-gear blank . . . . .	1121, 1122
82 To gash worm gear, universal milling machine . . . . .	1122, 1123
83 To hob worm gear, universal or plain milling machine . . . . .	1123-1125
84 To cut spiral gear and pinion, universal milling machine . . . . .	1126, 1127
<b>SECTION 12</b>	
85 To prepare $\frac{3}{8}$ " standard mandrel blank for hardening, tempering, and grinding . . . . .	1202-1204
86 To grind $\frac{1}{8}$ " standard mandrel, on two dead centers . . . . .	1206, 1207
87 To make $\frac{1}{2}$ x 13 U. S. Standard nut mandrel . . . . .	1208, 1209
88 To straighten hardened and tempered tools . . . . .	1217
89 To make $\frac{1}{2}$ " x 16 U. S. Standard tap . . . . .	1218, 1219
90 To make $\frac{1}{2}$ " x 6, Square thread tap . . . . .	1220, 1221
91 To make $\frac{1}{2}$ " x 6, 29° thread tap . . . . .	1222, 1223
92 To make $\frac{1}{2}$ " x $\frac{1}{2}$ " plain milling cutter . . . . .	1224, 1225
93 To make hand reamer . . . . .	1226-1228
94 To lap standard plug gage . . . . .	1229, 1230
95 To prepare standard plug-gage blank for grinding . . . . .	1232, 1233
96 To grind standard plug gage on two dead centers . . . . .	1234, 1235
97 To measure standard plug gage . . . . .	1237, 1238
98 To cut teeth in spiral mill, universal milling machine . . . . .	1241, 1242
99 To groove twist drill . . . . .	1243-1245
100 To make taper shank twist drill . . . . .	1245-1247

# ADVANCED MACHINE WORK

## SECTION 1

### LATHE WORK

**Engine Lathes. Electrically-driven Machine Tools. Truing and Alining Centers. Center Holes. Cutting Tools. Lathe Tools for Cast Iron. Grinding Lathe Tools. Setting and Using Outside Calipers. Cutting Speeds, Cut-Meter, and Feeds. Lubricants for Cutting Tools. Inspecting and Measuring Material (Stock).**

#### ENGINE LATHES

**1. Evolution of the lathe.** — The lathe is the most general and useful of all machine tools and is used to produce cylindrical surfaces.

The date of its origin is lost in antiquity. The first lathes consisted of two short posts driven into the ground, and a nail driven into each formed the centers on which the work revolved, operated by a rope, treadle and sapling, or lath, and from the latter name the term *lathe* is derived.

To Henry Maudslay of England, belongs the credit of inventing the slide rest and applying it to the lathe about 1794; and later, to other machines. Planing machines came next, and did for plane surfaces what the lathe had done for cylindrical surfaces. Then followed milling machines, grinding machines, screw machines, gear cutters, etc. The improvements in machine tools during the past fifty years have been greater than in all the preceding years.

**2. Swing of lathes.**—A lathe is designated by its swing and total length of bed. A 14" × 6' engine lathe will swing fourteen inches in diameter over ways, but will only swing about 8" over a rise and fall rest, and about 10" over a plain or compound rest. In length it will turn six feet less the combined length of head and footstock. A 6' bed will turn about 42" between centers.

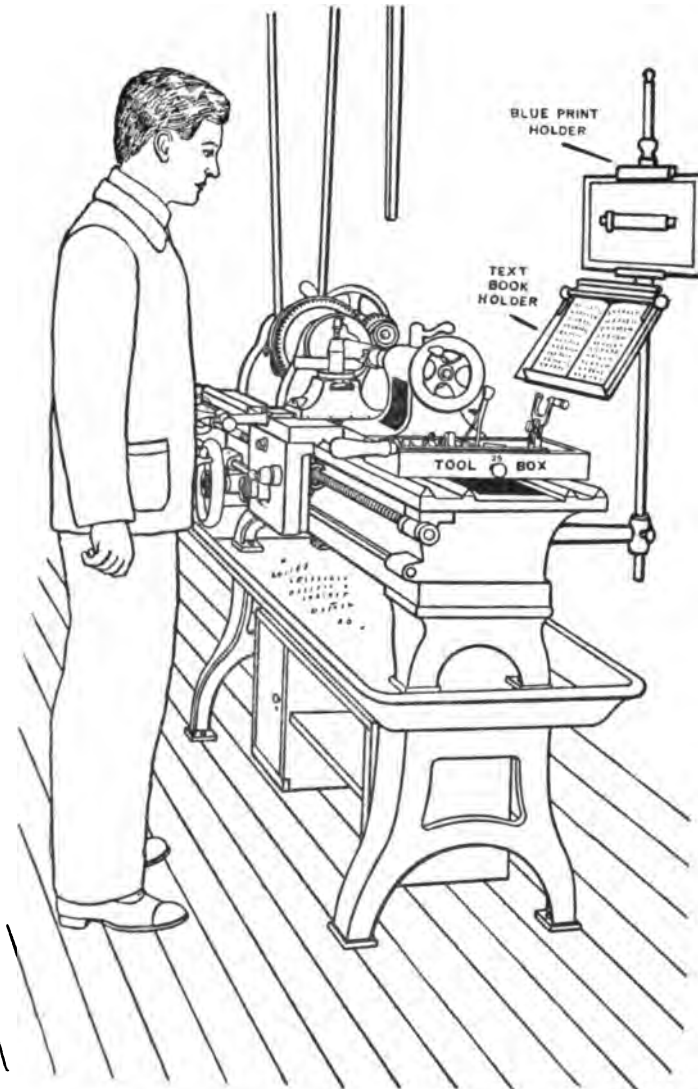


FIG. 1. — CORRECT POSITION AT ENGINE LATHE FOR TURNING.

**3. Classes of lathes.**—Lathes are divided into many classes, some of which are designed especially for the work performed upon them, as the wheel lathe, axle lathe, pulley lathe, turret lathe, bench lathe, jeweler's lathe, etc., and for general work the engine lathe, which when supplied with special attachments is called a tool-maker's lathe.

**4. The engine lathe,** see Figs. 1, 2, is supplied with hand and power long. (*longitudinal*) and cross feeds, is arranged for screw cutting for which a *lead* screw is provided, and is usually constructed with back gears. The cutting tool is held in a tool-post which is clamped to the tool-block and the whole mounted on a carriage.

CONE HEADSTOCK COUNTERSHAFT DRIVE BELT OR  
GEAR FEED

ESSENTIAL PARTS, FIG. 2.

**5. A — Bed.**

*B* and *B'* — Legs fastened to bed by cap screws, to floor by lag screws.

*C* and *C'* — Front ways of two pairs of *V* ways, planed and scraped.

*D* — Headstock bolted to ways.

*E* — Footstock or tailstock; position adjustable.

*F* and *F'* — Bolts for clamping footstock to ways *C*.

*G* — Carriage, two parts, movable on ways.

*H* — Saddle; carries tool mechanism.

*H'* — Apron; carries feed mechanism.

**6. Footstock.**

May be set over for taper turning.

*I* — Front screw of a pair for adjustment of upper part of footstock; back screw not visible.

*J* — Spindle.

*K* — Handle operating footstock spindle.

*L* — Binder for clamping *J*.

*M* — Dead center.

*N* — Oil well and oiler for dead center.

**7. Carriage.**

*O* — Tool post.

*O'* — Screw for fastening cutting tool.

*P* — Slide rest, rise and fall type (or elevating rest).

*Q* — Handle for adjusting height of tool.

*R* — Thread stop, used when cutting screw threads.

*S* — Handle for operating long feed by hand.

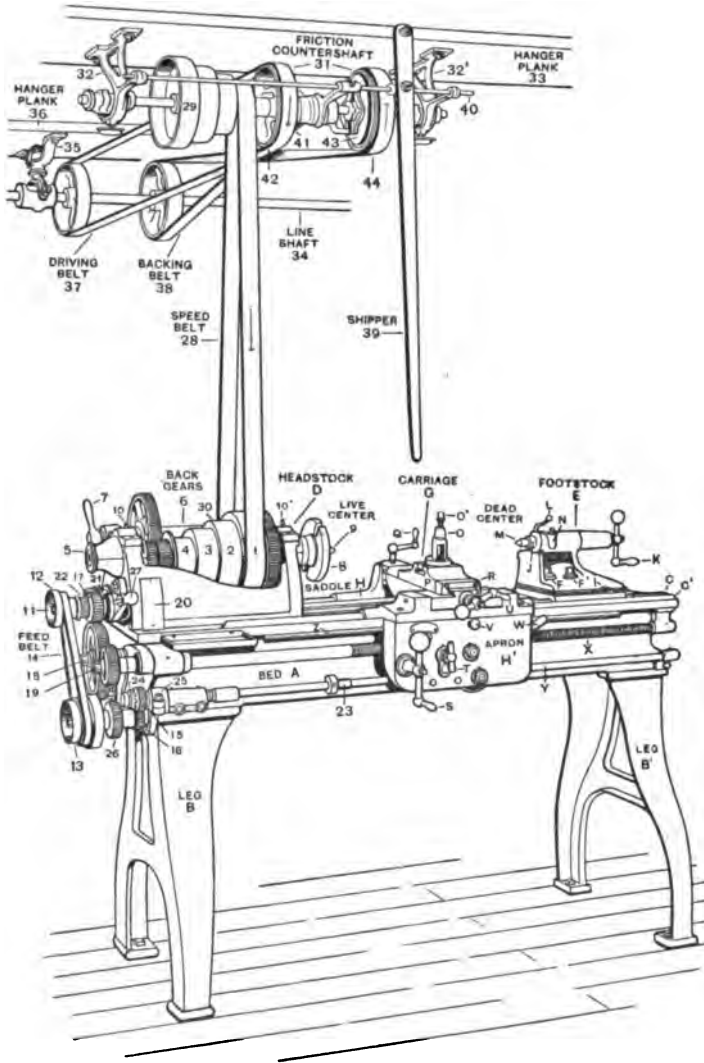


FIG. 2.—14-INCH ENGINE LATHE, COUNTERSHAFT, LINE SHAFT, AND BELT CONNECTIONS.

*T* — Knob for operating long feed by power.

*U* — Handle for operating cross feed by hand.

*V* — Knob for operating cross feed by power.

*W* — Lever for operating split nut (half-nuts) inside apron *H'*.

*X* — Lead screw engaged by split nut when cutting threads.

*Y* — Feed shaft.

*Z* — Feed rack.

### 8. *Headstock.*

1, 2, 3, 4 — Steps on headstock cone. Belt on 1, slowest speed; on 4, fastest speed.

5 — Thrust bearing and end adjustment.

6 — Back gears.

7 — Lever for throwing 6 "in" or "out."

8 — Face plate, slotted to receive dog.

9 — Live center.

10 and 10' — Oil holes for live spindle.

### 9. *Feed.*

11 — Stud on feed spindle; transmits motion from lathe spindle to carriage for turning by 12, 13, 14, 15, 16 to feed shaft *V*; for screw cutting by 17, 18, 19 to lead screw *X*.

A set of change gears is supplied for screw cutting and gear feed.

12, 13 — Feed cones.

14 — Feed belt.

20 — Index plate of gears, for screw cutting.

21 — Supplementary radial arm to carry two gears fixed on sleeve, for compounding change gears for

fine or coarse thread; serves to connect 22 on 11 to 18, and thence to *X*.

22 — Gear.

### 10. *Automatic Feed Stop.*

23 — Automatic stop sleeve.

24 — Clutch (23 and 24 used to stop carriage automatically at desired point).

25 — Clamping bolt (swinging 13 outward tightens feed belt).

26 — Gear feed. Remove belt 14, swing 13 until 26 meshes with 18. By different combinations of gears a large variety of feeds is obtainable. Six cone belt feeds are provided by interchanging 16 and 26.

27 — Reversing lever; reverses feed mechanism in headstock.

### 11. *Countershaft (friction type) and Line Shaft.*

28 — Speed belt.

29 — Countershaft cone pulley.

30 — Headstock cone pulley.

31 — Countershaft mechanism (consists of shaft, cone pulley, pulley for driving forward belt, pulley for driving backward belt, and clutch mechanism).

32 and 32' — Hangers bolted to hanger plank.

33 — Hanger plank.

34 — Line shaft; drives 31.

35 — Line shaft hanger.

36 — Hanger plank.

37 — Driving belt, 34 to 42; drives lathe forward.

38 — Backing belt, 34 to 44; drives lathe backward.

39 — Shipper pole, pivoted to 33.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>40 — Shipper rod; controls friction-clutch mechanism.</p> <p>41 — Expanding clutch; engages pulley, driving lathe forward.</p> <p>42 — Driving pulley.</p> <p>43 — Expanding clutch; en-</p> | <p>gages pulley, driving lathe backward.</p> <p>44 — "Backing" pulley.</p> <p>(To run lathe "forward," push shipper to left; clutch 41 engages 42; "backward," push shipper to right; clutch 43 engages 44.</p> |
|---|---|

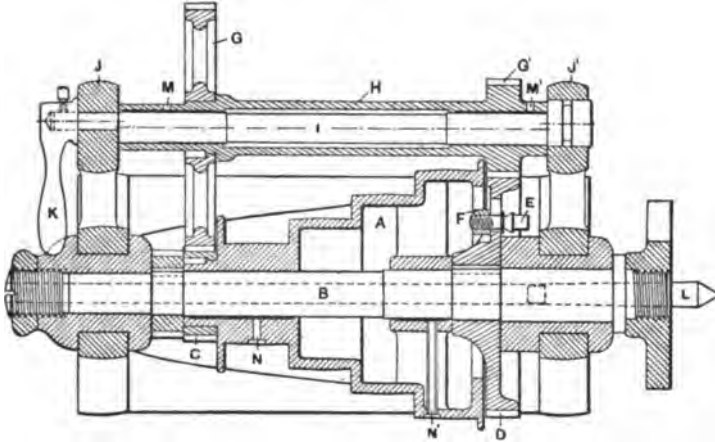


FIG. 3. — HORIZONTAL SECTION OF ENGINE-LATHE HEADSTOCK.

**12. Back Gears and Headstock.**  
(Fig. 3.)

Back gears are used to reduce speed and increase power of machine. Ratio is about 10 to 1.

*A* — Cone pulley; running fit on spindle.

*B* — Spindle.

*C* — Gear fast to cone pulley.

*D* — Gear keyed to spindle *B*.

*E* — Slide bolt to fasten *A* to *D*.

*F* — Slide nut.

*G* and *G'* — Back gears fast on sleeve.

*H* — Sleeve; running fit on shaft.

*I* — Eccentric shaft.

*J* and *J'* — Brackets, part of headstock casting.

*K* — Lever to rotate shaft *I*, throwing back gear "in" or "out."

*L* — Live center; taper fit in *B*.

*M* and *M'* — Oil holes (oiled before using back gears).

*N* and *N'* — Oil holes (oiled before using back gears).

*To Operate Back Gears.*

For direct cone drive, slide nut *F* is in slot in cone *A*, back gears "out." To use back gears, drop bolt *E* and secure, throw lever

*K* forward. To obtain direct cone speed again, throw lever back, loosen *E* and turn lathe until *F* engages slot in *A*. Tighten *E*.

*Double and Triple Back Gears.*

To obtain a greater reduction of speed, lathes are built double or triple back geared.

*Information.* — Modern engine lathes have a micrometer dial upon the cross-feed screw which is convenient for fine adjustments and to use in conjunction with micrometer calipers. Each graduation gives a cut one-thousandth in depth which reduces the work two-thousandths in diameter. See Micrometer Calipers, p. 207.

*Attention.* — Gear guards are often provided to prevent accident and to keep dirt and chips from gear teeth.

**13. A typical lathe apron.** Fig. 4. — The apron of a lathe carries the greater part of the feed mechanism. Fig. 4 shows a lathe apron and the three distinct mechanisms, the long feed, cross feed, and screw-cutting feed. The first is used for moving carriage back and forth along bed for turning; the second for moving cross slide in and out for squaring; the third, the lead screw and split nut, for moving carriage along bed for cutting screw threads.

**14. To change direction of feeds.** — The reversing mechanism to change direction of rotation of feed shaft may be in the head-stock and operated by lever 27, Fig. 2, or in the lathe apron.

LONG. FEED. CROSS FEED. LEAD SCREW

**15. Long. Feed.**

*A* — Long. feed handle.  
*B* — Pinion.  
*C* — Spur gear.  
*D* — Sliding stud.  
*E* — Sliding pinion, on inner end of stud *D*.  
*F* — Feed rack, fastened to under side of bed  
*G* — Splined feed shaft.  
*H* — Feather-keyed worm held in bracket *H'*.

*J* — Worm gear.  
*K* — Friction clutch to connect *J* and *L*.  
*L* — Pinion fast to *K*.  
*M* — Knob controlling clutch *K*. Hand long. feed is obtained by rotating *A* which drives through *B*, *C*, *E* to *F*. Power long. feed is obtained from *G*. Clutch *K*, shown out of action, is thrown in, which causes *G* to drive through *H*, *J*, *L*, *C*, *E* to *F*.



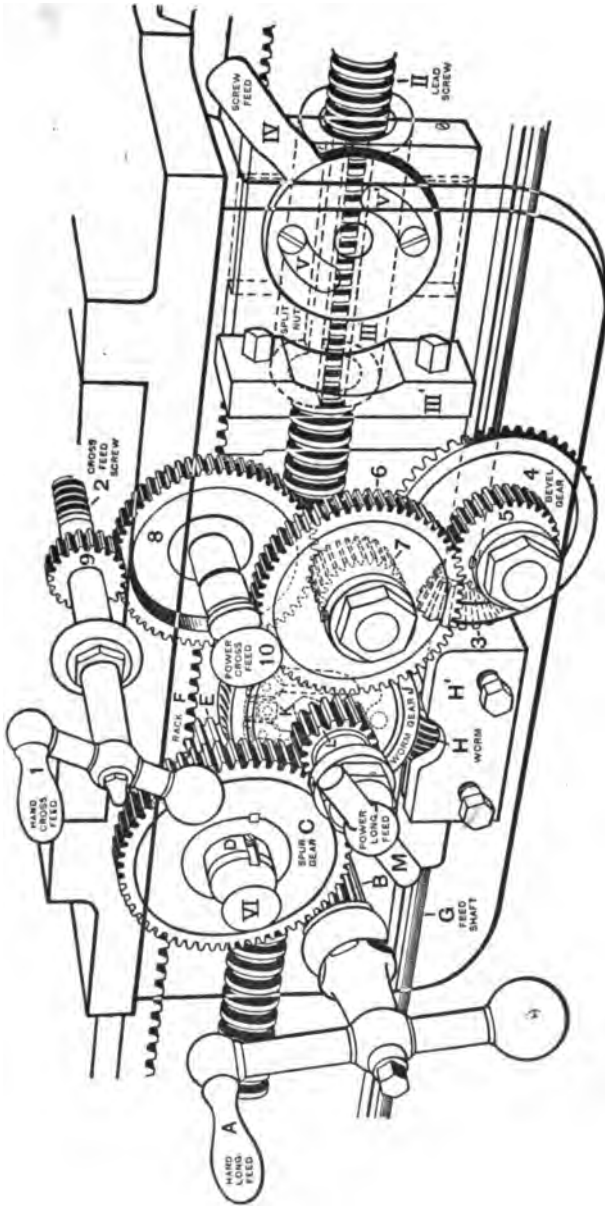


FIG. 4.—LATHE APRON SHOWN TRANSPARENTLY.

**16. Cross Feed.**

- 1 — Cross-feed handle.
- 2 — Operating screw, in nut under cross slide.
- 3 — Bevel pinion feather-keyed to *G*.
- 4 — Bevel gear.
- 5 — Pinion fast to 4.
- 6 — Driving gear.
- 7 — Pinion fast to 6.
- 8 — Gear always in mesh with 7.
- 9 — Cross-feed pinion.
- 10 — Knob controlling position of 8. Hand cross feed is obtained by rotating handle 1.

Power cross feed is obtained by meshing 8 with 9 by means of knob 10.

**17. Lead Screw and Split Nut.**

- II — Lead screw.
- III — Split nut.
- III' — Split nut bracket.
- IV — Lever to operate split nut III.
- V and V' — Cams closing split nut III.
- VI — Knob to disengage *E* and *F* when screw cutting. To operate for screw cutting, pull out knob VI, throw IV downward, closing split nut III.

There are types of lathes, where a splined lead screw performs the combined duty of feed shaft and lead screw, the worm and bevel pinion being driven directly by it.

*Attention.* — Care should be taken not to have both long feed and lead screw thrown in at the same time. Some lathes are fitted with devices which will prevent this.

**18. Care of machines and small tools.** — When through using a machine, clean it, first with a brush, then wipe with cotton waste.

Wrenches, handles, bolts, straps, and fixtures should be put away in their proper places so that they may be found when wanted. All tools out on checks should be returned to the tool room as soon as possible.

**19. Lathe box or tray for tools and work.** — Do not place tools, work, or other metallic objects on the ways of a machine, as they would scar and affect their truth. A wooden box or tray should be supplied for the tools or small work. It may be placed on the ways near the end of the lathe. See Fig. 1. Large work should be placed on a bench, truck, or the floor.

**20. Attachments for lathes.** — Among the attachments for lathes are the taper attachment, compound rest, steady rest, follower rest, and attachments for milling and grinding.

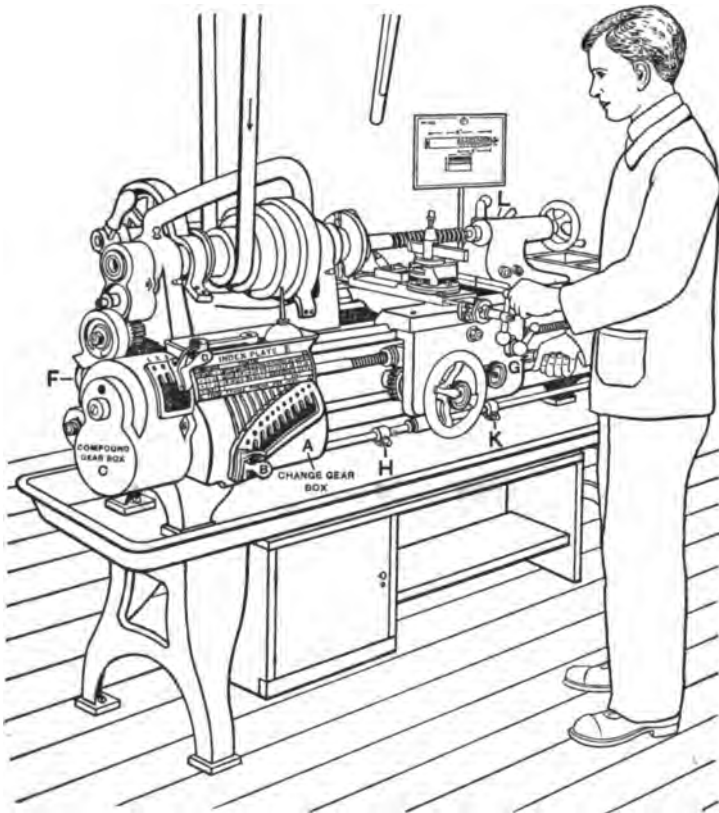


FIG. 5.—ENGINE LATHE WITH A RAPID CHANGE-GEAR MECHANISM.

**21. Stops for duplicating sizes.** — In addition to the thread stop some lathes are equipped with long. and cross-feed stops. After the first piece is turned or threaded to size, the back stop is set to check movement of cross slide. The carriage

or long. stop is used for shoulders and lengths. By aid of these stops a number of pieces can be duplicated.

**22. Lathe with a rapid change-gear mechanism for threads and feeds.**—Some lathes, as in Fig. 5, are equipped with a rapid system of change gears by which different threads or feeds are obtained quickly.

---

ESSENTIAL PARTS.

<p><i>A</i> — Change gears in cone form, on end of lead screw.</p> <p><i>B</i> — Handle operating change gears.</p> <p><i>C</i> — Compound gears.</p> <p><i>D</i> — Handle operating compound gears.</p> <p><i>E</i> — Index plate, giving posi-</p>	<p>tions for handles <i>B</i> and <i>D</i> to cut a desired thread.</p> <p><i>F</i> — Sector to carry gear for cutting special thread.</p> <p><i>G</i> — Lever to reverse carriage.</p> <p><i>H</i> and <i>K</i> — Automatic carriage stops. Carriage stop (invisible) is located on back ways under letter <i>L</i>.</p>
--	---

---

**23. Cutting a screw using a rapid system of change gears.**—To cut a screw of five threads per inch, find 5 on index *E* and place handle *B* in notch and hole under it; place handle *D* under hole 3 on compound gear box, which is indicated in the third column on the same line as 5.

For threads given on the index, no change of gears is necessary. Gears may be calculated for other threads and applied as on the ordinary lathe. The feed for turning is seven times threads per inch expressed in turns per inch of tool travel.

**24. For threading short screws** the carriage may be reversed by moving reversing lever *G* up or down, depending on whether a right or left thread is being cut; or the automatic stops *H* and *K* may be used.

ELECTRICALLY-DRIVEN MACHINE TOOLS

**25. Arrangement of machine tools for electric drive.**—They may be group-driven by electricity by using a constant-speed motor to drive group line shaft, or individually driven by attaching a constant or variable-speed motor to each

machine. Constant-speed motors are used on machines that need but little speed variation, or on machines that have a large variety of mechanical speed changes.

26. Electrically-driven engine lathe — Variable-speed motor *A*, Fig. 6, gives a wide speed variation. Speed is electri-

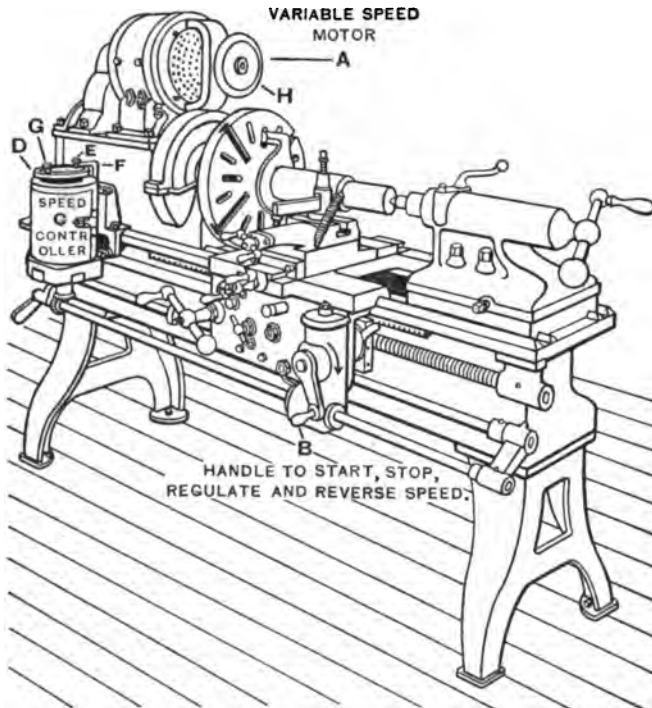


FIG. 6.—ELECTRICALLY-DRIVEN ENGINE LATHE.

cally controlled from apron. To start lathe, move handle *B* in direction of arrow. Controller *C* is provided with graduated wheel *D*. When a desired speed is obtained, pin *E* is placed in wheel *D* so that it will come against stop *F*. By this arrangement any speed can be duplicated. Pin *G* prevents lathe from being reversed. When it is desired to

reverse lathe, remove pin *G* and move handle *B* in opposite direction. Wheel *H* is used to revolve lathe spindle by hand.

TRUING AND ALINING CENTERS

27. Center gage *A*, Fig. 7, is used for defining angles of 60°. The large notch is used for testing lathe centers, as *B*; notches *C* and *D* for testing and setting outside threading

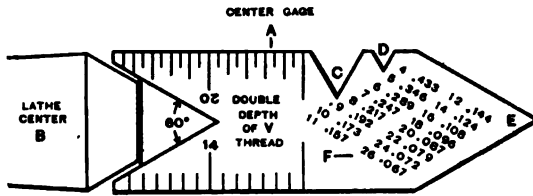


FIG. 7. — TESTING ANGLE OF LATHE CENTER

tools, and *E* for inside threading tools. At *F* is a table of double depths of Sharp V threads for determining diameter of tap drills by subtracting number in thousandths opposite pitch from diameter of tap.

28. Requirements for successful use of engine lathes. — Engine lathes should be accurate enough to turn, bore and face straight and true, and be equipped with an accurate lead screw for screw cutting.

To produce accurate work requires that both live and dead centers should be true and in accurate alinement. Furthermore, lathes wear, causing loss of alinement and looseness of working parts that must be detected and corrected.

29. Lathe centers. — The dead center is hardened and tempered. The live center may or may not be hardened.

30. To test truth of live center of any lathe. — Move foot-stock until dead center is close to live center, run lathe at highest speed, look for error. Move lathe tool close to revolving live center or use test indicator.

31. To true engine-lathe centers. Figs. 8 and 9.

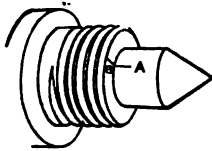


FIG. 8. — LOCATING CENTER IN HEADSTOCK SPINDLE.

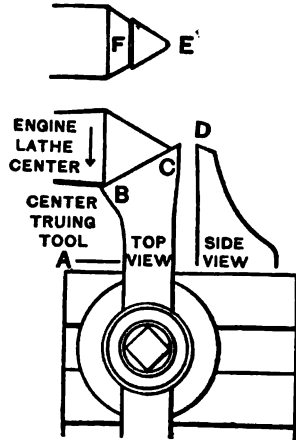


FIG. 9. — TRUING ENGINE-LATHE CENTER.

### SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS

#### *Live Center.*

*Speed: — For 12" to 16" engine lathe, 3d speed, back gears out.*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Remove center.   | 7. Adjust edge to fit center.   |
| 2. Clean hole and center with waste.  | 8. Clamp tool tightly.  |
| 3. Insert center with lines coincident A, B, Fig. 8.  | 9. Run lathe at moderate speed.   |
| 4. Drive center lightly with lead hammer.   | 10. Operate both long and cross feeds slowly by hand.   |
| 5. Start lathe; if still out of true, use center-truing tool A, Fig. 9. BC shows cutting edge, D the clearance. | 11. Test with center gage. Readjust tool, if necessary, until center fits gage.   |
| 6. Fasten tool lightly at height of center.   | 12. Turn point E at a more obtuse angle. Portion F may be cut away in advance with cutting-off tool, to facilitate truing center. |

*Attention.* — Centers may be trued by means of a compound rest. In an emergency a right side tool may be used back of the center and the lathe run backward.

SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS *Concluded*

*Dead Center.*

1. Remove center.	6. File center with 8" mill file.
2. Anneal.	7. Polish slightly with fine emery cloth held under file.
3. Insert in live spindle.	8. Reharden.
4. True similarly to live center.	9. Temper to light straw color.
5. Run lathe at high speed.	

*Attention.*—Both centers may be hardened and kept true by grinding.

**32. To grind hardened and soft centers. Fig. 10.**

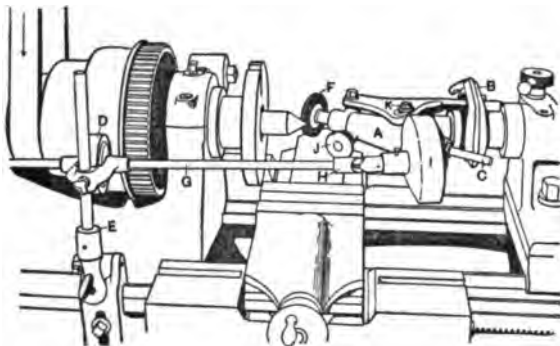


FIG. 10. — TRUING CENTERS WITH CENTER GRINDER.

SCHEDULE OF PARTS

A — Frame.	F — Emery wheel.
B — Clamp fastening A to footstock spindle.	G — Shaft driving F.
C — Emery-wheel spindle set at angle of 60° with center.	H — Universal joint.
D — Friction roll.	I — Bevel gears (encased).
E — Bracket; clamps support for D to bed.	J — Knob to move emery wheel back and forth along center.

*Attention.* — The depth of cut is regulated by footstock spindle.



33. To set dead center in alinement to turn straight. Figs. 11 and 12.

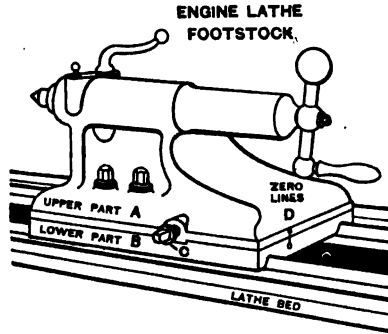


FIG. 11. — SETTING DEAD CENTER IN ALINEMENT. APPROXIMATE METHODS.

#### SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS

##### 34. *Two Approximate Methods.*

I. Unclamp footstock, Fig. 11, and move upper part A upon B by screws C and C' (C' not shown) until zero lines at D coincide.

II. Move footstock until dead center is close to live center, adjust screws C and C', and aline centers by sight.

##### 35. *Accurate Method.*

Material, use piece that you are working on after it is rough-turned  $\frac{1}{16}$ " to  $\frac{1}{32}$ " large, or trial piece the same length.

1. Set dead center by Approximate Method, No. I or No. II.	Engine lathe 12" to 16". 3d speed, or 50 F.P.M. Fine power feed — 140 to 1".	Dog, copper under set screw. For cast iron or brass, round-nose tool. For steel or wrought iron, diamond-point tool or holder and cutter 35° rake.  Micrometer.
2. Mount shaft A on centers, Fig. (12).		
3. Take light out as shown dotted at B, .002" to .003" in diameter, estimated, or use dial on cross feed.		
4. Take out work.		
5. Run carriage back near dead center.		
6. Remount work.		
7. Take short out as at C.		
8. Caliper at B and C.		
9. If not alike, adjust footstock and repeat operations.		

*Attention.* — In setting the lathe for straight turning or fitting, the diameter at *B*, Fig. 12, must be either equal to *C* or a fraction of a thousandth of an inch larger than *C*. If *B* is larger than *C*, the error can be corrected by filing; if smaller, the error *can not* be corrected and the work is spoiled.

While it is best to have a lathe set straight, an error of a thousandth of an inch either way is permissible on such work as turning pulleys, flanges, and gear blanks.

*Note.* — A test indicator and parallel mandrel, preferably of the length of the work to be turned, may also be used to set a lathe to turn straight. See Test Indicators, pp. 1210–1213.

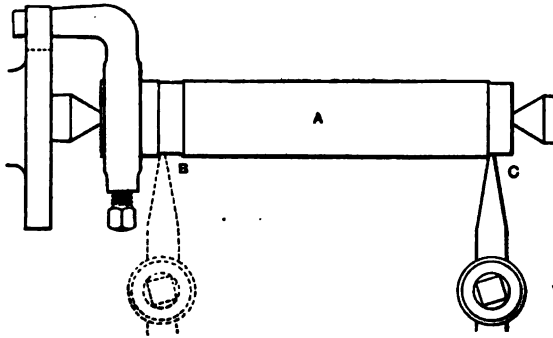


FIG. 12. — SETTING DEAD CENTER IN ALINEMENT. ACCURATE METHOD.

CENTER HOLES

36. Center holes are made in the ends of material (stock) to fit lathe centers by locating and drilling small holes, then countersinking with a 60° countersink, *A* and *B*, Fig. 13.

The countersink should be large enough to provide ample bearing to prevent excessive wear, and should be in proportion to the diameter of work.

The drilled hole must be deeper than countersink to provide a reservoir for oil and to prevent lathe centers from bottoming, as at *C*, Fig. 14, as this would injure centers and

cause work to run out of true. Center holes must be wiped clean before mounting on centers. Chips in center holes *D*, Fig. 15, will spoil both work and center.

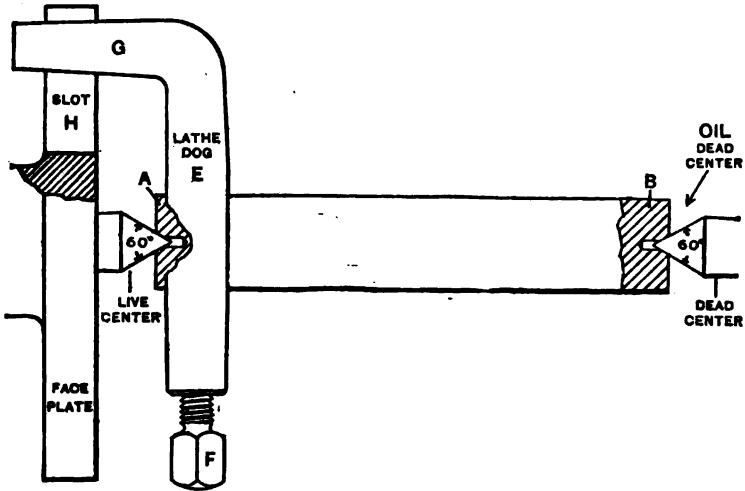


FIG. 13. — STOCK CORRECTLY CENTERED AND PROPERLY MOUNTED ON LATHE CENTERS.

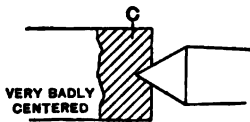


FIG. 14. — INCORRECT CENTERING.

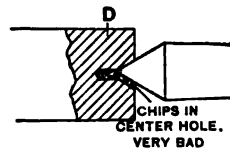


FIG. 15. — STOCK CARELESSLY MOUNTED ON CENTERS.

37. To drive the work, dog *E*, Fig. 13, is fastened to work by screw *F*, and tail *G* must be loose in face-plate slot *H*.

38. Table of center-hole dimensions. Fig. 16. — These center-hole dimensions provide good bearings for ordinary lathe work to resist tool pressure.

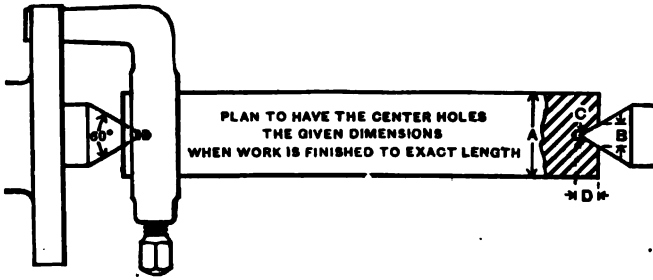


FIG. 16.

DIAMETER OF SHAFT.	DIAMETER OF COUNTER-SINKS.	DRILL SIZE.		DEPTH OF HOLE = $B + \frac{1}{16}''$ .
		NEAREST 64TH.	GAGE No.*	
A.	B.	C.		D.
$\frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{1}{16}$	$\frac{3}{64}$	56	$\frac{3}{16}$
$\frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{3}{32}$	$\frac{1}{16}$	52	$\frac{3}{16}$
$\frac{3}{8}$	$\frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{1}{16}$	52	$\frac{1}{4}$
$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{3}{16}$	$\frac{3}{32}$	42	$\frac{1}{4}$
$1-1 \frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{3}{32}$	42	$\frac{1}{2}$
$1 \frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{3}{16}$	$\frac{1}{8}$	42	$\frac{3}{8}$
$1 \frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{1}{8}$	31	$\frac{1}{2}$
$1 \frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{3}{8}$	$\frac{1}{8}$	31	$\frac{3}{4}$
2	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{8}$	31	$1$
$2 \frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{1}{8}$	31	$1 \frac{1}{4}$
3	$\frac{7}{8}$	$\frac{3}{32}$	22	$1 \frac{1}{2}$
$3 \frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{3}{32}$	22	$1 \frac{3}{4}$
4	$\frac{7}{8}$	$\frac{1}{8}$	22	$2$
$4 \frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{3}{32}$	22	$2 \frac{1}{4}$
5	$\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{3}{32}$	22	$2 \frac{1}{2}$
$5 \frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{3}{32}$	13	$2 \frac{3}{4}$
6	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{8}$		$3$

Attention. — If drill and countersink are within one size they will answer.

\* Twist drill and steel wire gage. See Principles of Machine Work.

39. Countersinks or center reamers, Figs. 17, 18, are made to an angle of  $60^\circ$ . They may be made any desired diameter and with straight shanks, as shown, to be held in a chuck, or with taper shanks to be inserted in taper collet or machine spindle. They may have several cutting lips as in Fig. 17, or but a single cutting lip as in Fig. 18.

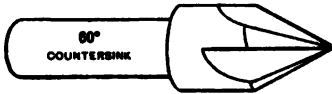


FIG. 17.

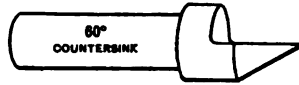


FIG. 18.

COUNTERSINKS FOR LATHE WORK.

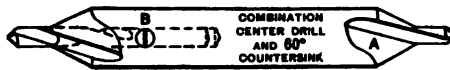


FIG. 19. — COMBINED DRILL AND COUNTERSINK.

Combination center drill and countersink, Fig. 19, produces a countersink central with drilled hole. At end *A* drill and countersink are one piece, while at end *B* a hole is made in countersink and a center drill inserted and held by a set screw.



FIG. 20. — COMBINED DRILL, COUNTERSINK, AND COUNTERBORE.

Fig. 20 shows a combination center drill and countersink of the solid type as at end *A*, Fig. 19, and in addition a counterboring lip as at *C* for rounding the corners of the countersink. Combination countersinks of this type are used for centering mandrels, milling machine arbors and any other work that is mounted and remounted on centers frequently. Their use also facilitates the squaring of work.

40. Hand method of finding the center, drilling and countersinking. Figs. 21, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26.

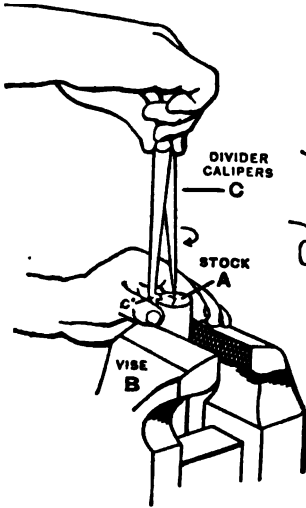


FIG. 21. — LOCATING CENTER OF STOCK WITH DIVIDER CALIPERS.

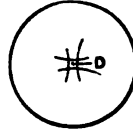


FIG. 22. — DIAGRAM OF APPROXIMATE CENTER.

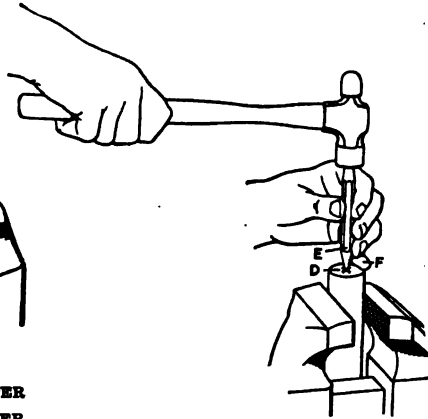


FIG. 23. — CENTER PUNCHING.

### SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS

I. Grip stock *A*, Fig. 21, in vise *B*. Smooth ends with file and rub chalk on ends.

II. Describe arcs with divider calipers *C* (shoulder *C'* placed on edge of stock) from four points with radius equal to about one-half diameter, as at Fig. 22.

III. Locate center *D*, Figs.

22, 23, by eye with center punch *E*, Fig. 23. Steady with finger *F* and strike with hammer as shown.

IV. Mount on bench or lathe centers, revolve and test its truth with chalk near each end. If too much out of true, set over center punch mark as at *G*, Fig. 24. Repeat if necessary.

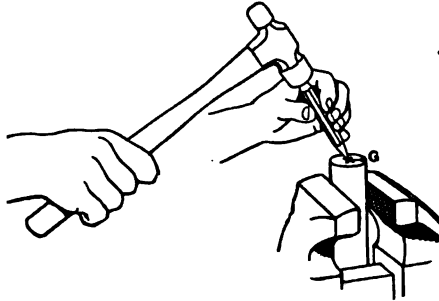


FIG. 24. — SETTING OVER PUNCH MARK.

### SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS *Concluded*

V. Enlarge center punch marks with heavier blows before drilling.

VI. Use speed lathe, 3d or 4th speed. Place drill *A* in drill chuck *B*, Fig. 25, and one end of stock *C* on dead center. Support with hand; start lathe, and drill, reverse work and drill the other end.

*Attention.*—Withdraw drill oc-

asionally to let out chips, and oil into hole. Drill cast iron or brass dry; on steel or wrought iron, use oil.

VII. 2d or 3d speed. Place countersink *D* in drill chuck *E*, Fig. 26, hold stock *F* as before, start lathe and countersink to desired size, reverse work and countersink the other end.

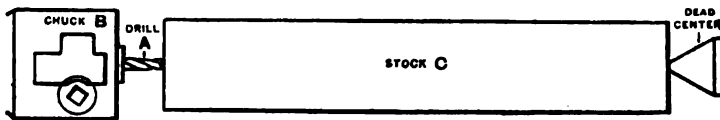


FIG. 25. — CENTER DRILLING, HAND METHOD.

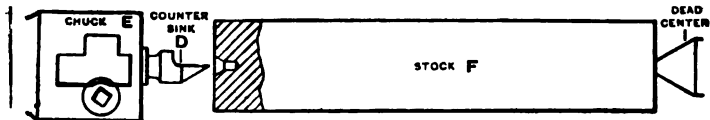
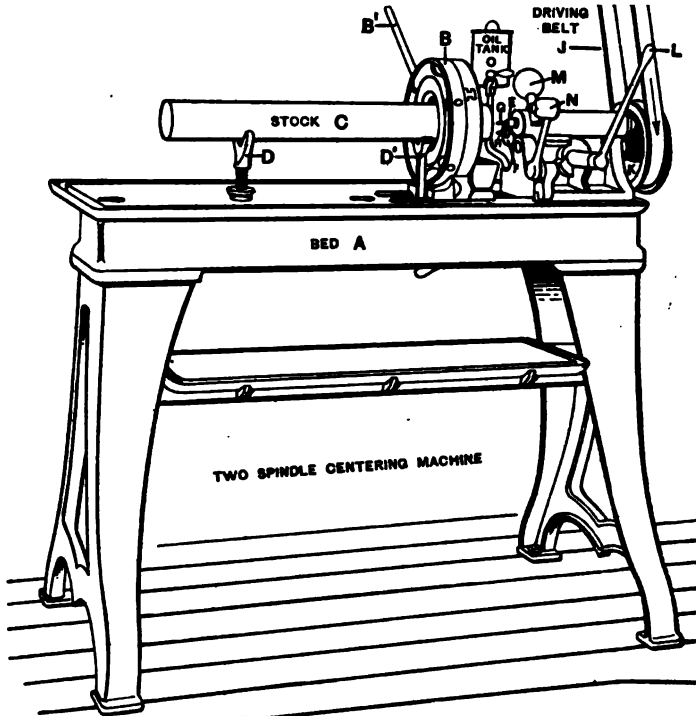


FIG. 26. COUNTERSINKING, HAND METHOD.

41. To remove or anneal broken center drill. — If the broken piece of drill does not drop out of hole with the aid of a scratch awl, strike stock with hammer; if it still remains, the work must be annealed, and the hole redrilled.

**42. Machine method of finding the center, drilling and countersinking.**—In Fig. 27 is a centering machine used to drill and countersink center holes accurately in shafts of any length.



**FIG. 27.—CENTER DRILLING AND COUNTERSINKING. MACHINE METHOD. CENTERING MACHINE SCHEDULE OF PARTS AND OPERATIONS**

<b>A</b> — Bed bolted to floor.	<b>K</b> — Gear mechanism which drives <b>E</b> and <b>F</b> at different speeds.
<b>B</b> and <b>B'</b> — Universal chuck and operating lever.	<b>L</b> — Handle operating both spindles.
<b>C</b> — Shows manner of holding stock to be centered.	<b>M</b> — Ball lever for tipping head to bring either spindle into alignment with stock.
<b>D</b> and <b>D'</b> — Supports.	<b>N</b> — Stock or work stop for uniform drilling.
<b>E</b> — Drill spindle.	<b>O</b> — Oil tank.
<b>F</b> — Countersink spindle.	
<b>G</b> — Center drill.	
<b>H</b> — Countersink.	
<b>J</b> — Driving belt.	



*Warning.*—The end of stock should be filed approximately flat or the drill will be liable to break.

**43. Straightening shafting, rods, and bolts.**—As soon as stock is centered, it is mounted on centers and revolved by hand and its eccentricity tested with chalk. If it is short or rigid, it may have to be straightened with a hammer on the anvil; but if slender, it may be straightened on lathe centers or with straightening press.

**44. To test and straighten centered shafts in a lathe.**—Unturned work that is centered is tested by rotating it in lathe and marking with chalk. For finished work, use copper tool held in tool post or a test indicator shown at *A*, Fig. 28.

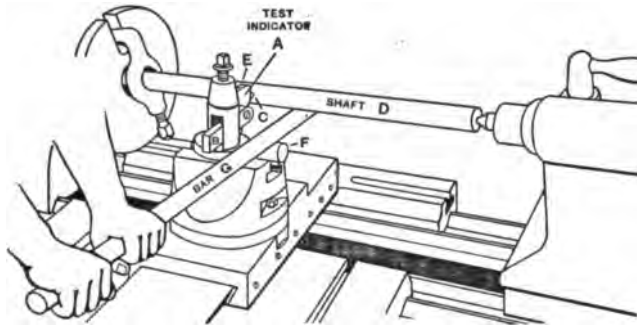


FIG. 28.—TESTING AND STRAIGHTENING SHAFT IN LATHE.

Shank *B* is held in tool post; the cross feed is fed inward until feeler *C* touches revolving shaft *D*, when pointer *E* will indicate error in thousandths of an inch. With piece *F* for fulcrum and bar *G*, the shaft is straightened. Sometimes it

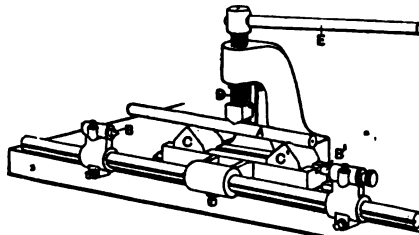


FIG. 29.—STRAIGHTENING SHAFT WITH STRAIGHTENING PRESS.

is necessary to peen shaft by a few light blows of hammer on upper side, struck while shaft is pressed upward.

45. **Straightening press, Fig. 29.**—If shaft *A* is centered, it is tested by mounting on centers *B* and *B'*; if not centered, it is tested by sighting along its length and marking with chalk or metal workers' crayon (soapstone). It is placed on supports *C* and *C'* with its high side under screw *D* and pressure is applied with screw *D* and lever *E*.

## CUTTING TOOLS

46. All cutting tools may be considered primarily as wedges driven into the material to separate it. A thin-edge tool cuts more easily, because it generates less friction, distorts the chips less and gives a greater freedom to their removal. The edge must be thick enough to carry a heavy cut at a suitable speed, and have a point of sufficient width to stand the heat generated by friction. Excessive heat will soon destroy the point of the tool. This limits the cutting speeds. A portion of the heat is conducted away through the work to the air and from point of tool to body and to air by direct radiation, and on tenacious metal by the lubricant. See *Lubricants for Cutting Tools*, p. 148.

47. **Rake, clearance, and cutting angle defined.**—*Rake* is applied to angle of upper surface and *clearance* to angle of lower surface. The angle included between these surfaces is the *cutting angle*, or angle of keenness.

48. **Front rake, end clearance, and cutting angle.**—Fig. 30 is a side view of a square-nose tool partially cut by a plane giving a section *CAE*. Through point *A* lines *AB* and *AD* are drawn parallel and perpendicular to the base line *FG*. The front-rake angle is *BAC*, positive when below and negative when above *AB*.

The end-clearance angle is *EAD*. The cutting angle is *CAE*.

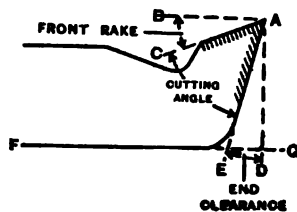


FIG. 30.—DIAGRAM OF FRONT RAKE, CLEARANCE, AND CUTTING ANGLE.

**49. Side rake, side clearance, and cutting angle.** — Fig. 31 is an end view of a right-side tool partially cut by a plane,

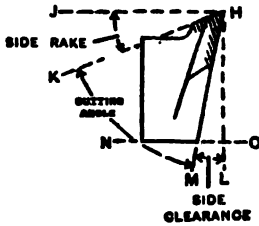


FIG. 31.—DIAGRAM OF SIDE RAKE, SIDE CLEARANCE, AND CUTTING ANGLE.

giving section  $KHM$ . Through point  $H$  lines  $HJ$  and  $HL$  are drawn parallel and perpendicular to the base of tool  $NO$ . The side-rake angle is  $JHK$ . The side-clearance angle  $MHL$ . The cutting angle is  $KHM$ .

**50. The keenness of a cutting edge** is increased or decreased by increasing or decreasing the rake angle.

Cast iron may be cut successfully with a cutting angle of from  $60^\circ$  to  $75^\circ$ ; steel and wrought iron, with a cutting angle of from  $40^\circ$  to  $50^\circ$ . See Brass Finishing, pp. 533-537.

**51. Front and side rake combined.** — For clearness the front rake and side rake are shown on separate tools, but some turning tools will cut more effectively if the top face is given a combination front and side rake in varying degrees to suit the nature of the work, as the diamond-point tool, Fig. 44.

**52. "Rough square" and "rough turn."** — Terms used to name the operations of removing the surplus material from a piece of metal by one or more roughing cuts preparatory to finishing.

**53. "Finish square" and "finish turn."** — Terms used to name the final finishing cuts which reduce any piece of metal to required size.

#### LATHE TOOLS FOR CAST IRON

**54. Lathe tools** are made of carbon steel and high-speed steel. See Holders and Cutters, pp. 306-309, 312, 314 and *Principles of Machine Work*.

**55. A chart of forged lathe tools** is shown in Fig. 32. For 10" to 12" lathes, they are made  $\frac{3}{4}$ "  $\times$   $\frac{3}{4}$ " in section and 7" in length; for 14" to 16" lathes,  $\frac{1}{2}$ "  $\times$  1" section, 9" in length. Other sizes in proportion. After being forged it is best to file them to proper shape before they are hardened.





































CHART OF FORGED LATHE TOOLS OUTSIDE TURNING AND THREADING					
RIGHT SIDE 	LEFT SIDE 	FACING OR FRONT 	ROUND NOSE 	RIGHT DIAMOND POINT 	LEFT DIAMOND POINT 
1	2	3	4	5	6
CUTTING OFF 	BENT CUTTING OFF 	SMALL ROUGHING 	LARGE ROUGHING 	ROUGHING GROUND FROM BAR 	CENTER TRUING 
7	8	9	10	11	12
V OR U.S.S. THREADING 	BENT V OR U.S.S. THREADING 	SQUARE THREADING 	BENT SQUARE THREADING 	29° THREADING 	BENT 29° THREADING 
13	14	15	16	17	18
BENT RIGHT SIDE 	BENT FACING OR FRONT 	BENT ROUND NOSE 	BENT RIGHT DIAMOND POINT 	RIGHT HALF DIAMOND POINT 	CENTERING 
19	20	21	22	23	24
SMALL FINISHING 	LARGE FINISHING 	CUTTING IN 	FORMING FOR CONCAVE 	FORMING FOR CONVEX 	FORMING IRREGULAR 
25	26	27	28	29	30
INSIDE TURNING AND THREADING					
BORING 	SQUARING 	GROOVING 	V OR U.S.S. THREADING 	SQUARE THREADING 	29° THREADING 
31	32	33	34	35	36

Fig. 32.

56. Right and left tools. — A *right* tool cuts from right to left and a *left* tool from left to right. Tools are understood to be *right* unless otherwise designated.

57. The angles of lathe cutting tools. — In order to select the proper tool and prepare the correct cutting angle, the student should consider the kind and, if possible, the hardness of the metal and whether for taking a roughing or finishing cut. If the metal is very hard, the tool must be ground to a less acute cutting angle, the cutting speed reduced, or both.

58. Height of tool and tool block. — Various devices are used to regulate the height of the point of the tool. On

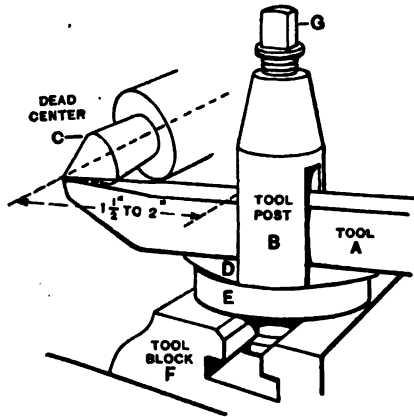


FIG. 33. — SETTING TOOL HEIGHT OF CENTERS — PLAIN REST.

small lathes the rise and fall rest operated by an elevating screw is perhaps the most common. Fig. 33 shows a plain rest. The point of tool A is adjusted in tool-post B to height of dead center C by a tilting action of circular wedge D in concave washer E and the shank clamped by screw G.

59. Round-nose tool. — Fig. 34 shows a small round-nose tool used for roughing and finishing cast iron or brass. Face *A* has no rake, but the sides have  $10^\circ$  clearance. The point is about  $\frac{1}{8}$ " thick. *B* is the cutting edge and *CBD* the clearance angle. Too little clearance will cause the tool to ride on the work and too much will weaken the cutting edge. When dull, grind end *B* and a little on top *A*.

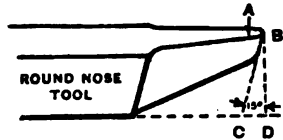


FIG. 34.—ROUND-NOSE TOOL FOR CAST IRON.

60. To square with round-nose tool. — The scale or skin on cast iron is very hard, and the round-nose tool is used to rough square ends and remove surplus stock, as in Fig. 35. Cast iron is machined dry. See Lubricants for Cutting Tools, p. 148.

The work is mounted on centers and the lathe run at proper speed; arrow 1 shows direction of rotation and arrow 2 direction of cut. The long feed handle is held firmly with one hand, while the tool is fed with the other operating the cross-feed handle.

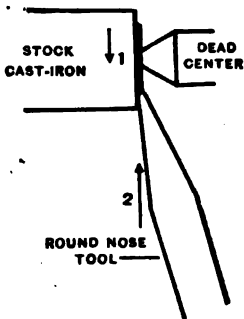


FIG. 35.—ROUGH SQUARING CAST IRON.

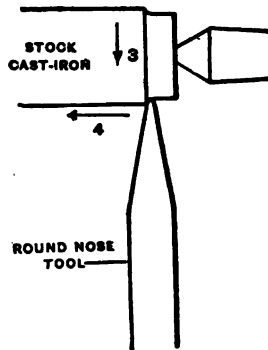


FIG. 36.—ROUGH TURNING CAST IRON.

61. To turn with round-nose tool. — For light rough turning on small diameters and for finish turning with fine feed, a round-nose tool may be used to advantage on cast iron, as in

Fig. 36. Arrow 3 shows direction of rotation of work and arrow 4 direction of cut. It is sometimes necessary to slant the tool to the left to turn close to a shoulder or dog, but the tool must be clamped extra firm or it may draw into the work and turn the diameter too small.

In Fig. 37 is shown a large round-nose tool for turning or facing large work. It is ground to shape from the bar and given side rake as at *A*, to give freedom of removal of chips.

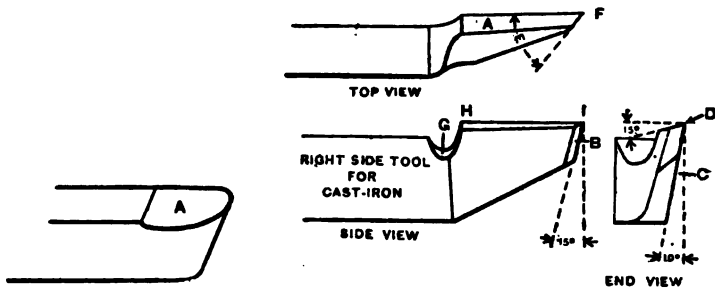


FIG. 37. — TOOL FOR HEAVY CUTS, ROUGH SQUARING OR TURNING CAST IRON.

FIG. 38. — SIDE TOOL FOR SQUARING CAST IRON.

62. Side tool. — For squaring or facing the ends of shafts, shoulders, etc., a right-side tool, Fig. 38, is used. The tool has end clearance *B*,  $15^\circ$ ; side clearance *C*,  $10^\circ$ ; and side rake *D*,  $15^\circ$ . The angle *E* for point *F* is  $60^\circ$ . It is forged hollow at *G*, to facilitate grinding. Grinding is done on top *A* and end *B* with a little on side *C*. Cutting edge *HI* should be kept horizontal.

Fig. 39 shows a right-side tool suitable for heavy work.

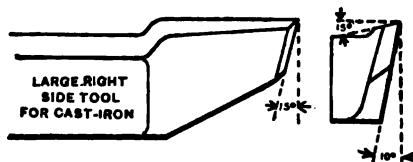


FIG. 39. — SIDE TOOL FOR HEAVY CUTS, SQUARING CAST IRON.

**63. To square an end with side tool.** — A side tool is set at the height of the center, as in Fig. 40. On diameters not larger than  $\frac{3}{4}$ " , edge *AB* is set at right angles to the axis of work, so as to square the whole end at one cut. For large diameters the point should "drag" a little, as at *A*, Fig. 41,

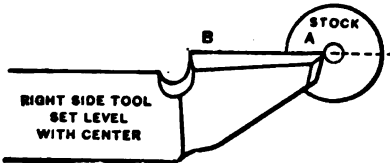


FIG. 40. — SIDE TOOL SET HEIGHT OF CENTERS.

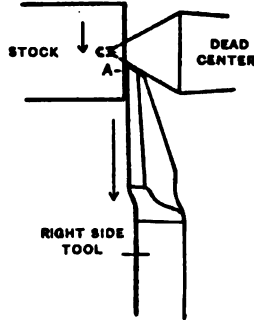


FIG. 41. — FINISH SQUARING CAST IRON.

for both roughing and finishing cuts. The point *A* being slightly the deepest, the tool when carried from center to circumference will produce a smooth surface, provided the tool is properly hardened, tempered, and ground, and the speed and feed are correct. For some purposes, especially in squaring compositions of brass, a side tool is fed inward.

**64. To remove burr around countersink.** — To remove the burr that remains around the countersink after taking the finishing cut, feed the point of tool up to surface of work and close to dead center; then unclamp binder and relieve dead center slightly with right hand and at same moment slightly feed tool inward with left hand, which will remove burr; then simultaneously feed tool outward and dead center back in place.

**65. Grooved dead center for squaring.** — The extra operation of removing burr around countersink when squaring may be avoided and time saved by using a grooved dead center *A*, Fig. 42. As point of tool *B* may be started or terminated in groove, no burr remains.



**66. To square a shoulder with side tool.** — To turn a portion of a piece of stock and square the shoulder, as in Fig. 43, it is marked as at *A*, then the cut taken to *B*, and the shoulder squared to mark *A*. The side tool is fed inward to touch the

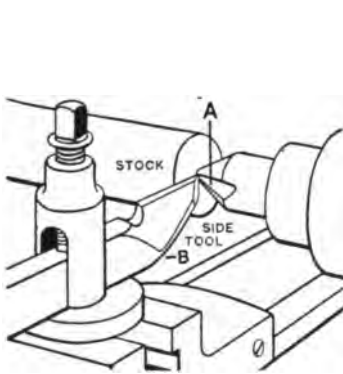


FIG. 42. — GROOVED DEAD CENTER FOR SQUARING.

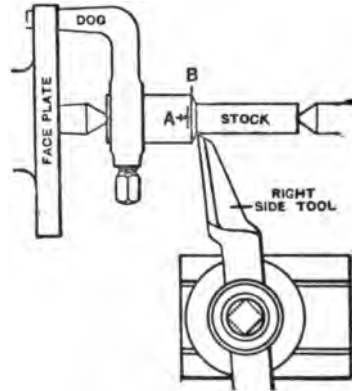


FIG. 43. — SQUARING SHOULDER.

stock. A moderately fast speed is used and the long feed is fed slowly with one hand, while the cross feed is held firmly with the other; when the cut is carried far enough, the long feed is held firmly and the cross feed fed outward.

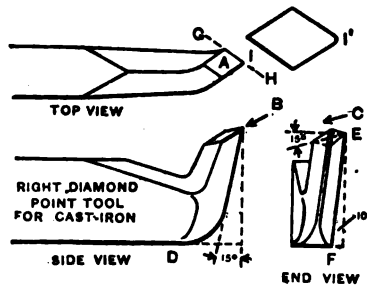


FIG. 44. — DIAMOND-POINT TOOL FOR CAST IRON.

**67. Right diamond-point tool.** — Fig. 44 shows a right diamond-point tool. *A* is the top face, which is given a com-

bination front and side rake, as indicated by arrows *B* and *C*. Side clearance *EF* is  $10^\circ$ , but for a very coarse feed should be more.

Cast iron of small diameter may be turned by tools without rake, but for large diameters and heavy cuts a combination side and front rake of about  $15^\circ$  is effective. The cutting is done by edge *GH* and point *I*, which should be rounded, as shown enlarged at *I'*, to strengthen it and produce a smoother cut. The tool is ground on the top face *A*, and if necessary, a little on the side faces.

68. Height of lathe turning tools in relation to axis of work.—The point of taper turning and threading tools must be set at

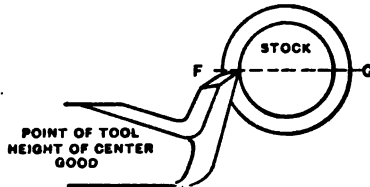


FIG. 45. — DIAMOND-POINT TOOL SET HEIGHT OF CENTERS. GOOD.

height of center, as at *FG*, Fig. 45. The student may apply this rule at all times and obtain good results.

69. Evil effects of setting a tool too low or too high. — A tool point set below the center *FG*, as exaggerated in Fig. 46, increases the clearance and decreases front rake, will not cut

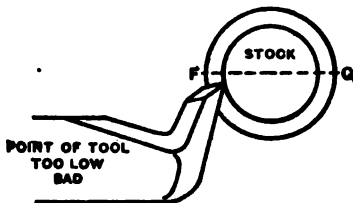


FIG. 46. — DIAMOND-POINT TOOL SET BELOW CENTERS. BAD.

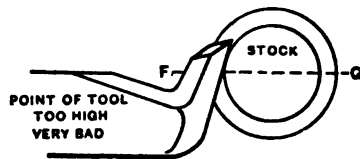


FIG. 47. — DIAMOND-POINT TOOL SET ABOVE CENTERS. BAD.

properly, and will dull quickly. A tool point too high above center *FG*, exaggerated in Fig. 47, reduces the clearance, will ride on the work and soon destroy itself by friction.

**70. Theoretical height of turning tools for straight work. —**

In Fig. 48 is shown the theoretically correct height to set the point of a tool, which increases its keenness and gives the greatest support to its cutting edge. This height is at the tangent point *A* of line *BC*, and is located by drawing line *DE* through center of work at  $90^\circ$  to line *BC*. As this gives no clearance, the tool in practice is set slightly below this point.

After a little training, one is able to set the tool point at the most suitable height in relation to center *FG* for any diameter of work.

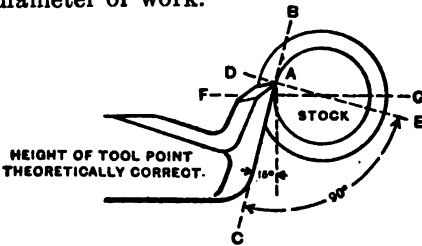


FIG. 48. — DIAMOND-POINT TOOL SET THEORETICAL HEIGHT. GOOD.

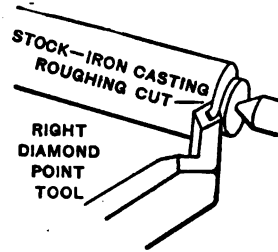


FIG. 49. — ROUGH TURNING CAST IRON, COARSE FEED.

**71. Rough turning cast iron. —**

Fig. 49 shows a diamond-point tool taking a roughing cut by power long feed on a cast-iron piece mounted on centers in an engine lathe. The chips from cast iron break off in small fragments.

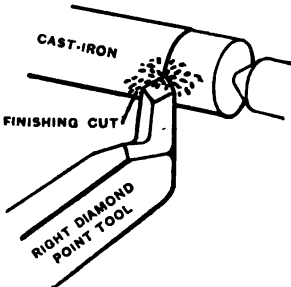


FIG. 50. — FINISH TURNING CAST IRON, FINE FEED.

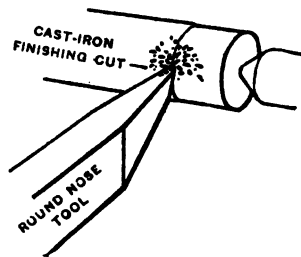


FIG. 51. — FINISH TURNING CAST IRON, FINE FEED.

**72. To finish turn cast iron. —**

Fig. 50 shows diamond-point and Fig. 51 round-nose tool taking finishing cuts ( $\frac{1}{8}$ "

with fine feed. Fig. 52 shows small square-nose tool and Fig. 53, large square-nose tool taking finishing cuts (.010") with coarse feeds.

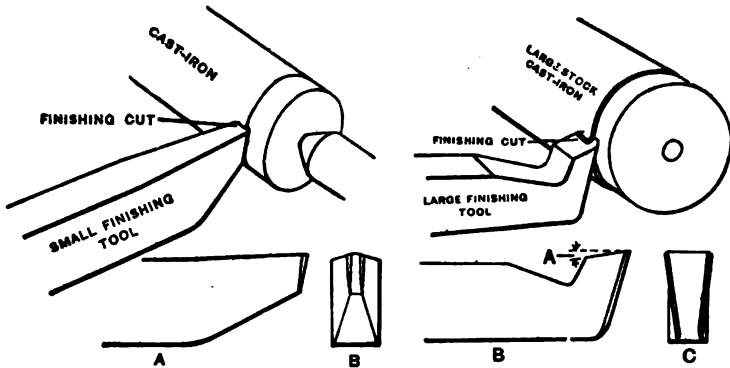


FIG. 52.—FINISH TURNING CAST IRON, MEDIUM FEED.

FIG. 53.—FINISH TURNING CAST IRON, COARSE FEED.

#### GRINDING LATHE TOOLS

73. To grind round-nose tool. — Hold at a suitable inclination to give clearance, and first grind the front round by

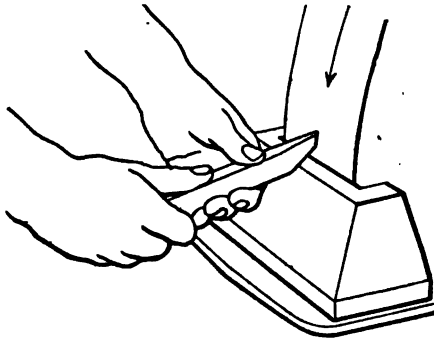


FIG. 54. — GRINDING FRONT OF ROUND-NOSE TOOL.

sweeping shank of tool in an arc of circle, rotating on heel, Fig. 54. Then grind top as in Figs. 55 or 56.

*Warning.*—Heavy pressure when grinding on a dry wheel or when the water supply is insufficient, will be liable to draw the temper and destroy the tool.

*Attention.*— For Wet Tool Grinders and Grindstones, see *Principles of Machine Work.*

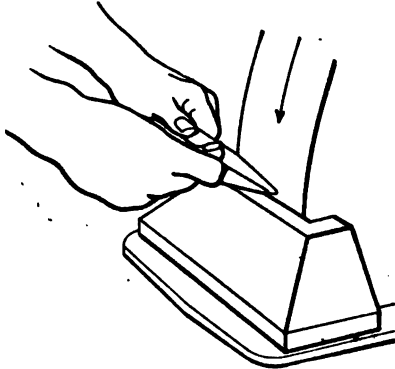


FIG. 55. — GRINDING TOP OF ROUND-NOSE TOOL.

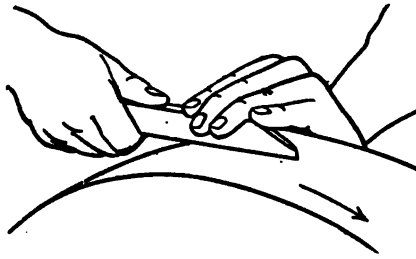


FIG. 56. — GRINDING TOP OF ROUND-NOSE TOOL ON GRINDSTONE

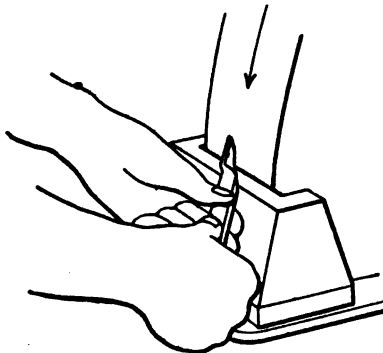


FIG. 57. — GRINDING POINT OF SIDE TOOL.

74. To grind right or left side tool. — First hold tool to give clearance and angle of point, and grind point, Fig. 57. Second, hold blade at inclination to give necessary side rake and grind top face, Fig. 58. Apply pressure and steady with

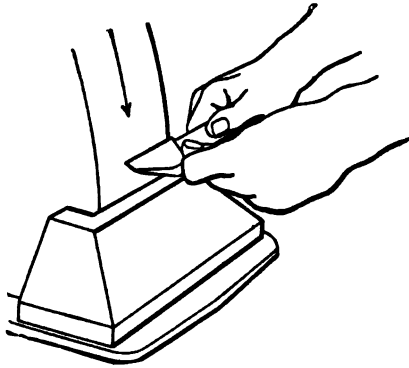


FIG. 58. — GRINDING TOP OF SIDE TOOL.

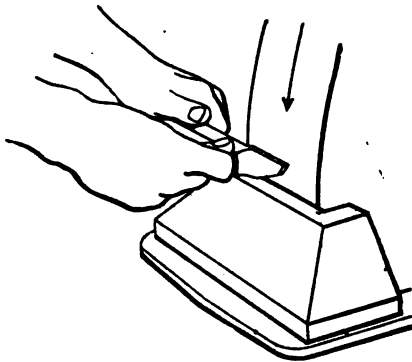


FIG. 59. — GRINDING SIDE FACE OF SIDE TOOL.

left hand. Third, grind side face, Fig. 59. Steady, and apply pressure with right hand.

75. To grind right or left diamond-point tool, Fig. 60. — Grind top face, applying pressure with left hand. Then hold at angle to give clearance (same for all metals). Steady, and apply pressure with right hand; grind one side, Fig. 61;

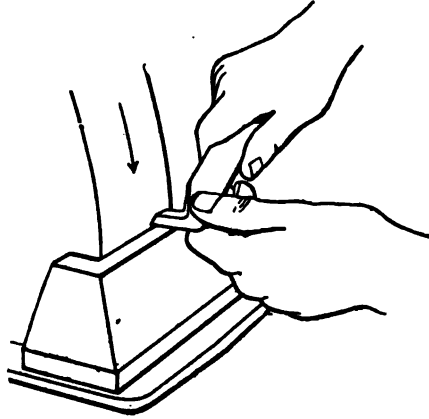


FIG. 60. — GRINDING TOP OF DIAMOND-POINT TOOL.

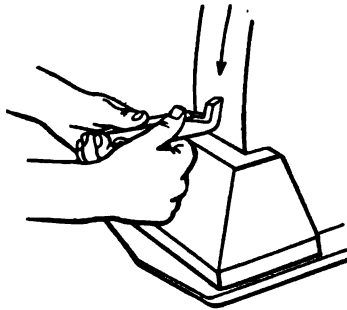


FIG. 61. — GRINDING SIDE FACE OF DIAMOND-POINT TOOL.

change hands and grind other side. Round point same as point of round-nose tool, Fig. 54.

76. To grind cutting-off or a Square-thread tool. — First file to shape and width, with proper clearance on sides and

end, harden and temper. Then grind on end and top face only. Grind end *A* as in Fig. 62. Steady, and apply

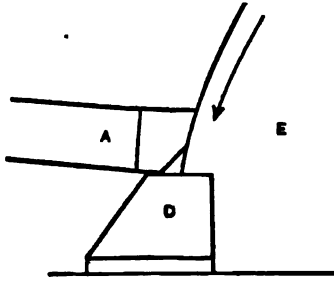


FIG. 62. — GRINDING END OF SQUARE-THREAD OR CUTTING-OFF TOOL.

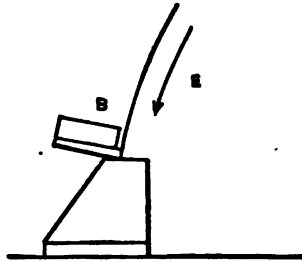


FIG. 63. — GRINDING TOP OF SQUARE-THREAD OR CUTTING-OFF TOOL.

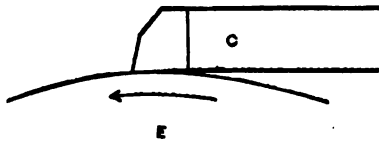


FIG. 64. — GRINDING TOP OF SQUARE-THREAD OR CUTTING-OFF TOOL ON GRINDSTONE.

pressure with left hand. Fig. 63, *B*, and Fig. 64, *C*, show two methods of grinding top face of any tool of this class.



77. To grind United States Standard or Sharp V-threading tool to fit a gage. — File tool to shape, harden and temper. Grind one bevel, as in Fig. 65. Clean gage and tool, and test angle.

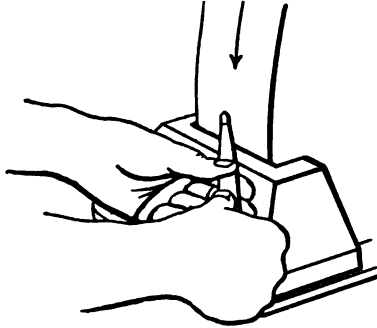


FIG. 65. — GRINDING SHARP V OR U. S. S. THREAD TOOL.

Grind second bevel; test with gage: If U. S. S. tool, grind point to fit proper notch in U. S. S. gage. Grind top face.

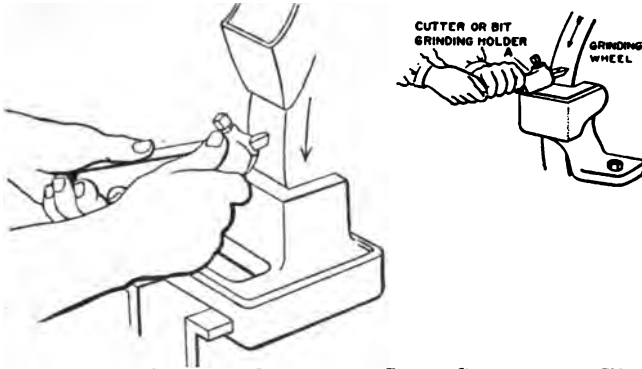


FIG. 66. — GRINDING HIGH-SPEED STEEL CUTTER ON A WET TOOL GRINDER.

78. To grind a carbon or high-speed steel removable cutter, clamp cutter in tool holder, as in Fig. 66, and grind principally on end and a little on top for rake. For other purposes, grind cutters similarly to forged tools.

*Warning.* — To avoid ruining holder by grinding into it when sharpening cutter, move cutter further out of holder, or use special cast-iron grinding holder as shown at A, Fig. 66.

79. To grind boring tool *A*, Fig. 67, use corner of wheel to grind rake *B* and face of wheel to grind point and clearance.



FIG. 67. — GRINDING BORING TOOL.

80. Universal tool grinder. — Machine method of grinding lathe and planer tools, and duplicating angles.

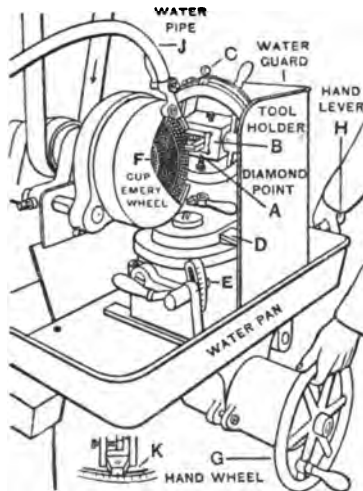


FIG. 68. — DUPLICATING ANGLES OF LATHE AND PLANER TOOLS.

Fig. 68 shows how to grind rake of a right diamond-point tool. Clamp diamond-point *A* in holder *B*. Set three graduated circles, *C*, *D*, and *E*, to readings obtained from chart (chart furnished with machine), or obtain setting by trial.

Move tool to radial face of cup-shaped emery wheel *F* with hand wheel *G*. Carry tool back and forth across wheel with lever *H*. Water is supplied from pipe *J*.

A fourth graduated circle on rear of tool holder, as shown in detail at *K*, is used in grinding bent tools.

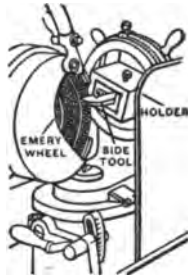


FIG. 69. — GRINDING SIDE TOOL.

To grind side faces, revolve holder *B* and set dials to give proper angles. To reduce area to be ground, tools may be forged in former blocks, or by hand to more clearance than desired. The method of grinding rake of a right side tool is

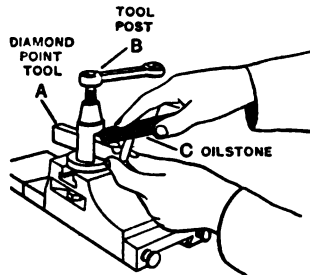


FIG. 70. — OILSTONING LATHE TOOLS.

shown in Fig. 69. When correct angles and settings of tools are obtained, they can be accurately duplicated.

Round-nose or circular forming tools are located centrally with a gage and ground by swinging on a vertical axis. The top is ground in the usual way.

81. To oilstone tools. — Use fine manufactured or hard Arkansas stone about  $4'' \times \frac{1}{4}'' \times \frac{1}{4}''$ . Clamp diamond-point tool *A* reversed in tool-post *B* and apply oilstone *C* as in Fig. 70, with long strokes. Also oilstone side faces. Use kerosene oil for India, lard or sperm oil for Arkansas, and sperm or lard oil for carborundum stones.

## SETTING AND USING OUTSIDE CALIPERS

82. To set outside calipers *A*, Fig. 71, by rule *B* to length *CD*, adjust nut *E* until lower point coincides with middle of line *D*. The width of lines on steel rules is from .002" to .004".

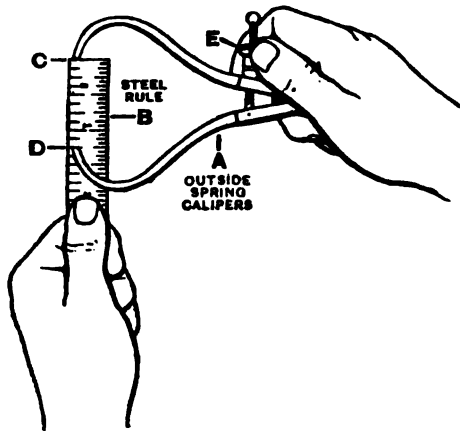


FIG. 71. — SETTING OUTSIDE CALIPERS.

*Warning.* — A student almost invariably sets outside calipers large and inside calipers small.

When extreme accuracy is required, such as turning work to be fitted, the calipers should be set by a standard plug gage or mandrel, or work of the desired diameter.

83. To measure diameter of lathe work with outside calipers. Fig. 72. — Set calipers *F* to size. Hold work *G* stationary and apply calipers at right angles to axis of work as *HI*, not as *JK* or *LM*. Turn work with tool *N* until calipers will pass over it with a light yet distinct touch, but

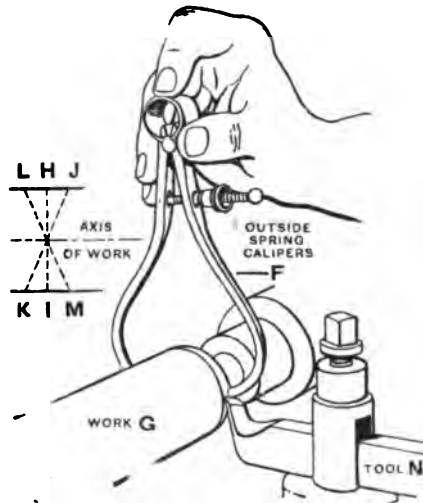


FIG. 72. — MEASURING WITH OUTSIDE CALIPERS.

not hard enough to spring calipers or to sustain their weight. Usually the calipers have to be passed over work a number of times to determine this touch.

84. To adjust the tool to turn work to a desired diameter. Fig. 72. — Move tool *N* inward at end of work to cut under scale, start lathe and feed tool to cut by hand, then throw in power long. feed and allow a travel of  $\frac{1}{8}$ " to  $\frac{1}{4}$ ". Stop lathe and test diameter with calipers. If correct, continue turning; but if too large, start lathe, release power long. feed and run tool back to end and again slightly advance tool, throw in long. feed and so on until correct diameter is obtained.

*Warning.* — Hold long. feed firmly with one hand while releasing power feed with the other.

85. To learn to measure accurately with outside calipers. — Set calipers to rule, turn work until calipers will pass over it with a delicate touch, then test with micrometer calipers.

86. To transfer a setting from one pair of calipers to another. Fig. 73. — Set inside calipers *A* to size of hole, then set outside calipers *B* by them. Bring lower points of both calipers in contact and steady as at *C*, then adjust point *D*

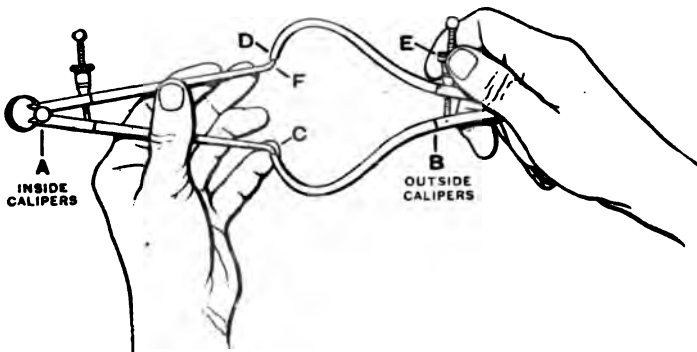


FIG. 73. — TRANSFERRING MEASUREMENT FROM INSIDE TO OUTSIDE CALIPERS.

by nut *E* until it touches point *F*. To transfer setting of outside to inside calipers, reverse calipers in hands and adjust.

#### CUTTING SPEEDS, CUT-METER, AND FEEDS

87. In turning, three things must be considered:

*First*, the cutting speed in feet per minute, which is controlled by the diameter of work and speed obtained from the table; it is calculated or may be directly measured by a cut-meter.

*Second*, the depth of cut, one-half the amount that the diameter is reduced.

*Third*, the feed or amount the tool advances per revolution of work.

88. The cut-meter, A, Fig. 74, may be used to measure cutting speed automatically, also speed of drills, milling cutters, etc. It consists of a case B, which contains the magnetic mechanism for registration. Scale C is calibrated to read the

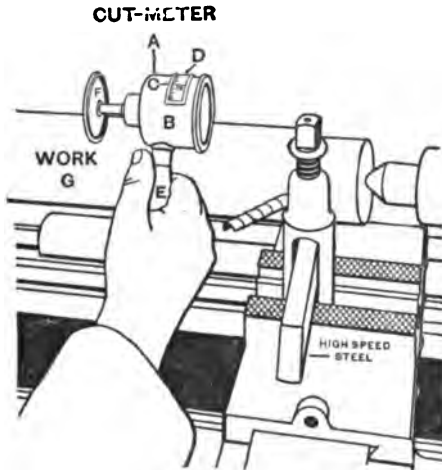


FIG. 74. — MEASURING CUTTING SPEED.

cutting speed in feet per minute; the 0 line is on glass D. To use the cut-meter, it is held by handle E and wheel F pressed against the revolving work G.

89. Surface speed attachment for speed indicator. — A rubber-tired wheel A, Fig. 75, 6" in circumference, is slipped over point of a speed indicator. See *Principles of Machine Work*. The wheel is pressed against work as at B, Fig. 75, and number of revolutions noted in a given time, as one minute. To get surface speed in feet, divide number of revolutions per minute by 2.

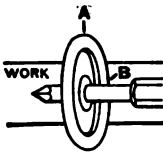


FIG. 75. — SURFACE SPEED ATTACHMENT FOR SPEED INDICATOR.

90. To find the lathe revolutions, given the cutting speed and diameter of the work: Multiply the cutting speed by 12 to reduce it to inches, then divide by the diameter of the work multiplied by 3.1416.

*Example.* — The work is 2" in diameter and it is desired to turn it at 35 feet per minute. How many lathe revolutions are necessary?

*Solution.* 
$$\frac{35 \times 12}{2 \times 3.1416} = 67 \text{ R.P.M.}$$

**91.** To find the cutting speed, given diameter of the work and lathe revolutions per minute: Multiply diameter of work by 3.1416 and by number of lathe revolutions, then divide by 12.

*Example.* — The work is 2" in diameter and makes 67 revolutions per minute in the lathe. What is the cutting speed?

*Solution.* 
$$\frac{2 \times 3.1416 \times 67}{12} = 35 \text{ feet.}$$

**92.** Eight or ten speeds are possible in an engine lathe. — Place the belt on step of cone that will give the speed nearest to that required.

TABLE OF LATHE CUTTING SPEEDS

MATERIALS.	SPEEDS FOR ROUGHING.	
	CARBON STEEL TOOLS.	HIGH-SPEED STEEL TOOLS.
Cast iron.....	30	60
Steel or wrought iron.....	25	50
Carbon steel, annealed.....	20	40
Brass composition.....	95	190

Speed for finishing is 50% to 100% higher than roughing speed.

Speed for filing (brass excepted) equals four times roughing speed.

Speed for filing brass equals three times roughing speed.

*Attention.* — Roughing cuts are not to reduce diameters more than  $\frac{1}{8}$ "; and finishing cuts, not more than  $\frac{1}{16}$ ". Rough-



ing feeds are not to be less than 17 revolutions per 1" tool travel, and finishing feeds are not to be less than 90 revolutions per 1" tool travel.

If the above is exceeded, a less speed than that given in table must be used.

For large diameters, use reduced speed, as the strain on the tool is greater.

**93. Cutting feeds.** — Lathes with belt feed are limited to three changes; lathes with gear feed are not limited.

For heavy work, coarse feed is about 17 lathe revolutions to 1" of tool travel.

For average work, medium feed is about 38 lathe revolutions to 1" of tool travel.

For average work, fine feed is about 90 lathe revolutions to 1" of tool travel.

For tool making, a feed of 200 revolutions is often used.

*Attention.* — A student may use finer feeds until he acquires some experience; about 80 to 1" for roughing and 140 to 1" for finishing.

#### LUBRICANTS FOR CUTTING TOOLS

**94. Some metals are machined dry, others require a lubricant.** — Cast iron, with about two exceptions, as tapping and polishing, must be machined dry. Steel and wrought iron, with two exceptions, as machining with side or diamond-point tool (and these are optional), must be machined with a lubricant. A neglect of this may cause destruction of both tool and work. See Table of Lubricants, p. 148.

A lubricant on tenacious metal prevents excessive friction and conducts away heat, thus preserving the point of the tool and producing a smooth finish on the work. It also helps to carry away the chips.

**Oil.** — "Oil" in tables means lard oil or some oil mixture. Mixtures and compounds are often used as substitutes because of cheapness.

*Note.* — Never use mineral oils for cutting tools.

95. TABLE OF LUBRICANTS FOR CUTTING TOOLS.

OPERATIONS.	METALS.						
	CAST IRON	MACHINE STEEL OR WROUGHT IRON.	CARBON OR HIGH-SPEED STEEL.	COPPER.	BRASS OR BRONZE.*	ALUMINUM.	LEAD, BABBITT.
Turning. Boring.	Dry.	Dry, oil or soda water.	Dry or oil.	Milk.	Dry.	Kerosene or turpentine.	Dry.
Cutting off. Grooving.	Dry.	Oil or soda water.	Oil or soda water.	Milk.	Dry.	Kerosene or turpentine.	Dry.
Screw cutting.	Dry.	Oil.	Oil.	Milk.	Dry.	Kerosene or turpentine.	Dry.
Threading with dies.	Dry.	Oil.	Oil.	Milk.	Dry.	Kerosene or turpentine.	Oil.
Tapping.	Oil.	Oil.	Oil.				
Drilling. Counter-sinking.	Dry. Dry.	Oil or soda water.	Oil or soda water.	Milk.	Dry.	Kerosene or turpentine.	Oil.
Counter-boring.	Dry.	Oil or soda water.	Oil or soda water.	Milk.	Dry.	Kerosene or turpentine.	Oil.
Chucking.	Dry.	Oil or soda water.	Oil or soda water.	Milk.	Dry.	Kerosene or turpentine.	Dry.
Reaming.	Dry.	Oil.	Oil.	Milk.	Dry.	Kerosene or turpentine.	Dry.
Milling.	Dry.	Oil, soap mixture, or soda water.	Oil, soap mixture, or soda water.	Milk.	Dry.	Kerosene or turpentine.	Dry.
Planing.	Dry.	Dry, oil or soda water.	Dry or oil.	Milk.	Dry.	Kerosene or turpentine.	Dry.
Nurling.	Oil.	Oil.	Oil.	Milk.	Oil.	Kerosene or turpentine.	Dry.
Filing.	Dry.	Dry or oil.	Dry or oil.	Dry or milk.	Dry.	Kerosene or turpentine.	Oil.
Polishing with emery cloth.	Oil.	Oil.	Oil.	Oil.	Oil.	Oil.	Oil.

\* *Warning.* — When tapping or using a die on rolled brass (not cast brass), it is often necessary to use lard oil to prevent clogging and ruining tap or die.

**Soda water** (sal soda dissolved in water) is useful in machining steel or wrought iron, and produces what is known as a water finish.

**Soap mixture.** —  $\frac{1}{2}$  lb. sal soda,  $\frac{1}{2}$  pt. lard oil,  $\frac{1}{2}$  pt. soft soap, 10 qts. water; boil one-half hour. This is good for milling and drilling steel and wrought iron.

**96. Drilling extra hard steel such as unannealed carbon steel.** — Use a flat drill, with turpentine or kerosene oil as a lubricant.

**97. Drilling glass.** — Use a very hard flat drill, scratch glass with an old file to remove polish and use turpentine as a lubricant. Drill part way through, then turn over and finish from the other side to avoid chipping surface.

#### INSPECTING AND MEASURING MATERIAL (STOCK)

**98. Inspecting and measuring material (stock).** — On receiving a piece of stock, inspect it for imperfections, as blowholes in castings, flaws (cold short) in forging or bars. Stock for work to be hardened must be carbon or high-speed steel. To distinguish high-grade machine steel from tool steel, a trial piece may be tested by the hardening process.

Measure piece to see if it is large enough to finish to dimensions given on the drawing. If the piece be a rough casting or forging, there should be at least  $\frac{1}{8}$ " surplus stock; if smooth,  $\frac{1}{16}$ ".

When requested to finish work begun by another, inspect and measure it, and make a note of its condition, that you may not be held responsible for errors not your own.

**99. Rough turn all over before finishing.** — As metals alter in form when the skin or outside is removed, when possible remove the skin from all surfaces before finishing any part. An exception is made in some classes of lathe work, as a shaft which is squared to exact length before the diameter is roughed out.

**100. When and how to oil the bearings of machine tools.** — All bearings must be regularly oiled. Use good lubricating oil, — machine oil, not lard oil. If the oil does not sink into the oil holes, they should be cleared out. A few drops of oil in each bearing is enough, Fig. 76. Plane bearings, as the



FIG. 76. — OILING SPINDLE OF A MACHINE.



FIG. 77. — OILING WAYS OF A MACHINE.

ways of a lathe, should be wiped with waste before oiling and the oil distributed with the fingers, Fig. 77. Oil twice a day. All automatic oilers should be filled periodically.

**101. Treatment when bearings rough up and machine stops from lack of oil or too close adjustment.** — First force in a liberal quantity of oil; if this does not release the bearing, force in naphtha or benzine and then more oil; if the latter is not effective, take the bearing apart and smooth the rough places on the journal by filing and those in the box by scraping or filing. Then wipe clean, oil freely, and put bearing together and adjust to run loosely for a while.

**102. To prevent rusting or corroding of machine or finished work,** coat with vaseline or thin oil. When tools or machines are not in use, coat with a thick oil. The rust should be removed from a surface before it is oiled or rusting will continue.

**103. Putting on and pushing off belts.** — An ordinary overhead belt is thrown off by pressing with a pole against the edge of the belt at the receiving side of driving pulley. This belt may be replaced by arranging belt upon driven pulley and then pushing belt upon driving pulley by starting it at the

receiving side with a pole that has a bent piece of iron fastened to its end. For large belts, a ladder must be used and the belt pushed on by hand. A stout cord may be used to pull on large belts.

**104. To change to higher speed.** — Start lathe, push belt off step of head cone with right hand. Press lightly against inside of down-running belt with either hand to take up slack and with other hand push the up-running side of belt to the desired step on counter cone, then with left hand press belt on to head cone.

**105. To change to lower speed.** — If belt is on largest step of counter cone, with left hand pull it on to desired step, then with same hand press belt on to corresponding step of head cone. If, however, belt is not on largest step, first push it off step of head cone with right hand.

*Attention.* — Keep fingers straight and stiff and do not try to hold belt when pushing on or off.

*Warning.* — To prevent accidents, do not wear loose sleeves or be careless in your actions near running belts, gears, milling cutters, etc.

# ADVANCED MACHINE WORK

## SECTION 2

### LATHE WORK

**Time Element and Schedule of Operations. Centering, Squaring, and Straight Turning. Filing Lathe Work. Micrometer and Vernier Callipers. Dimension-Limit System. Fits in Machine Construction with Tables of Allowances. Standard and Limit Gages. Taper Turning and Fitting. Straight Turning and Fitting.**

#### TIME ELEMENT AND SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS

**1. Schedules of operations.** — The problems in this book are presented in schedule form. Each operation is given in its logical order together with machines, tools, speeds, feeds, and time. Such schedules are the fundamental and necessary bases of all efficiency systems. They make teaching systematic; learning rapid; and promote industrial efficiency.

A multiple schedule for two or more duplicate pieces is the same as for a single piece, except that each operation is performed on all pieces before beginning the next.

**2. The time element** in the schedules includes grinding of tools, and is the average time required by an experienced workman for completing the given problem. Students and other beginners will take from 50% to 100% more time on the introductory problems, and as they become familiar with the tools and machines this excess time is reduced to 25% or less, depending on the ability of the student and the efficiency of the equipment and instruction.

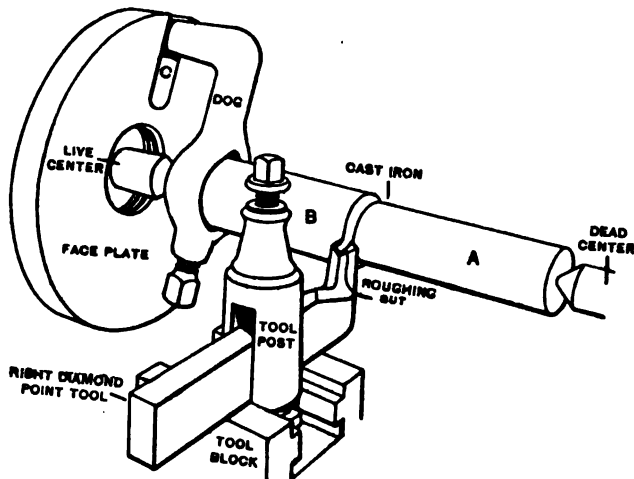
**3. The student may begin lathe work by turning soft cast iron,** as it machines more easily than steel or wrought iron; the cutting angles of the tools are easy to shape, and the material is not expensive. See pp. 102, 203-205.

**4. To mount work on lathe centers.** — Clean center holes and centers with waste. Fasten dog on work (see p. 118), mount on live center. With left hand under end of work,

hold work in line with dead center; move and clamp foot-stock width of tool block from end of work. Oil dead center. With the little finger of left hand to guide the dead center into center hole, screw out spindle with the right hand until there is no end movement. To test adjustment, move tail of dog back and forth; when right a slight resistance is felt by the hand; clamp binder.

*Warning.* — When taking a heavy cut or rotating work at a high speed, the work will heat and expand and thus bind on the centers. The student should relieve and oil the dead center occasionally. If this is neglected, a "hot center" will result, which usually destroys both work and center.

5. To turn work to one diameter from end to end. — First, set tool to take roughing cut and turn approximately one-half the length (Fig. 1). Stop feed, then stop lathe.



[ FIG. 1. — ROUGH TURNING SHAFT FROM END TO END, FIRST HALF.

Take work out of lathe and run carriage back by hand to dead center. Do not disturb cross feed. Fasten dog on turned end  $A'$ , Fig. 2, with a piece of copper  $D$  under set

screw to avoid scarring work. Again mount work on centers and turn off half marked  $B'$ . Re grind tool and follow same method with finishing cut.

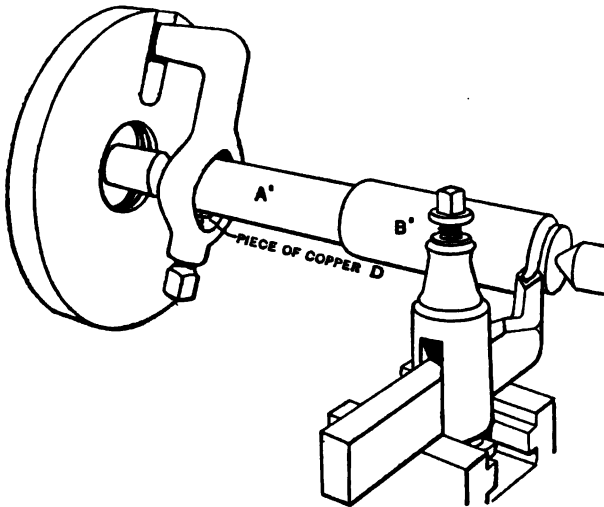


FIG. 2.—ROUGH TURNING SHAFT FROM END TO END, SECOND HALF. CENTERING, SQUARING AND STRAIGHT TURNING  
6. To center, square and turn straight. See Figs. 3 and 4.

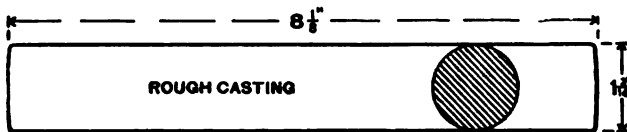


FIG. 3.

**Specifications:** Material, iron casting  $\frac{1}{4}$ " large; weight, 2 lb. 8 oz., Fig. 3, free from visible defects.

Hardness, 28 to 32 (scleroscope).

Oil bearings of lathe with machine oil.

True live center. Set dead center in approximate alignment, see p. 116. Carbon-steel cutting tools. See *Exception*, p. 205.

**Time:** Study drawing and schedule in advance, 10 min.—  
Oil lathe, 4 min.—Hand center and square, 19 min.—  
Rough and finish turn, 23 min.—Clean lathe, 3 min.—  
Total, 59 min. (Machine center and square, 17 min.)



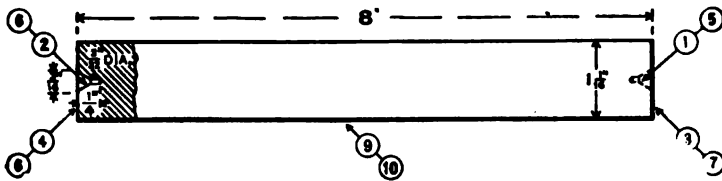


FIG. 4.—SCHEDULE DRAWING OF CENTERING, SQUARING AND STRAIGHT TURNING.

### SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS, MACHINES AND TOOLS

OPERATIONS.	MACHINES, SPEEDS, FEEDS.	TOOLS.
Snag. Center by hand method, pp. 121, 122. Center holes $\frac{1}{16}$ " diameter, (1), (2).	Speed lathe 8" to 12". 3d or 4th speed, or 1400 R.P.M.*; countersink 3d speed or 700 R.P.M.	Vise, hammer, chisel, file, chalk, dividers or divider calipers, center punch, $\frac{1}{32}$ " drill, 60° countersink, rule.
Mount and adjust on centers. Rough square (3), round nose inward, heavy cut, and side tool outward, light cuts. Reverse work on centers and repeat on (4). Test length with calipers. Take light cuts outward on (4) until work measures $8'' + \frac{1}{16}''$ . Remove dog. Recenter to $\frac{1}{16}''$ , (5), (6).....	Engine lathe, 12" to 16". 2d speed, or 40 F.P.M.† Hand feed.	Dog, round-nose tool, side tool 15° rake, calipers, 12" steel rule.
Regrind and oilstone tool and finish square (7) one cut. Reverse work on centers and repeat on (8). Test length with calipers. Take light cuts on (8) until work measures 8". To remove burr around countersinks, see p. 131. Test flatness of end with steel rule.	Speed lathe. Engine lathe. 3d speed, or 60 F.P.M. Hand feed.	Drill, countersink. Side tool, 15° rake, calipers, rule.
Rough turn to $1\frac{1}{16}'' + \frac{1}{16}''$ , one cut. See Figs. 1, 2, (9). Test with calipers at ends and middle.	1st or 2d speed, or 25 to 40 F.P.M. Medium power feed—80 to 1"‡	Copper under set screw of dog, diamond-point tool, 15° rake, small calipers, 3" steel rule.
Regrind and oilstone tools. Finish turn to $1\frac{1}{16}''$ , p. 134, (10) one cut. Test with micrometer calipers, at both ends and middle. Limit allowed .001". Stamp name on end.	3d speed, or 55 F.P.M. Fine power feed—140 to 1".	Diamond-point tool, 15° rake, or round-nose tool, calipers, rule micrometer. Steel name stamp, machinists' hammer, vise, copper jaws
Clean lathe.		Brush and waste.

\* R.P.M. = revolutions per minute.

† F.P.M. = feet per minute.

‡ 80 to 1" = 80 revolutions of work to 1" of tool travel.

**Warning.**— Do not recenter work after the diameter has been turned because the center reamer cuts unevenly and throws the work out of true.

**Attention.**— If necessary, when roughing the tool may be removed and reground, but in finishing it should be prepared to carry its cut without regrinding.

**Note.**— When squaring, hold long. feed handle firmly with one hand while operating cross feed handle with the other.

**Caution.**— As a heavy cut may draw the tool inward, caliper occasionally and readjust tool, if need be, to avoid roughing diameter too small.

**Exception.**— If a schedule says "carbon-steel cutting tools" and it is desired to change to "high-speed steel or stellite," the cutting speed may be increased from 50% to 100%.

If a schedule says "high-speed steel or stellite cutting tools" and it is desired to change to "carbon-steel" the cutting speed *must* be reduced 25% to 50%.

#### FILING LATHE WORK

**7. Lathe work** is filed to remove tool marks, to make a fit, to produce an exact diameter, and also to prepare the surface for polishing. A small amount of filing improves the condition of the work; excessive or careless filing will destroy its truth.

**8. Mill files** are best for lathe work, files single-cut (sometimes called floats), as at *C*, Fig. 5. A mill bastard is useful for a large variety of lathe filing, but a mill 2d cut is only used for finer classes of work. See *Principles of Machine Work*.

**9. Speed for filing.**— If work is revolved at too high a speed, the file will not bite, but will simply glaze the work and rapidly destroy itself. As a rule, in filing steel and cast iron the lathe may be run at a speed between four and five times faster than that used in taking the roughing cut. Cast iron must be filed dry. See Table of Cutting Speeds, p. 147. On brass, the rule is from two to three times the roughing speed.

On work  $1\frac{1}{2}$ " and less in diameter, run engine lathe at its fastest speed. Small work  $\frac{1}{2}$ " and less may be filed in the speed lathe.

*Warning.* — To avoid a hot center when filing, loosen and oil the dead center before and occasionally after increasing the speed.

10. To hold and to use a file on lathe work. — The work *A*, Fig. 5, is revolved at a moderately fast speed in the direction of arrow *B*. Good results are obtained by moving mill file *C* at right angles to the work as at *D*. If the work to be filed (*A'*) is a tenacious metal such as machine steel or wrought iron, hold file at an angle of about  $10^\circ$  as at *C'* but move it at right angles as at *D'* which increases the cutting angle from  $23^\circ$  to  $33^\circ$ . The stroke should be long but slower

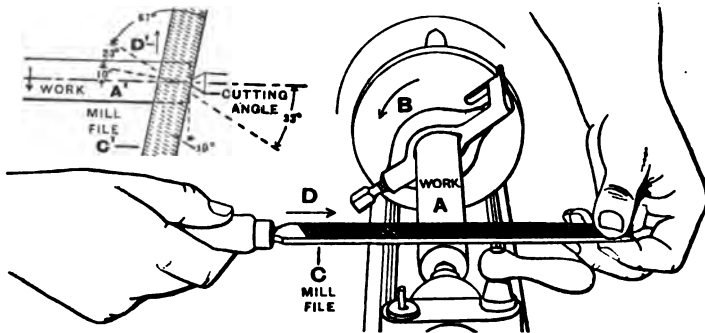


FIG. 5. — FILING IN LATHE.

than in vise work in order that the work may make a number of revolutions during each stroke; the pressure should be lighter, as the number of teeth in contact are fewer.

*Note.* — A file may be moved slightly from left to right; that is, against its tendency to glide on its forward stroke, but not from right to left as it may chatter.

*Attention.* — Clean the file frequently with a file card to remove chips, or they will scratch the work.

11. To finish radial or side surfaces. — A hand file is sometimes used, but preferably use a scraper. See p. 425.

12. Round and half-round files for lathe work. — Fillets and concave surfaces are generally made with forming tools and scraped with hand tools. To polish such surfaces, they may be prepared by filing with round or half-round files, giving the file on its forward stroke a slight sweep following the curve. See Lubricants for Cutting Tools, p. 148.

MICROMETER CALIPERS

13. The micrometer principle consists of a combination of an accurate screw and graduated head or nut by which fine measurements and adjustments may be obtained. It is applied to feed screws of lathes, planers, milling and grinding machines, etc., and to instruments of precision, as the micrometer caliper, Fig. 6, which consists of frame A and barrel B;

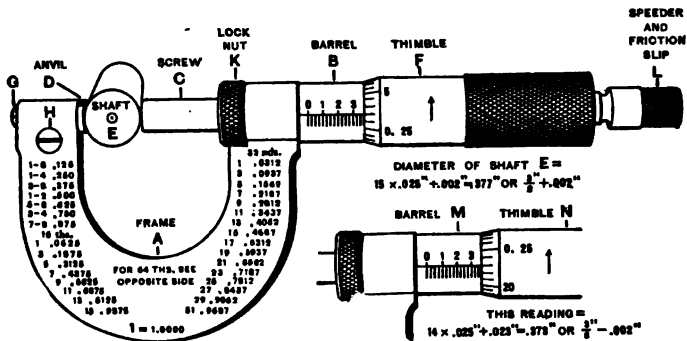


FIG. 6. — MEASURING WITH MICROMETER CALIPER.

in the end of the barrel is a fixed nut through which passes screw C. The caliper is graduated to read in thousandths of an inch, but half, quarter, and tenths of thousandths may be readily estimated.

14. To measure work with micrometer. — Place shaft E between the faces. Rotate thimble F with thumb and finger until a light but distinct contact is obtained. Prove results by moving micrometer up and down on shaft E, or by passing work between micrometer anvil D and screw C with a slight rotative motion.

15. **To read micrometer.** — Screw *C* has 40 threads to the inch; the graduations on barrel *B* are 40 to the inch. One revolution of the screw opens the caliper one-fortieth of an inch, or .025". Thimble *F* is graduated into twenty-five parts. Each division when passing the axial line on barrel indicates one-twenty-fifth of one-fortieth of an inch ( $\frac{1}{25} \times \frac{1}{40} = \frac{1}{1000}$ ").

**Reading.** — Every fourth division on the barrel is figured 1, 2, 3, 4, etc., and may be read 0.100", 0.200", etc.; the figure 3 may be read 0.300" and the three additional divisions as 0.075", making 0.375" on barrel. Then add the two divisions or 0.002" on the thimble, which makes the complete measurement 0.377".

**Attention.** — A student occasionally reads the example at *MN* backward from zero and obtains .377" instead of .373".

16. **Adjusting the anvil to correct error.** — If zero lines do not coincide when anvil and screw are clean and in contact, adjust anvil *D* by screw *G*, first loosening screw *H*.

17. Lock nut *K* may be used to clamp the screw and preserve any setting.

18. Speeder and friction slip consists of a ratchet and pawl used as a speeder for the rapid movement of screw, and as a friction slip so that the same pressure of contact may be obtained at every reading.

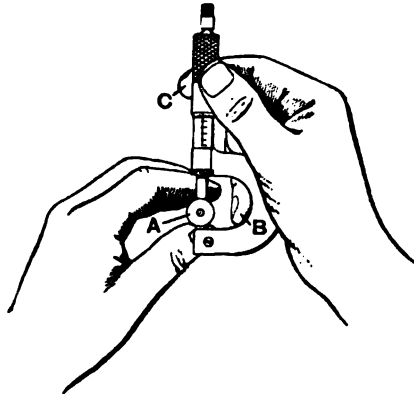


FIG. 7. — MEASURING WORK WITH MICROMETER HELD WITH ONE HAND.

19. A one-hand method of measuring with a micrometer. Fig. 7. — Hold work *A* with left hand and insert third finger of right hand into frame to steady caliper *B*. Adjust screw *C* to work by rotating the thimble with the thumb and first finger.

20. To measure work in a lathe with micrometer. Fig. 8. — Hold frame *A* over work *B* and operate thimble *C*.

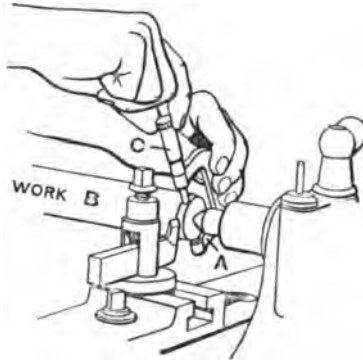


FIG. 8. — MEASURING WORK IN THE LATHE WITH MICROMETER.

21. Large micrometer and stand. — Micrometer stand *A*, in Fig. 9, on bench *B*, not only protects micrometer *C* from

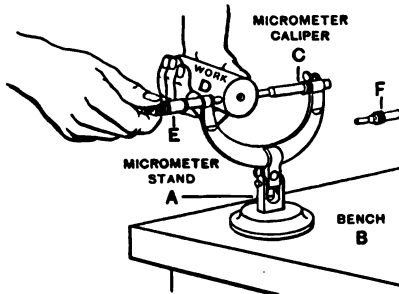


FIG. 9. — MEASURING WORK ON BENCH WITH MICROMETER.

injury, but avoids expansion due to the heat of the hand. To measure, hold work *D* as shown. This micrometer is of

the interchangeable anvil type. One of the shorter anvils is shown at *F*.

Standard end-measuring rods and disks are supplied with micrometers measuring more than one inch, to test their accuracy.

22. Decimal equivalents of common fractions. — As micrometers are graduated to read decimally, the common fractions and their decimal equivalents are stamped on the frames. A student should memorize the decimal equivalents of such fractions as  $\frac{1}{2}$ ",  $\frac{1}{4}$ ",  $\frac{1}{8}$ ",  $\frac{1}{16}$ ",  $\frac{1}{32}$ ", and  $\frac{1}{64}$ ".

TABLE OF COMMON FRACTIONS AND DECIMAL EQUIVALENTS

.....	$\frac{1}{64}$			.015625	.....	$\frac{11}{16}$			.515625
.....	$\frac{1}{32}$			.03125	.....	$\frac{3}{4}$			.53125
.....	$\frac{1}{16}$			.046875	.....	$\frac{5}{8}$			.546875
.....	$\frac{1}{8}$		$\frac{1}{16}$	.0625	.....			$\frac{7}{16}$	.5625
.....	$\frac{1}{4}$		$\frac{1}{8}$	.078125	.....	$\frac{1}{2}$			.578125
.....	$\frac{3}{8}$		$\frac{1}{4}$	.09375	.....	$\frac{3}{4}$		$\frac{1}{2}$	.59375
.....	$\frac{1}{2}$		$\frac{1}{2}$	.109375	.....	$\frac{5}{8}$			.609375
.....	$\frac{5}{8}$		$\frac{3}{4}$	.125	.....	$\frac{3}{2}$		$\frac{3}{8}$	.625
.....	$\frac{3}{4}$		$\frac{7}{8}$	.140625	.....	$\frac{7}{4}$			.640625
.....	$\frac{7}{8}$		$\frac{15}{16}$	.15625	.....	$\frac{15}{8}$			.65625
.....	$\frac{15}{16}$		$\frac{15}{8}$	.171875	.....	$\frac{15}{4}$			.671875
.....	$\frac{15}{8}$		$\frac{7}{4}$	.1875	.....	$\frac{15}{2}$		$\frac{1}{16}$	.6875
.....	$\frac{7}{4}$		$\frac{15}{4}$	.203125	.....	$\frac{15}{1}$			.703125
.....	$\frac{15}{4}$		$\frac{7}{2}$	.21875	.....	$\frac{15}{1}$			.71875
.....	$\frac{7}{2}$		$\frac{15}{2}$	.234375	.....	$\frac{15}{1}$			.734375
.....	$\frac{15}{2}$		$\frac{15}{1}$	.250	.....	$\frac{15}{1}$		$\frac{1}{4}$	.750
.....	$\frac{15}{1}$		$\frac{15}{1}$	.265625	.....	$\frac{15}{1}$			.765625
.....	$\frac{15}{1}$		$\frac{15}{1}$	.28125	.....	$\frac{15}{1}$			.78125
.....	$\frac{15}{1}$		$\frac{15}{1}$	.296875	.....	$\frac{15}{1}$			.796875
.....	$\frac{15}{1}$		$\frac{15}{1}$	.3125	.....	$\frac{15}{1}$		$\frac{1}{8}$	.8125
.....	$\frac{15}{1}$		$\frac{15}{1}$	.328125	.....	$\frac{15}{1}$			.828125
.....	$\frac{15}{1}$		$\frac{15}{1}$	.34375	.....	$\frac{15}{1}$			.84375
.....	$\frac{15}{1}$		$\frac{15}{1}$	.359375	.....	$\frac{15}{1}$			.859375
.....	$\frac{15}{1}$		$\frac{15}{1}$	.375	.....	$\frac{15}{1}$		$\frac{1}{8}$	.875
.....	$\frac{15}{1}$		$\frac{15}{1}$	.390625	.....	$\frac{15}{1}$			.890625
.....	$\frac{15}{1}$		$\frac{15}{1}$	.40625	.....	$\frac{15}{1}$			.90625
.....	$\frac{15}{1}$		$\frac{15}{1}$	.421875	.....	$\frac{15}{1}$			.921875
.....	$\frac{15}{1}$		$\frac{15}{1}$	.4375	.....	$\frac{15}{1}$		$\frac{1}{16}$	.9375
.....	$\frac{15}{1}$		$\frac{15}{1}$	.453125	.....	$\frac{15}{1}$			.953125
.....	$\frac{15}{1}$		$\frac{15}{1}$	.46875	.....	$\frac{15}{1}$			.96875
.....	$\frac{15}{1}$		$\frac{15}{1}$	.484375	.....	$\frac{15}{1}$			.984375
.....	$\frac{15}{1}$		$\frac{15}{1}$	.500	.....	$\frac{15}{1}$		1	1.000000

VERNIER CALIPERS

**23. Vernier principle.** — Some instruments of precision have in conjunction with the main rule (or scale) a short movable scale, called a vernier, to read fractional parts of the smallest divisions on the main rule.

The vernier is divided into one more or one less divisions than a given number of divisions on the rule. A division on the rule thus differs from a division on the vernier by the fraction shown by 1 divided by the number of divisions on vernier.

Rule *A*, Fig. 10, is divided into inches, tenths, and fortieths ( $\frac{1}{40}'' = .025''$ ). Vernier *B* is divided into twenty-five



FIG. 10. — VERNIER PRINCIPLE.

divisions which equal twenty-four divisions on rule *A*. As each division on rule *A* is  $.025''$  ( $\frac{1}{40}''$ ), each division on vernier *B* is  $.024''$  or  $.001''$  less ( $\frac{1}{40}'' \times \frac{1}{25} = \frac{1}{1000}'' = .001''$ ).

If the zero line on vernier is set to coincide with the zero line or any line on rule *A*, the next two lines to the right will differ from each other by  $.001''$ , and the difference will increase  $.001''$  for each division.

**24. Example in reading.** — *First, read the rule.* Each tenth is read  $.100''$  and each fortieth  $.025''$ . The first line on rule to left of zero line on vernier is distant from zero line on rule  $.300''$  and three fortieths,  $.075''$ , which gives  $1.375''$ .

*Second, read vernier.* Counting to the right, we find that the second line on the vernier *B* coincides with a line on the rule as indicated by arrows. The distance from the zero line on the vernier to the coinciding lines is  $.002''$ .

*Third, to reading of rule add reading of vernier to obtain complete measurement.* Thus:  $1.375'' + .002'' = 1.377''$ .



25. The application of vernier principle to the vernier caliper. — In Fig. 11 each inch of beam *C* is divided into 40 parts, and vernier *D*, attached to sliding head *E*, into 25 parts. To measure work, as shaft *F*, the caliper is placed over the shaft and the sliding head is moved to bring sliding jaw *G* and solid jaw *H* in contact with shaft, clamp *K* is fastened to beam by thumb screw *L*. The jaws are made to touch shaft delicately yet distinctly by adjusting nut *M*, after which head *E* is fastened to the beam

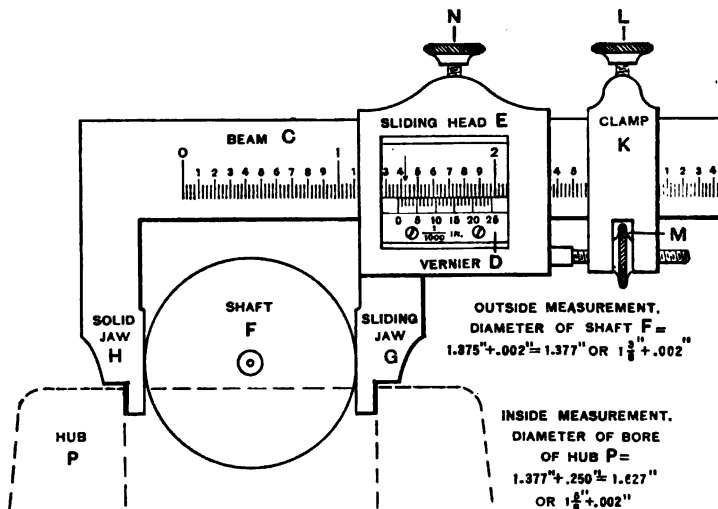


FIG. 11. — MEASURING WITH VERNIER CALIPER.

by thumb screw *N*. The caliper reads the same as the former example, Fig. 10, that is: 1.377" or  $1\frac{3}{8} + .002$ ". It is best to use a magnifying glass to read or set a vernier caliper.

26. To obtain inside measurements with a vernier caliper. — To take inside measurements, as the bore of hub *P* shown dotted, the caliper is read exactly as above, then the width of the points of the jaws, which differ with the size of the caliper is added. For the caliper in Fig. 11 two hundred and fifty thousandths of an inch (0.250") must be thus added to the reading on the vernier side.

27. Vernier caliper as a caliper square. — The vernier caliper may be used as a caliper square for ordinary outside and inside measurements by reading the back of beam C, which is graduated to read to 64ths.

28. A ten-thousandth micrometer. — Micrometer calipers are obtainable to read to the tenth part of a thousandth of an inch. A vernier of ten divisions is marked on the barrel A, Fig. 12, and in the space occupied by nine divisions on the thimble B. The micrometer reads  $.250'' +$ . To read the vernier to obtain the fourth decimal place, locate the line on the vernier, as line 6, which coincides with a line on the thimble, and add  $.0006''$  to reading, as  $.250'' + .0006'' = .2506''$  or  $\frac{1}{4} + .0006''$ .

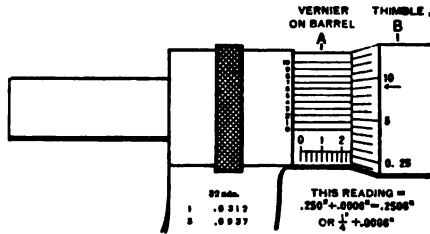


FIG 12.—A TEN-THOUSANDTH MICROMETER.

DIMENSION-LIMIT SYSTEM

29. Drawings giving dimension limits and indicating the measuring tools are given for accurate work, the systems varying.

Certain dimensions may be  $\frac{1}{1000}''$  or  $\frac{2}{1000}''$  under or over nominal size, and if indicated on the drawing it will save the time used in finishing work with undue accuracy. The extra time taken to make the drawings is saved many times in machining the work.

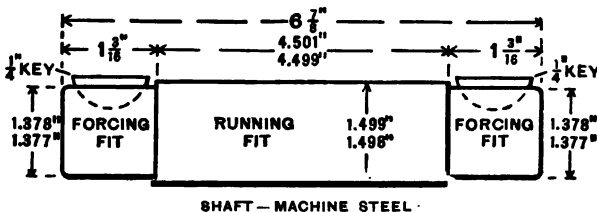


FIG. 13. — DRAWING SHOWING DIMENSION-LIMIT SYSTEM.

**30.** A single dimension indicated by a whole number, fraction, or mixed number as  $6\frac{1}{4}$ ", Fig. 13, means that rule and caliper are sufficiently accurate to measure the parts.

**31.** Double dimensions in decimal form, placed one above the other as  $\frac{1.378''}{1.377''}$ , Fig. 13, indicate the limit allowed for a required size, and that micrometer, vernier, or limit gage should be used.

**32.** A dimension allowing no limit is indicated by a single decimal as 8.000" and means that the greatest possible accuracy must be obtained with the measuring instruments at hand.

Instead of double dimensions, limits are sometimes indicated by plus and minus signs after the nominal dimensions, as 4.125" + or - .001".

#### FITS IN MACHINE CONSTRUCTION WITH TABLES OF ALLOWANCES

**33.** Fits in machine construction are most important, and unless made according to requirements, impair the usefulness of the machine. See Dimension-Limit System, pp. 213, 214.

*Examples.*—In an engine lathe the live spindle of steel is a running fit in bronze or Babbitt boxes in the headstock. The footstock spindle of steel is a sliding fit in the cast-iron footstock. The headstock cone is a running fit and the headstock gear a drive fit on spindle. The headstock, footstock, and carriage of cast iron are sliding fits on the ways of the cast-iron bed. See Scraping, *Principles of Machine Work*.

Like metals are generally used for sliding surface fits, unlike metals for running fits. Cast iron to cast iron wears well for any fit, but steel to steel will quickly abrade unless hardened and ground.

**34.** The classes of fits used in machine construction are: running, sliding, driving, forcing and shrinking fits; and taper fits, running and forcing. The hole or bore for duplicate work should be standard. See pp. 221, 222.

**35.** Running fits vary with the class of work. The amount of looseness varies from .0002" on fine watch work

to  $\frac{1}{8}$ " on some classes of cotton and woolen machinery. See Tables, Classes I, II, III. Running fits are often made taper. The adjustment is obtained by moving the spindle along the box, or the box along the spindle.

**Running Fits. — Class I**

TABLE OF ALLOWANCES AND LIMITS UNDER STANDARD FOR FINE WORK

HOLE DIAMETER, INCHES.	SHAFT DIAMETER = HOLE DIAMETER -	LIMIT SHAFT DIAM- ETER + OR -
.00 to .49	.000625	.000125
.50 to 1.99	.0012	.000375
2.00 to 3.99	.0016	.000625
4.00 to 5.99	.002	.00075
6.00 to 8.00	.002375	.000875

**Running Fits. — Class II**

TABLE OF ALLOWANCES AND LIMITS UNDER STANDARD FOR AVERAGE WORK WHERE HIGH SPEEDS ARE REQUIRED

HOLE DIAMETER, INCHES.	SHAFT DIAMETER = HOLE DIAMETER -	LIMIT SHAFT DIAM- ETER + OR -
.00 to .49	.001	.00025
.50 to .99	.0015	.0005
1.00 to 1.99	.0019	.000625
2.00 to 2.99	.0023	.00075
3.00 to 3.99	.0027	.00075
4.00 to 5.99	.0035	.001
6.00 to 8.00	.0038	.00125

**Running Fits. — Class III**

TABLE OF ALLOWANCES AND LIMITS UNDER STANDARD FOR ENGINE WORK WHERE EASY FITS ARE REQUIRED

HOLE DIAMETER, INCHES.	SHAFT DIAMETER = HOLE DIAMETER -	LIMIT SHAFT DIAM- ETER + OR -
.00 to .49	.0015	.0005
.50 to .99	.002	.00075
1.00 to 1.99	.0026	.000875
2.00 to 3.99	.0034	.001125
4.00 to 5.99	.00425	.00125
6.00 to 8.00	.005	.0015

**36. Sliding fits** such as the footstock spindle of lathes are made similar to running fits except that the final fitting is done by draw-filing. See *Principles of Machine Work*.

Many lathe manufacturers grind the spindle slightly large, then force it back and forth in the footstock with a power press, which smooths, straightens, and stretches the hole, eliminates wear to some extent and produces a fine sliding fit.

TABLE OF ALLOWANCES AND LIMITS UNDER STANDARD  
FOR SLIDING FITS

HOLE DIAMETER, INCHES.	SHAFT DIAMETER = HOLE DIAMETER -	LIMIT SHAFT DIAM- ETER + OR -
.00 to .49	.0005	.00025
.50 to .99	.00075	.00025
1.00 to 1.99	.00125	.00025
2.00 to 3.99	.00175	.00025
4.00 to 5.99	.00225	.00025
6.00 to 8.00	.0035	.0005

**37. Driving or drive fits, easy and hard** are made by turning the shaft to size with allowance for filing. For easy fits, file or grind until shaft will enter hole about two-thirds length of fit with hand pressure; for hard fits, one-third. The former are used for light-keyed fits and small work; the latter for ordinary work which may be removed for repair.

TABLE OF ALLOWANCES AND LIMITS OVER STANDARD  
FOR DRIVING FITS

HOLE DIAMETER, INCHES.	SHAFT DIAMETER = HOLE DIAMETER +	LIMIT SHAFT DIAM- ETER + OR -
.00 to .49	.000375	.000125
.50 to 1.24	.00075	.00025
1.25 to 2.49	.00125	.00025
2.50 to 8.00	.002	.0005

**38. Forcing or force fits.**— In assembling and erecting machinery, nothing is more important than the proper fitting of the parts that have to be driven or forced together, or

driven or forced apart, when making repairs. Examples of forcing fits are gears, couplings, locomotive driving wheels, crank pins, car axles, rod bushing, crank disks, various kinds of bushings, linings into cylinders, various parts of engines, generators and motors, iron bands on wagon-wheel hubs, crank shafts into automobile fly wheels, various parts of built-up cranks, or any two machine parts that have to be joined by forcing one into the other with sufficient power to prevent them ever becoming loose.

TABLE OF ALLOWANCES AND LIMITS OVER STANDARD FOR FORCING FITS

HOLE DIAMETER, INCHES.	SHAFT DIAMETER = HOLE DIAMETER +	LIMIT SHAFT DI- AMETER + OR -
.00 to .49	.00075	.00025
.50 to .99	.0015	.0005
1.00 to 1.49	.0025	.0005
1.50 to 1.99	.0035	.0005
2.00 to 2.49	.0045	.0005
2.50 to 3.24	.0055	.0005
3.25 to 3.99	.0065	.0005
4.00 to 4.99	.0075	.0005
5.00 to 5.99	.0085	.0005
6.00 to 8.00	.0095	.0005

*Attention.* — To avoid abrasion and destruction of work, lubricate both surfaces with machine oil. For heavy work use cylinder oil, white lead, or grease.

**39. Taper forcing fits.** — For some classes of machinery, such as marine and engine work, taper forcing fits are used. The hole is bored to a taper of .060" to 1', and the shaft ground or turned the same but large enough when put together by hand to stop about one-fourth to one-eighth of its length from the desired location, then forced to place. Large taper holes are often scraped true to gages before forcing the shaft into place.

On some classes of work, the hole is made straight and the shaft ground or turned to a taper of about .001" to 1", which makes an effective fit.

**40. Pressures and allowances for forcing fits.** — Formulas have been deduced and tables made giving pressures required to force two parts together; these possess considerable value, but serve only as a guide, for the pressure required depends not only on the difference in diameters but on the diameter and length of fit, smoothness of both parts, material of both shaft and hub; and diameter of hub. The material will often make a difference of from twenty-five per cent to fifty per cent in the pressure for the same allowance. For this reason the method that is generally followed is to make tables of allowances and pressures for each class of fits and for different materials.

**41. Forcing presses for forcing fits.** — The old method of making forcing fits is with sledge hammers, rams, etc., but such methods are now nearly obsolete except for occasional fits, as the process is difficult, dangerous, and lacks uniformity. The economical, easy, safe, and scientific method is by hydraulic-power or belt-power presses of which there are a great variety both vertical and horizontal, small and large, stationary and portable, to suit all classes of work. Small forcing fits may be made with a mandrel or arbor press.

**42. To force screw into bevel gear.** Fig. 14. **Belt-power forcing press.** — This type of press may be used for forcing fits between mandrel press work and hydraulic press work and not requiring a pressure exceeding fifty tons.

Screw *A* is keyed, lubricated, preferably with linseed oil, and forced into bevel gear *B* by ram *C*, to which motion is transmitted by gearing actuated by the driving belt *D* and controlled by hand wheel *E* which operates a friction device. The wheel *E* is used to raise and lower the ram and to control the pressure through its operation of a friction device; the harder the wheel is turned the greater the friction and the greater the pressure produced. The friction only acts on the downward motion.

The plunger *F* which compresses glycerine in a chamber at the end of ram *C*, records the pressure in tons per square inch by means of gage *G*.

Specifications. — The gear in Fig. 14 is steel case-hardened; hole straight,  $1\frac{1}{4}$ " diameter; screw, crucible steel; length of fit, 3"; allowance, and taper, 1.250" in diameter at end and 1.254" at shoulder (ground); pressure, 8 tons.

**43. To force shaft into flange, forcing fit. Fig. 15. Belt-power forcing press.** — Shaft *A* is keyed, oiled, and forced into flange *B*.

Specifications. — Flange, cast iron; hole 1" diameter; shaft, machine steel; length of fit,  $1\frac{3}{4}$ ", straight; allowance, .002" to .0025", large (ground); pressure, about 3 tons.

*Attention.* — Condition of surfaces (smooth or rough) will vary the pressure.

**44. To force shaft into malleable-iron gear.** —

Specifications. — Malleable-iron gear; hole  $1\frac{3}{8}$ " diameter; length of fit, 2"; shaft, crucible steel; allowance and taper, 1.1875" at end and 1.1915" at shoulder; pressure, 5 tons.

**45. To force shaft into machine-steel gear.** —

Specifications. — Machine-steel gear; hole 2" diameter; length of fit, 5"; shaft-machine steel; allowance and taper, 2.000" at end, 2.004" at shoulder; pressure, 13 to 15 tons.

**46. Shrinking fits** are used to fasten a collar, sleeve, crank pin, crank, or other piece permanently in place. They differ from forcing fits in manner of fitting only. The fit is made by heating the hollow piece until it expands sufficiently to go on the cold shaft easily. The parts must be put together quickly or the heat will expand the shaft and the parts stick hard before they are in place, in which case they should be driven or pressed apart as quickly as possible. When in place, cool slowly with water.

If the proper shrinkage is allowed, it will not be necessary to heat piece above a dull red, 800° F.

For small work the hole may be standard and the amount for shrinkage allowed on shaft.



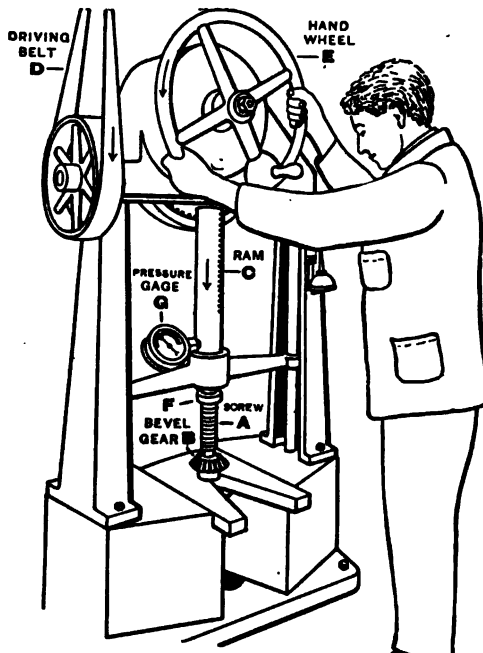


FIG. 14. — FORCING SCREW INTO BEVEL GEAR. FORCING FIT BELT-POWER FORCING PRESS.

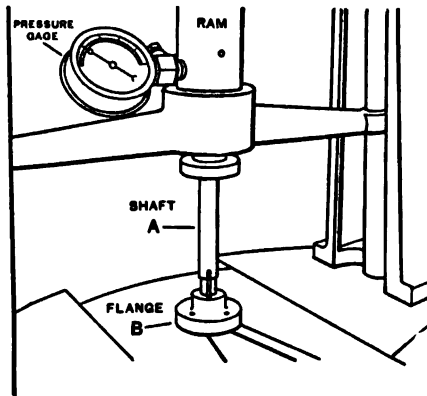


FIG. 15. — FORCING SHAFT INTO FLANGE. FORCING FIT. BELT-POWER FORCING PRESS.

TABLE OF ALLOWANCES AND LIMITS OVER STANDARD FOR SHRINKING FITS

HOLE DIAMETER, INCHES.	SHAFT DIAMETER = HOLE DIAMETER +	LIMIT SHAFT DIAM- ETER + OR -
.00 to .49	.00075	.00025
.50 to .99	.0015	.0005
1.00 to 1.49	.002	.0005
1.50 to 1.99	.0025	.0005
2.00 to 2.49	.003	.0005
2.50 to 3.24	.0035	.0005
3.25 to 3.99	.004	.0005
4.00 to 4.99	.0045	.0005
5.00 to 5.99	.0055	.0005
6.00 to 8.00	.0075	.0005

47. To shrink tires on wheel centers. — Wheel centers are turned standard and the allowance is made in boring the tire.

The allowance for shrinkage in rings or jackets for guns in the United States naval gun factories varies slightly for different classes of guns, but it is generally about .001" to the inch. That is, if the diameter is 12" the shrinkage will be .012".

TABLE OF ALLOWANCES FOR LOCOMOTIVE DRIVING WHEEL TIRES FOR SHRINKING FITS

WHEEL CENTER DIAMETER, INCHES.	BORE OF TIRE = WHEEL CENTER DIAMETER -	WHEEL CENTER DIAMETER, INCHES.	BORE OF TIRE = WHEEL CENTER DIAMETER -
38.00	.040	56.00	.060
44.00	.047	62.00	.066
50.00	.053	66.00	.070

48. Standard holes. — The holes referred to in tables of allowances for the various kinds of fits are either bored or bored and reamed, and are within limits given in table of .00025". They are tested by plug and limit gages.

TABLE OF LIMITS OF HOLE DIAMETERS ALLOWABLE UNDER AND OVER STANDARD

HOLE DIAMETER, INCHES.	LIMIT STANDARD DIAMETER.	
	+	-
.00 to 1.24	.00025	.00025
1.25 to 2.49	.00075	.00025
2.50 to 5.99	.001	.0005
6.00 to 8.00	.001	.0075

**49. Tables of allowances and limits for standard fits,** represent common practice, but are not intended to conform to every case that may arise in fitting. In making allowances for any fit, certain conditions must always be considered. For example, the allowances for forcing fits are for cast-iron hubs twice the diameter of machine-steel shafts, and subject to modifications for different conditions, as the amount of metal surrounding the hole, the length of hole, and the elasticity of the metal.

**50. To fit by trial and correction, and by allowance.**—When only a few pieces have to be fitted, fit by trial. But for many pieces, fit according to allowance given in tables.

**51. To turn and file fits, and to grind fits.**—Work that was formerly turned and filed in the lathe is now roughed out with high-speed steel tools and finished in the grinding machine. This process produces work quicker, and truer, cylindrically. See p. 701.

**52. To produce standard fits with spring calipers.**—Fit ordinary calipers to a plug gage, reference rod or disk which has the proper allowance. Turn and file or grind shaft to fit caliper. Another method is to use limit caliper gages directly on work. See Limit Gages, p. 225.

**53. To produce standard fits with micrometers.**—Turn work direct to diameter plus double depth of tool marks; the allowance for filing with a fine feed and sharp tools is from .003" to .004".

## STANDARD AND LIMIT GAGES

**54. Gages** are instruments of reference for standardizing measurements and for determining dimensions exactly or within limits.

When a piece is machined nearly to size, a gage is invaluable for determining the exact dimension, the tightness or looseness of the fit giving an idea of its size.

**55. Standard cylindrical gages, ring and plug.**— Fig. 16 represents an accurate subdivision of the Imperial yard.

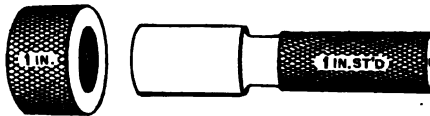


FIG. 16. — STANDARD RING AND PLUG GAGES.

These gages are made within various limits of accuracy, such as .0002", .0001", .00005", .00002".

**56. Caliper gages, Fig. 17.**— The measuring faces of the

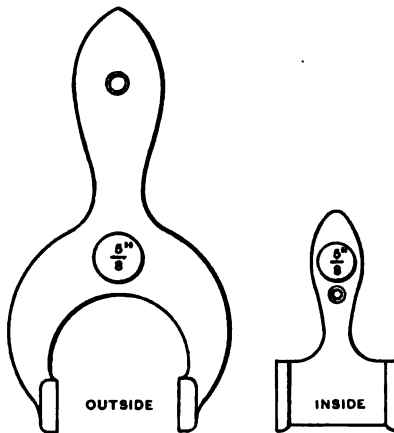


FIG. 17. — CALIPER GAGES.

outside gage are flat, the inside cylindrical. For general use, this gage is preferred to plug and ring gages.

57. Reference disk, Fig. 18, is used for testing and setting calipers.

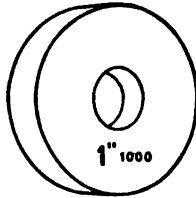


FIG. 18. — STANDARD REFERENCE DISK.

*Attention.* — As the heat from the hand will enlarge a gage perceptibly, the body of gages for very accurate testing is often covered with a jacket of rubber or wood, or provided with a hole to receive a wooden handle, as rubber and wood are poor conductors of heat.

58. End-measuring rod, Fig. 19, for gaging rings, cylin-

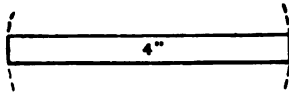


FIG. 19. — STANDARD END-MEASURING ROD.

ders, setting ordinary calipers, etc. The ends are sections of true spheres having diameters equal to the length of the rod.



FIG. 20. — STANDARD END-MEASURE TEST PIECE.

59. End-measure test piece, Fig. 20, is used for testing micrometers, caliper gages and setting tools in planer and shaper.

**60. Limit gages** are for use in the manufacture of duplicate pieces of work to save the time necessary in finishing to a single-gage dimension. They have two fixed dimensions which differ an amount equal to the limit allowed. See Tables,

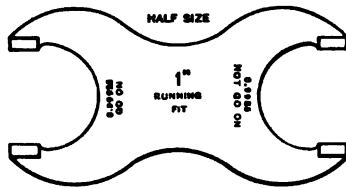


FIG. 21. — OUTSIDE LIMIT GAGE.

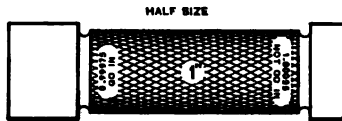


FIG. 22. — INSIDE LIMIT GAGE.

pp. 215-217, 221, 222. The gages, Figs. 21, 22, are clearly stamped with dimensions and directions.

Adjustable outside limit gages are obtainable which permit the limit to be varied to suit different classes of work.

**61. Limit caliper gages** for roughing out work are made from .003" to .01" larger than the maximum diameter of the finished piece, depending on the class of work.

**62. Special gages.** — Various other standard and special gages are obtainable.

*Attention.* — Care must be exercised to clean and oil gages before using and also not to force them into or over work with undue pressure or they will wear excessively and soon become unreliable.

## TAPER TURNING AND FITTING

**63.** Tapers are expressed as so much per unit of length, as 1" per foot; that is, a piece 1' in length would be 1" larger at one end than at the other, as at *A* and *B*, Fig. 23. They

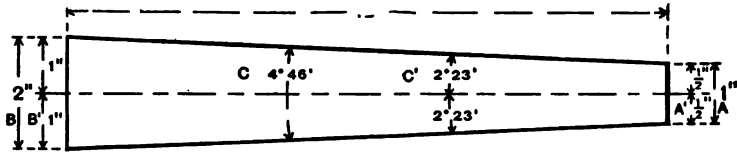


FIG. 23. — DIAGRAM FOR READING TAPERS.

may be expressed as so much per foot from the center line; as,  $\frac{1}{2}$ " per foot from center line,  $\frac{1}{2}$ " at *A'* and 1" at *B'*, the same taper as 1" per foot. They are also expressed in angular measurement as at *C*, angle of 4° 46', or as at *C'*, 2° 23', see Table of Tapers and Angles, p. 1130.

**64. Tapers, standard and special.** — Taper parts are used on nearly all machines. The Morse taper system, approximately  $\frac{3}{4}$ " per foot (see pp. 233, 234), is used on drills and in drilling-machine and lathe spindles; the Brown & Sharpe taper system,  $\frac{1}{2}$ " per foot (see pp. 233, 235), in milling-machine spindles. Both are designated by name and numbers.

The Jarno taper system, .600" per foot, is used to some extent in lathe and grinding-machine spindles. See pp. 236, 237.

Special tapers are used for spindle boxes, pins, and similar work.

**65. Methods of turning taper.** — Set over footstock, Fig. 24, or use a taper attachment, Figs. 28, 29. The first method can only be used for outside tapers; the others can be used for either outside or inside tapers.

**66.** To calculate distance to set over footstock. — Multiply one-half taper per foot (in inches) by whole length of work or mandrel (in feet).

*Example.* — The Morse Taper No. 3, Fig. 24, is .602" per foot, length of work 8". Find amount to set over footstock.

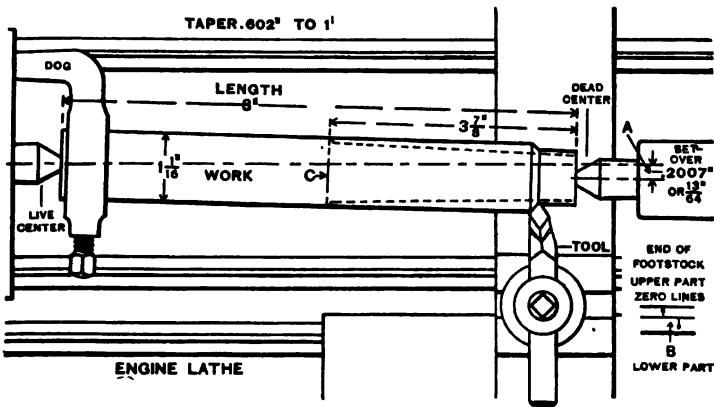


FIG. 24. — TURNING TAPER WITH FOOTSTOCK SET OVER.

*Solution.* —  $\frac{.602}{2} \times \frac{8}{12} = .2007''$  or  $\frac{13}{64}''$ .

The distance the centers enter the work affects this rule so slightly that it is ignored.

**67.** To set over footstock calculated distance, unclamp footstock and rotate adjusting screws to move dead center forward .2007" or  $\frac{13}{64}''$ , as at A, Fig. 24, measuring lines B with dividers or rule set to .20". See Table of Footstock Set-overs for Morse, and Brown & Sharpe Tapers, pp. 238, 239.



68. To calculate set-over when only length and diameters are given. Fig. 25.

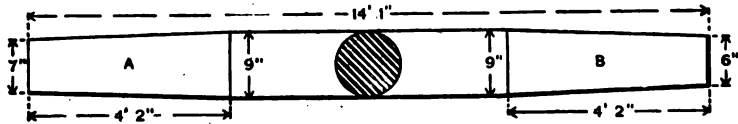


FIG. 25. — EXAMPLE IN LONG TAPER TURNING.

$$\text{Formula. — } \frac{\text{Total length}}{\text{Length taper portion}} \times \frac{\text{Difference in diameters}}{2} = \text{Set-over.}$$

*Example.* — To find set-over; total length 14' 1"; tapered portion 4' 2"; difference in diameter 9" – 6" = 3".

*Solution.* — 14' 1" = 169"; 4' 2" = 50".

$$\frac{169}{50} \times \frac{3}{2} = 5.07" \text{ (set-over).}$$

69. To use a pattern to obtain set-over. — If a piece of taper work has to be duplicated, use it as a pattern to obtain approximate set-over by mounting it on centers and using a *test indicator*. See *Tapering Pulleys*, pp. 428, 429.

70. To turn, file and fit Morse taper No. 3 (.602" to 1'), Figs. 26 and 27.

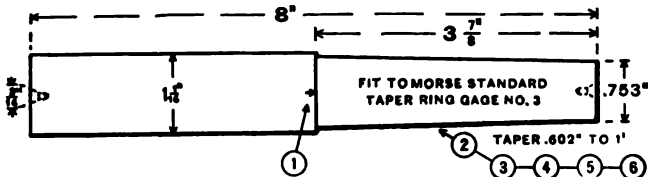


FIG. 26. — SCHEDULE DRAWING OF TAPER TURNING AND FITTING.

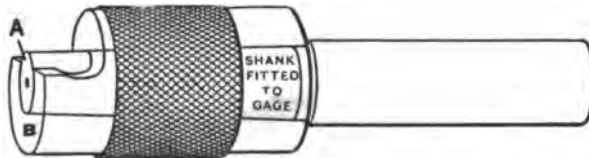


FIG. 27. — MORSE STANDARD TAPER RING GAGE, NO. 3.

**Specifications:** Material, iron casting  $\frac{1}{8}$ " large; weight, 2 lb. 8 oz.

Hardness, 28 to 32 (scleroscope.)

True live center. Set dead center in approximate alinement, see p. 118.

Carbon-steel cutting tools. See *Exception*, p. 205.

**Time:** Study drawing and schedule in advance, 5 min.—Oil machine, 4 min.—Set taper, turn, file, and fit, 45 min. (With blank prepared.)—Clean lathe, 3 min. Total, 57 min.—(Preparation of blank, 40 min. extra.)

**SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS, MACHINES AND TOOLS**

OPERATIONS.	MACHINES, SPEEDS, FEEDS.	TOOLS.
Snag, center, rough-square, recenter, finish square. See pp. 203, 204.	Centering machine, Engine lathe, 12" to 16".	Vise, chisel, file, dog, round-nose tool, side tool, 15° rake.
Straight turn. Rough, one cut, finish, one cut. (Or use blank machined to 8" × 1 1/8", Fig. 4.)	.....	Diamond-point tool, 15° rake, rule, calipers.
Lay off length of taper, (1).	.....	Copper under set screw of dog.
Set over footstock to .2007" or 1/48" as in Fig. 24 or use taper attachment. Set tool height of centers and rough turn 1/8" at small end, one cut, (2). When within 1/16" of C, Fig. 24, release power feed and use hand feed to within 1/32" of C.	2d speed, or 35 F. P. M. Medium power feed — 80 to 1".	Vise, chalk or copper sulphate, rule, scriber. Rule, dividers, diamond-point tool, 15° rake, calipers.
Grind and oilstone tool. Take a trial cut about .004" to .005" (3). Piece will enter gage about 2 1/2", enough to determine fit.	3d speed, or 50 F. P. M. Fine power feed — 140 to 1".	Round-nose tool, Morse taper ring gage, No. 3, Fig. 27.
Clean hole and work. Chalk line along work and test in gage with rotating motion. If chalk line shows contact throughout by even rubbing, taper is correct. If only large end bears, set footstock backward slightly or vice versa, and take another trial cut. Repeat above until taper is correct.	.....	Round-nose tool, Morse taper ring gage, No. 3, chalk or Prussian blue.
Rough turn to 1/4" one cut, (4), or until it will reach within 7/32" of end of gage.	2d or 3d speeds, or 35 to 50 F.P.M. Medium power feed.	Diamond-point tool, 15° rake, calipers, rule.
Regrind and oilstone tool. Finish turn to .757" (.753" + .004") at end, one cut (the .004" is for filing) or until end of work comes within 1/16" of end of gage (5).	3d speed, or 50 F.P.M. Fine power feed — 140 to 1".	Round-nose tool, 1" micrometer.
<i>Important.</i> —Set footstock back in approximate alignment, see p. 116.		
File lightly all over to remove tool marks, (6). Chalk line on work. Test work in gage, and file bright spots. Continue until fit is uniform and end A is even with end of gage, B, Fig. 27, or .753".	Engine lathe, 4th speed, or speed lathe, 3d or 4th speed, or 105 F.P.M.	8" or 10" mill bastard file, file card, Morse taper ring gage, No. 3, 1" micrometer, chalk or Prussian blue.

*Attention.* — Set tool to turn taper at exact height of centers. Take light finishing cuts. Avoid excessive filing. For very accurate work, coat walls of gage with Prussian blue to test taper.

71. To turn taper with taper attachment. Figs. 28, 29.— These attachments are applied to engine lathes to turn out-

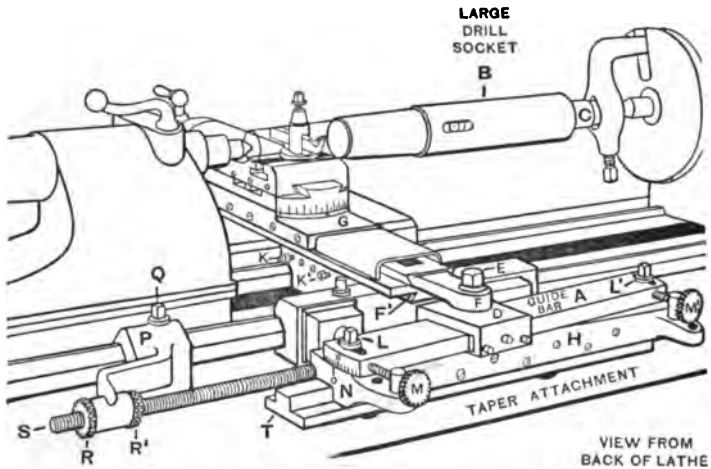


FIG. 28. — TURNING A TAPER WITH TAPER ATTACHMENT.

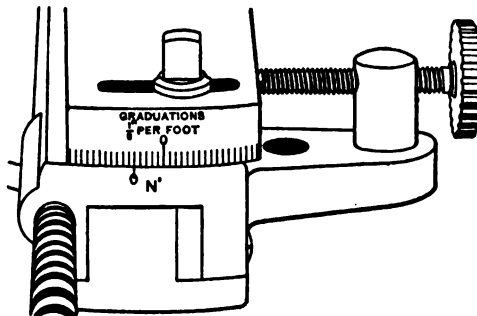


FIG. 29. — TAPER ATTACHMENT SET TO TURN A TAPER OF  $\frac{1}{4}$ " PER FOOT.

side and inside tapers. The footstock does not have to be set over, and the length of the work does not have to be considered.

SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS

Figs. 28, 29.

Guide bar *A* is set to turn taper of drill socket *B*. Stub mandrel *C* provides a center for hollow end of socket. Guide bar *A* carries gibbed sliding block *D* which is connected by bolt *E* to extension *F* of supplementary slide *F'* which forms the base of cross slide *G*. Guide bar is swiveled upon its base *H* by unclamping screws *L, L'*. Drill socket *B* is to have a Morse taper, No. 4, .623" or  $\frac{1}{8}$ " to 1'.

*To Set.* — Rotate adjusting screws *M, M'* until the graduations on scale at *N* indicate the taper. See *N'*, Fig. 29.

Graduations on one end of bar give a taper of  $\frac{1}{4}$ " to 1', and on the other,  $\frac{1}{5}$ " to 1' or in degrees.

Fasten clamp *P* by bolt *Q* and clamp nuts *R, R'* on screw *S*. Sliding block *D* and slide *T* move with carriage. Guide bar *A* and base *H* remain stationary.

*Attention.* — Take trial cuts and test in taper ring gage or in spindle, and make corrections by adjusting guide bar. See Taper Fitting, pp. 228-230.

*Caution.* — Take up back lash before each cut by running carriage back at least  $\frac{1}{8}$ " beyond end of work to avoid turning a portion at end straight.

*Note.* — To use lathe for straight work without disturbing taper setting, remove nut *R* and move clamp *P* away.

STRAIGHT TURNING AND FITTING

72. To turn and file a 1" straight running fit.

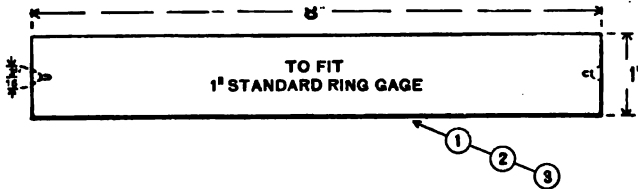


FIG. 30. — SCHEDULE DRAWING OF STRAIGHT TURNING AND FITTING.

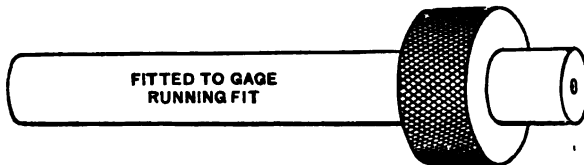


FIG. 31. — 1" STANDARD RING GAGE.

**Specifications:** Material, iron casting  $\frac{1}{4}$ " large; weight, 2 lb. 8 oz.  
**Hardness,** 28 to 32 (scleroscope).  
**True live center.** Set dead center in approximate alinement, see p. 116.  
**Carbon-steel cutting tools.** See *Exception*, p. 205.  
**Time:** Study drawing and schedule in advance, 5 min. — Oil lathe, 4 min.  
 — Set lathe straight, rough and finish turn, file and fit, 45 min. (With blank prepared.) — Clean lathe, 3 min. Total, 57 min. (Preparation of blank, 40 min. extra.)

**SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS, MACHINES, AND TOOLS**

OPERATIONS.	MACHINES, SPEEDS, FEEDS.	TOOLS.
TO MAKE FIT BY TRIAL AND CORRECTION.		
Snag, center, rough square, recenter and finish square. See p. 203.	Engine lathe, 12" to 16".	Dog, calipers, rule, round-nose tool, side tool, 15° rake.
Rough turn 1" + $\frac{1}{32}$ ", one cut, (1), (or use plain part of blank used for taper turning, $4\frac{1}{4}$ " × $1\frac{1}{8}$ ", Fig. 27).	1st or 2d speed, or 25 F. P. M. Medium powerfeed — 80 to 1".	Copper under set screw of dog, diamond-point tool, 15° rake, calipers, rule.
Set dead center in accurate alinement to turn straight using this piece or trial piece of equal length. See pp. 116, 117.	3d speed, or 50 F. P. M. Fine power feed — 140 to 1".	Round-nose tool, 2" micrometer.
Rough turn 1" + $\frac{1}{32}$ ", one cut (1).	3d speed, or 50 F. P. M. Medium power feed — 80 to 1".	Round-nose or diamond-point tool, 15° rake, calipers, rule.
Grind and oilstone tool. Oil mandrel and push in gage. Set calipers to large end close to gage. Take light cuts at end about $\frac{1}{4}$ " in length until calipers fit work slightly harder than on mandrel. Oil and try in gage, Fig. 31. When it enters about $\frac{1}{8}$ " with hand pressure, wipe off oil and take cut from end to end by reversing work, (2), one cut.	3d speed, or 50 F. P. M. Fine power feed — 140 to 1".	Round-nose or diamond-point tool, 15° rake, calipers, 1" mandrel, 1" ring gage, oilstone.
File a small portion at end. Clean and oil work and gage. Try in gage. Wipe off oil after each trial. Continue fitting over whole length in this manner, (3).	Engine lathe, 4th speed, or speed lathe, 3d or 4th speed, or 110 F.P.M.	8" or 10" mill bastard file, file card, 1" ring gage, machine, or lard oil.

*Attention.* — Test with calipers frequently. Avoid excessive filing. Test work in both ends of gage. The lack of oil when testing in gage will spoil both work and gage. Reamed holes are usually slightly larger at one end.

**73. To make a 1" running fit by allowance, Figs. 30 and 31.**

Turn to  $\left. \begin{array}{l} 1.002" \dots\dots\dots \\ 1.003" \dots\dots\dots \end{array} \right\}$  Micrometer calipers  
 and

File to {  $.9995''$  ..... } Micrometer calipers  
 {  $.9990''$  ..... }

74. Diagram of Morse tapers.

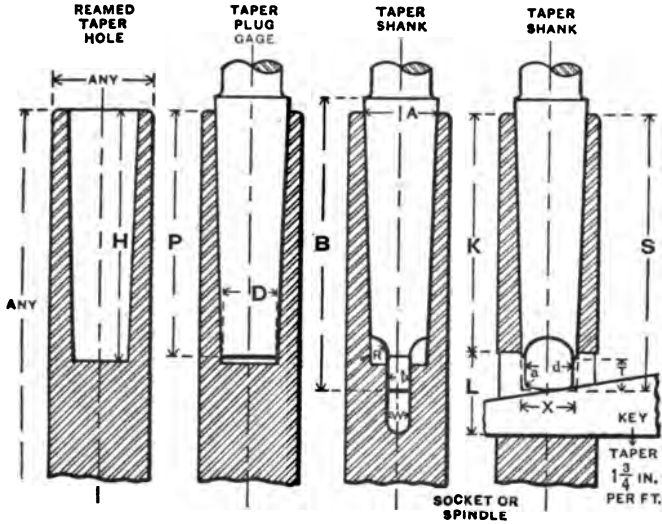
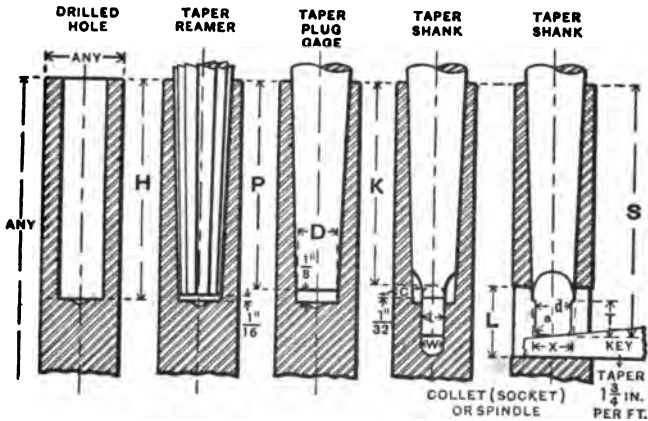


FIG. 32.

75. Diagram of Brown & Sharpe tapers.



TAPER  $\frac{1}{2}$  IN. TO 1 FOOT EXCEPT NO.10 WHICH IS .5161 PER FOOT

FIG. 33.

ADVANCED MACHINE WORK

76. Table of Morse tapers. For holes in drilling machine spindles, lathe spindles, shanks of drills, sockets, end mills, etc.

NUMBER OF TAPER.	DIAM. OF PLUG AT SMALL END.		DIAM. AT END OF SOCKET.		SHANK.		DEPTH OF HOLE.		STANDARD PLUG DEPTH.		TONGUE.			KEYWAY.		END OF SOCKET TO KEYWAY.	TAPER PER FOOT.	TAPER PER INCH.	DIAM. OF POINT OF SHANK.	LIMIT FOR TONGUE TO PROJECT THROUGH GAGE.	NO. OF KEY.	RELA. PROJECTS THROUGH GAGE.	
	D	A	A	A	WHOLE LENGTH.	DEPTH.	S	H	D	T	RAD. OF MILL.	P	A	WIDTH.	LENGTH.								K
0	.252	.3561	2 $\frac{1}{2}$	2 $\frac{1}{2}$	2 $\frac{1}{2}$	2 $\frac{1}{2}$	2 $\frac{1}{2}$	2 $\frac{1}{2}$	2	1	3 $\frac{1}{2}$	.235	.04	.160	1 $\frac{1}{2}$	1 $\frac{1}{2}$	1 $\frac{1}{2}$	.625	.05208	.2406	.003	0	1 $\frac{1}{2}$
1	.369	.475	2 $\frac{1}{2}$	2 $\frac{1}{2}$	2 $\frac{1}{2}$	2 $\frac{1}{2}$	2 $\frac{1}{2}$	2 $\frac{1}{2}$	2 $\frac{1}{2}$	1	3 $\frac{1}{2}$	.343	.05	.213	1 $\frac{1}{2}$	2 $\frac{1}{2}$	2 $\frac{1}{2}$	.600	.06	.353	.003	1	2 $\frac{1}{2}$
2	.572	.700	3 $\frac{1}{2}$	2 $\frac{1}{2}$	2 $\frac{1}{2}$	2 $\frac{1}{2}$	2 $\frac{1}{2}$	2 $\frac{1}{2}$	2 $\frac{1}{2}$	1	3 $\frac{1}{2}$	1 $\frac{1}{2}$	.06	.260	1 $\frac{1}{2}$	2 $\frac{1}{2}$	2 $\frac{1}{2}$	.602	.05016	.5527	.004	2	3 $\frac{1}{2}$
3	.778	.938	3 $\frac{1}{2}$	3 $\frac{1}{2}$	3 $\frac{1}{2}$	3 $\frac{1}{2}$	3 $\frac{1}{2}$	3 $\frac{1}{2}$	3 $\frac{1}{2}$	1	3 $\frac{1}{2}$	1 $\frac{1}{2}$	.08	.322	1 $\frac{1}{2}$	3 $\frac{1}{2}$	3 $\frac{1}{2}$	.602	.05016	.753	.004	3	4 $\frac{1}{2}$
4	1.020	1.231	4 $\frac{1}{2}$	4 $\frac{1}{2}$	4 $\frac{1}{2}$	4 $\frac{1}{2}$	4 $\frac{1}{2}$	4 $\frac{1}{2}$	4 $\frac{1}{2}$	1	4 $\frac{1}{2}$	1 $\frac{1}{2}$	.10	.478	1 $\frac{1}{2}$	4 $\frac{1}{2}$	4 $\frac{1}{2}$	.623	.05191	.991	.004	4	5 $\frac{1}{2}$
5	1.475	1.748	4 $\frac{1}{2}$	5 $\frac{1}{2}$	5 $\frac{1}{2}$	5 $\frac{1}{2}$	5 $\frac{1}{2}$	5 $\frac{1}{2}$	5 $\frac{1}{2}$	1	5 $\frac{1}{2}$	2	.12	.635	1 $\frac{1}{2}$	5 $\frac{1}{2}$	5 $\frac{1}{2}$	.630	.0525	1.4395	.005	5	6 $\frac{1}{2}$
6	2.116	2.404	8 $\frac{1}{2}$	8 $\frac{1}{2}$	8 $\frac{1}{2}$	8 $\frac{1}{2}$	8 $\frac{1}{2}$	8 $\frac{1}{2}$	8 $\frac{1}{2}$	1	8 $\frac{1}{2}$	2	.15	.760	1 $\frac{1}{2}$	7	7	.626	.05216	2.0636	.005	6	7 $\frac{1}{2}$
7	2.750	3.270	11 $\frac{1}{2}$	11 $\frac{1}{2}$	11 $\frac{1}{2}$	11 $\frac{1}{2}$	11 $\frac{1}{2}$	11 $\frac{1}{2}$	11 $\frac{1}{2}$	1	11 $\frac{1}{2}$	2 $\frac{1}{2}$	.181	1.135	2 $\frac{1}{2}$	9 $\frac{1}{2}$	9 $\frac{1}{2}$	.625	.05208	2.685	.005	7	8 $\frac{1}{2}$

77. Table of Brown & Sharpe tapers. For holes in milling machine spindles, collets, and shanks of arbors, end mills, etc.

No. of TAPER.	DIAM. OF PLUG AT SMALL END.	PLUG DEPTH.	DEPTH OF HOLE.	KEYWAY FROM END OF SPINDLE.	SHANK DEPTH.	LENGTH OF KEYWAY.	WIDTH OF KEYWAY.	LENGTH OF ARBOR TONGUE.	DIAMETER OF ARBOR TONGUE.	THICKNESS OF ARBOR TONGUE.	RADIUS OF TONGUE CIRCLE.	RADIUS OF TONGUE AT "A."	DIAM. OF ARBOR AT SMALL END BEFORE IT IS TONGUED.	LIMIT FOR TONGUE TO PROJECT THROUGH TEST TOOL GAGE.
	D	P	H	K	S	L	W	T	d	t	C	A	X	
1	.20	$1\frac{1}{16}$	$1\frac{1}{16}$	$1\frac{1}{16}$	$1\frac{1}{16}$	$1\frac{1}{16}$	.135	$\frac{3}{16}$	.170	$\frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{3}{16}$	.030	.189	.003
2	.25	$1\frac{1}{8}$	$1\frac{1}{8}$	$1\frac{1}{8}$	$1\frac{1}{8}$	$1\frac{1}{8}$	.166	$\frac{1}{4}$	.220	$\frac{3}{16}$	$\frac{1}{4}$	.030	.237	.003
3	.312	$1\frac{3}{8}$	$1\frac{3}{8}$	$1\frac{3}{8}$	$1\frac{3}{8}$	$1\frac{3}{8}$	.197	$\frac{5}{16}$	.282	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{5}{16}$	.040	.296	.003
3	.312	$1\frac{3}{8}$	$1\frac{3}{8}$	$1\frac{3}{8}$	$1\frac{3}{8}$	$1\frac{3}{8}$	.197	$\frac{5}{16}$	.282	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{5}{16}$	.040	.296	.003
4	.35	$1\frac{1}{2}$	$1\frac{1}{2}$	$1\frac{1}{2}$	$1\frac{1}{2}$	$1\frac{1}{2}$	.228	$\frac{3}{4}$	.320	$\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	.050	.333	.003
4	.35	$1\frac{1}{2}$	$1\frac{1}{2}$	$1\frac{1}{2}$	$1\frac{1}{2}$	$1\frac{1}{2}$	.228	$\frac{3}{4}$	.320	$\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	.050	.333	.003
5	.45	$1\frac{3}{4}$	$1\frac{3}{4}$	$1\frac{3}{4}$	$1\frac{3}{4}$	$1\frac{3}{4}$	.260	$\frac{7}{8}$	.420	$1$	$\frac{7}{8}$	.060	.432	.003
5	.45	$1\frac{3}{4}$	$1\frac{3}{4}$	$1\frac{3}{4}$	$1\frac{3}{4}$	$1\frac{3}{4}$	.260	$\frac{7}{8}$	.420	$1$	$\frac{7}{8}$	.060	.432	.003
5	.45	$2\frac{1}{8}$	$2\frac{1}{8}$	$2\frac{1}{8}$	$2\frac{1}{8}$	$2\frac{1}{8}$	.260	$\frac{7}{8}$	.420	$1$	$\frac{7}{8}$	.060	.432	.003
6	.50	$2\frac{1}{4}$	$2\frac{1}{4}$	$2\frac{1}{4}$	$2\frac{1}{4}$	$2\frac{1}{4}$	.291	$1\frac{1}{8}$	.460	$1\frac{1}{8}$	$1\frac{1}{8}$	.060	.479	.005
6	.50	$3\frac{1}{4}$	$3\frac{1}{4}$	$3\frac{1}{4}$	$3\frac{1}{4}$	$3\frac{1}{4}$	.291	$1\frac{1}{8}$	.460	$1\frac{1}{8}$	$1\frac{1}{8}$	.060	.479	.005
7	.60	$2\frac{1}{2}$	$2\frac{1}{2}$	$2\frac{1}{2}$	$2\frac{1}{2}$	$2\frac{1}{2}$	.322	$1\frac{1}{4}$	.560	$1\frac{1}{4}$	$1\frac{1}{4}$	.070	.578	.005
7	.60	$3$	$3$	$3$	$3$	$3$	.322	$1\frac{1}{4}$	.560	$1\frac{1}{4}$	$1\frac{1}{4}$	.070	.578	.005
7	.60	$3$	$3$	$3$	$3$	$3$	.322	$1\frac{1}{4}$	.560	$1\frac{1}{4}$	$1\frac{1}{4}$	.070	.578	.005
7	.60	$4$	$4$	$4$	$4$	$4$	.322	$1\frac{1}{4}$	.560	$1\frac{1}{4}$	$1\frac{1}{4}$	.070	.578	.005
8	.75	$3\frac{3}{8}$	$3\frac{3}{8}$	$3\frac{3}{8}$	$3\frac{3}{8}$	$3\frac{3}{8}$	.353	$1\frac{3}{8}$	.710	$1\frac{3}{8}$	$1\frac{3}{8}$	.080	.726	.005
8	.75	$4$	$4$	$4$	$4$	$4$	.353	$1\frac{3}{8}$	.710	$1\frac{3}{8}$	$1\frac{3}{8}$	.080	.726	.005
9	.90	$4\frac{1}{4}$	$4\frac{1}{4}$	$4\frac{1}{4}$	$4\frac{1}{4}$	$4\frac{1}{4}$	.385	$1\frac{7}{8}$	.860	$1\frac{7}{8}$	$1\frac{7}{8}$	.100	.874	.005
9	.90	$4\frac{1}{4}$	$4\frac{1}{4}$	$4\frac{1}{4}$	$4\frac{1}{4}$	$4\frac{1}{4}$	.385	$1\frac{7}{8}$	.860	$1\frac{7}{8}$	$1\frac{7}{8}$	.100	.874	.005
10	1.0446	$5\frac{1}{8}$	$5\frac{1}{8}$	$5\frac{1}{8}$	$5\frac{1}{8}$	$5\frac{1}{8}$	.447	$1\frac{1}{2}$	1.010	$1\frac{1}{2}$	$1\frac{1}{2}$	.110	1.0137	.005
10	1.0446	$5\frac{1}{8}$	$5\frac{1}{8}$	$5\frac{1}{8}$	$5\frac{1}{8}$	$5\frac{1}{8}$	.447	$1\frac{1}{2}$	1.010	$1\frac{1}{2}$	$1\frac{1}{2}$	.110	1.0137	.005
10	1.0446	$5\frac{3}{8}$	$5\frac{3}{8}$	$5\frac{3}{8}$	$5\frac{3}{8}$	$5\frac{3}{8}$	.447	$1\frac{1}{2}$	1.010	$1\frac{1}{2}$	$1\frac{1}{2}$	.110	1.0137	.005
11	1.25	$5\frac{3}{4}$	$6\frac{1}{8}$	$6\frac{1}{8}$	$6\frac{1}{8}$	$6\frac{1}{8}$	.447	$1\frac{1}{2}$	1.210	$1\frac{1}{2}$	$1\frac{1}{2}$	.130	1.247	.005
11	1.25	$6\frac{1}{4}$	$6\frac{1}{4}$	$6\frac{1}{4}$	$6\frac{1}{4}$	$6\frac{1}{4}$	.447	$1\frac{1}{2}$	1.210	$1\frac{1}{2}$	$1\frac{1}{2}$	.130	1.247	.005
12	1.50	$7\frac{1}{4}$	$7\frac{1}{4}$	$7\frac{1}{4}$	$7\frac{1}{4}$	$7\frac{1}{4}$	.510	$1\frac{3}{4}$	1.460	$1\frac{3}{4}$	$1\frac{3}{4}$	.150	1.466	.005
13	1.75	$7\frac{3}{4}$	$7\frac{3}{4}$	$7\frac{3}{4}$	$7\frac{3}{4}$	$7\frac{3}{4}$	.510	$1\frac{3}{4}$	1.710	$1\frac{3}{4}$	$1\frac{3}{4}$	.170	1.716	.010
14	2.00	$8\frac{1}{4}$	$8\frac{1}{4}$	$8\frac{1}{4}$	$8\frac{1}{4}$	$8\frac{1}{4}$	.572	$1\frac{7}{8}$	1.960	$1\frac{7}{8}$	$1\frac{7}{8}$	.190	1.962	.010
15	2.25	$8\frac{3}{4}$	$8\frac{3}{4}$	$8\frac{3}{4}$	$8\frac{3}{4}$	$8\frac{3}{4}$	.572	$1\frac{7}{8}$	2.210	$1\frac{7}{8}$	$1\frac{7}{8}$	.210	2.212	.010
16	2.50	$9\frac{1}{4}$	$9\frac{1}{4}$	$9\frac{1}{4}$	$9\frac{1}{4}$	$9\frac{1}{4}$	.635	$1\frac{1}{2}$	2.450	$1\frac{1}{2}$	$1\frac{1}{2}$	.230	3.458	.010
17	2.75	$9\frac{3}{4}$	$9\frac{3}{4}$	$9\frac{3}{4}$	$9\frac{3}{4}$	$9\frac{3}{4}$	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	2.708	.....
18	3.00	$10\frac{1}{4}$	$10\frac{1}{4}$	$10\frac{1}{4}$	$10\frac{1}{4}$	$10\frac{1}{4}$	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	2.957	.....



### JARNO TAPERS

78. The Jarno taper system is 0.600" per foot (1 in 20) for all numbers, and the number of the taper determines all the other dimensions, as all parts are functions of the number. For example, No. 4 taper is  $\frac{1}{10}$ " at small end,  $\frac{1}{8}$ " at large end, and  $\frac{1}{2}$ " (or 2") in length.

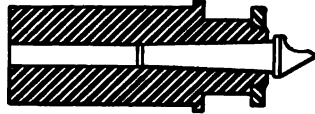


FIG. 34. — JARNO TAPER IN GRINDING-MACHINE SPINDLE.

As there is  $\frac{1}{10}$ " in diameter between consecutive numbers at small end and  $\frac{1}{8}$ " at large end, the number of a taper can be readily found by rough measurement with rule, or rule and calipers. Some lathe and grinding machine manufacturers have adopted the Jarno taper for holes in spindles, and others retain the Jarno taper per foot but modify the other specifications by changing the diameters or lengths to suit special conditions.

#### 79. Table of Jarno tapers.

Taper per foot = .6 inch. Taper per inch = .050 inch.

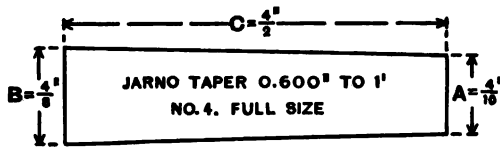


FIG. 35.

$$\text{Diameter of small end} = \frac{\text{No. of taper}}{10} .$$

$$\text{Diameter of large end} = \frac{\text{No. of taper}}{8} .$$

$$\text{Length of taper} = \frac{\text{No. of taper}}{2} .$$

NUMBER.	"A."	"B."	"C."
2	.20	.250	1
3	.30	.375	1½
4	.40	.500	2
5	.50	.625	2½
6	.60	.750	3
7	.70	.875	3½
8	.80	1.000	4
9	.90	1.125	4½
10	1.00	1.250	5
11	1.10	1.375	5½
12	1.20	1.500	6
13	1.30	1.625	6½
14	1.40	1.750	7
15	1.50	1.875	7½
16	1.60	2.000	8
17	1.70	2.125	8½
18	1.80	2.250	9
19	1.90	2.375	9½
20	2.00	2.500	10

80. Diagram of footstock setovers for Morse, and Brown & Sharpe tapers.

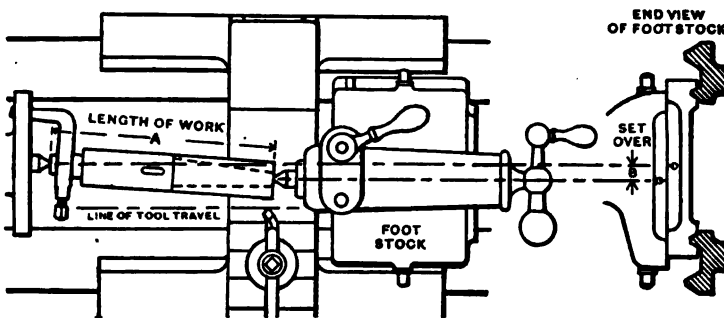


FIG. 36.

81. Table of footstock setters for Morse, and Brown & Sharpe tapers.

LENGTH OF STOCK IN INCHES.	THE AMOUNT IN INCHES OF SETOVER OF FOOTSTOCK GIVEN IN DECIMALS AND IN APPROXIMATE FRACTIONS									
	SETOVER FOR MORSE TAPERS.					SETOVER FOR BROWN & SHARPE TAPERS.				
	No. 0.	No. 1.	Nos. 2 AND 3.	No. 4.	No. 5.	No. 6.	No. 7.	ALL NOS. EXCEPT No. 10.	No. 10.	
2	.0521 $\frac{1}{19}$	.0500 $\frac{1}{20}$	.0502 $\frac{1}{20}$	.0519 $\frac{1}{19}$	.....	.....	.....	.0417 $\frac{1}{24}$	.....	
3	.0781 $\frac{1}{13}$	.0750 $\frac{3}{40}$	.0752 $\frac{1}{13}$	.0779 $\frac{1}{13}$	.1050 $\frac{1}{10}$	.....	.....	.0625 $\frac{1}{16}$	.....	
4	.1042 $\frac{1}{10}$	.1000 $\frac{1}{10}$	.1003 $\frac{1}{10}$	.1038 $\frac{1}{10}$	.1313 $\frac{1}{8}$	.....	.....	.0833 $\frac{1}{12}$	.....	
5	.1302 $\frac{3}{23}$	.1250 $\frac{1}{8}$	.1254 $\frac{1}{20}$	.1298 $\frac{1}{19}$	.1575 $\frac{3}{16}$	.1565 $\frac{5}{16}$	.....	.1042 $\frac{1}{17}$	.1075 $\frac{3}{22}$	
6	.1563 $\frac{3}{19}$	.1500 $\frac{3}{20}$	.1505 $\frac{1}{40}$	.1558 $\frac{1}{13}$	.1838 $\frac{1}{13}$	.1836 $\frac{1}{13}$	.....	.1250 $\frac{1}{8}$	.1290 $\frac{3}{23}$	
7	.1823 $\frac{1}{11}$	.1750 $\frac{1}{8}$	.1756 $\frac{1}{11}$	.1817 $\frac{1}{11}$	.2100 $\frac{1}{11}$	.2087 $\frac{1}{11}$	.....	.1458 $\frac{1}{14}$	.1505 $\frac{1}{14}$	
8	.2083 $\frac{1}{12}$	.2000 $\frac{1}{5}$	.2007 $\frac{1}{12}$	.2077 $\frac{1}{12}$	.2363 $\frac{1}{12}$	.2348 $\frac{1}{12}$	.....	.1667 $\frac{1}{6}$	.1720 $\frac{1}{6}$	
9	.2344 $\frac{1}{10}$	.2250 $\frac{1}{4}$	.2258 $\frac{1}{10}$	.2336 $\frac{1}{10}$	.2625 $\frac{1}{10}$	.2608 $\frac{1}{10}$	.2344 $\frac{1}{11}$	.1875 $\frac{3}{16}$	.1935 $\frac{1}{11}$	
10	.2604 $\frac{1}{10}$	.2500 $\frac{1}{4}$	.2508 $\frac{1}{10}$	.2596 $\frac{1}{10}$	.2888 $\frac{1}{10}$	.2869 $\frac{1}{10}$	.2604 $\frac{1}{11}$	.2083 $\frac{1}{10}$	.2150 $\frac{1}{10}$	
11	.2865 $\frac{1}{10}$	.2750 $\frac{1}{4}$	.2759 $\frac{1}{10}$	.2855 $\frac{1}{10}$	.3150 $\frac{1}{10}$	.3130 $\frac{1}{10}$	.2865 $\frac{1}{11}$	.2202 $\frac{1}{11}$	.2365 $\frac{1}{11}$	
12	.3125 $\frac{1}{8}$	.3000 $\frac{3}{10}$	.3010 $\frac{1}{10}$	.3115 $\frac{1}{10}$	.3413 $\frac{1}{10}$	.3391 $\frac{1}{10}$	.3125 $\frac{1}{11}$	.2500 $\frac{1}{4}$	.2581 $\frac{1}{11}$	
13	.3385 $\frac{1}{10}$	.3250 $\frac{1}{4}$	.3261 $\frac{1}{10}$	.3375 $\frac{1}{10}$	.3675 $\frac{1}{10}$	.3652 $\frac{1}{10}$	.3385 $\frac{1}{11}$	.2708 $\frac{1}{11}$	.2796 $\frac{1}{11}$	
14	.3646 $\frac{1}{10}$	.3500 $\frac{1}{4}$	.3512 $\frac{1}{10}$	.3634 $\frac{1}{10}$	.3938 $\frac{1}{10}$	.3913 $\frac{1}{10}$	.3646 $\frac{1}{11}$	.2917 $\frac{1}{11}$	.3011 $\frac{1}{11}$	
15	.3806 $\frac{1}{10}$	.3750 $\frac{1}{4}$	.3763 $\frac{1}{10}$	.3894 $\frac{1}{10}$	.4200 $\frac{1}{10}$	.4173 $\frac{1}{10}$	.3806 $\frac{1}{11}$	.3125 $\frac{1}{8}$	.3226 $\frac{1}{11}$	
16	.4167 $\frac{1}{10}$	.4000 $\frac{1}{4}$	.4013 $\frac{1}{10}$	.4153 $\frac{1}{10}$	.4463 $\frac{1}{10}$	.4434 $\frac{1}{10}$	.4167 $\frac{1}{11}$	.3333 $\frac{1}{3}$	.3441 $\frac{1}{11}$	
17	.4437 $\frac{1}{10}$	.4250 $\frac{1}{4}$	.4264 $\frac{1}{10}$	.4413 $\frac{1}{10}$	.4725 $\frac{1}{10}$	.4695 $\frac{1}{10}$	.4437 $\frac{1}{11}$	.3543 $\frac{1}{11}$	.3655 $\frac{1}{11}$	
18	.4688 $\frac{1}{10}$	.4500 $\frac{1}{4}$	.4515 $\frac{1}{10}$	.4673 $\frac{1}{10}$	.4975 $\frac{1}{10}$	.4948 $\frac{1}{10}$	.4688 $\frac{1}{11}$	.3750 $\frac{1}{4}$	.3871 $\frac{1}{11}$	

Table of footstock setovers for Morse, and Brown & Sharpe tapers. *Concluded.*

LENGTH OF STOCK IN INCHES.	THE AMOUNT IN INCHES OF SETOVER OF FOOTSTOCK GIVEN IN DECIMALS AND IN APPROXIMATE FRACTIONS									
	SETOVER FOR MORSE TAPERS.					SETOVER FOR BROWN & SHARPE TAPERS.				
	No. 0.	No. 1.	Nos. 2 and 3.	No. 4.	No. 5.	No. 6.	No. 7.	ALL NOS. EXCEPT No. 10.	No. 10.	
19	.4948	.4750	.4766	.4932	.4988	.4956	.4948	.3958	.4086	
20	.5208	.5000	.5017	.5102	.5250	.5217	.5208	.4167	.4301	
21	.5469	.5250	.5268	.5451	.5575	.5478	.5469	.4375	.4516	
22	.5729	.5500	.5518	.5711	.6038	.5738	.5729	.4583	.4731	
23	.5990	.5750	.5769	.5970	.6306	.5909	.5900	.4792	.4946	
24	.6250	.6000	.6020	.6230	.6563	.6260	.6250	.5000	.5161	
25	.6510	.6250	.6271	.6490	.6825	.6521	.6510	.5208	.5376	
26	.6771	.6500	.6522	.6749	.7088	.6782	.6771	.5417	.5591	
27	.7031	.6750	.6773	.7009	.7350	.7043	.7031	.5625	.5806	
28	.7292	.7000	.7023	.7268	.7613	.7303	.7292	.5833	.6021	
29	.7552	.7250	.7274	.7528	.7875	.7564	.7552	.6042	.6236	
30	.7813	.7500	.7525	.7788	.8138	.7825	.7813	.6250	.6451	
31	.8073	.7750	.7776	.8047	.8400	.8086	.8073	.6458	.6666	
32	.8333	.8000	.8027	.8307	.8663	.8347	.8333	.6667	.6881	
33	.8594	.8250	.8278	.8566	.8925	.8608	.8594	.6875	.7096	
34	.8854	.8500	.8528	.8826	.9188	.8868	.8854	.7083	.7311	
35	.9115	.8750	.8779	.9085	.9450	.9129	.9115	.7292	.7526	
36	.9375	.9000	.9030	.9345		.9390	.9375	.7500	.7742	

ATTENTION. — Preferably use the decimals if in black face type; if not, use the common fractions as these are nearer correct.

82. Number of revolutions required to obtain surface speeds of from 20 feet to 70 feet per minute.

DIAMETERS FROM  $\frac{1}{2}$  INCH TO 24 INCHES

FEE PER MIN.	20	25	30	35	40	45	50	55	60	65	70
DIAM., INCHES.	REVOLUTIONS PER MINUTE										
$\frac{1}{2}$	152	191	229	267	305	344	382	420	458	496	535
$\frac{3}{4}$	101	127	152	178	203	228	254	279	305	330	356
1	76	95	114	133	152	172	191	210	229	248	267
$1\frac{1}{4}$	68	85	102	119	136	153	170	187	204	221	238
$1\frac{1}{2}$	61	76	91	106	122	137	153	168	183	199	213
$1\frac{3}{4}$	50	63	76	89	101	114	127	139	152	165	178
$1\frac{1}{2}$	43	54	65	76	87	98	109	120	131	141	152
2	38	47	57	66	76	86	95	105	114	124	133
3	25	31	38	44	50	57	63	70	76	82	89
4	19	23	28	33	38	43	47	52	57	62	66
5	15	19	22	26	30	34	38	42	45	49	53
6	12	15	19	22	25	28	31	34	38	41	44
7	10	13	16	19	21	24	27	30	32	35	38
8	9	11	14	16	19	21	23	26	28	31	33
9	8	10	12	14	17	19	21	23	25	27	29
10	7	9	11	13	15	17	19	21	22	24	26
11	6	8	10	12	13	15	17	19	20	22	24
12	6	8	9	11	12	14	15	17	19	20	22
13	5	7	8	10	11	13	14	16	17	19	20
14	5	6	8	9	10	12	13	15	16	17	19
15	5	6	7	8	10	11	12	14	15	16	17
16	4	6	7	8	9	10	11	13	14	15	16
17	4	5	6	7	8	10	11	12	13	14	15
18	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14
19	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14
20	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13
21	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	10	11	12
22	3	4	5	6	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
23	3	4	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	10	11
24	3	4	4	5	6	7	7	8	9	10	11

83. Number of revolutions required to obtain surface speeds from 75 feet to 125 feet per minute.

DIAMETERS FROM 1/4 INCH TO 24 INCHES

FEET PER MIN.	75	80	85	90	95	100	105	110	115	120	125
DIAM., INCHES.	REVOLUTIONS PER MINUTE										
1/4	573	611	649	687	726	764	802	840	878	916	955
1/2	381	406	432	457	482	508	535	560	586	612	637
1	286	305	324	344	363	382	401	420	439	458	477
1 1/4	255	272	289	306	323	340	357	374	391	408	425
1 1/2	228	245	260	274	290	306	321	336	351	367	382
1 3/4	191	203	216	229	241	254	266	280	292	306	318
2	163	174	185	196	207	218	238	240	250	262	273
2 1/4	143	152	162	172	181	191	200	210	219	229	238
3	95	101	108	114	121	127	133	140	146	153	159
4	71	76	81	86	90	95	100	105	109	114	119
5	57	61	64	68	72	76	80	84	87	91	95
6	47	51	54	57	60	63	67	70	73	76	79
7	40	43	46	49	51	54	57	60	62	65	68
8	35	38	40	42	45	47	50	52	55	57	59
9	31	34	36	38	40	42	44	46	48	51	53
10	28	30	32	34	36	38	40	42	44	46	47
11	26	27	29	31	33	34	36	38	40	41	43
12	23	25	27	28	30	31	33	35	36	38	39
13	22	23	25	26	27	29	30	32	33	35	36
14	20	21	23	24	25	27	28	30	31	32	34
15	19	20	21	23	24	25	26	28	29	30	31
16	17	19	20	21	22	23	25	26	27	28	29
17	16	17	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	28
18	15	16	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26
19	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25
20	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	22	23
21	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	20	21	22
22	13	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	19	20	21
23	12	13	14	15	15	16	17	18	19	19	20
24	11	12	13	14	15	16	16	17	18	19	19

Attention. — To calculate any cutting speed, see pp. 145-147.

84. Time required for tool to travel 1" when feed is  $\frac{1}{100}$ " per revolution.

DIAM., INCHES.	SURFACE SPEED PER MINUTE.								DIAM., INCHES.								
	20		25		30		35			40		45		50		60	
	Min	Sec	Min	Sec	Min	Sec	Min	Sec		Min	Sec	Min	Sec	Min	Sec	Min	Sec
1/8	0	20	0	16	0	13	0	11	0	10	0	9	0	8	0	7	
1/4	0	25	0	20	0	16	0	14	0	12	0	11	0	10	0	8	
3/8	0	29	0	23	0	20	0	17	0	15	0	13	0	12	0	10	
1/2	0	34	0	27	0	23	0	20	0	17	0	15	0	14	0	11	
5/8	0	39	0	31	0	26	0	22	0	20	0	17	0	16	0	13	
3/4	0	44	0	35	0	29	0	25	0	22	0	20	0	18	0	15	
7/8	0	49	0	39	0	33	0	28	0	25	0	22	0	20	0	16	
1	0	54	0	43	0	36	0	31	0	27	0	24	0	22	0	18	
1 1/8	0	59	0	47	0	39	0	34	0	29	0	26	0	24	0	20	
1 1/4	1	4	0	51	0	43	0	36	0	32	0	28	0	26	0	21	
1 1/2	1	9	0	55	0	46	0	39	0	34	0	30	0	28	0	23	
1 3/4	1	14	0	59	0	49	0	42	0	37	0	33	0	29	0	25	
1 7/8	1	19	1	3	0	52	0	45	0	39	0	35	0	31	0	26	
2	1	28	1	11	0	59	0	50	0	44	0	39	0	35	0	29	
2 1/8	1	38	1	18	1	5	0	56	0	49	0	43	0	39	0	33	
2 1/4	1	48	1	26	1	12	1	2	0	54	0	48	0	43	0	36	
2 1/2	1	58	1	34	1	18	1	7	0	59	0	52	0	47	0	39	
2 3/4	2	8	1	42	1	25	1	13	1	4	0	57	0	51	0	42	
3	2	18	1	50	1	31	1	19	1	9	1	1	0	55	0	46	
3 1/8	2	27	1	58	1	38	1	24	1	14	1	5	0	59	0	49	
3 1/4	2	37	2	6	1	45	1	30	1	19	1	9	1	3	0	52	
3 1/2	2	47	2	13	1	51	1	35	1	23	1	14	1	7	0	56	
3 3/4	2	56	2	21	1	58	1	41	1	28	1	19	1	11	0	59	
4	3	6	2	29	2	4	1	46	1	33	1	23	1	15	1	2	
4 1/8	3	16	2	37	2	10	1	52	1	38	1	27	1	19	1	5	
4 1/4	3	36	2	53	2	24	2	3	1	48	1	36	1	27	1	12	
4 1/2	3	45	3	9	2	37	2	15	1	58	1	44	1	34	1	18	
4 3/4	4	15	3	24	2	50	2	26	2	8	1	53	1	42	1	25	
5	4	35	3	40	3	3	2	37	2	18	2	2	1	50	1	32	
5 1/8	4	54	3	56	3	16	2	48	2	27	2	11	1	58	1	38	
5 1/4	5	14	4	11	3	29	2	59	2	37	2	19	2	6	1	44	
5 1/2	5	33	4	26	3	42	3	10	2	47	2	27	2	13	1	51	
5 3/4	5	52	4	42	3	56	3	21	2	56	2	37	2	21	1	57	
6	6	12	4	58	4	9	3	32	3	6	2	45	2	29	2	3	
6 1/8	6	32	5	14	4	21	3	44	3	16	2	54	2	37	2	11	
6 1/4	7	12	5	46	4	47	4	8	3	37	3	11	2	54	2	24	
6 1/2	7	52	6	18	5	12	4	29	3	56	3	28	3	9	2	31	
6 3/4	8	33	6	42	5	39	4	52	4	17	3	46	3	25	2	50	
7	9	10	7	20	6	9	5	14	4	35	4	4	3	40	3	3	
7 1/8	9	49	7	51	6	22	5	39	4	54	4	21	3	58	3	16	
7 1/4	10	28	8	22	6	59	5	58	5	14	4	39	4	11	3	29	
7 1/2	11	7	8	54	7	25	6	20	5	34	4	56	4	27	3	43	
8	11	46	9	25	7	51	6	42	5	53	5	14	4	42	3	55	
8 1/8	12	25	9	56	8	17	7	5	6	12	5	32	4	58	4	9	
8 1/4	13	5	10	28	8	43	7	30	6	32	5	49	5	4	4	22	
8 1/2	13	44	10	59	9	2	7	51	6	52	6	9	5	28	4	35	
8 3/4	14	29	11	31	9	34	8	13	7	12	6	23	5	45	4	47	
9	15	2	12	2	10	2	8	36	7	31	6	41	6	1	5	1	
9 1/8	15	41	12	35	10	28	8	58	7	50	6	58	6	18	5	14	
9 1/4	16	21	13	6	10	55	9	21	8	10	7	16	6	34	5	27	
9 1/2	17	6	13	36	11	26	9	44	8	30	7	34	6	50	5	40	
9 3/4	17	40	14	7	11	41	10	0	8	49	7	51	7	3	5	53	
10	18	20	14	40	12	12	10	27	9	7	8	8	7	20	6	6	
10 1/8	18	50	15	11	12	40	10	50	9	29	8	26	7	36	6	19	
10 1/4	19	38	15	41	13.05	5	11	10	9	49	8	43	7	50	6	32	
10 1/2	20	10	16	18	13	31	11	35	10	9	9	1	8	9	6	44	
10 3/4	20	56	16	46	13	58	11	57	10	29	9	18	8	23	6	58	

# ADVANCED MACHINE WORK

## SECTION 3

### LATHE WORK

Lathe Tools for Steel or Wrought Iron. Holders and Cutters. Turning Steel. Cutting-off Tools. Threading or Screw Cutting. Bolt and Nut Making. Making a Tensile Test Specimen. Making a Stud. Table U. S. S. Bolt Heads, etc. International and French Standard Threads. Indexing in Engine Lathe. Making an Engine Lathe Live Center. Automobile Screws and Nuts.

#### LATHE TOOLS FOR STEEL OR WROUGHT IRON

1. More rake is used on these tools than on those used for cast iron.

2. Right-side tool. — Top face *A*, Fig. 1, is given a side rake of about  $35^\circ$  and side clearance of  $10^\circ$ . A lubricant may be used, but good results are obtained in squaring and turning small work dry. See Lubricants for Cutting Tools, pp. 148-150.

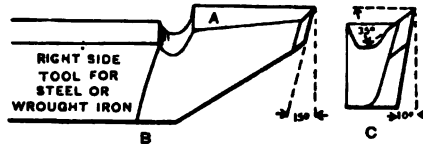


FIG. 1. — SIDE TOOL FOR SQUARING STEEL OR WROUGHT IRON.

3. Step method of squaring. — To square a rough end or remove extra length, the step method is used. The side tool, Fig. 2, is fed inward about  $\frac{1}{8}$ " , then fed by hand long.

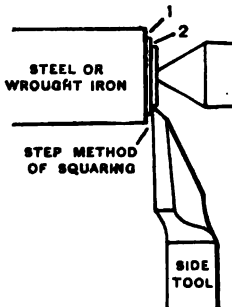


FIG. 2. — STEP METHOD OF SQUARING.

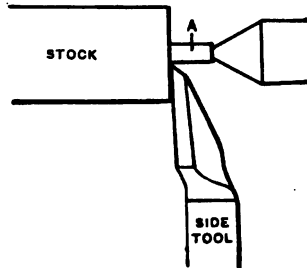


FIG. 3. — METHOD OF SQUARING LARGE AMOUNT OF STOCK.



feed. This cuts the first step, as at 1. The process is repeated at 2, and so on to the countersink. Then a continuous roughing cut is taken outward. When a forging or stock for a shaft, or spindle, is extra long, the first end is rough squared in the regular way, and the second end by the step method, as at A, Fig. 3. The stem left is chipped and filed off. The stock is recentered and finish squared. If extra length exceeds  $\frac{3}{8}$ " a cutting-off tool may be used.

4. **Right diamond-point tool.**—For machine steel or wrought iron the top face A, Fig. 4, is given a combination of front and side rake of about  $35^\circ$  for roughing or finishing. For carbon steel (annealed) it is usually given less rake,  $25^\circ$  or  $30^\circ$ , and the cutting speed reduced.

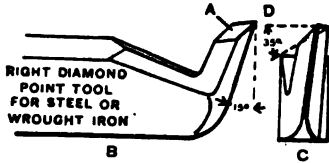


FIG. 4.—DIAMOND-POINT TOOL FOR TURNING STEEL OR WROUGHT IRON.

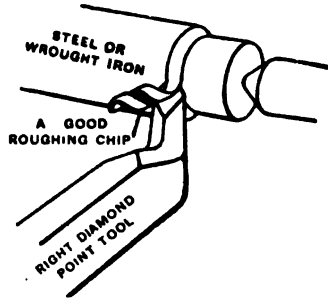


FIG. 5.—ROUGH TURNING STEEL OR WROUGHT IRON. GOOD.

5. **To turn with a diamond-point tool.**—Fig. 5 shows a diamond-point tool taking a roughing cut on machinery steel or wrought iron.

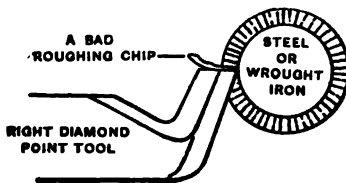


FIG. 6.—ROUGH TURNING STEEL OR WROUGHT IRON. BAD.

6. **Steel or wrought-iron chips.**—In Fig. 5 a chip cut by a tool with  $35^\circ$  rake, which produces a good surface, is shown, while in Fig. 6 the straight broken chip is cut by a tool without rake, which requires more power and leaves a ragged surface. Only the inexperienced would use a tool without rake for squaring and turning steel or wrought iron.

7. A small roughing tool, substitute for diamond-point, as in Fig. 7, is often used in roughing and finishing steel or

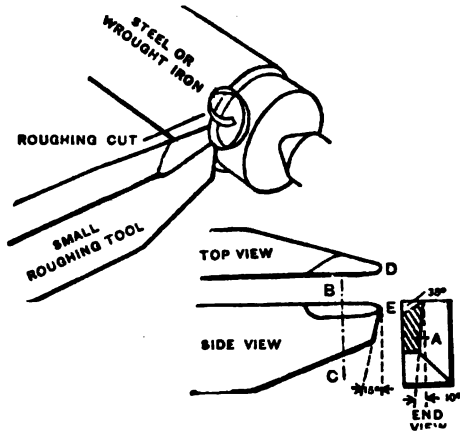


FIG. 7. — ROUGH TURNING STEEL OR WROUGHT IRON.

wrought iron. It may be used for heavy cuts on cast iron. It is given considerable side clearance, see end view, which shows at A a section taken at BC. The point is shaped as shown at D and E.

8. A large roughing tool for steel or wrought iron is shown in Fig. 8.

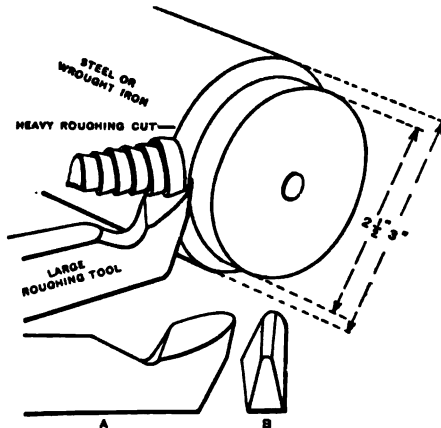


FIG. 8. — ROUGH TURNING STEEL OR WROUGHT IRON.

9. Large roughing tool ground from bar. — Fig. 9 shows a heavy roughing cut on a piece of tough nickel steel taken

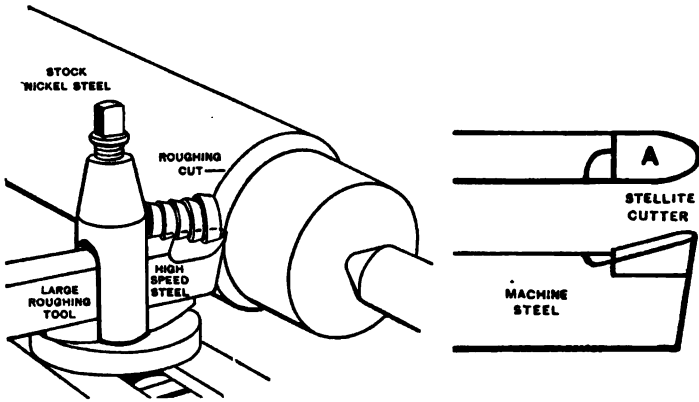


FIG. 9. — ROUGH TURNING STEEL OR WROUGHT IRON.

with a large roughing tool made of high-speed steel and ground from the bar. See Stellite, p. 310.

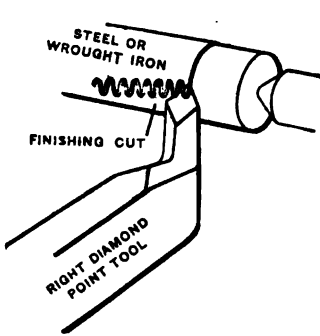


FIG. 10. — FINISHING STEEL OR WROUGHT IRON.

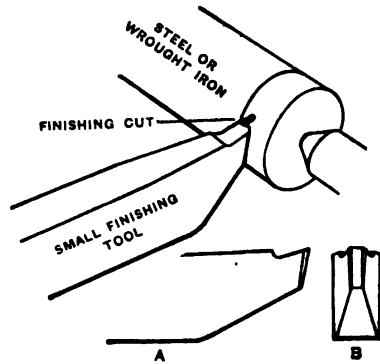


FIG. 11. — FINISHING STEEL OR WROUGHT IRON.

10. To finish turn steel or wrought iron. — The diamond-point tool in Fig. 10, with a fine feed, is best adapted to use for finishing. To save time, small and large square-nose finishing tools, Figs. 11, 12, are often used on large work with a lubri-

cant, light cut and coarse feed. The tools drag a little; that is, the back corners are set to cut deeper than the front corners to avoid chattering. See A, Fig. 12.

**11. Spring finishing tool.** — Fig. 13 shows a high-speed steel spring tool taking a light finishing cut with a lubricant on a shaft of nickel steel.

*Attention.* — Broad-nose tools have a great tendency to chatter and produce a rough corrugated surface caused by the long cutting edge, and made worse by frail, slender work, loose spindle bearings and loose cross slide.

**12. Action of spring tools.** — Broad-nose finishing tools have a tendency to dig into the work. The curved portion of tool in Fig. 13 serves as a spring, and when the cutting edge is set at the height of center, it will spring away from rather

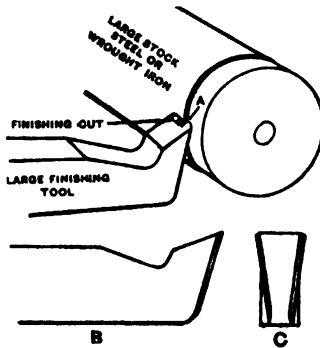


FIG. 12. — FINISHING STEEL OR WROUGHT IRON.

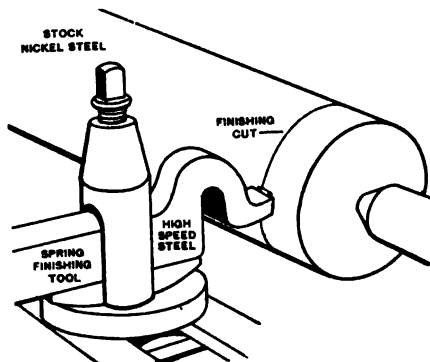


FIG. 13. — FINISHING STEEL OR WROUGHT IRON.

than into the work when a hard spot is encountered as the pivoting point is above the center. The success of spring tools depends upon having the proper amount of spring in proportion to length of cutting edge and diameter of work.

13. A left side tool is shown in Fig. 14. It is ground with the same angles as the right side tool and is used for squaring left shoulders.

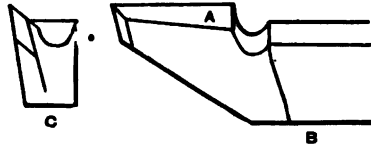


FIG. 14. — LEFT SIDE TOOL FOR STEEL OR WROUGHT IRON.

14. A left diamond-point tool is shown in Fig. 15. It is used for turning from left to right.

15. A right half-diamond point tool is shown in Fig. 16. A is its top face. It can be used to turn up to and to square a shoulder.

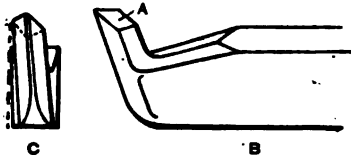


FIG. 15. — LEFT DIAMOND-POINT TOOL FOR STEEL OR WROUGHT IRON.

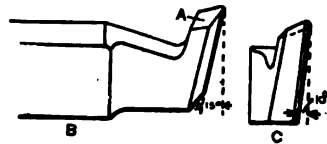


FIG. 16. — HALF DIAMOND-POINT TOOL FOR STEEL OR WROUGHT IRON.

#### HOLDERS AND CUTTERS

16. Holders with inserted cutters or bits, in Chart, Fig. 22, are displacing forged tools to a large extent. The cutters are high-speed steel or stellite, see p. 310, and obtainable square, round, etc., 2" to 3" in length, hardened and ready to grind or in unhardened bars, which are cut by nicking all four sides with a grinding wheel and breaking off in a vise. See *Principles of Machine Work*. The cutting angles are the same as on forged tools, and a student should become familiar with forged tools before using holders and cutters.

17. Holders and cutters for cast iron, Fig. 17. — Cutter or bit A is held at an angle of  $20^\circ$  in holder B and is secured by screw C with short wrench D.

To turn cast iron the end of the cutter is shaped like a right diamond-point tool as at E and for cutting-in, facing, or

squaring, the tool is shaped like a left diamond-point tool as at *F*, and used as *G*.

18. Holders and cutters for steel or wrought iron, Fig. 18. —Cutter or bit *A* is held at an angle of 20° in holder *B* and is secured by binder *C*.

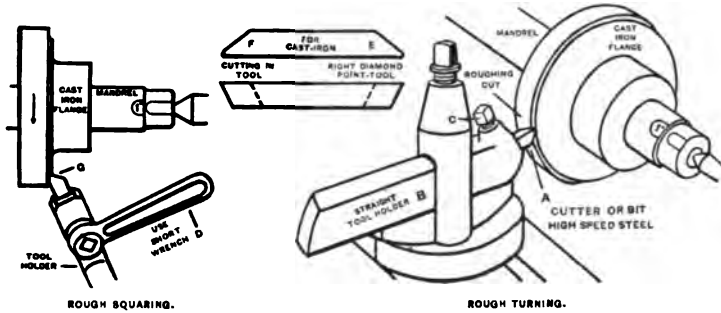


FIG. 17.—HOLDERS AND CUTTERS FOR CAST IRON.

To turn steel or wrought iron the cutter is shaped like a right diamond-point tool with 25° to 30° rake as at *D*. To square steel or wrought iron the cutter is shaped like a right side tool with 25° to 30° rake as at *E*, and used as at *F*. See Method of Squaring, p. 301.

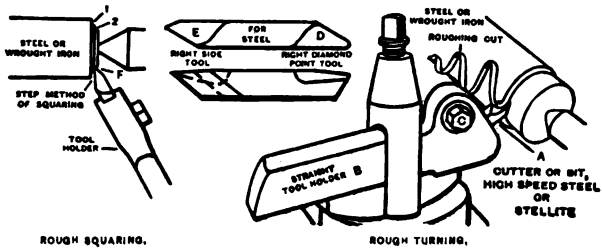


FIG. 18.—HOLDERS AND CUTTERS FOR STEEL OR WROUGHT IRON.

Fig. 20 shows at *D*, *E*, and *F* some uses to which straight holders and cutters may be put; and Fig. 21 shows some uses of the right and left bent or offset holders and cutters *G* and *H*.

19. Useful forms of cutters. — For convenience, one should have a number of cutters ground to suitable cutting angles for different materials and for different operations, as *I, J, K, L, M, N*, Fig. 19.

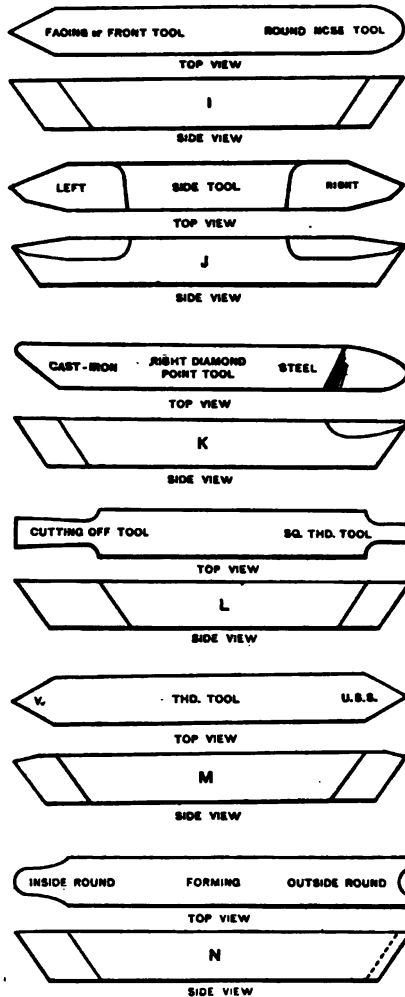


FIG. 19. — USEFUL FORMS OF HIGH-SPEED STEEL CUTTERS.

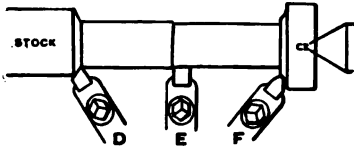


FIG. 20. — OPERATIONS WITH HOLDERS AND CUTTERS.

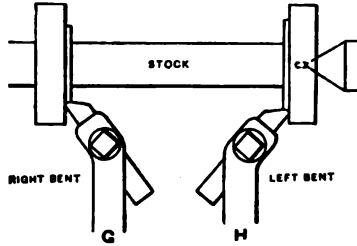


FIG. 21. — SQUARING OR FACING WITH OFFSET TOOLS.
























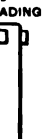
CHART OF LATHE TOOL HOLDERS FOR VARIOUS FORMS OF HIGH SPEED STEEL CUTTERS OUTSIDE TURNING AND THREADING					
DIAMOND POINT OR ROUND NOSE  1	DIAMOND POINT  2	COMB. HOLDER ROUGHING  3	BENT DIAMOND POINT  4	SWIVEL HEAD DIAMOND POINT  5	RIGHT SIDE  6
SWIVEL HEAD SIDE  7	CUTTING OFF  8	BENT CUTTING OFF  9	RING CUTTING OFF  10	V OR U.S.S. THREADING  11	BENT V OR U.S.S. THREADING  12
SPRING THREADING  13	THREAD CHASER  14	SQUARE THREADING  15	29° THREADING  16	FORMING  17	DOUBLE TOOL HOLDER  18
INSIDE TURNING AND THREADING					
BORING  19	SQUARING  20	GROOVING  21	V OR U.S.S. THREADING  22	SQUARE THREADING  23	29° THREADING  24

FIG. 22.



**20. High-speed steel** in general is made by alloying iron with tungsten and chromium or molybdenum and chromium. In some brands other ingredients are used such as vanadium, manganese, etc. The different kinds are hardened by heating from 1800° F. to 2200° F. and cooling in air blast or oil. High-speed steel has a much greater cutting efficiency than carbon steel. See *Principles of Machine Work*. It is largely used for cutters in tool holders, for engine and turret lathe work, screw machines, planers and shapers.

Bars and disks, annealed, are obtainable for making twist drills and milling cutters.

**21. Stellite**, a superior high-speed cutting metal, is an alloy of cobalt, chromium, tungsten and molybdenum in varying proportions. Since it contains no iron it is not a steel.

It is cast in bars and has a scleroscopic hardness of about 70. The cutters are used in tool holders, see Figs. 17, 18, or welded or brazed to a machine-steel shank to eliminate breakage. See A, Fig. 9.

Round-nose cutters are preferred, and sharp points avoided.

Owing to its brittleness, stellite should not be used for planer or shaper work but for lathe work where the cut is continuous.

The cutter should not project more than one-half inch beyond holder, should fit well on the bottom and be tightened only enough to give it a firm hold.

### TURNING STEEL

#### 22. To make plain machine handle, Fig. 23.

Specifications: Material, machine steel  $\frac{1}{8}$ " to  $\frac{1}{4}$ " large; weight, 1 lb. 5 oz.

Hardness, 15 to 16 (scleroscope).

Carbon-steel cutting tools.

See *Exception*, p. 205.

Lubricant, dry or lard oil.

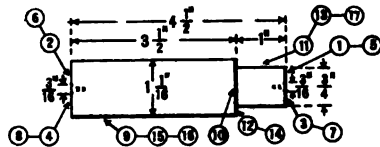


FIG. 23. — SCHEDULE DRAWING.

While a lubricant may be used in all machining operations on steel or wrought iron, it is best to omit the lubricant when squaring (side tool) or turning (diamond-point tool) small work.

**Time:** Study drawing and schedule in advance, 5 min. — Oil lathe, 4 min. — Center and Square, 14 min. — Rough and finish turn, square shoulder and file, 27 min. — Clean lathe, 3 min. — Total, 53 min.

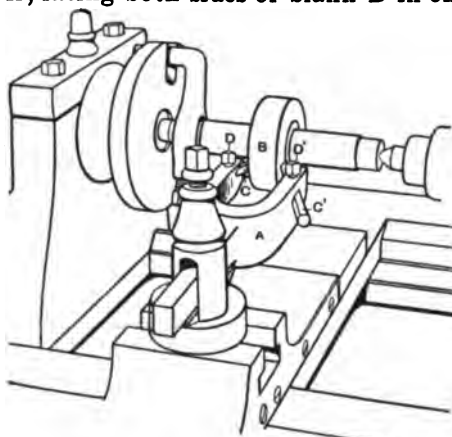
SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS, MACHINES AND TOOLS

OPERATIONS.	MACHINES, SPEEDS, FEEDS.	TOOLS.
<b>File stem off ends.</b>	Vise.	Bastard or 2d-cut file.
<b>Center to <math>\frac{1}{16}</math>"</b> , (1), (2), hand or machine method. See that live center is nearly true and dead center in approximate alinement. See p. 116.	Speed lathe or centering machine. Engine lathe, 12" to 16".	$\frac{1}{16}$ " drill, 60° countersink, rule, lard oil.
<b>Oil bearings.</b>	.....	Machine oil.
<b>Rough square (3)</b> , reverse work on centers and repeat on (4), by step method to $4\frac{1}{2}$ " + $\frac{1}{8}$ ". See p. 301.	2d speed, or 25 F.P.M. Hand feed.	Dog, side tool 35° rake, calipers, rule.
<b>Recenter to <math>\frac{1}{16}</math>"</b> , (5), (6).	Speed lathe, 3d speed.	60° countersink, rule, lard oil.
<b>Finish square (grind tool)</b> , to $4\frac{1}{2}$ ", (7), (8).	Engine lathe, 3d speed or 50 F.P.M. Hand feed.	Side tool 35° rake, calipers, rule.
<b>Rough turn to <math>1\frac{1}{8}</math>" + <math>\frac{1}{8}</math>"</b> , (9), one cut. Turn half way, reverse and turn other half.	1st or 2d speed, or 25 F.P.M. Medium power feed — 80 to 1".	Diamond-point tool 35° rake, calipers, rule.
<b>Draw line 1"</b> from one end (10), for length of reduced part.	Vise.	Copper sulphate, scriber, rule.
<b>Rough turn to <math>\frac{3}{4}</math>" + <math>\frac{1}{8}</math>"</b> , (11), and within $\frac{1}{8}$ " of line (10), two or three cuts.	Engine lathe, 1st or 2d speed, or 25 F.P.M. Medium power feed — 80 to 1".	Dog, copper under set screw.
<b>Rough square shoulder (12)</b> . See p. 132.	2d or 3d speed, or 25 F.P.M. Hand feed.	Side tool 35° rake, rule.
<b>Finish turn (grind tool)</b> , to $\frac{3}{4}$ ", (13), one cut.	3d speed, or 50 F.P.M. Fine power feed — 140 to 1".	Diamond-point tool 35° rake, calipers, rule.
<b>Finish square (grind tool) shoulder to length (14)</b> .	.....	Side tool 35° rake, rule.
<b>Finish turn to <math>1\frac{1}{8}</math>"</b> , (15), one cut. Turn half way, reverse and turn other half.	.....	Diamond-point tool 35° rake, calipers, rule.
<b>File to remove tool marks (16)</b> , (17).	4th speed, or 175 F.P.M., or speed lathe, 3d or 4th speed.	8" or 10" mill-bastard file, file card.
<b>Stamp name on large end.</b>	Vise, copper jaws.	$\frac{1}{8}$ " steel letters, hammer.

*Attention.* — Turn to dimensions with no allowances for filing or fitting unless reduced part (13) is to be a driving fit.

*Note.* — This handle may be nurlled or formed to suit conditions. See pp. 437, 635, 636.

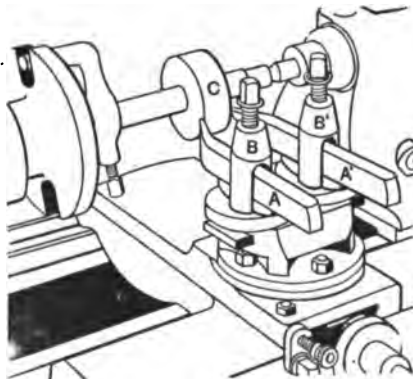
**23. Double holder.**—Fig. 24 shows a “home-made” double tool holder *A*, facing both sides of blank *B* in one operation.



**FIG. 24.**—FACING GEAR BLANK WITH DOUBLE HOLDER AND CUTTERS. Cutters *C*, *C'* are adjusted to cut as desired, then clamped by screws *D*, *D'*.

For duplicate pieces, clamp lathe carriage and use index pointer on mandrel press to locate blank on mandrel.

**24. Two forged tools for facing.**—Two bent tools *A*



**FIG. 25.**—FACING GEAR BLANK WITH TWO FORGED TOOLS.

and *A'*, Fig. 25, held in two tool-posts *B* and *B'* or by a bolt and strap, may be used to face the sides of gear blank *C*.

CUTTING-OFF TOOLS

25. Cutting-off tool. — Fig. 26 shows a cutting-off tool for all metals. A is its top face. For clearance it is made

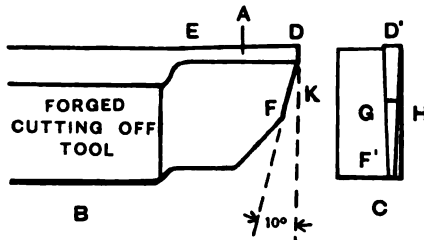


FIG. 26. — CUTTING-OFF TOOL FOR ALL METALS.

wider at the point, as shown. For steel or wrought iron a lubricant must be used, and the tool is often given front rake. For cast iron or brass the tool is used dry. The cutting speed is the same as for rough turning.

Cutting-off stock. — The tool is used close to the chuck jaws, as in Fig. 27, and should never be used to cut off stock

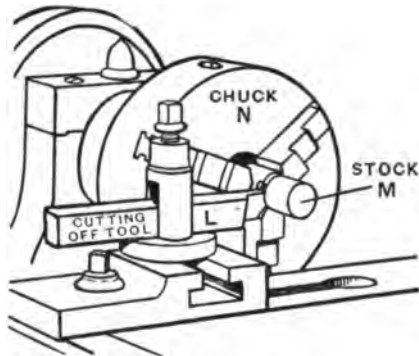


FIG. 27. — CUTTING-OFF STOCK IN ENGINE LATHE.

more than one diameter of stock away from chuck jaws lest it catch and break and also strain the chuck. Do not attempt to sever stock completely, as in Fig. 28, but finish cutting with a chisel or hack saw. Fig. 29 shows an offset cutting-off tool holder and cutter.

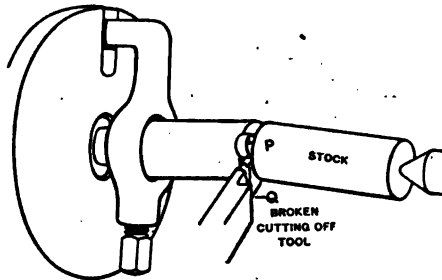


FIG. 28. — HOW TO BREAK A CUTTING-OFF TOOL.

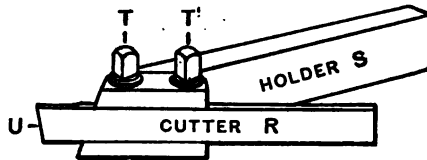


FIG. 29. — CUTTING-OFF TOOL HOLDER AND CUTTER.

26. To prepare two shaft blanks, one to turn and file running and driving fits (Fig. 30), and one to grind running and forcing fits (Fig. 31).

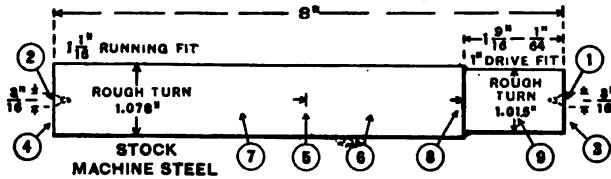


FIG. 30. — PREPARING SHAFT BLANK FOR TURNING AND FILING FITS SCHEDULE DRAWING.

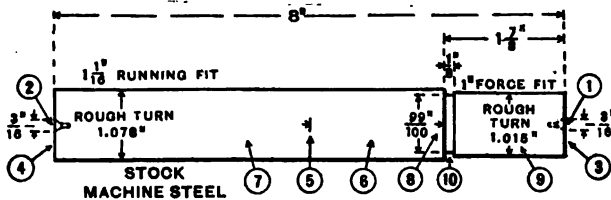


FIG. 31. — PREPARING SHAFT BLANK FOR GRINDING FITS. SCHEDULE DRAWING.

**Specifications:** Material, machine steel  $\frac{1}{8}$ " to  $\frac{1}{2}$ " large; weight, 2 lb. 10 oz. each. Machine dry, or use lard oil.

Hardness, 15 to 16 (sclerescoper).

True live center. Set dead center in approximate alinement, see p. 116.

High-speed steel or stellite cutting tools. See *Exception*, p. 205.

**Time:** Study drawing and schedule in advance, 5 min. — Oil lathe, 4 min. — Center and square both shafts, 28 min. — Rough turn both shafts, 30 min. — (Center and square one shaft, 15 min. — Rough turn one shaft, 16 min.) Clean lathe, 3 min.

### MULTIPLE SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS, MACHINES AND TOOLS

OPERATIONS.	MACHINES, SPEEDS. FEEDS.	TOOLS.
Center (1), (2), Fig. 30 and (1), (2), Fig. 31 to $\frac{1}{16}$ ".	Centering machine. Drill speed, 1200 R.P.M. Counter-sink speed, 500 R.P.M.	$\frac{3}{16}$ " or No. 43 drill, 60° countersink, lard oil.
Rough square (3), (3), then (4), (4) to $8\frac{1}{4}$ ".	Engine lathe, 12" to 16". 2d or 3d speed, or 50 F.P.M. Hand or power feed.	Dog, side tool or holder and cutter, 35° rake, calipers, rule.
Recenter to $\frac{1}{16}$ " and finish square (3), (3), then (4), (4).	3d or 4th speed, or 80 F.P.M. Hand or power feed.	
Mark lines approximately equidistant from ends, (5), (5). Rough turn to 1.078" (6), (6). Reverse and turn (7), (7). One or two cuts.	2d or 3d speed, or 60 F.P.M. Coarse power feed — 40 to 1".	Two dogs with copper, diamond-point tool or holder and cutter, 35° rake, micrometer.
Mark lines at (8), (8).		Copper sulphate, rule, scriber.
Rough turn (9), (9) to (8), (8). One cut.	2d or 3d speed, or 60 F.P.M. Coarse power feed — 40 to 1".	
Cut recess to $\frac{1}{16}$ " diameter, (10).	1st or 2d speed, or 30 F.P.M. Hand feed.	Cutting-off tool corners rounded, lard oil, calipers, rule.
To grind fits, see p. 716. To turn and file fits, see pp. 316, 317.		

27. To turn and file 1" drive fit, (10), (11), Fig. 32.

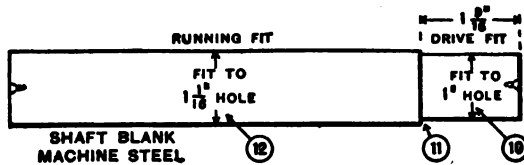


FIG. 32. — SCHEDULE DRAWING.

Specifications: Material, shaft blank machine steel, rough turned 1.015" diameter. Hardness, 15 to 16 (scleroscope). Machine dry, or use lard oil.

High-speed steel or stellite cutting tools. See *Exception*, p. 205.

Time: Study drawing and schedule in advance, 3 min. — Oil lathe, 4 min. — True live center. Set lathe straight, rough and finish turn, file and fit, 25 min. (With blank prepared.) — Clean lathe, 3 min. — Total, 35 min. (Preparation of blank, 31 min. extra.)

### SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS, MACHINES AND TOOLS

OPERATIONS.	MACHINES, SPEEDS, FEEDS.	TOOLS.
TO MAKE FIT BY TRIAL AND CORRECTION, (10).		
True live center. Set dead center in accurate alignment to turn straight using this shaft or trial piece the same length, pp. 116, 117.	Engine lathe, 12", 15" to 16". 3d or 4th speed, or 70 F.P.M. Fine power feed — 140 to 1".	Dog, copper, diamond-point tool, or holder and cutter, 35° rake, micrometer.
Push mandrel into reamed hole in work (flange or gear). Set calipers to large end close to work. Take several light cuts about 1/4" in length until calipers fit work slightly harder than on mandrel.	3d or 4th speed, or 70 F.P.M. Fine power feed — 140 to 1".	1" mandrel, diamond-point tool, or holder and cutter, 35° rake, calipers, oil-stone.
Hold work in vise. Oil shaft and press into large end of hole. When it enters from 1/4" to 3/8" with hand pressure, continue cut to shoulder.	Vise.	Copper jaws.
Square shoulder, (11).	3d or 4th speed, or 70 F.P.M. Hand feed.	Side tool, rule.
File small portion at end. Clean, oil, and press into hole. Continue filing sparingly and testing until shaft will enter hole one-third length of fit. Keyways are cut and key fitted before shaft is pressed or driven to shoulder.	Engine lathe, 4th speed, or speed lathe, 1st or 2d speed, or 175 F.P.M.	8" or 10" mill bastard file, file card, lard oil.

*Attention.* — Hand pressure means grasping dog with both hands, and pressing shaft hard into hole with a right rotation. A left rotation will remove it. After each trial, the brightness of the surface and testing with calipers will indicate where to file. This is often called a wringing fit.

**28. To make 1" drive fit by allowance, Fig. 32.**

Turn to {	1.003"	.....	} Micrometer.
	1.004"	.....	
	and		
File to {	1.00125"	.....	} .....
	1.00100"	.....	
See Belt-power Forcing Press, p. 220			

**29. To turn and file 1 <sup>1</sup>/<sub>16</sub>" running fit by allowance, (12), Fig. 32.**

*Specifications:* Material, shaft-blank, machine steel, rough-turned 1.078" diameter. Hardness 15 to 16 (scleroscope).

*High-speed steel or stellite cutting tools. See Exception, p. 206.*

*Time:* Study drawing and schedule in advance, 3 min. — Oil lathe, 4 min. — True live center. Set lathe straight, rough and finish turn, file and fit, 42 min. (With blank prepared.) — Clean lathe, 3 min. — Total, 52 min. (Preparation of blank, 31 min. extra.)

**SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS, MACHINES AND TOOLS**

OPERATIONS.	MACHINES, SPEEDS, FEEDS.	TOOLS.
True live center. Set dead center in accurate alignment to turn straight using this shaft or trial piece the same length, pp. 116, 117.	Engine lathe 15" or 16". 3d or 4th speed, or 70 F.P.M. Fine power feed—140 to 1".	Dog, copper, diamond-point tool, or holder and cutter, 35° rake, micrometer.
Grind and oilstone tool. Take light cuts at end about <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> " in length until work measures { 1.0650" { 1.0645"	3d or 4th speed, or 70 F. P. M. Fine power feed—140 to 1".	Diamond-point tool, or holder and cutter 35° rake, oilstone.
Take cut from end to end by reversing work, one cut. File over entire surface to erase tool marks and until work measures { 1.0620" { 1.0615", (12).	Engine lathe 4th speed, or speed lathe, 2d or 3d speed, or 175 F. P. M.	8" or 10" mill bastard file, file card, micrometer.



## THREADING OR SCREW CUTTING

**30. Forms of threads.** — There are four common forms of threads: the Sharp V, Fig. 33; the United States Standard, Fig. 34; the Square, see p. 510, and the Acme Standard or

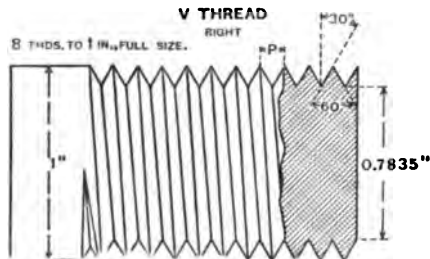


FIG. 33. — SECTIONAL VIEW OF SHARP V THREAD.

29° thread, see p. 521. The Whitworth (English) Standard thread, Fig. 55, is very little used in the United States. It is standard in Great Britain for coarse pitches. The British Association Standard thread is standard for fine pitches. It

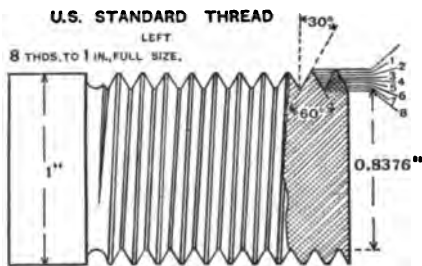


FIG. 34. — SECTIONAL VIEW OF U. S. S. THREAD.

is similar in form to the Whitworth, but the angle is  $47\frac{1}{2}$  degrees. The International and French Standard threads, used with the Metric system in some foreign countries, are based on the same formulas as the United States Standard thread. See pp. 337, 351.

**31. Right and left screw threads.** — A right screw, Fig. 33, enters its nut when rotated to the right (clockwise). A

left screw, Fig. 34, is the reverse. Screws are supposed to be right-threaded unless designated left.

**32. Uses of different threads.** — A right Sharp V or United States Standard thread is used to fasten parts together. A left thread is also used to fasten parts together, but only where a rotary motion would loosen a right thread as the nut on the near side of a wagon axle. The Square and  $29^\circ$  threads both right and left, are used to transmit motion.

**33. Method of threading screws and nuts.** — Screws for fine machine parts are threaded in a lathe. Bolts, studs, and screws are threaded with dies by power and by hand. See Dies, *Principles of Machine Work*.

**34. Lead screws, taps, and worm screws** may be milled with a thread milling machine.

**35. Small nuts** are threaded with a tap by hand or power;

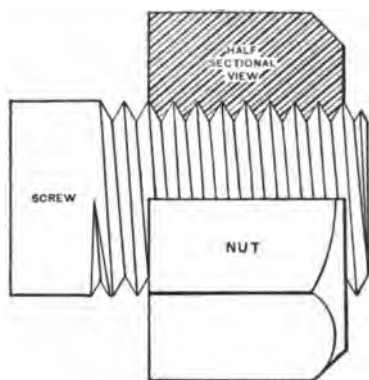


FIG. 35. — SCREW AND NUT.

large nuts are usually threaded in a lathe. Fig. 35 shows a screw and section of nut.

**36. Rolled threads**, produced by rolling the material between moving dies, are used on stove bolts, carriage bolts, some machine screws, etc.

**37. Single and multiple threads.** — Ordinary screws are single threaded, but for special purposes screws are double threaded, triple threaded, etc. Examine the end of the screw;

if only the end of one thread and one groove is found, it is single threaded, etc. See Multiple Threads, p. 531.

38. The pitch of a thread is the distance along the axis of the work from the center of one thread to the center of the next, as  $P$ , Fig. 33.

39. The lead of a thread is the distance the screw advances in one revolution. In a single thread, the pitch is equal to the lead; in a double thread, the pitch is one-half the lead, etc.

40. Threads or pitches per inch signify the number of threads contained in one inch in length. For example, for  $\frac{1}{16}$ " pitch we have 10 threads per 1" (often called 10 P).

41. The diameter of threaded work is measured over the tops of the threads, as 1", Fig. 33.

42. The root or bottom diameter is measured at the root or bottom of groove, as .7835", Fig. 33.

43. Thread calipers, Fig. 36, may be used to test the diameter of Sharp V, United States Standard or 29° thread

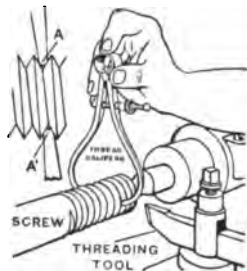


FIG. 36. — CALIPERING SCREW WITH THREAD CALIPERS.

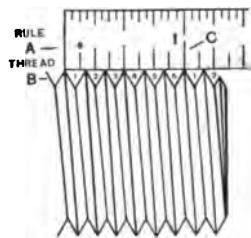


FIG. 37. — COUNTING THREADS WITH STEEL RULE.

screws. As the fit is on the sides only the points are filed to fit the thread gage and are left truncated as at  $A$  and  $A'$  to avoid touching the bottom. The calipers are set to size by means of a thread gage, tap, or screw.

For accurate work, the screw is cut nearly to size of calipers and the final test is made by trying screw in the nut or work.

44. To count threads. — Place rule  $A$  on thread  $B$ , Fig. 37, count grooves in one inch. To count Square and 29°

threads, place the end of rule against the right edge of one of the threads and count the spaces to the right. For double threads, triple threads, etc., count all the spaces and divide by 2, 3, etc., respectively.

A screw-pitch gage *A*, Fig. 38, is used to determine number of threads to one inch on a screw or in a nut. Handle *A*

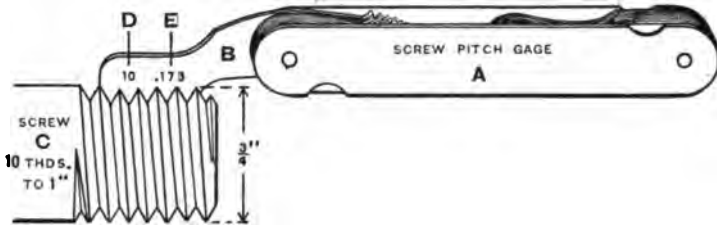


FIG. 38. — COUNTING THREADS WITH SCREW-PITCH GAGE.

contains many blades notched with all the ordinary threads to one inch. To determine number of threads to one inch, as at *C*, select by trial a blade that will match thread, and the number at *D* on blade, as 10, gives number of threads to one inch on screw. Decimal *E* is the double depth of a Sharp V thread of this pitch.

45. The Sharp V thread, Fig. 39. — The single depth for a 1" pitch thread is .866", double depth 1.732". For pitch *P*, depth = .866 *P* = *D*. Double depth = 1.732 *P*.

$$P = \text{pitch} = \frac{1}{\text{No. of threads per inch}}$$

Root diameter = Outside diameter - double depth.

Formula: — Root diameter = Outside diameter -

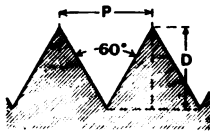


FIG. 39. — SECTION SHOWING PITCH AND DEPTH OF SHARP V THREAD.

$$\frac{1.732}{\text{No. of threads per inch}}$$

Example. — To find root diameter of a screw 1" diameter, 8 threads per 1".

Solution.—  $1 - \frac{1.732}{8} = .7835$ .

46. Table of Sharp V-thread screws.

DIAM-ETER OF SCREW.	NO. THREADS PER INCH.	DIAM-ETER OF SCREW.	NO. THREADS PER INCH.	DIAM-ETER OF SCREW.	NO. THREADS PER INCH.
$\frac{1}{8}$	20	$1\frac{1}{8}$	6	$3\frac{1}{8}$	$3\frac{1}{2}$
$\frac{1}{16}$	18	$1\frac{1}{4}$	6	$3\frac{1}{4}$	$3\frac{1}{4}$
$\frac{3}{16}$	16	$1\frac{3}{8}$	5	$3\frac{3}{8}$	$3\frac{1}{4}$
$\frac{1}{4}$	14	$1\frac{1}{2}$	5	$3\frac{1}{2}$	$3\frac{1}{4}$
$\frac{5}{16}$	12	$1\frac{3}{4}$	$4\frac{1}{2}$	$3\frac{1}{2}$	3
$\frac{3}{8}$	12	2	$4\frac{1}{2}$	$3\frac{1}{2}$	3
$\frac{7}{16}$	11	$2\frac{1}{8}$	$4\frac{1}{2}$	4	3
$\frac{1}{2}$	11	$2\frac{1}{4}$	$4\frac{1}{2}$	$4\frac{1}{4}$	$2\frac{7}{8}$
$\frac{9}{16}$	10	$2\frac{3}{8}$	$4\frac{1}{2}$	$4\frac{1}{2}$	$2\frac{3}{4}$
$\frac{5}{8}$	10	$2\frac{1}{2}$	4	$4\frac{3}{8}$	$2\frac{3}{4}$
$\frac{3}{4}$	9	$2\frac{3}{4}$	4	5	$2\frac{1}{2}$
$\frac{7}{8}$	9	$2\frac{7}{8}$	4	$5\frac{1}{4}$	$2\frac{1}{2}$
1	8	$2\frac{1}{2}$	4	$5\frac{1}{2}$	$2\frac{3}{8}$
$1\frac{1}{8}$	7	3	$3\frac{1}{2}$	$5\frac{1}{2}$	$2\frac{3}{8}$
$1\frac{1}{4}$	7	3	$3\frac{1}{2}$	6	$2\frac{1}{2}$

For Diameter of Tap Drills for Sharp V Threads, see *Principles of Machine Work*.

47. The United States Standard thread, Fig. 40, has its top and bottom truncated by  $\frac{1}{8}$  of the depth, shown by divisions 1, 2, 3, etc., Fig. 34. The single depth of a 1" pitch is .6495, double depth is 1.299". For pitch  $P$ , depth = .6495  $P = D$ . Double depth = 1.299  $P$ .

$$P = \text{pitch} = \frac{1}{\text{No. of threads per inch}};$$

Root diameter = Outside diameter - double depth.

*Formula.* — Root diameter = Outside diameter -

$$\frac{1.299}{\text{No. of threads per inch}}$$

$$F = \text{Flat} = \frac{P}{8}.$$

*Example.* — To find root diameter of a screw 1" diameter, 8 threads per 1".

*Solution.* —  $1 - \frac{1.299}{8} = .8376"$

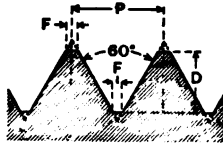


FIG. 40. — SECTION SHOWING PITCH AND DEPTH OF U. S. S. THREAD.

48. Table of United States Standard thread screws.

DIAM-ETER OF SCREW.	NO. THREADS PER INCH.	DIAM-ETER OF SCREW.	NO. THREADS PER INCH.	DIAM-ETER OF SCREW.	NO. THREADS PER INCH.
$\frac{1}{8}$	20	$1\frac{1}{8}$	$5\frac{1}{2}$	$3\frac{1}{8}$	$3\frac{1}{2}$
$\frac{1}{16}$	18	$1\frac{1}{4}$	5	$3\frac{1}{2}$	$3\frac{1}{2}$
$\frac{3}{16}$	16	$1\frac{1}{2}$	5	$3\frac{3}{8}$	$3\frac{1}{2}$
$\frac{1}{4}$	14	2	$4\frac{1}{2}$	$3\frac{3}{8}$	3
$\frac{5}{16}$	13	$2\frac{1}{8}$	$4\frac{1}{2}$	$3\frac{7}{8}$	3
$\frac{3}{8}$	12	$2\frac{1}{4}$	$4\frac{1}{2}$	4	3
$\frac{7}{16}$	11	$2\frac{3}{8}$	4	$4\frac{1}{4}$	$2\frac{1}{2}$
$\frac{1}{2}$	10	$2\frac{1}{2}$	4	$4\frac{1}{2}$	$2\frac{1}{2}$
$\frac{5}{8}$	9	$2\frac{3}{4}$	4	$4\frac{3}{4}$	$2\frac{1}{2}$
1	8	$2\frac{7}{8}$	4	5	$2\frac{1}{2}$
$1\frac{1}{8}$	7	$2\frac{1}{2}$	$3\frac{1}{2}$	$5\frac{1}{4}$	$2\frac{1}{2}$
$1\frac{1}{4}$	7	3	$3\frac{1}{2}$	$5\frac{1}{2}$	$2\frac{1}{2}$
$1\frac{3}{8}$	6	$3\frac{1}{4}$	$3\frac{1}{2}$	$5\frac{3}{4}$	$2\frac{1}{2}$
$1\frac{1}{2}$	6	$3\frac{1}{2}$	$3\frac{1}{2}$	6	$2\frac{1}{2}$

For Diameter of Tap Drills for U. S. S. Thread, see *Principles of Machine Work*.

49. The forged threading tool, Fig. 41, is forged, hardened, and then tempered to a light straw color. The clearance at *F D E* is 15°, and the cutting edges are *GH* and *JK*.

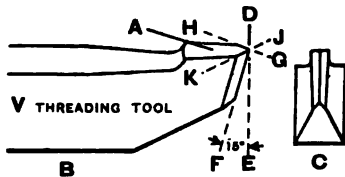


FIG. 41. — SHAPE OF SHARP V-THREADING TOOL.

The top is ground first and then the front faces are ground to fit center gage and the top is then set at height of center, as shown in Figs. 42, 43 at *L*, *M*, *N* and *S*.

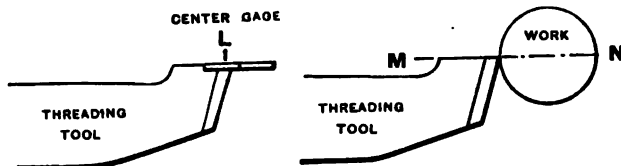


FIG. 42. — SETTING THREADING TOOL WITH CENTER GAGE AND TO HEIGHT OF CENTERS.

50. To set threading tool at height of center and at right angles to work. Fig. 43.

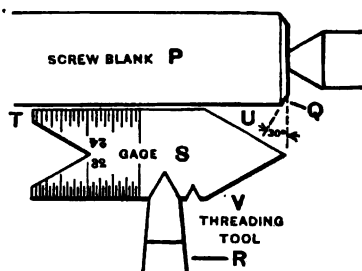


FIG. 43. — SETTING U. S. STANDARD OR SHARP V-THREADING TOOL AT RIGHT ANGLES WITH WORK.

#### SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Turn work <i>P</i> to diameter.                               | 5. Hold gage <i>S</i> as shown.  |
| 2. Chamfer end <i>Q</i> depth of proposed thread.                | Adjust cross feed.   |
| 3. Clamp tool <i>R</i> lightly with point 2" from tool-post.     | 6. Rap tool around until edge <i>TU</i> is parallel to work and about $\frac{1}{4}$ " from it. |
| 4. Adjust point to height of dead center ( <i>MN</i> , Fig. 42). | 7. Clamp tool firmly.  |

51. Threading taper work. — Preferably use a taper attachment to cut a thread of correct pitch, as on pipe tap *A*, Fig. 44, as footstock "set over" will produce a thread slightly finer.

Set thread tool  $90^\circ$  to the axis of work as at *B*, not as at *C*. Thread tool *D* with gage *E* against shank as at *F* is correct.

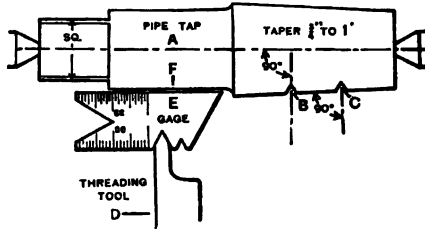


FIG. 44. — SETTING TOOL TO THREAD TAPER WORK.

52. A special threading tool that may be used straight or bent to thread to a shoulder, is shown in Fig. 45.

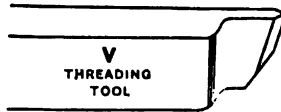


FIG. 45. — THREADING TOOL TO CUT TO SHOULDER.

53. United States Standard threading tool. — The United States Standard thread is cut with a V tool, *A*, Fig. 46,



FIG. 46. — SHAPE OF U. S. S. THREADING TOOL BEFORE TRUNCATING.



FIG. 47. — SHAPE OF U. S. S. THREADING TOOL.



truncated at point *B*, Fig. 47,  $\frac{1}{8}$  depth of thread, which varies for every pitch. It is ground to fit notch *A* in U. S. S. thread gage, Fig. 48, then truncated at point to fit notch which corresponds with the threads to be cut, 8, Fig. 48. The tool is set the same as a Sharp V-thread tool.

*Attention.* — This thread is displacing the Sharp V thread.

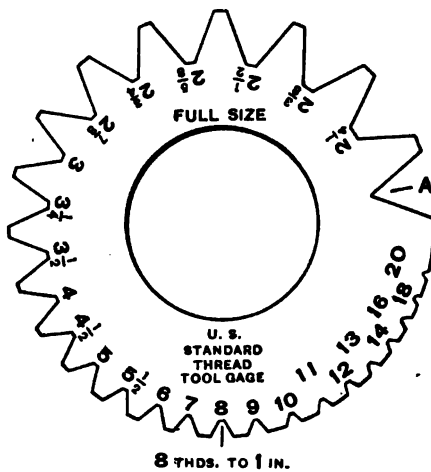


FIG. 48. — GAGE FOR U. S. S. THREAD TOOL.

**54. The theory of screw cutting in the engine lathe.** — To thread a screw in a lathe, the threading tool is moved along the bed a positive and uniform amount for each revolution of the lathe spindle. This motion is obtained by means of a train of change gears which connect the lathe spindle to the lead screw, and by half nuts in the apron which connect the lead screw to the carriage.

On most lathes the first change gear is on a separate shaft called the stud. On some lathes this stud is geared to rotate at the same speed as lathe spindle, and on others at a different ratio.

Ordinary screws may be cut with simple gearing, — two change gears as in Fig. 50. See also Compound Gearing, p. 333.

**55.** To calculate simple gearing with spindle gear 1 to stud gear 1:

$$\frac{\text{Lead screw threads per inch} \times \text{constant}}{\text{Threads per inch to be cut} \times \text{constant}} = \frac{\text{teeth in gear on stud}}{\text{teeth in gear on lead screw}}$$

The *constant* may be the common difference in number of teeth between the consecutive change gears, and this or any multiplier may be used to obtain available gears.

**56.** *Example.* — To cut 13 threads to 1". Lead screw 5 threads to 1"; speed spindle same as stud; constant, 5.

$$\text{Solution. — } \frac{5 \times 5}{13 \times 5} = \frac{25}{65} \text{ (gear on stud.)}$$

$$\frac{5 \times 5}{13 \times 5} = \frac{25}{65} \text{ (gear on lead screw).}$$

*Attention.* — For stud ratios other than 1 to 1, multiply threads per inch of lead screw by ratio of the stud gear to the spindle gear and proceed as before.

**57.** *Example.* — To cut 13 threads to 1" spindle gear 1 to stud gear 2, Fig. 50. Lead screw 8 threads per inch; constant, 6; speed of stud is one-half speed of spindle.

$$\text{Solution. — } \frac{8 \times 2 \times 6}{13 \times 6} = \frac{96}{78} \text{ (gear on stud.)}$$

$$\frac{8 \times 2 \times 6}{13 \times 6} = \frac{96}{78} \text{ (gear on lead screw.)}$$

58. To prepare screw and nut blanks and to practice screw cutting, Fig. 49.

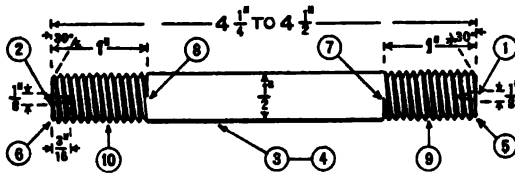


FIG. 49. — SCHEDULE DRAWING.

**Specifications:** Material, machine steel  $\frac{1}{8}$ " large; weight, 6 oz.

Hardness, 12 to 14 (scleroscope). Carbon-steel cutting tools.

If high-speed steel, or stellite cutting tools are used the speed may be increased. See *Exception*, p. 205.

**Time:** Study drawing and schedule in advance, 5 min. — Oil lathe, 4 min. — Prepare screw blank, 15 min. — Tap and square nut, 8 min. — "Set up" lathe for screw cutting, 6 min. — Thread one end, 7 min. — Thread the other end, 6 min. — Remove gears and clean lathe, 5 min. — Total, 56 min.

#### SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS, MACHINES AND TOOLS

OPERATIONS.	MACHINES, SPEEDS, FEEDS.	TOOLS.
File ends flat.	Vise.	10" or 12" bastard file.
Center (1), (2).	Centering machine, drill 1700 R.P.M., countersink 600 R.P.M.	$\frac{1}{8}$ " drill, 60° countersink, rule, lard oil.
Omit squaring. See that live center is nearly true and dead center in approximate alinement. See p. 116.	Engine lathe, 12" to 16".	
Rough turn to $\frac{1}{2}$ " + $\frac{1}{32}$ ", (3), one cut. Turn half way, reverse, and turn other half.	3d speed, or 30 F.P.M. Medium power feed — 80 to 1".	Dog, diamond-point tool 35° rake, calipers, rule.
Finish turn to $\frac{1}{8}$ ", (4), one cut. Turn half way, reverse and turn other half.	3d or 4th speed, or 50 F.P.M. Fine power feed — 140 to 1".	

Chamfer ends to 30° approximately (5), (6). Fig. 43 and p. 341.	.....	Side tool 35° rake, center gage.
Draw lines 1" from each end for length of thread (7), (8).	Vise, copper jaws.	Copper sulphate, scriber, rule.
Tap nut blank. Hole in 1/2" nut blank is punched 1/8". See <i>Principles of Machine Work</i> .	Vise.	1/2 × 13 U. S. S. tap, tap wrench, lard oil.
Square both sides of nut to 7/8", p. 340.	Engine lathe, 3d speed, or 50 F.P.M. Hand feed.	Nut mandrel, side tool 35° rake, calipers, rule.
Thread (9) and (10) to fit nut. See pp. 318-327, 329-332.	Arrange gears for 13 threads. 1st speed, or 20 F.P.M.	13 pitch U. S. S. thread tool, U. S. S. thread gage, center gage, clamp nut, lard oil.

*Attention.* — A student should learn screw cutting by threading blank ends until he can stop cut at same place every time without breaking point of tool and ruining work; also, until he can cut a smooth thread and make good fit in nut.

**59. Description of screw-cutting mechanism, Fig. 50.**

A — Gear on spindle.	L — Stud.
B — Spindle.	M — Radial arm.
C — Gear driven by one or both idle gears.	N — Bolt to clamp M so that F drives through KH to G.
D & D' — Idlers for reversing.	P — Reversing lever; shifts bracket for cutting right or left threads.
E — Stud driven by C.	Q — Bracket carrying D and D'.
F — Stud gear.	
G — Lead screw.	
H — Lead-screw gear.	
K — Idler gear, loose on stud.	

*Exception.* — On lathes that do not have reversing gears D and D', use two idlers to cut a left thread.

## 60. To set up lathe for threading or screw cutting. Fig. 50.

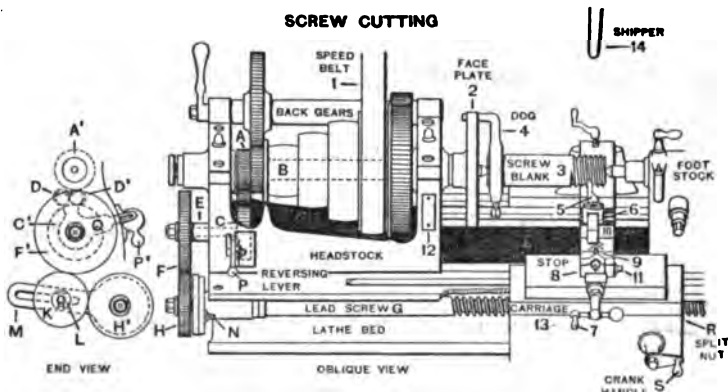


FIG. 50. — LATHE SET UP FOR THREADING U. S. S. OR SHARP V THREAD—SIMPLE GEARING—TWO GEARS AND AN IDLER GEAR.

### SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS AND TOOLS

#### CHANGE OF GEARS, THREADING TOOL, CENTER GAGE, OIL BOX (TIN)

- I. Place belt on step 1, screw face plate 2 hard against shoulder.
- II. On blank 3, fasten dog 4 and mark with chalk the place in face plate where dog is inserted. (Always return dog to marked slot or tool will not resume its cut.)
- III. Grind tool 5 to form of thread desired, U. S. S. or Sharp V, fasten tool in post 6, and set with gage, see p. 140 and Figs. 41-43.
- IV. Feed tool in with handle 7 until it touches work, put on thread stop 8 with screw 9 in slide 10. Bring stop 8 against shoulder of 9 and clamp with screw 11.
- V. Set footstock to allow  $\frac{1}{2}$ " travel of tool beyond work.
- VI. From index plate obtain gears for 13 threads and arrange as  $FF'$  and  $HH'$ .
- VII. Select gear  $K$  for idler. Preferably a gear nearly the size of one of the change gears.
- VIII. Place stud gear  $F$  on stud  $E$ , lead-screw gear  $H$  on  $G$ .
- IX. Place gear  $K$  on stud  $L$ , in radial arm  $M$ , oil stud.
- X. Adjust mesh of  $H$  and  $K$  and clamp in position.
- XI. Swing radial arm  $M$ , to mesh  $K$  with  $F$  and clamp with bolt  $N$ .
- XII. Be certain that friction feed is out before throwing in screw feed.
- XIII. Connect lead screw to carriage 13 by handle  $S$  operating split nut  $R$ . Place tin box under tool to catch chips and drippings.

**61. To operate lathe to cut the thread.**

**SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS**

<p>I. Push shipper 14 toward headstock, adjust stop screw 9 and move tool 5 to trace a light line; stop lathe before tool reaches end of thread.</p> <p>II. Finish length of thread by pulling belt by hand, the first time only.</p> <p>III. Move tool out from work. Run carriage back. Adjust thread stop screw 9 to take cut.</p> <p>IV. Count threads, Fig. 51.</p>	<p>Terminate cut by power by easing tool out when about <math>\frac{1}{4}</math> revolution from end of cut, or point of tool will snap off.</p> <p>V. Stop lathe and reverse immediately.</p> <p>VI. During return, lubricate work freely with lard oil and adjust stop screw 9 for next cut.</p> <p>VII. Feed tool inward.</p> <p>VIII. Start lathe forward and repeat.</p>
--	---

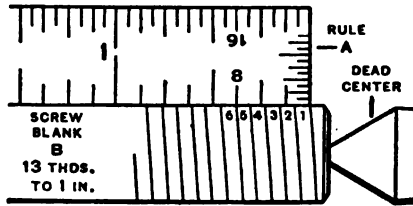


FIG. 51. — COUNTING THE TRACE OF A THREAD.

*Attention.* — The cutting speed for threading is about one-half to two-thirds that used for turning. The feed must be sufficient to allow tool to cut, for if tool is allowed to travel in groove without cutting, it will burnish and harden sides of thread so that on next cut the tool will be likely to dig in and tear the thread.

Oilstone top face of tool just before taking last few light cuts.

**62. Number of cuts for U. S. S. thread, 13 P.** — Take 8 cuts of .005" each, 2 cuts of .002" each, then 1 cut of .001"; clean, oil, and test in nut, and repeat until screw fits nut. Depth of thread when outside diameter is not reduced = .0499".

**63. Number of cuts for Sharp V thread, 13 P.** — Take 10 cuts .005" each, 2 cuts .002" each, then 1 cut of .001"; clean,

oil, and test in nut, and repeat until screw fits nut. Depth of thread when reduced  $\frac{1}{4}$ " in diameter = .0588".

**64. To fit thread to nut.** See p. 320. — Take light cuts as the thread approaches size, and after each cut clean and oil thread and try nut on. If a close fit is required, cut thread until nut will go on easily with a wrench. This smooths down the burr, after which the nut may go on with the fingers. For a hard fit, force nut on with a wrench. For a loose fit, cut the thread until the nut will go on with the fingers. After thread is fitted, chamfer the end to the depth and angle of the thread and file tops of thread slightly to remove burr.

**65. To reset threading tool to resume cut.** — If the tool is dull and thread is only partly cut, remove the tool, regrind and reset. If the end that receives the dog is cylindrical, loosen the dog, and rotate the work until tool fits the groove. Refasten the dog and feed tool away from work, run the lathe forward a few revolutions, by hand, to take up back-lash; now notice if tool and groove match; if they do not, repeat operation. If end of work is square or hexagonal, as a bolt head, and driven by a clamp dog, disconnect lead screw from lathe spindle by reversing lever in headstock, or by removing stud gear, then adjust work.

**66. To cut left threads.** — Arrange gears as in cutting right threads, with the exception that the lead screw must rotate in opposite direction which is accomplished by the reversing gears *D*, *D'*, Fig. 50, or by an extra idler. At beginning of thread, cut a groove in which to start tool, and begin at left and cut to right.

**67. To thread to shoulder or to terminate coarse thread.** — Cut groove or drill hole of diameter and depth equal to depth and width of thread. See pp. 510, 511, 521.

**68. Fractional threads.** — A fractional thread is one whose threads per inch are expressed by a mixed number, as  $11\frac{1}{2}$  threads to 1"; or a fraction, as  $\frac{3}{4}$  of a thread to 1" ( $1\frac{1}{3}$ " *P*).

**To count fractional threads.** — Take any number of threads

that will match with even inches on the rule, then divide the number of threads by the number of inches.

**69. To calculate simple gearing to cut fractional threads.** — Proceed as for whole threads.

*Example.* — To cut  $11\frac{1}{2}$  threads per inch (1" pipe tap). Lead screw 5 threads per inch; constant, 4; speed of stud same as speed of spindle.

$$\frac{5 \times 4}{11\frac{1}{2} \times 4} = \frac{20}{46} \text{ (gear on stud.)}$$

$$\frac{20}{46} = \frac{10}{23} \text{ (gear on lead screw.)}$$

**70. Compound gearing.** — To cut fine or coarse threads that are not obtainable with simple gearing, compound the gearing, using 4 gears, Fig. 52.

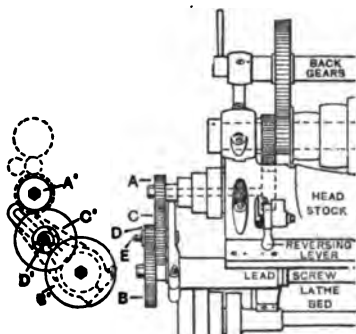


FIG. 52. — COMPOUND GEARING FOR THREADING, — FOUR GEARS.

To compound on some lathes, introduce between regular stud gear *A* and lead screw gear *B* two gears of different diameters, as *C* and *D*, which are feather keyed on a sleeve that runs freely on intermediate stud *E*, gear *A* driving gear *C*, and gear *D* driving gear *B*. The arrangement of gears is shown in end view at *A'*, *C'*, *D'*, and *B'*.

**71. To calculate compound gearing.** — Factor first term into two fractions and treat each separately.

*Example.* — To cut 60 threads per inch.

Lead screw 6 threads per inch; speed of stud same as speed



of spindle; constant, select multiple of 5, the common difference between gears.

$$\text{Solution.} \quad \frac{6}{60} = \frac{2 \times 3}{5 \times 12} \cdot \frac{2 \times 20}{5 \times 20} = \frac{40}{100} \cdot \frac{3 \times 10}{12 \times 10} = \frac{30}{120}$$

Gear on stud *A*, 40; gear on lead screw *B*, 120; first gear on sleeve *C*, 100; second gear on sleeve *D*, 30.

*Attention.* — If more convenient, exchange drivers *A* and *C* or driven *C* and *B*.

**72.** To calculate compound gearing for fractional threads, proceed as for whole threads.

*Example.* — To cut  $2\frac{1}{4}$  threads per inch =  $\frac{5}{2}$ .

Lead screw 2 threads per inch; speed of stud same as that of spindle; constant, multiple of 5.

$$\text{Solution.} \quad \frac{2}{\frac{5}{2}} = \frac{8}{9} = \frac{2 \times 4}{3 \times 3}$$

$$\begin{array}{l} 2 \times 25 = 50 \\ 3 \times 25 = 75 \end{array} \left. \vphantom{\begin{array}{l} 2 \times 25 = 50 \\ 3 \times 25 = 75 \end{array}} \right\} \text{one pair of gears.}$$

$$\begin{array}{l} 4 \times 15 = 60 \\ 3 \times 15 = 45 \end{array} \left. \vphantom{\begin{array}{l} 4 \times 15 = 60 \\ 3 \times 15 = 45 \end{array}} \right\} \text{other pair of gears.}$$

*Attention.* — It often happens that one or more gears have to be made or bought. If the threads per inch are expressed decimally, as 2.833 threads per inch, proceed as before, selecting such multiple as will give available gears, using the nearest whole tooth in case of resulting fractional teeth.

**73.** Result of gearing calculations may be checked as follows:

For stud ratio one: Threads on screw to be cut  $\times$  teeth of stud gear = threads on lead screw  $\times$  teeth of lead-screw gear.

For stud ratios other than one and for compound gearing: Threads on screw to be cut  $\times$  teeth of all drivers in succession = threads on lead screw  $\times$  teeth of all followers in succession.

*Example.* — p. 327  $13 \times 25 = 5 \times 65 = 325$ .

*Example.* — p. 327  $13 \times 1 \times 96 = 8 \times 2 \times 78 = 1248$ .

*Example.* — p. 334  $60 \times 1 \times 40 \times 30 = 6 \times 1 \times 100$   
 $\times 120 = 72,000$ .

**74. To calculate gearing for a given lead.** — First change to threads per inch by dividing one by the lead of screw to be cut, and proceed as before.

*Example.* — To cut screw  $\frac{3}{4}$ " lead.

Lead screw 2 threads per inch; speed of spindle same as speed of stud; constant, multiple of 5.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Solution. — } \quad \frac{1}{\frac{3}{4}} &= \frac{3}{2} \text{ (threads per inch).} \\ \frac{2}{\frac{3}{4}} &= \frac{4 \times 10}{3 \times 10} = \frac{40}{30}. \end{aligned}$$

**75. Compound gearing, ratio 2 to 1,** is provided on some lathes on an extra adjustable stud. In such cases, gears are selected as in simple gearing for one-half or twice the desired pitch, and the 2 to 1 compound arranged to double the pitch or reduce it one-half.

**76. To calculate gearing for metric screw threads with an English lead screw.** — Gear up lathe as for cutting a Sharp V screw of the same number of threads per inch and use translating gears. One centimeter equals approximately  $\frac{50}{127}$  of an inch. Provide lathe with pair of translating gears of 50 and 127 teeth. Arrange lathe as in compound gearing, Fig. 52.

*Example.* — To cut 13 threads to the centimeter.

Lead screw 5 threads per inch; speed spindle same as stud; constant, multiple of 5.

$$\text{Solution. — } \quad \frac{5 \times 5}{13 \times 5} = \frac{25}{65} \text{ (gear on stud).}$$

$\frac{25}{65}$  (gear on lead screw).

Place translating gears on feathered sleeve, meshing 50 with gear 65 and 127 with gear 25. A metric lead screw may be used for cutting English threads.

**77. Threading long screws. "Catching the thread"** (threading without backing belt). — A method to save time in cutting long screws by quick return of tool carriage after each cut by hand.

1. If thread is same as lead screw or a multiple of it, throw half-nut out at end of each cut, return carriage by hand, throw in half-nut and tool will resume its cut.

2. If screw to be cut and lead screw are odd, or odd and even, move carriage any whole number of inches.

3. If both are even, any number of half-inches.

4. If screw is fractional, as  $4\frac{1}{2}$  threads to 1", move carriage number of inches equal to denominator or multiple of denominator. To obtain this, clamp steel rule to bed or use thread indicator, Fig. 53, which is included in the equipment of new lathes.

**78. Thread indicator.** — Example: To cut long screw 5 threads to 1", using thread indicator.

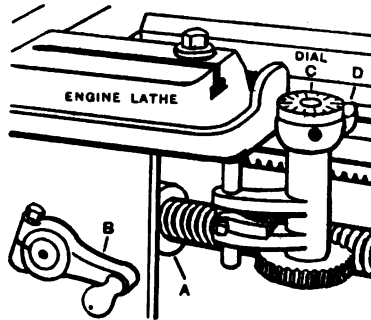


FIG. 53. — THREAD INDICATOR.

#### SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS

I. Set up lathe to cut 5 threads to 1" and adjust thread indicator to lead screw.

II. Start lathe and take one cut.

III. At end of cut withdraw tool and, without stopping lathe, throw out half-nut.

IV. Move carriage back by hand until tool is beyond end of work, then throw in half-nut *A* by handle *B* when any long line on dial *C* is at zero line *D* and take another cut.

V. Repeat this process for each cut until threading is completed.

*Attention.* — If thread indicator is used for all screw cutting, a backing belt is unnecessary. The second pulley on counter-shaft may be used for another range of forward speeds.

79. Whitworth (English) Standard thread. Figs. 54, 55. — The tops and the bottoms of the 55° threads are rounded,  $\frac{1}{8}$  of pitch, as shown by divisions 1, 2, 3, etc.

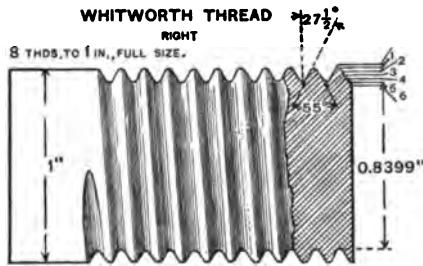


FIG. 54. — SECTIONAL VIEW OF WHITWORTH THREAD.

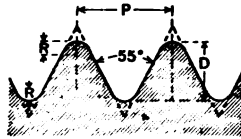


FIG. 55. — SECTION SHOWING PITCH AND DEPTH OF WHITWORTH THREAD.

The single depth of a 1" pitch is equal to .64033, and the double depth 1.28066. For pitch *P*, depth = .64033 *P* = *D*. Double depth = 1.28066 *P* = 2 *D*.

$$P = \text{pitch} = \frac{1}{\text{No. of threads to 1 inch}}$$

*R* = radius = .1373 *P*.

Root diameter = Outside diameter — double depth.

*Formula.* — Root diameter = Outside diameter —

$$\frac{1.28066}{\text{No. of threads to 1 inch}}$$

*Example.* — To find root diameter of a screw 1" diameter, 8 threads to 1".

*Solution.* —  $1 - \frac{1.28066}{8} = .8399.$

**80. Table of Whitworth (English) Standard threads.**

DIAM-ETER OF SCREW.	NO. THREADS PER INCH.	DIAM-ETER OF SCREW.	NO. THREADS PER INCH.	DIAM-ETER OF SCREW.	NO. THREADS PER INCH.
$\frac{1}{8}$	20	$1\frac{1}{8}$	6	$3\frac{1}{8}$	$3\frac{1}{8}$
$\frac{1}{4}$	18	$1\frac{1}{2}$	6	$3\frac{1}{2}$	$3\frac{1}{2}$
$\frac{3}{8}$	16	$1\frac{3}{8}$	5	$3\frac{3}{8}$	$3\frac{1}{2}$
$\frac{1}{2}$	14	$1\frac{1}{2}$	5	$3\frac{1}{2}$	$2\frac{1}{2}$
$\frac{5}{8}$	12	$1\frac{1}{2}$	$4\frac{1}{2}$	$3\frac{3}{8}$	3
$\frac{3}{4}$	12	$2\frac{1}{2}$	$4\frac{1}{2}$	$3\frac{1}{2}$	3
$\frac{7}{8}$	11	$2\frac{1}{2}$	$4\frac{1}{2}$	4	3
$1$	11	$2\frac{1}{2}$	4	$4\frac{1}{2}$	$2\frac{1}{2}$
$1\frac{1}{8}$	10	$2\frac{3}{8}$	4	$4\frac{1}{2}$	$2\frac{1}{2}$
$1\frac{1}{4}$	10	$2\frac{1}{2}$	4	$4\frac{1}{2}$	$2\frac{1}{2}$
$1\frac{3}{8}$	9	$2\frac{3}{8}$	4	5	$2\frac{1}{2}$
$1\frac{1}{2}$	9	$2\frac{1}{2}$	$3\frac{1}{2}$	$5\frac{1}{2}$	$2\frac{1}{2}$
$1\frac{3}{4}$	8	$2\frac{1}{2}$	$3\frac{1}{2}$	$5\frac{1}{2}$	$2\frac{1}{2}$
$1\frac{7}{8}$	7	3	$3\frac{1}{2}$	$5\frac{1}{2}$	$2\frac{1}{2}$
$1\frac{1}{2}$	7	$3\frac{1}{2}$	$3\frac{1}{2}$	6	$2\frac{1}{2}$

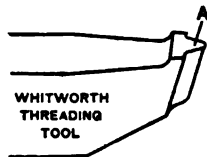


FIG. 56. — SHAPE OF WHITWORTH THREADING TOOL.

**81. The Whitworth threading tool, Fig. 56.** — A tool of different size and shape is required for each pitch. It is made similarly to a formed cutter by milling. Grind on top face A.

## BOLT AND NUT MAKING

82. The bolt and nut-making operations that follow apply to all work of this class, as bolts, studs, nuts, and screws.

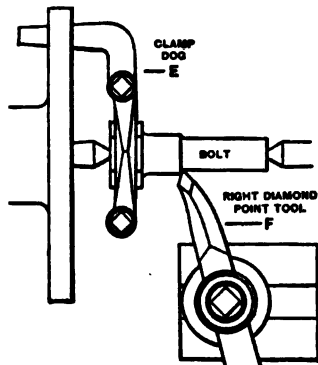


FIG. 57. — TURNING BODY OF BOLT TO HEAD.

To turn up to head of bolt, slant tool to left as at *F*, Fig. 57, and clamp tool firmly in tool-post.

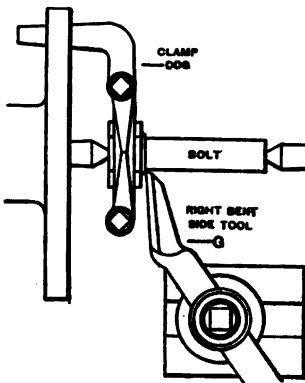


FIG. 58. — SQUARING BOLT UNDER HEAD.

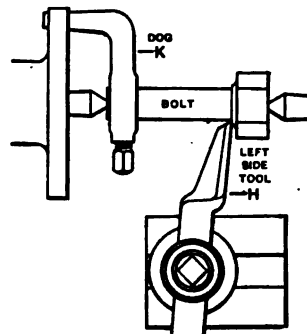


FIG. 59. — SQUARING BOLT UNDER HEAD.

To square under head, use right bent side tool *G*, Fig. 58, or left side tool *H*, Fig. 59. To drive from square or hexagonal heads use clamp or square dog *E*, Fig. 57, and to drive from stem use lathe dog *K*, Fig. 59.

**83. Nut mandrels.** — Nuts or similar pieces having tapped or threaded holes are screwed on a threaded mandrel and rough and finish squared to thickness. In Fig. 60 nut *B* is screwed on mandrel *A* against equalizing collar *C*, squared with side tool *D*, reversed and squared to thickness. It is then placed on a milling mandrel and the flats milled in a milling machine. After this it is replaced on regular nut mandrel, and side tool *E* set at 45°, as near as can be determined by the eye, and the edge chamfered as at *F* to about

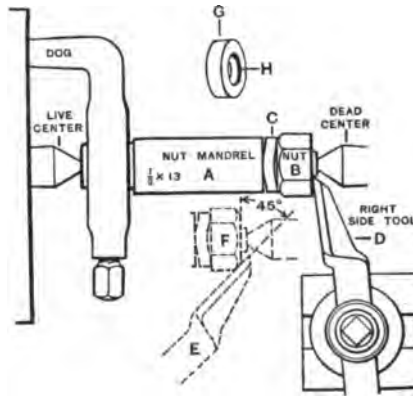


FIG. 60. — SQUARING AND CHAMFERING NUT.

$\frac{3}{32}$ " on edge of flats for  $\frac{1}{2}$ " nuts and more or less for larger and smaller sizes, to give them a neat appearance.

Instead of equalizing collar *C*, a plain collar *G* is often used, with one inside edge rounded to fit over filleted shoulder of mandrel. For ordinary work, nut mandrels are often recessed at shoulder and used without collars. Threaded mandrels, for work threaded while held in a chuck, as a face plate for a lathe or chuck, need no collar, as the work is faced true with hole while held in chuck, and this true face is screwed against the shoulder on the mandrel. See Nut Mandrel, p. 1208.

## BOLT AND NUT MAKING

**84. Chamfering bolt heads, nuts, and screws.**— A clamp nut (spring or split nut), Fig. 61, is used to protect the thread and prevent dog from bruising it.

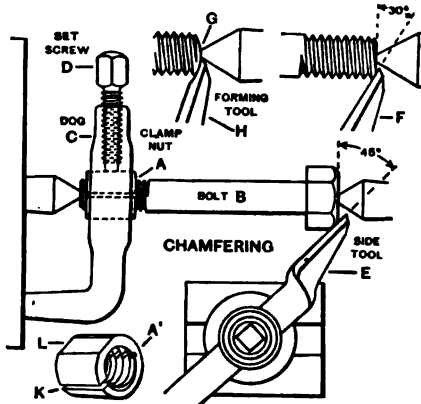


FIG. 61. — CHAMFERING AND FORMING BOLT HEAD AND POINT.

### SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS AND TOOLS

<p style="text-align: center;"><i>Bolt Heads.</i></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Place clamp nut <i>A</i> on bolt <i>B</i> and fasten dog <i>C</i> with set screw <i>D</i>.</li> <li>2. Set side tool <i>E</i> at angle of 45°, estimated.</li> <li>3. Chamfer bolt head to remove corners and give neat appearance.</li> </ol> <p style="text-align: center;"><i>Nuts.</i></p> <p>Mount nut on mandrel and</p>	<p>chamfer same as bolts. See <i>E, F</i>, Fig. 60.</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><i>Screws.</i></p> <p>Set side tool <i>F</i> at angle of 30° and chamfer to depth of thread. To round end of screw <i>G</i>, use side tool <i>H</i> shaped into a forming tool.</p>
<p><b>85. To make a clamp nut, <i>A'</i>, Fig. 61.</b></p>	
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Drill, tap, square and turn piece of round carbon steel to size.</li> <li>2. Slit at <i>K</i> and mill or file</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>flat <i>L</i> to receive set screw of dog.</li> <li>3. Harden and draw to a spring temper.</li> </ol>

**Attention.** — To make an improvised clamp nut, slit a nut at a corner with a hack saw.

A clamp nut and dog may be used to set or remove studs.



86. To make a finished bolt  $\frac{1}{2}$ " diameter. Fig. 62.

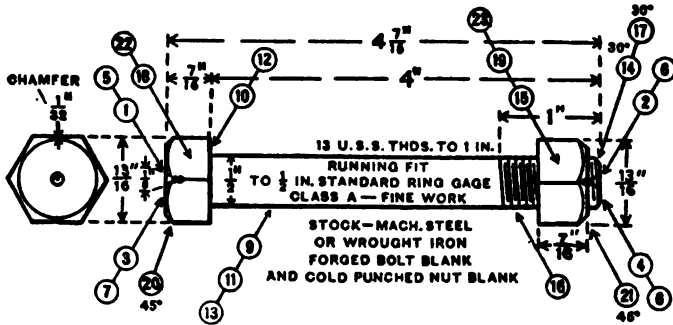


FIG. 62. — SCHEDULE DRAWING OF BOLT.

**Specifications:** Material, machine-steel forging,  $\frac{1}{16}$ " large; weight, 10 oz. Machine-steel or wrought-iron hexagonal nut blank  $\frac{1}{16}$ " large.

Hardness, 14 to 17 (scleroscope).

True live center, set dead center in approximate alinement, see page 118.

Carbon-steel cutting tools See *Exception*, p. 205.

**Time:** Study drawing and schedule in advance, 10 min. — Oil lathe, 4 min. — Prepare blank bolt, 45 min. — Tap and square nut, 8 min. — "Set up" for thread, 6 min. — Cut thread, 7 min. — Mill bolt and nut, 10 min. — Chamfer, file and polish bolt head and nut, and stamp, 10 min. — Clean lathe, 3 min. — Total, 1 h. 43 min.

#### SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS, MACHINES AND TOOLS

OPERATIONS.	MACHINES, SPEEDS, FEEDS.	TOOLS.
Straighten and file ends flat.	Vise. Straightening press.	File, chalk.
Center, machine method, $\frac{1}{8}$ ", (1), (2), straighten.	Centering machine drill, 1700 R.P.M.; countersink, 600 R.P.M.; straightening press.	$\frac{1}{8}$ " drill, 60° countersink, lard oil. Chalk.
Mount on centers.	Engine lathe 12" to 16". 3d speed, or 30 F.P.M. Hand feed.	Regular and clamp dogs, side tool, 35° rake, calipers, rule.
Rough square to $4\frac{7}{8}$ " + $\frac{1}{8}$ ", (3), (4). Take as little as possible off, (3). See step method of squaring, p. 301.	Speed lathe, drill 4th speed, countersink 3d speed.	
Recenter to $\frac{1}{8}$ ", (5), (6).	3d or 4th speed, or 50 F.P.M.	Side tool, 35° rake, calipers, rule.
Regrind and oil stone tool. Finish square to $4\frac{7}{8}$ ", (7), (8).		

<p>Rough turn to <math>\frac{1}{4}</math>" + <math>\frac{1}{8}</math>" (9) one or two cuts.</p>	<p>3d speed or 30 F.P.M. Medium power feed — 80 to 1".</p>	<p>Clamp dog, diamond-point tool, 35° rake, calipers, rule.</p>
<p>Rough square under head <math>\frac{7}{16}</math>" + <math>\frac{1}{8}</math>" (10).</p>	<p>3d speed, or 30 F.P.M. Hand feed.</p>	<p>Left side or bent right side tool, calipers, rule.</p>
<p>Set dead center in accurate alignment to turn straight using this bolt or a trial piece the same length. See pp. 116, 117.</p>	<p>4th speed, or 50 F.P.M. Fine power feed — 140 to 1".</p>	<p>Clamp dog, diamond-point tool, 35° rake, 1" micrometer.</p>
<p>Rough turn <math>\frac{1}{2}</math>" + <math>\frac{1}{8}</math>" (9) one cut.</p>	<p>3d speed, or 30 F.P.M. medium power feed — 80 to 1".</p>	<p>Clamp dog, diamond-point tool, 35° rake, calipers, rule.</p>
<p>Regrind and oilstone tool. Finish turn to fit gage with allowance for filing, using calipers, mandrel and gage to obtain size; or measure with 1" micrometer and allow .003" for filing. (11). One cut.</p>	<p>3d or 4th speed, or 50 F.P.M. Fine power feed — 140 to 1".</p>	<p>Diamond-point tool, 35° rake, calipers, <math>\frac{1}{2}</math>" mandrel (or 1" micrometer), <math>\frac{1}{2}</math>" ring gage.</p>
<p>Regrind and oilstone tool and finish square under head, (12).</p>	<p>3d speed, or 50 F.P.M. Hand feed.</p>	<p>Left side or bent right side tool, 35° rake, calipers, rule.</p>
<p>File to fit gage, running fit. Oil work with machine or lard oil when testing in gage. (13.)</p>	<p>Engine lathe, 4th speed, or speed lathe 3d or 4th speed, or 175 F.P.M.</p>	<p>8" or 10" mill bastard file, calipers, <math>\frac{1}{2}</math>" standard ring gage, oil, 1" micrometer.</p>
<p>Chamfer point to 30°, (14).</p>	<p>Engine lathe, 3d speed, or 30 F.P.M. Hand feed.</p>	<p>Side tool 35° rake, centre gage.</p>
<p>Tap <math>\frac{1}{4}</math>" nut blank by hand, square to thickness, (15).</p>	<p>Vise. Engine lathe 3d speed, or 50 F.P.M. Hand feed.</p>	<p><math>\frac{1}{2}</math>" X 13 U.S.S. tap, tap wrench, oil, nut mandrel, calipers, rule.</p>
<p>Draw line 1" from end for length of thread (16).</p>	<p>Vise copper jaws.</p>	<p>Copper sulphate, scriber, rule.</p>
<p>Grind threading tool to fit gage, and thread bolt to fit nut. Make close fit, (16), see pp. 326, 331, rechamfer point, (17).</p>	<p>Engine lathe, 1st speed, or 20 F.P.M. Arrange for 13 threads.</p>	<p>Clamp dog, 13 pitch U.S.S. thread tool, center gage, thread calipers, rule, oil, drip (tin) pan.</p>
<p>File burr off top of thread. Remove gears, empty drip pan and clean lathe.</p>	<p>4th speed.</p>	<p>8" or 10" mill bastard file.</p>
<p>Mill head and nut to size <math>\frac{1}{2}</math>" + .003" for filing and polishing, (18), (19). See pp. 102c, 102e.</p>	<p>Milling machine. 3d or 4th speed. Back gears in, or 50 F.P.M. Medium power feed.</p>	<p>Heading mills, index head and chuck, milling machine nut mandrel, oil, 1" micrometer.</p>
<p>Chamfer head and nut to 45°, (20), (21), pp. 340, 341.</p>	<p>Engine lathe, 3d speed, or 50 F.P.M.</p>	<p><math>\frac{1}{2}</math>" X 13 clamp nut, and nut mandrel, rule, side tool.</p>
<p>File and polish milled sides of bolt head and nut only. (22), (23).</p>	<p>Vise.</p>	<p>8" or 10" hand-smooth file, nut mandrel, copper jaws, 90 emery cloth, lard oil.</p>

87. To make pair of spring bolts, duplicate process, Fig. 63.

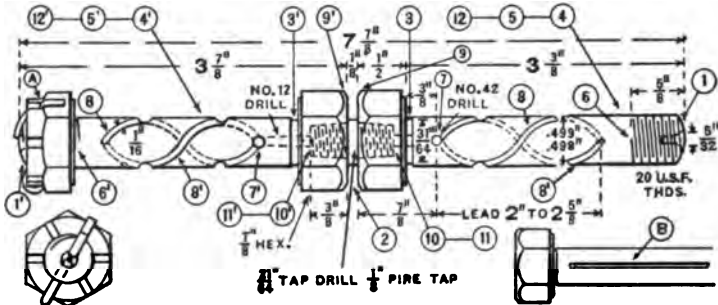


FIG. 63. — SCHEDULE DRAWING.

**Specifications:** Material,  $\frac{7}{8}$ " hexagonal "special" steel  $\frac{1}{8}$ " long; weight, 1 lb. 9 oz. Hardness, 15 to 16 (scleroscope).

High-speed steel, or stellite cutting tools.

**Time:** Study drawing and schedule in advance, 5 min. — Oil lathe, 4 min. — Center and square, 7 min. — Rough and finish turn, file and fit, 41 min. — Thread, 25 min. — Drill No. 42 hole and mill or cut spiral grooves, 34 min. — Cut off bolts and drill and tap for grease cups, 35 min. — Clean lathe, 3 min. — Total, 2 h. 34 min.

#### SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS, MACHINES AND TOOLS

OPERATIONS.	MACHINES, SPEEDS, FEEDS.	TOOLS.
<b>Center.</b> See that live center is nearly true and dead center in approximate alignment.	Engine lathe, 12" to 16".	
<b>Rough square</b> $7\frac{1}{8}$ " + $\frac{1}{8}$ " (1), (1').	3d or 4th speed, or 50 F.P.M. Hand feed.	Dog, holder and cutter 35° rake, calipers, rule.
<b>Recenter.</b> <b>Omit finish square.</b> <b>Draw lines</b> for groove in center of work (2), and grooves for length of bodies (3), (3').	Vise, copper jaws.	Copper sulphate, rule, scribe or half-round file.
<b>Cut grooves</b> to form heads at (2) and (3), (3'), to $\frac{3}{8}$ " diameter.	Engine lathe, 2d or 3d speed, or 40 F.P.M. Hand feed.	$\frac{1}{8}$ " cutting-off tool, calipers, rule, oil.
<b>Rough turn</b> to $\frac{1}{2}$ " + $\frac{1}{8}$ " (4), (4'), three or four cuts.	2d or 3d speed, or 50 F.P.M. Coarse power feed — 40 to 1".	Holder and cutter 35° rake, calipers, rule.

<p>True live center. Set dead center in accurate alinement. Finish turn (8), (8') to .499" + .003".</p>	<p>Engine lathe. 3d or 4th speed or 70 F.P.M. Fine power feed — 140 to 1". 4th speed or speed lathe, 3d or 4th speed or 175 F.P.M.</p>	<p>1" micrometer.</p>
<p>File to limit (8), (8') or to fit 1/4" ring gage.</p>	<p>Vise, copper jaws.</p>	<p>8" or 10" mill bastard file, 1" micrometer or 1/4" ring gage. Copper sulphate, rule, scriber.</p>
<p>Draw lines for length of thread (9) (9'). Form ends (1), (1'), to length.</p>	<p>3d speed, or 70 F.P.M. Hand feed. Arrange for 20 threads. 1st or 2d speed, or 25 F.P.M.</p>	<p>Forming tool and oil, or graver. 20 pitch U. S. F. thread tool, center gage 1/2" x 20 U.S.F. clamp nut.</p>
<p>Thread ends to fit 1/2" x 20 U. S. F. nut, (9), (9'), five cuts .005" each, two cuts .003" each, three cuts .001" each. Drill grease holes through the body of bolts, (7), (7').</p>	<p>Speed lathe, 4th speed or 1400 R.P.M.</p>	<p>V center, drill chuck, No. 42 twist drill, oil.</p>
<p>Mill or cut spiral oil grooves (8), (8'), lead one turn in 2" to 2 1/2".</p>	<p>Milling machine, 2d or 3d speed or engine lathe, 1st speed, back gears in.</p>	<p>1/16" convex cutter, milling machine centers, or 1/8" grooving tool oil.</p>
<p>Mount in chuck. Cut off bolts (2).</p>	<p>2d or 3d speed, or 40 F.P.M. Hand feed. 3d speed, or 70 F.P.M. Hand feed.</p>	<p>Universal chuck. 1/4" cutting-off tool, oil. Holder and cutter 35° rake, or right side tool.</p>
<p>Chamfer heads to 45° and 1/8" wide, (9), (9').</p>	<p>4th speed, or 450 R.P.M. Hand feed.</p>	<p>Centering tool, drill chuck, 3/4", and No. 12 twist drills, oil.</p>
<p>Drill holes into ends of bolts for grease cups and grease holes (10), (10').</p>	<p>Engine lathe, vise, copper jaws.</p>	<p>1/4" pipe tap, tap wrench, oil. See <i>Principles of Machine Work</i>.</p>
<p>Tap holes for grease cups (11), (11'). Start tap in lathe, pull belt downward and follow with dead center, remove work, finish tap in vise. Case-harden bodies only, or all over.</p>	<p>Gas furnace, 1325° F. to 1350° F.</p>	<p>Tongs, cyanide of potassium.</p>
<p><i>Exception.</i> — If convenient to use a universal grinding machine, rough turn bodies of bolts to .499" + .012" (4), (4') and then after bolts are case-hardened mount on threaded center and</p>		
<p>Grind to limit (12), (12'). See p. 715.</p>	<p>Universal grinding machine.</p>	<p>Grinding dog, grinding wheel 60 K, vitrified, 1" micrometer.</p>

*Information.* — If castle nuts are to be used, holes are drilled and cotter pins inserted and the points bent back as shown at A, Fig. 63.

*Attention.* — If desired, the spiral oil grooves may be omitted and a straight oil groove chipped, on one side only of each bolt, as at B, Fig. 63.

## MAKING A TENSILE TEST SPECIMEN

88. To make tensile test specimen for steel, wrought iron, brass or bronze, Fig. 64.

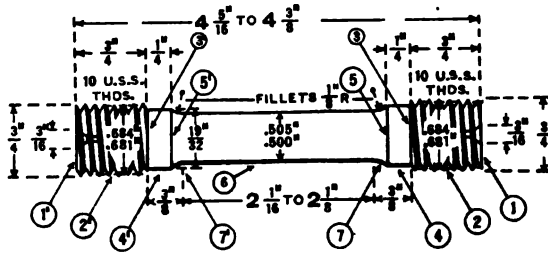


FIG. 64. — SCHEDULE DRAWING.

**Specifications:** Material, machine steel  $\frac{1}{8}$ " to  $\frac{1}{4}$ " large; weight, 11 oz. Hardness, 15 to 18 (scleroscope).

**High-speed steel, or stellite cutting tools.**

**Time:** Study drawing and schedule in advance, 5 min. — Oil lathes, 6 min. — Prepare specimen, 30 min. — Thread, 20 min. — File and polish, 4 min. — Clean lathes, 5 min. — Total, 1 h. 10 min.

## SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS, MACHINES AND TOOLS

OPERATIONS.	MACHINES, SPEEDS, FEEDS.	TOOLS.
<p><b>File ends flat.</b>  <b>Center.</b>            See that live center is nearly true, and dead center in approximate alinement.            If ends of work are nearly flat and length is within the limit, all squaring may be omitted, otherwise</p>	<p>Engine lathe, 12" to 16".</p>	
<p><b>Rough square to limit (1), (1').</b></p>	<p>3d speed, or 50 F.P.M. Hand feed.</p>	<p>Dog, holder and cutter 35° rake, calipers, rule.</p>
<p><b>Recenter.</b>  <b>Omit finish square.</b>            Rough turn to <math>\frac{1}{4}</math>" + <math>\frac{1}{8}</math>", (2), (2'), one cut. Turn half way, reverse and turn other half.</p>	<p>2d or 3d speed, or 50 F.P.M. Medium power feed — 80 to 1".</p>	<p>Holder and cutter 35° rake, calipers, rule.</p>

Draw lines $\frac{3}{4}$ " from each end for length of thread (3), (3').	Vise.	Copper sulphate, scriber, rule. Calipers, rule.
Rough turn to $\frac{1}{4}$ " (4), (4'), two cuts.	Engine lathe, 2d or 3d speed, or 50 F.P.M. Medium power feed — 80 to 1".	
Draw lines 1" from each end to give length of body (5), (5').	Vise.	Copper sulphate, scriber, rule.
Rough turn to $\frac{1}{4}$ " (6), one or two cuts.	Engine lathe, 2d or 3d speed, or 50 F.P.M. Medium power feed — 80 to 1".	Calipers, rule.
True live center and set dead center in accurate alinement.		
Finish turn to $\frac{1}{2}$ " (2), (2'), one cut.	3d or 4th speed, or 70 F.P.M. Medium power feed — 80 to 1".	1" micrometer.
Finish turn to $.505'' + .002''$ for filing (6), two or three cuts. Adjust forming tool with thread stop and turn body and both fillets (7), (7'), with same setting.	2d or 3d speed, or 50 F.P.M. Fine power feed — 140 to 1". Hand feed for fillets.	Forming tool 35° rake, 1" micrometer, apply oil with brush or can.
Chamfer ends to 30°.	3d speed or 70 F.P.M. Hand feed.	
Thread to fit nut or to limit (2), (2'), nine cuts $.005''$ each, five cuts of $.003''$ each, and three to five cuts of $.001''$ each.	Arrange for 10 threads. 2d or 3d speed, or 25 F.P.M.	10 pitch U. S. S. thread tool, U. S. S. thread gage, $\frac{1}{4}'' \times 10$ U. S. S. nut, or thread micrometer (see p. 1214), $\frac{1}{4}'' \times 10$ clamp nut, oil.
File to remove tool marks and to limit (8).	Speed lathe, 175 F.P.M.	$\frac{1}{4}'' \times 10$ clamp nut, 8" or 10" mill-bastard or mill-smooth file.
Polish (8).	Highest speed.	120 emery cloth, polishing clamps, oil.

*Attention.* — If the feed is fine and the finishing cut smooth, filing may be omitted as polishing alone will remove the tool marks.

*Important.* — The body must be smooth and tangent with fillets as any shoulder or groove will make the specimen useless.

## MAKING A STUD

89. To make a stud, Fig. 65.

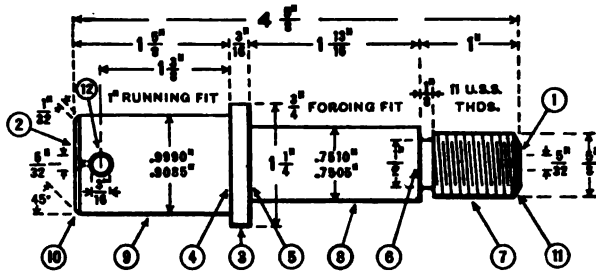


FIG. 65. — SCHEDULE DRAWING.

**Specifications:** Material, machine steel  $\frac{1}{8}$ " to  $\frac{1}{2}$ " large; weight, 2 lbs. Hardness, 14 to 16 (scleroscope).

High-speed steel, or stellite cutting tools.

**Time:** Study drawing and schedule in advance, 5 min. — Oil lathe, 4 min. — Square, rough turn, file and fit, 1 h. 10 min. — Thread and drill hole, 18 min. — Clean lathe, 3 min. — Total 1 h. 40 min.

## SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS, MACHINES AND TOOLS

OPERATIONS.	MACHINES, SPEEDS, FEEDS.	TOOLS.
Center. See that live center is nearly true, and dead center in approximate alinement.	Engine lathe, 12" to 16".	
Rough square $4\frac{1}{2}$ ", (1), (2).	2d or 3d speed, or 50 F.P.M. Hand feed.	Dog, holder and cutter 35° rake, calipers, rule.
Recenter. Omit finish square.		
Rough turn to $1\frac{1}{8}$ ", (3), one or two cuts. Turn half way, reverse and turn other half.	Medium power feed — 80 to 1".	Holder and cutter 35° rake, calipers, rule.
Draw lines (4), (5), (6), for lengths of running and forcing fits and thread.	Vise, copper jaws.	Copper sulphate, rule, scriber.
Cut grooves at lines (4), (5), .01" smaller than diameters (3), (5), and $\frac{1}{2}$ " at (6), the root diameter of thread.	Engine lathe, 1st or 2d speed, or 30 F.P.M.	$\frac{1}{2}$ " cutting off tool, calipers, rule, oil.

<p><b>Rough turn (7), (8), (9), <math>\frac{1}{8}</math>"</b> large, one or two cuts terminating in grooves.</p>	<p>2d or 3d speed, or 50 F.P.M. Medium power feed — 80 to 1".</p>	<p>Calipers, rule.</p>
<p><b>True live center. Set dead center in accurate alinement.</b></p>		
<p><b>Finish turn (7) to <math>\frac{5}{8}</math>", (8) to .7510" + .003", (9) to .9990" + .003."</b></p>	<p>3d or 4th speed. Fine power feed — 140 to 1".</p>	<p>Calipers, 1" micrometer.</p>
<p><b>Chamfer ends (10), 45°; (11) 30°.</b></p>	<p>Hand feed.</p>	<p>Center gage.</p>
<p><b>File (9) to a running fit in work or gage, or to limit, and (8), to a light forcing fit in work, or to limit.</b></p>	<p>4th speed.</p>	<p>8" or 10" mill bastard file, file card, 1" micrometer.</p>
<p><b>Thread (7) to fit nut. Take ten cuts .005" each, three cuts .002" each. Then take one cut .001". Clean thread and test, and repeat cuts of .001", if necessary. Depth of thread .059".</b></p>	<p>Arrange for 11 threads. 1st or 2d speed, or 25 F.P.M.</p>	<p>11 pitch U. S. S. thread tool and gage, center gage, <math>\frac{5}{8}</math>" x 11 U. S. S. nut, oil.</p>
<p><b>Rechamfer to 30° (11).</b></p>	<p>3d speed, or 70 F.P.M.</p>	<p>Center gage.</p>
<p><b>Drill and slightly countersink cotter pin hole (12).</b></p>	<p>Vise, copper jaws. Speed lathe, 3d speed, or 600 R.P.M.</p>	<p>Scriber, rule, center punch, hammer, <math>\frac{1}{8}</math>" twist drill, drill chuck, countersink, V center, oil.</p>
<p><b>Stamp name on large end.</b></p>	<p>Vise, copper jaws.</p>	<p><math>\frac{1}{4}</math>" steel letters, hammer.</p>

*Exception.* — Grooves at (4) and (5) may be cut .01" under size, and diameters (8) and (9) rough turned .008" over size and ground to size.

*Information.* — There are two methods of making a shoulder on studs, bolts, shafts, etc. One is to cut a groove and terminate all cuts in this groove. The other is to turn close to a desired point, then square the shoulder by the "step method."

**90. Formulas of bolt heads and nuts.** — While finished, heads and nuts (U. S. S.) are often made  $\frac{1}{8}$ " smaller than the rough, it is best to make both the *same* size and to use the *same* wrench.

The short diameter or width across flats =  $\frac{1}{2}$  x (diameter of bolt) +  $\frac{1}{8}$ ".



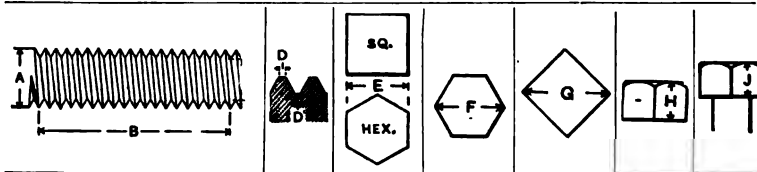
The long diameter or distance across corners of square head or nut = short diameter  $\times$  1.414.

The long diameter of hexagonal head or nut = short diameter  $\times$  1.55.

Thickness of nut = diameter of bolt.

Thickness of head =  $\frac{1}{2}$  short diameter of head.

Table of United States Standard bolt heads and nuts



DIAM. OF SCREW.		THREADS PER INCH.	ROOT DIAM. OF SCREW.	WIDTH OF FLATS.	ACROSS FLATS OF SQ. AND HEX. NUTS OR HEADS.	ACROSS CORNERS OF SQ. AND HEX. NUTS OR HEADS.	ACROSS CORNERS OF SQ. NUT OR HEAD.	THICKNESS OF NUT.	THICKNESS OF HEAD.
A	DIAM. IN DECIMALS.								
$\frac{1}{16}$	.25	20	.185	.0056	$\frac{1}{16}$	$\frac{1}{16}$	.61	$\frac{1}{16}$	$\frac{1}{16}$
$\frac{1}{8}$	.3125	18	.2403	.0069	$\frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{1}{8}$	.75	$\frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{1}{8}$
$\frac{3}{16}$	.375	16	.2996	.0078	$\frac{3}{16}$	$\frac{3}{16}$	.88	$\frac{3}{16}$	$\frac{3}{16}$
$\frac{1}{4}$	.4375	14	.3447	.0089	$\frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{1}{4}$	1.01	$\frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{1}{4}$
$\frac{5}{16}$	.5	13	.4001	.0096	$\frac{5}{16}$	$\frac{5}{16}$	1.14	$\frac{5}{16}$	$\frac{5}{16}$
$\frac{3}{8}$	.5625	12	.4542	.0104	$\frac{3}{8}$	$\frac{3}{8}$	1.28	$\frac{3}{8}$	$\frac{3}{8}$
$\frac{7}{16}$	.625	11	.5069	.0114	$\frac{7}{16}$	$\frac{7}{16}$	1.41	$\frac{7}{16}$	$\frac{7}{16}$
$\frac{1}{2}$	.75	10	.6201	.0125	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	1.67	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{2}$
$\frac{9}{16}$	.875	9	.7307	.0139	$\frac{9}{16}$	$\frac{9}{16}$	1.94	$\frac{9}{16}$	$\frac{9}{16}$
1	1.	8	.8376	.0156	1	1	2.20	1	1
$1\frac{1}{8}$	1.125	7	.9394	.0179	$1\frac{1}{8}$	$1\frac{1}{8}$	2.47	$1\frac{1}{8}$	$1\frac{1}{8}$
$1\frac{1}{4}$	1.25	7	1.0644	.0179	2	2	2.74	$1\frac{1}{4}$	1
$1\frac{3}{8}$	1.375	6	1.1585	.0208	$2\frac{1}{8}$	$2\frac{1}{8}$	3.00	$1\frac{3}{8}$	$1\frac{3}{8}$
$1\frac{1}{2}$	1.5	6	1.2835	.0208	$2\frac{1}{2}$	$2\frac{1}{2}$	3.27	$1\frac{1}{2}$	$1\frac{1}{2}$
$1\frac{5}{8}$	1.625	$5\frac{1}{2}$	1.3888	.0227	$2\frac{5}{8}$	$2\frac{5}{8}$	3.53	$1\frac{5}{8}$	$1\frac{5}{8}$
$1\frac{3}{4}$	1.875	5	1.4902	.0250	$3\frac{1}{8}$	$3\frac{1}{8}$	3.70	$1\frac{3}{4}$	$1\frac{3}{4}$
2	2.	5	1.6152	.0250	$2\frac{1}{2}$	$3\frac{3}{8}$	4.06	$1\frac{1}{2}$	$1\frac{1}{2}$
$2\frac{1}{4}$	2.25	$4\frac{1}{2}$	1.7113	.0278	$3\frac{1}{2}$	$3\frac{3}{4}$	4.33	2	$1\frac{1}{4}$
$2\frac{1}{2}$	2.5	$4\frac{1}{2}$	1.9613	.0278	$3\frac{3}{4}$	$4\frac{1}{8}$	5.39	$2\frac{1}{4}$	$1\frac{3}{4}$
$2\frac{3}{4}$	2.75	4	2.1752	.0313	$3\frac{3}{4}$	$4\frac{1}{2}$	5.93	$2\frac{3}{4}$	$1\frac{1}{2}$
3	3.	4	2.4252	.0313	$4\frac{1}{2}$	$4\frac{3}{4}$	6.45	$2\frac{3}{4}$	$2\frac{1}{4}$
		$3\frac{1}{2}$	2.6288	.0357	$4\frac{3}{4}$	$5\frac{1}{8}$	6.98	3	$2\frac{1}{8}$

Attention. — A bolt is usually threaded a distance equal to twice the body diameter.

91. International and French Standard threads.

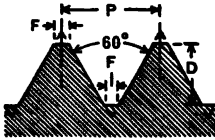


FIG. 66.

Diameter and pitch in Metric Measure.

Formula  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} p = \text{pitch.} \\ d = \text{depth} = p \times .6495. \\ f = \text{flat} = \frac{p}{8}. \end{array} \right.$

92. International Standard thread.

DIAMETER IN MILLIMETERS.	PITCH IN MILLIMETERS.	DIAM. AT ROOT OF THREAD, M/M.	DIAMETER IN MILLIMETERS.	PITCH IN MILLIMETERS.	DIAM. AT ROOT OF THREAD, M/M.	DIAMETER IN MILLIMETERS.	PITCH IN MILLIMETERS.	DIAM. AT ROOT OF THREAD, M/M.
6	1.0	4.70	20	2.5	16.75	48	5.0	41.51
7	1.0	5.70	22	2.5	18.75	52	5.0	45.51
8	1.25	6.38	24	3.0	20.10	56	5.5	48.86
9	1.25	7.58	27	3.0	23.10	60	5.5	52.86
10	1.5	8.05	30	3.5	25.45	64	6.0	56.21
11	1.5	9.05	33	3.5	28.45	68	6.0	60.21
12	1.75	9.73	36	4.0	30.80	72	6.5	63.56
14	2.0	11.40	39	4.0	33.80	76	6.5	67.56
16	2.0	13.40	42	4.5	36.15	80	7.0	70.91
18	2.5	14.75	45	4.5	39.15	.....	.....	.....

93. French Standard thread.

DIAMETER IN MILLIMETERS.	PITCH IN MILLIMETERS.	DIAM. AT ROOT OF THREAD, M/M.	DIAMETER IN MILLIMETERS.	PITCH IN MILLIMETERS.	DIAM. AT ROOT OF THREAD, M/M.	DIAMETER IN MILLIMETERS.	PITCH IN MILLIMETERS.	DIAM. AT ROOT OF THREAD, M/M.
3	0.5	2.35	16	2.0	13.40	36	4.0	30.80
4	0.75	3.03	18	2.5	14.75	38	4.0	32.80
5	0.75	4.03	20	2.5	16.75	40	4.0	34.80
6	1.0	4.70	22	2.5	18.75	42	4.5	36.15
7	1.0	5.70	24	3.0	20.10	44	4.5	38.15
8	1.0	6.70	26	3.0	22.10	46	4.5	40.15
9	1.0	7.70	28	3.0	24.10	48	5.0	41.51
10	1.5	8.05	30	3.5	25.45	50	5.0	43.51
12	1.5	10.05	32	3.5	27.45	.....	.....	.....
14	2.0	11.40	34	3.5	29.45	.....	.....	.....

## INDEXING IN ENGINE LATHE

94. To index in engine lathe, Fig. 67. — To file round work square or hexagonal, or to drill diametrically through a shaft, equidistant lines may be drawn on the work to facilitate the operations.

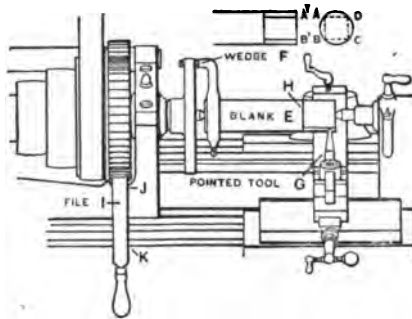


FIG. 67. — INDEXING IN THE LATHE.

## SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS

To divide tap shank or bolt head circumference into four equal parts, *A, B, C, D*, Fig. 67. Select engine lathe with headstock gear divisible by 4, as  $72 \div 4 = 18$ . Count headstock gear and mark divisions with chalk. Mount blank *E* on centers with wedge *F* between dog and face plate to prevent backlash. Use pointed tool *G* to mark line *H* required distance from end.

Place file *I* against under side of chalked tooth; rotate lathe until file touches headstock at *J*.

With the left hand press the handle downward until file touches the bed at *K* and hold it in this position.

With the right hand operating cross feed, move tool to lightly touch work, then change the right hand to long feed handle and move the carriage to make a line with the tool. For the other lines repeat at the other chalked teeth on gear. Two lines are also shown at *A', B'*.

95. To make 14" engine lathe live center, Fig. 68.

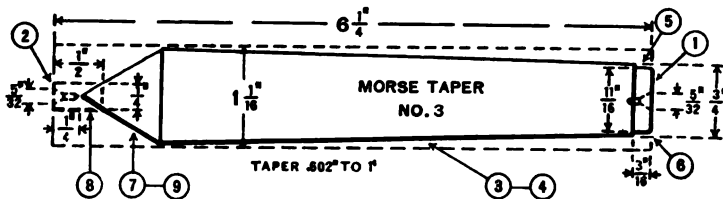


FIG. 68. — SCHEDULE DRAWING.

**Specifications:** Material, machine steel  $\frac{1}{8}$ " to  $\frac{1}{4}$ " large; weight, 1 lb. 9 oz. Hardness, 15 to 18 (scleroscope).

High-speed steel, or stellite cutting tools.

**Time:** Study drawing and schedule in advance, 5 min. — Oil lathe, 4 min. — Make center, 53 min. — Clean lathe, 3 min. — Total, 1 h. 5 min.

SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS, MACHINES AND TOOLS

OPERATIONS.	MACHINES, SPEEDS, FEEDS.	TOOLS.
Center. See that live center is nearly true and dead center in approximate alinement.	Engine lathe, 12" to 16".	
Rough square to $6\frac{1}{4}$ " (1), (2).	3d or 4th speed, or 50 F.P.M. Hand or power feed.	Dog, holder and cutter 35° rake, calipers, rule.
Recenter. Omit finish square.		
Turn taper shank .602" to 1", (3).		
Set over footstock to .1568" or $\frac{3}{16}$ ", or use taper attachment.	.....	Rule, dividers.
Rough turn taper (3), to $\frac{1}{8}$ " at small end, one or two cuts. Terminate cuts close to dog.	2d or 3d speed, or 40 F.P.M. Coarse power feed — 40 to 1".	Holder and cutter 35° rake, calipers, rule.
Take a light trial cut about .004" or .005", (4). To complete this taper, see Schedule of Operations, p. 220.	3d or 4th speed, or 70 F.P.M. Fine power feed — 140 to 1".	Morse taper-ring gage No. 3, chalk or Prussian blue.
Smooth turn reduced part to $\frac{1}{4}$ " (5), one cut. Round corner (6).	3d or 4th speed, or 70 F.P.M. Fine power feed — 140 to 1".	Holder and cutter, graver.
Reverse work and set tool at 30°, approximately, with work.	.....	Center gage.
Rough turn point of center (7), to leave stem (8), as shown, seven or eight cuts.	2d or 3d speed, or 50 F.P.M. Medium power feed — 80 to 1", or hand feed.	
To finish point (9), place center in live spindle. See Truing centers, p. 114.	2d or 3d speed, or 50 F.P.M. Hand feed.	Center truing tool, side or cutting-off tool, center gage.
Stamp name on (1).	Vise, copper jaws.	$\frac{1}{4}$ " steel letters, hammer.

*Information.* — Live centers are usually machine steel. Dead centers are carbon steel fitted to footstock spindle and of a length that when spindle is run back nearly as far as it will go, the center will be forced out. The conical point is hardened and tempered to a straw color and often ground. If a center is made of annealed carbon steel, the cutting speeds may have to be reduced.

AUTOMOBILE SCREWS AND NUTS

96. The Society of Automobile Engineers' standard screws and nuts.

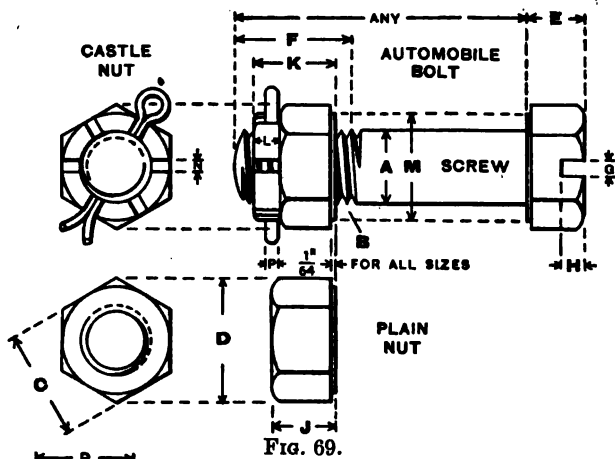


FIG. 69.

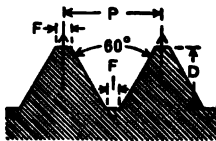


FIG. 70.— UNITED STATES STANDARD THREAD.

Formula

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} p = \text{pitch.} \\ d = \text{depth} = p \times .6495. \\ f = \text{flat} = \frac{p}{8}. \end{array} \right.$$

For sizes of tap drills, see *Principles of Machine Work*.

Diameter of screw = nominal diameter - .001".

Thread = U. S. S. in form but with finer pitches. Taps and dies are marked U.S.F.

Heads and nuts are semi-finished but smaller than U. S. S.

Screws soft. Plain nuts soft. Castle nuts case-hardened.

Nuts should be a good fit on screw— without perceptible shake.

The tap is from .002" to .003" larger than standard at the top of thread to give the screw clearance in the nut. Material for screws and nuts, machine steel; tensile strength, 100,000 lbs. per square inch; elastic limit, 60,000 lbs. per square inch.

Threaded portions of screw should be one and one-half times the body diameter.

*Attention.* — The castle nut is used where a positive locking system is desired.

*Important.* — It is best to use U.S.S. threads on soft material such as aluminum and cast iron; and also on brass and bronze if subjected to great strains.

Table of Society of Automobile Engineers' Standard Screws and Nuts

DIAMETER OF COTTER PIN.	P	$\frac{1}{16}$ $\frac{1}{8}$ $\frac{3}{16}$ $\frac{1}{4}$ $\frac{5}{16}$ $\frac{3}{8}$ $\frac{7}{16}$ $\frac{1}{2}$ $\frac{9}{16}$ $\frac{5}{8}$ $\frac{11}{16}$ $\frac{3}{4}$ $\frac{13}{16}$ $\frac{7}{8}$ $\frac{15}{16}$ $1$ $1\frac{1}{16}$ $1\frac{1}{8}$ $1\frac{1}{4}$ $1\frac{1}{2}$ $1\frac{3}{4}$ $2$ $2\frac{1}{2}$ $3$ $4$ $5$ $6$ $8$ $10$ $12$ $16$ $20$ $24$ $30$ $36$ $48$ $60$
WIDTH OF SLOT IN CASTLE AND DIAMETER OF COTTER PIN HOLE.	N	$\frac{1}{16}$ $\frac{1}{8}$ $\frac{3}{16}$ $\frac{1}{4}$ $\frac{5}{16}$ $\frac{3}{8}$ $\frac{7}{16}$ $\frac{1}{2}$ $\frac{9}{16}$ $\frac{5}{8}$ $\frac{11}{16}$ $\frac{3}{4}$ $\frac{13}{16}$ $\frac{7}{8}$ $\frac{15}{16}$ $1$ $1\frac{1}{16}$ $1\frac{1}{8}$ $1\frac{1}{4}$ $1\frac{1}{2}$ $1\frac{3}{4}$ $2$ $2\frac{1}{2}$ $3$ $4$ $5$ $6$ $8$ $10$ $12$ $16$ $20$ $24$ $30$ $36$ $48$ $60$
DIAMETER OF FACING UNDER HEAD AND NUT, ALSO DIAMETER OF CASTLE.	M	$\frac{1}{16}$ $\frac{1}{8}$ $\frac{3}{16}$ $\frac{1}{4}$ $\frac{5}{16}$ $\frac{3}{8}$ $\frac{7}{16}$ $\frac{1}{2}$ $\frac{9}{16}$ $\frac{5}{8}$ $\frac{11}{16}$ $\frac{3}{4}$ $\frac{13}{16}$ $\frac{7}{8}$ $\frac{15}{16}$ $1$ $1\frac{1}{16}$ $1\frac{1}{8}$ $1\frac{1}{4}$ $1\frac{1}{2}$ $1\frac{3}{4}$ $2$ $2\frac{1}{2}$ $3$ $4$ $5$ $6$ $8$ $10$ $12$ $16$ $20$ $24$ $30$ $36$ $48$ $60$
HEIGHT OF CASTLE, ALSO DEPTH OF SLOTS.	L	$\frac{3}{16}$ $\frac{1}{4}$ $\frac{5}{16}$ $\frac{3}{8}$ $\frac{7}{16}$ $\frac{1}{2}$ $\frac{9}{16}$ $\frac{5}{8}$ $\frac{11}{16}$ $\frac{3}{4}$ $\frac{13}{16}$ $\frac{7}{8}$ $\frac{15}{16}$ $1$ $1\frac{1}{16}$ $1\frac{1}{8}$ $1\frac{1}{4}$ $1\frac{1}{2}$ $1\frac{3}{4}$ $2$ $2\frac{1}{2}$ $3$ $4$ $5$ $6$ $8$ $10$ $12$ $16$ $20$ $24$ $30$ $36$ $48$ $60$
THICKNESS OF CASTLE NUTS.	K	$\frac{3}{16}$ $\frac{1}{4}$ $\frac{5}{16}$ $\frac{3}{8}$ $\frac{7}{16}$ $\frac{1}{2}$ $\frac{9}{16}$ $\frac{5}{8}$ $\frac{11}{16}$ $\frac{3}{4}$ $\frac{13}{16}$ $\frac{7}{8}$ $\frac{15}{16}$ $1$ $1\frac{1}{16}$ $1\frac{1}{8}$ $1\frac{1}{4}$ $1\frac{1}{2}$ $1\frac{3}{4}$ $2$ $2\frac{1}{2}$ $3$ $4$ $5$ $6$ $8$ $10$ $12$ $16$ $20$ $24$ $30$ $36$ $48$ $60$
THICKNESS OF PLAIN NUT.	J	$\frac{1}{16}$ $\frac{1}{8}$ $\frac{3}{16}$ $\frac{1}{4}$ $\frac{5}{16}$ $\frac{3}{8}$ $\frac{7}{16}$ $\frac{1}{2}$ $\frac{9}{16}$ $\frac{5}{8}$ $\frac{11}{16}$ $\frac{3}{4}$ $\frac{13}{16}$ $\frac{7}{8}$ $\frac{15}{16}$ $1$ $1\frac{1}{16}$ $1\frac{1}{8}$ $1\frac{1}{4}$ $1\frac{1}{2}$ $1\frac{3}{4}$ $2$ $2\frac{1}{2}$ $3$ $4$ $5$ $6$ $8$ $10$ $12$ $16$ $20$ $24$ $30$ $36$ $48$ $60$
DEPTH OF SLOT IN HEAD.	H	$\frac{3}{16}$ $\frac{1}{4}$ $\frac{5}{16}$ $\frac{3}{8}$ $\frac{7}{16}$ $\frac{1}{2}$ $\frac{9}{16}$ $\frac{5}{8}$ $\frac{11}{16}$ $\frac{3}{4}$ $\frac{13}{16}$ $\frac{7}{8}$ $\frac{15}{16}$ $1$ $1\frac{1}{16}$ $1\frac{1}{8}$ $1\frac{1}{4}$ $1\frac{1}{2}$ $1\frac{3}{4}$ $2$ $2\frac{1}{2}$ $3$ $4$ $5$ $6$ $8$ $10$ $12$ $16$ $20$ $24$ $30$ $36$ $48$ $60$
WIDTH OF SLOT IN HEAD.	G	$\frac{1}{16}$ $\frac{1}{8}$ $\frac{3}{16}$ $\frac{1}{4}$ $\frac{5}{16}$ $\frac{3}{8}$ $\frac{7}{16}$ $\frac{1}{2}$ $\frac{9}{16}$ $\frac{5}{8}$ $\frac{11}{16}$ $\frac{3}{4}$ $\frac{13}{16}$ $\frac{7}{8}$ $\frac{15}{16}$ $1$ $1\frac{1}{16}$ $1\frac{1}{8}$ $1\frac{1}{4}$ $1\frac{1}{2}$ $1\frac{3}{4}$ $2$ $2\frac{1}{2}$ $3$ $4$ $5$ $6$ $8$ $10$ $12$ $16$ $20$ $24$ $30$ $36$ $48$ $60$
LENGTH OF THREAD.	F	$\frac{1}{16}$ $\frac{1}{8}$ $\frac{3}{16}$ $\frac{1}{4}$ $\frac{5}{16}$ $\frac{3}{8}$ $\frac{7}{16}$ $\frac{1}{2}$ $\frac{9}{16}$ $\frac{5}{8}$ $\frac{11}{16}$ $\frac{3}{4}$ $\frac{13}{16}$ $\frac{7}{8}$ $\frac{15}{16}$ $1$ $1\frac{1}{16}$ $1\frac{1}{8}$ $1\frac{1}{4}$ $1\frac{1}{2}$ $1\frac{3}{4}$ $2$ $2\frac{1}{2}$ $3$ $4$ $5$ $6$ $8$ $10$ $12$ $16$ $20$ $24$ $30$ $36$ $48$ $60$
THICKNESS OF HEAD.	E	$\frac{3}{16}$ $\frac{1}{4}$ $\frac{5}{16}$ $\frac{3}{8}$ $\frac{7}{16}$ $\frac{1}{2}$ $\frac{9}{16}$ $\frac{5}{8}$ $\frac{11}{16}$ $\frac{3}{4}$ $\frac{13}{16}$ $\frac{7}{8}$ $\frac{15}{16}$ $1$ $1\frac{1}{16}$ $1\frac{1}{8}$ $1\frac{1}{4}$ $1\frac{1}{2}$ $1\frac{3}{4}$ $2$ $2\frac{1}{2}$ $3$ $4$ $5$ $6$ $8$ $10$ $12$ $16$ $20$ $24$ $30$ $36$ $48$ $60$
ACROSS CORNERS OF HEAD AND NUT.	D	.505 .577 .649 .756 .866 1.010 1.082 1.155 1.227 1.443 1.660 2.518 2.808 3.100 3.875
ACROSS FLATS OF HEAD AND NUT.	C	$\frac{1}{16}$ $\frac{1}{8}$ $\frac{3}{16}$ $\frac{1}{4}$ $\frac{5}{16}$ $\frac{3}{8}$ $\frac{7}{16}$ $\frac{1}{2}$ $\frac{9}{16}$ $\frac{5}{8}$ $\frac{11}{16}$ $\frac{3}{4}$ $\frac{13}{16}$ $\frac{7}{8}$ $\frac{15}{16}$ $1$ $1\frac{1}{16}$ $1\frac{1}{8}$ $1\frac{1}{4}$ $1\frac{1}{2}$ $1\frac{3}{4}$ $2$ $2\frac{1}{2}$ $3$ $4$ $5$ $6$ $8$ $10$ $12$ $16$ $20$ $24$ $30$ $36$ $48$ $60$
SIZES OF BODY DRILLS.		$\frac{1}{16}$ $\frac{1}{8}$ $\frac{3}{16}$ $\frac{1}{4}$ $\frac{5}{16}$ $\frac{3}{8}$ $\frac{7}{16}$ $\frac{1}{2}$ $\frac{9}{16}$ $\frac{5}{8}$ $\frac{11}{16}$ $\frac{3}{4}$ $\frac{13}{16}$ $\frac{7}{8}$ $\frac{15}{16}$ $1$ $1\frac{1}{16}$ $1\frac{1}{8}$ $1\frac{1}{4}$ $1\frac{1}{2}$ $1\frac{3}{4}$ $2$ $2\frac{1}{2}$ $3$ $4$ $5$ $6$ $8$ $10$ $12$ $16$ $20$ $24$ $30$ $36$ $48$ $60$
SIZES OF TAP DRILLS.		No. 5 G P $\frac{1}{16}$ $\frac{1}{8}$ $\frac{3}{16}$ $\frac{1}{4}$ $\frac{5}{16}$ $\frac{3}{8}$ $\frac{7}{16}$ $\frac{1}{2}$ $\frac{9}{16}$ $\frac{5}{8}$ $\frac{11}{16}$ $\frac{3}{4}$ $\frac{13}{16}$ $\frac{7}{8}$ $\frac{15}{16}$ $1$ $1\frac{1}{16}$ $1\frac{1}{8}$ $1\frac{1}{4}$ $1\frac{1}{2}$ $1\frac{3}{4}$ $2$ $2\frac{1}{2}$ $3$ $4$ $5$ $6$ $8$ $10$ $12$ $16$ $20$ $24$ $30$ $36$ $48$ $60$
THREADS PER INCH.	B	28 24 24 20 20 18 18 16 16 14 14 12 12 12 12 12 12 12
NOMINAL DIAMETER OF SCREW.	A	$\frac{1}{16}$ $\frac{1}{8}$ $\frac{3}{16}$ $\frac{1}{4}$ $\frac{5}{16}$ $\frac{3}{8}$ $\frac{7}{16}$ $\frac{1}{2}$ $\frac{9}{16}$ $\frac{5}{8}$ $\frac{11}{16}$ $\frac{3}{4}$ $\frac{13}{16}$ $\frac{7}{8}$ $\frac{15}{16}$ $1$ $1\frac{1}{16}$ $1\frac{1}{8}$ $1\frac{1}{4}$ $1\frac{1}{2}$ $1\frac{3}{4}$ $2$ $2\frac{1}{2}$ $3$ $4$ $5$ $6$ $8$ $10$ $12$ $16$ $20$ $24$ $30$ $36$ $48$ $60$

97. Lock washers are used to hold plain automobile nuts, as in Fig. 71. The washer is cut open at *A*, and bent up at *B* and down at *B'*. When nut is screwed down hard these projections cut into both nut and seat and prevent nut becoming loose.

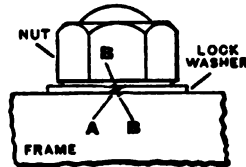


FIG. 71.—FASTENING A PLAIN NUT WITH LOCK WASHER.

98. Constants for finding diameter at bottom of U. S. S., U. S. F. and V threads.

THREADS PER INCH	U. S. S. AND U. S. F. CONSTANT	V THREAD CONSTANT	THREADS PER INCH	U. S. S. AND U. S. F. CONSTANT	V THREAD CONSTANT
3	.43301	.57733	18	.07217	.09623
3½	.37115	.49487	20	.06495	.08660
4	.32476	.43301	22	.05905	.07873
4½	.28868	.38490	24	.05413	.07217
5	.25981	.34641	26	.04996	.06662
5½	.23619	.31492	28	.04639	.06186
6	.21651	.28868	30	.04330	.05773
7	.18558	.24744	32	.04059	.05413
8	.16238	.21651	36	.03608	.04811
9	.14434	.19245	40	.03248	.04330
10	.12990	.17321	44	.02952	.03936
11	.11809	.15746	48	.02706	.03608
12	.10825	.14434	50	.02598	.03464
13	.09993	.13323	56	.02320	.03093
14	.09279	.12372	60	.02165	.0288
16	.08119	.10825	64	.02030	.02706

$$\text{Formula.} \begin{cases} C = \text{Constant for number of threads per inch.} \\ D = \text{Outside diameter.} \\ D_1 = \text{Diameter at bottom of thread.} \\ D_1 = D - C. \end{cases}$$

*Example.* — Given outside diameter of U. S. F. screw thread,  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch, 20 threads per inch, find diameter at bottom of thread. Expressed in decimals  $D = .500''$  constant for 20 threads, U. S. F.,  $C = .06495$ ; diameter at bottom of thread  $D_1 = .500'' - .06495 = .43605''$  or practically  $\frac{7}{16}''$ .

# ADVANCED MACHINE WORK

## SECTION 4

### LATHE WORK

**Chucks. Face Plates. Chucking. Reaming. Machining Alloys, etc. Mandrels or Arbors. Turning Flanges. Turning Pulleys. Polishing Lathe Work. Curve Turning and Forming. Making Formed Machine Handles. Polishing, Buffing and Lacquering.**

#### CHUCKS

1. The term chuck has a double meaning. — First, it is the device used for holding work, drills or other tools. Second, it is the act of securing work in a holding device. See Chucking. Chucks are indispensable to a large class of work.

2. Attaching chucks to machine spindles. — Drill and other small chucks are attached by a double-ended taper arbor or shank, one end fitting the taper hole in chuck and the other the taper hole in spindle. Lathe chucks are usually attached by a threaded back plate. See p. 508.

3. Chuck jaws. — Four general kinds, Fig. 1:

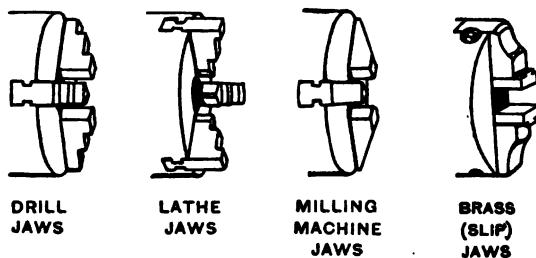


FIG. 1. — CHUCK JAWS. FOUR KINDS.

*Drill jaws*, for holding drills, rods, and similar pieces, also for holding hollow work by the inside.

*Lathe jaws*, for lathe work of large diameter.

*Milling-machine jaws*, used on milling machines.

*Brass (slip) jaws*, for brass work.



*Information.* — The jaws of some chucks may be reversed and used either as drill or lathe jaws.

4. **Classes of chucks.** — Drill, independent, universal and combination, besides draw-in chucks.

5. **A drill chuck** is used to hold drills and small work.

6. **An independent chuck**, Fig. 2, is one in which each jaw is moved independently with wrench. Chuck *A* consists of disk *B* screwed to spindle of headstock *C*. Lathe jaws *D*, stepped to suit different diameters of work, slide in slots in disk *B* and are moved by screws *E, E*, operated by a special wrench.

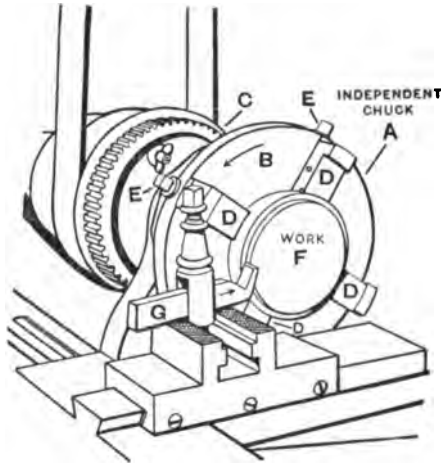


FIG. 2.—INDEPENDENT CHUCK. FACING DISK.

*Important.* — Concentric circles are marked on the face of some independent and combination chucks to facilitate setting jaws and work. See p. 1212.

*Attention.* — Independent chucks are better adapted for rough work than universal chucks.

7. **To true up and hold work in an independent chuck.** — Grip work tightly. Run lathe at a moderately high speed, rest hand on carriage and hold a piece of chalk to just touch work. Stop lathe, loosen jaw or jaws opposite part

marked by chalk and set others in. Erase chalk mark and test again, continuing until work runs true, then set all jaws up hard. Fig. 2 shows also the operation of facing work *F* with cutting-in tool *G*.

8. A universal chuck, Fig. 3, is one whose jaws move to and from the center simultaneously and concentrically. Chuck *A* is screwed to spindle of headstock *B*. This is known as a geared scroll chuck, and is made with either drill jaws, as shown, or lathe jaws. It consists of shell *C*, three bevel pinions *E* in mesh with an annular bevel gear, upon whose face is a scroll which engages jaws *D*. This chuck should be used for smooth work.

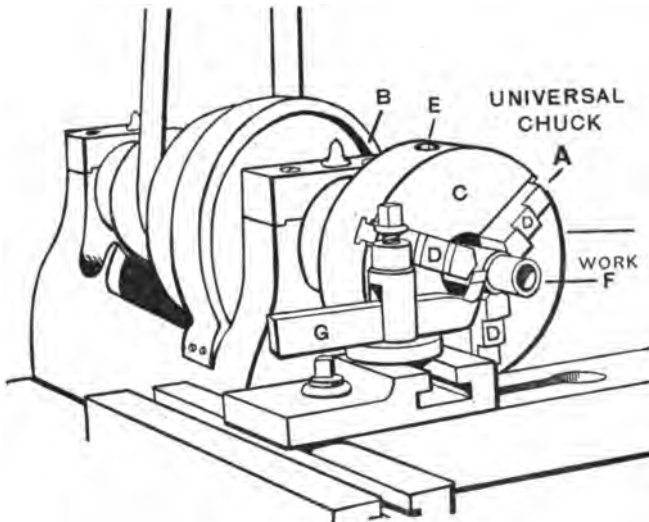


FIG. 3.—UNIVERSAL CHUCK. TURNING SLEEVE.

9. To true up and hold work in a universal chuck.—Place work in chuck, “set up” jaws by one pinion, run lathe and use chalk as before. If not true enough, loosen and turn work about one-quarter of a revolution; tighten pinion and test again; when right, tighten pinions hard.

Fig. 3 also shows how a bushing is made from bar *F*.

The bar is squared, then drilled and reamed by chucking method (see pp. 409, 417), turned with tool *G*, and cut off with cutting-off tool.

10. A combination chuck, Fig. 4, is a chuck in which the jaws may be moved independently or simultaneously. When moved simultaneously, jaws may be set either concentrically or eccentrically. Chuck *A* consists of shell *B* and jaws *C* moved by screws *D*. These screws mesh with thread on back of jaws, and carry pinions which can be placed in mesh with an annular bevel gear controlled by device on back of chuck. When in mesh, chuck is universal; out of mesh, each jaw can be moved independently. In Fig. 4 the

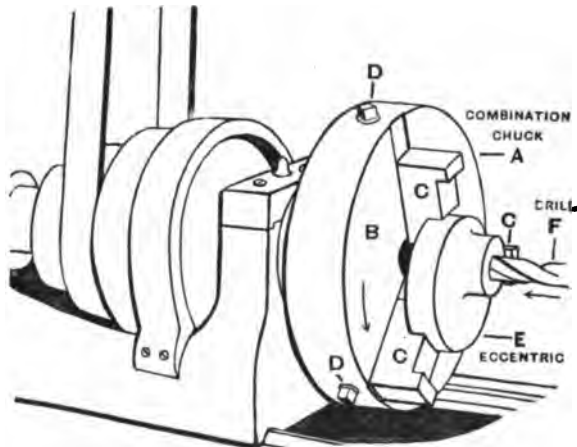


FIG. 4.—COMBINATION CHUCK HOLDING AN ECCENTRIC.

jaws are set eccentrically with annular out of mesh, then annular is thrown in mesh and the jaws are controlled as in a universal chuck. To make the chuck universally concentric, adjust each jaw to a circle on face of chuck and throw in annular.

11. Special chucks can be made or ordered from a manufacturer. For some classes of work, jaws of special shape may be home-made to fit a regular chuck.

12. Face plate jaws are obtainable which may be bolted to a face plate and used as a chuck.

13. Draw-in (spring) chucks, or collets, Fig. 5, are used on toolmakers' and watchmakers' lathes and also on some engine and turret lathes to hold bars or rods, as  $BB'$ . The rod is passed through the spindle and accurately held by the chuck, and from the rod small screws, studs, bolts, etc., may be conveniently made without preliminary cutting off, centering, squaring, etc.

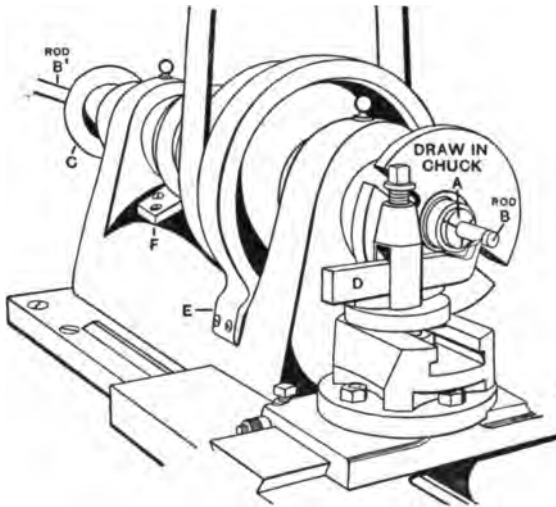


FIG. 5. — TURNING ROD HELD IN DRAW-IN CHUCK.

The steep taper on the chuck fits the conical hole in end of spindle. The chuck is slitted a short distance at three equidistant points, and rotating wheel  $C$ , which operates a hollow shaft that passes through the spindle and makes a threaded connection to end of chuck, draws the chuck into its seat to grip the bar or rod.

14. Care of chucks. — All chucks, and especially universal chucks, are short-lived for accurate work unless used intelligently and properly cared for; they should be cleaned and oiled frequently.

**15. Mounting and removing chucks.**—Clean and oil thread of both chuck and spindle, remove live center and plug hole with clean waste. Hold chuck square against nose of spindle with right hand or arm and rotate lathe with left hand until the chuck comes against shoulder on spindle. Small chucks may be loosened by grasping one jaw with a monkey wrench and striking the handle a sharp blow with the hand; large chucks, by placing a block of wood between a jaw and the bed of lathe and rotating lathe backward (with back gears in) by hand. Arbor or shank chucks are inserted and removed the same as lathe centers.

*Attention.*—To avoid springing work held in a chuck, the jaws should be forced against the solid parts, if convenient, as the arms of a pulley.

In some classes of light work, it is often necessary to loosen the jaws slightly before taking a finishing cut either when turning work held in a chuck or when boring or reaming.

#### FACE PLATES

**16. To hold work on face plate.**—Some work can be clamped to a large face plate and machined more accurately and conveniently than if held in a chuck. The work *B* is clamped to face plate *A*, Fig. 6, by clamps *C* and *C'* and bolts *D* and *D'*.

If a finished surface is to be clamped against a face plate or other finished surface, insert a sheet of paper between to prevent slipping.

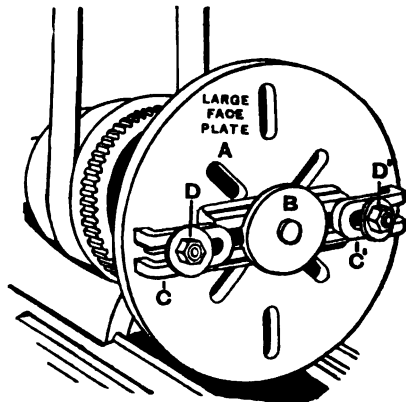


FIG. 6.—CLAMPING WORK TO FACE PLATE.

17. To clamp an engine crank to face plate, Fig. 7. — To face plate *A*, crank *B* is bolted by bolts *C* and *C'* and clamp

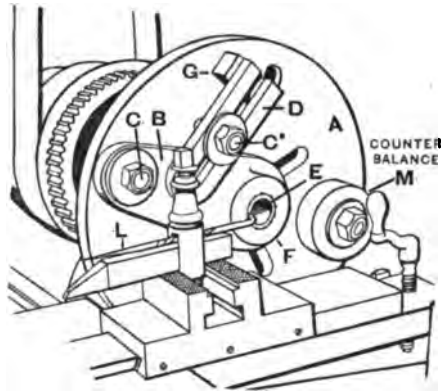


FIG. 7.—TESTING LOCATION OF ENGINE CRANK ON FACE PLATE.

*D*, in order to bore out hole *E* and turn and face hub *F*. Before clamping to face plate, plane the crank on its face and line out the holes, as at *H* and *I*, Fig. 8. Describe

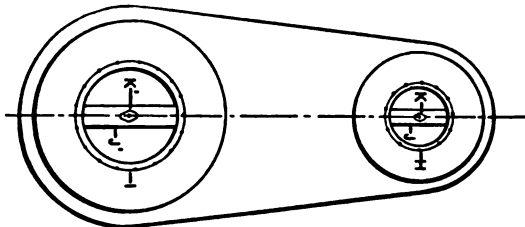


FIG. 8.—LAYING OUT HOLES IN ENGINE CRANK.

circles of the required diameter around the cored holes the proper distance apart for the crank throw. To provide centers for circles, drive pieces of wood into holes to form bridges, as at *J* and *J'*. Turn down the corners of a piece of tin, and drive it into the center of the bridge, as at *K* and *K'*. Rotate lathe by hand and move crank by rapping until circle is true to axis of rotation when tested with scriber *L*, Fig. 7, then clamp crank hard to face plate.

18. A counter weight to balance work is bolted to face plate at *M*, Fig. 7, in order to balance the eccentrically placed work and insure smooth running and accuracy.

19. To hold work with an angle plate. — Angle plate *A*, Fig. 9, is a useful fixture for various machine tools. It is planed all over with the faces at right angles ( $90^\circ$ ). It is bolted to face plate *B*, and pillow block *C* is clamped to

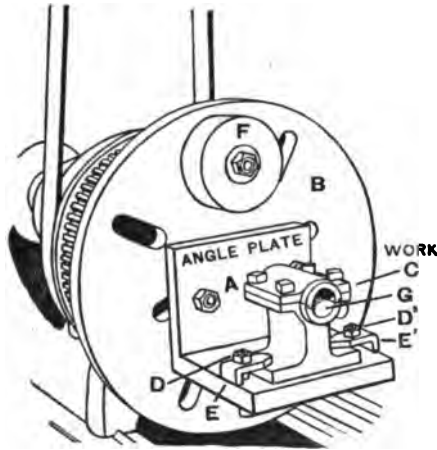


FIG. 9. — USE OF ANGLE PLATE CLAMPED TO FACE PLATE.

inside surface by bolts *D* and *D'* and clamps *E* and *E'*. *F* is a counterbalance. Before boring, the pillow block has had its base planed and the cap fitted and screwed on. A circle of proper diameter is described around the cored hole and center punched. The angle plate and work must be adjusted until this circle runs true, after which hole *G* may be bored and reamed.

#### CHUCKING

20. A method of drilling and reaming. — In chucking, the drill is stationary, while the work rotates. In drilling, the drill rotates and the work is stationary. Boring is the enlarging of a hole with a boring tool, or boring bar. Chucking is used where it would be impracticable to drill.

## 21. Chucking with twist drill in engine lathe, Figs. 10, 11.

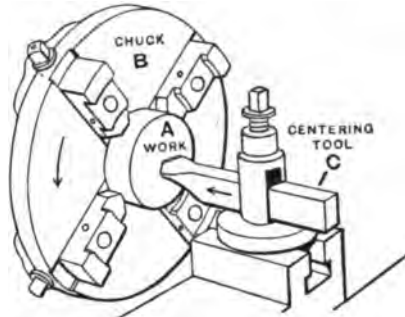


FIG. 10. — CUTTING A CONICAL CAVITY AXIALLY TRUE TO START TWIST DRILL.

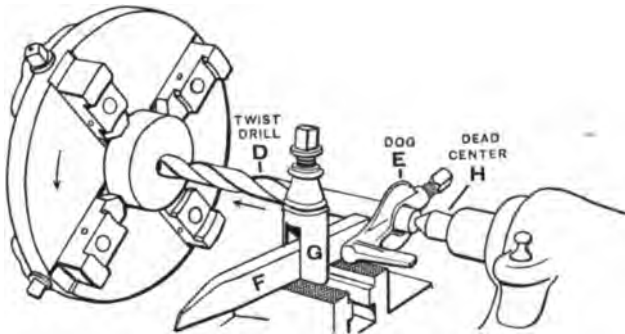


FIG. 11. — CHUCKING HOLE WITH TWIST DRILL.

## SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS AND TOOLS

Set dead center in approximate alinement.

Drill,  $1\frac{1}{8}$ " to  $\frac{1}{4}$ " small. Hand reamer, standard size.

1. Mount work *A* in independent chuck *B*, Fig. 10.
2. True up work. See pp. 402, 403.
3. Cut cavity of same angle and diameter as drill, in center of work to start drill true, with graver, right side tool or, preferably, centering tool *C*, Fig. 10.
4. Fasten dog *E* to shank of twist drill *D*, Fig. 11.
5. Place tool *F* in tool-post *G*.
6. Hold tool *F* against dog *E* by long. feed handle with left hand,

to prevent drill feeding away from center *H* at end of cut.

7. Feed footstock spindle with right hand.

8. Help carriage along with left hand by operating the long. feed handle.

*Warning.* — To prevent drill *D*, Fig. 11, slipping off dead center *H*, hold tool *F* hard against dog *E*. To neglect this often ruins drill and work. See p. 541.

To ream hole, see pp. 414–418.



*Attention.* — Solid work, especially steel, is chucked with a two-lip twist drill. Three and four-groove drills are used for cored work (castings) or to follow a two-groove drill. Smooth holes may be made with a drill  $\frac{1}{16}$ " to  $\frac{1}{8}$ " small and a hand reamer; but better results are obtained by also using a fluted chucking reamer .005" small before the hand reamer. See pp. 417, 418.

22. Drill holder and steady rest, A, Fig. 12, is used with taper shank drills. Rest B and guide bushing C are used to center, steady, and guide three-groove twist drill D in work E which is a cored casting held in chuck F. Extra guide bushings are supplied to fit drills of different diameters.

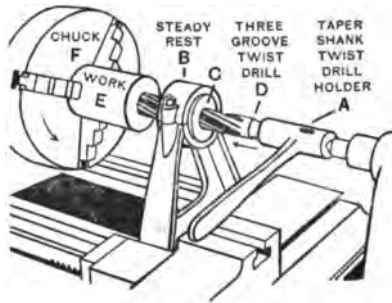


FIG. 12. — CHUCKING WITH DRILL HOLDER AND STEADY REST.

23. Flat chucking drills for chucking in an engine lathe, for either cored holes or solid work, Fig. 13. Large counter-

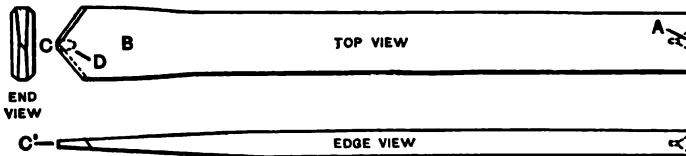


FIG. 13. — FLAT CHUCKING DRILL.

sink A, Fig. 13, provides a firm bearing on dead center. End B is  $\frac{1}{8}$ " smaller in diameter than the chucking reamer.

Point  $CC'$  is central and either thinned or grooved on both sides, as at  $D$ . To give the cutting lips some rake, grooves may be ground above them, one of which is shown

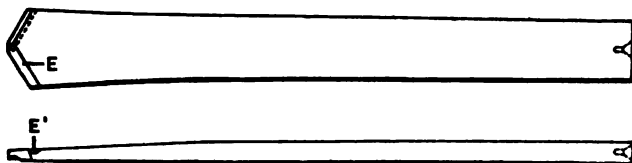


FIG. 14. — GROOVED-LIP FLAT CHUCKING DRILL.

at  $EE'$ , Fig. 14. A better way is to twist the lips as at  $F$  and  $G$ , Fig. 15.

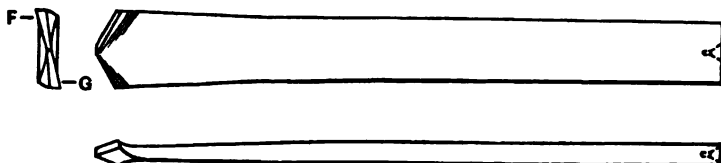


FIG. 15. — TWISTED-LIP FLAT CHUCKING DRILL.

24. Flat chucking reamers, Fig. 16. — The cutting edges are  $AB$  and  $CD$ . Head  $E$  is from .005'' to .010'' under size to allow for hand reaming.

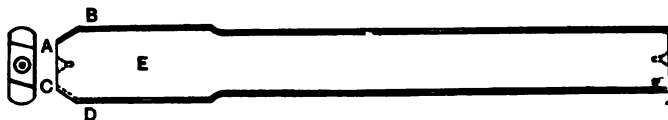


FIG. 16. — FLAT CHUCKING REAMER.

*Attention.* — Reamed holes have a very slight taper and the end the reamers enter is always the larger; therefore drill and ream work from the side into which the shaft is to be fitted.

25. Chucking with a flat drill and chucking reamer in an engine lathe. Fig. 17.

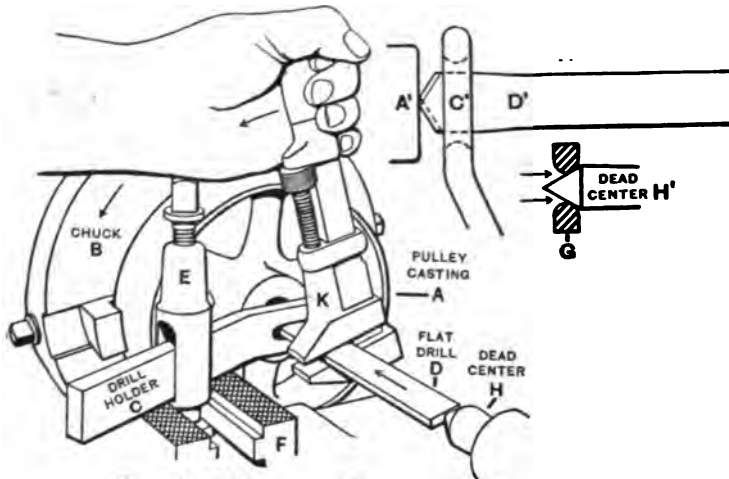


FIG. 17.—CHUCKING PULLEY WITH FLAT DRILL.

#### SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS AND TOOLS

Set dead center in approximate alinement.

Drill,  $\frac{1}{8}$ " to  $\frac{1}{32}$ " small. Chucking reamer,  $\frac{1}{16}$ " small.

Drill rest. Monkey wrench. Hand reamer, standard size.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Mount pulley A in independent chuck B.</li> <li>2. True up by inside of rim.</li> <li>3. Clamp drill holder C in post E to tool block F.</li> <li>4. Set holder with dead center H' exactly in middle of slot as at G and with drill approximately central as C', D'.</li> <li>5. Set holder near work as at C', A'.</li> <li>6. Place point of drill central against hub A'.</li> <li>7. Place dead center H in other end.</li> <li>8. Pull wrench K forward to pinch drill in slot.</li> <li>9. Start lathe at speed for twist drills.</li> <li>10. Feed spindle until drill cuts half the depth of its point.</li> <li>11. Remove wrench. Feed drill rapidly.</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>12. Hold drill back on dead center with left hand, when point breaks through.</li> <li>13. Stop lathe when through.</li> <li>14. Place flat chucking reamer in slot as in operation 4.</li> <li>15. Hold with wrench until reamer is started. When through stop lathe. To ream hole, see pp. 414, 416, 417.</li> </ol> <p><i>Attention.</i> — If slot in holder is not at height of dead center, the drill or reamer will cut large and may spoil work. If drill moves sidewise when starting, replace wrench and repeat. Drill must cut true before reaching full diameter. For large holes or cored holes, use two or three flat drills of increasing diameters.</p> |
|---|---|

## REAMING

26. Reamers are used for sizing, smoothing, and standardizing straight and taper holes. See Taper Reamers, pp. 418, 419, 619, 620.

There are two general classes: chucking or roughing reamers, used in a machine, and finishing reamers, used by hand or power. The usual amount for the finishing reamers to cut is  $.005''$  to  $\frac{1}{32}''$  for cast iron, and  $.005''$  to  $.010''$  for steel and brass.

27. Irregularly spaced teeth.—To prevent chattering, reamer teeth or blades are spaced progressively wider as in Fig. 18, A to 1 to the right, and from 1 to A to the left.

The clearance  $G$  is given the teeth or lands to relieve the cutting edge. The point of a hand reamer is slightly tapered a distance equal to its diameter, to enter the hole. The shank,  $H$ , Fig. 20, is ground  $.001''$  small, to prevent binding in hole.

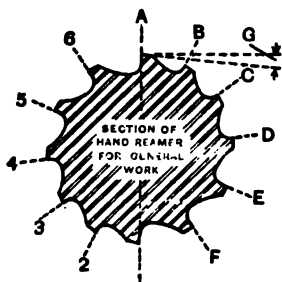


FIG. 18.—TEETH OF HAND REAMER IRREGULARLY SPACED.



FIG. 19.—TEETH OF HAND REAMER WITH NEGATIVE RAKE.

28. To ream brass, the face of teeth is inclined  $20^\circ$  back of radial (negative rake) to prevent chattering, as in Fig. 19. See Broaching, pp. 546-548.

*Attention.* — Cast iron and brass are reamed dry; steel and wrought iron with oil.

*Warning.* — To ream thin work in a vise use a jig similarly constructed to the tapping jig. See *Principles of Machine*

*Work.* To ream work in a vise *without* a jig and also without chattering and spoiling the work, the length of hole should be about twice the diameter of the reamer. See pp. 416, 417.

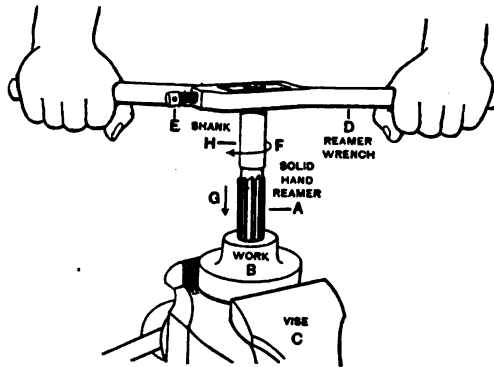


FIG. 20. —REAMING IN VISE.

29. Hand reaming work held in vise. Fig. 20.

SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS AND TOOLS

Hole in flange casting drilled or drilled and reamed .005" to  $\frac{1}{8}$ " small.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Chuck work B in engine lathe then fasten firmly in vise C.</li> <li>2. Place adjustable reamer wrench D on square end of reamer A and fasten with thumb screw E.</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Rotate wrench rapidly in direction of arrow F and at same time press downward in direction of arrow G, continue rotating and pressing downward until reamer passes clear through the casting.</li> </ol> |
|---|--|

*Attention.* — Hand reamers should never be rotated backward as it quickly destroys their cutting edges, and they should be used vertically when the nature of the work will permit.

*Note.* — Before placing reamer in hole, see that there are no burrs on shank H, which would be likely to scratch the reamed surface as the reamer is passed through the hole.

30. To ream a hole by hand in a vertical drilling machine, Fig. 21.

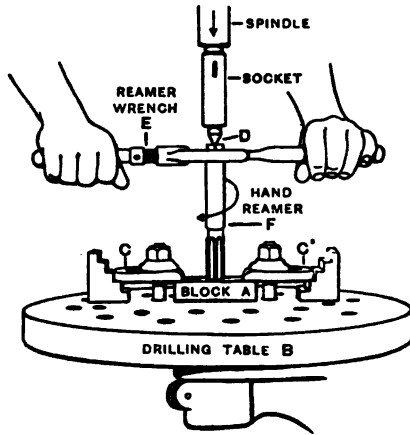


FIG. 21. — HAND REAMING IN A VERTICAL DRILLING MACHINE.

#### SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS AND TOOLS

Hole in work drilled  $.005''$  to  $\frac{1}{8}''$  small.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Place drill in socket and the socket in spindle.  | 5. Drill hole with reamer drill. See <i>Accurate Drilling, Principles of Machine Work</i> . |
| 2. Unclamp table at swivel and column.   | 6. Insert center <i>D</i> and place wrench <i>E</i> and reamer <i>F</i> in place.           |
| 3. Adjust table until drill will pass down through any convenient hole and reclamp.          | 7. Rotate reamer in direction of arrow, following with center <i>D</i> .                    |
| 4. Clamp block <i>A</i> to table <i>B</i> with clamps, bolts, and step blocks <i>C, C'</i> . |   |

31. Adjustable reamers. — *A*, Fig. 23, may be adjusted to compensate for wear and to ream special-size holes.

32. Reaming stand *B*, Fig. 22, is more convenient than a vise. It consists of an independent chuck *C*, supported by column *D*. The work *E* is firmly gripped in the jaws *F* by operating the handle *G*.

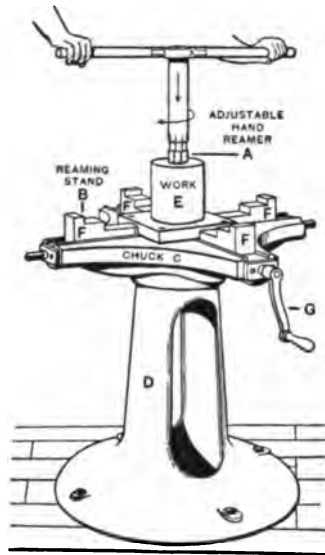


FIG. 22.—HAND REAMING IN REAMING STAND.

33. To ream work by hand in the lathe with a hand reamer, Fig. 23.

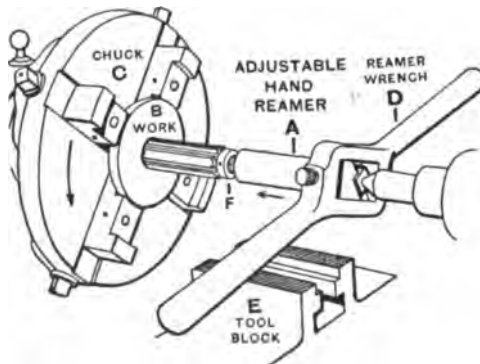


FIG. 23.—REAMING IN LATHE BY HAND.

## SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS AND TOOLS

Hole in blank drilled or bored  $.005''$  to  $\frac{1}{4}''$  small.  
Set dead center in approximate alinement.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Place reamer <i>A</i> in drilled or bored hole in work <i>B</i> held in chuck <i>C</i> . | 2. Place arm of wrench <i>D</i> against tool block <i>E</i> . |
|   | 3. Pull belt downward and follow with dead center.            |

*Attention.* — Carefully follow reamer with dead center to prevent spoiling reamer and work.

On thick work, start hand reamer in above manner in lathe, and then take both work and reamer to reaming stand or vise for finishing. See p. 414.

34. Fluted chucking reamer, Fig. 24, is obtainable in standard sizes or  $.005''$  small, to be followed by standard hand reamer. This class of reamers has its points always beveled, and some points are slightly tapered the same as on hand reamers. Chucking reamers are also obtainable with taper shanks to fit drill sockets.

35. To ream in lathe by power with fluted chucking reamer, Fig. 24. — Fasten dog *D* to shank of reamer *A* and insert reamers in drilled hole of work *B*, held in chuck *C*, allowing dog *D* to rest on tool block *E*.

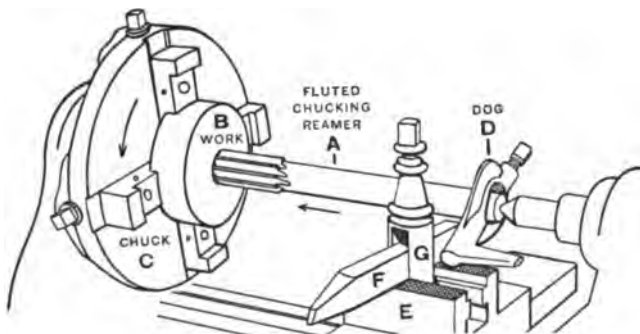


FIG. 24. — REAMING GEAR BLANK IN LATHE BY POWER.



## SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS AND TOOLS

Hole in casting drilled  $1\frac{1}{8}$ " to  $\frac{1}{4}$ " small.  
Set dead center in approximate alinement.

1. Place reamer *A* in drilled hole in work *B* held in chuck *C*. Fasten dog *D* to shank of reamer and rest on tool block *E*.
2. Fasten tool *F* in post *G* and adjust to prevent reamer drawing off dead center.
3. Use power and help carriage along by hand. Use about two-

thirds the speed recommended for twist drills of same diameter.

*Warning.* — To prevent reamer *A*, Fig. 24, slipping off dead center, press tool *F* hard against dog *D*. Neglect of this often ruins drill and work.

To hand ream, see pp. 416, 417.

36. **Rose chucking reamer**, Fig. 25, is made with either straight or helical flutes, with cutting teeth on end only. It will not produce as smooth a hole as a hand or fluted chucking reamer and is not used when a smooth hole is required. See pp. 417, 418. It is obtainable in standard sizes and also with taper shank to fit drill sockets.

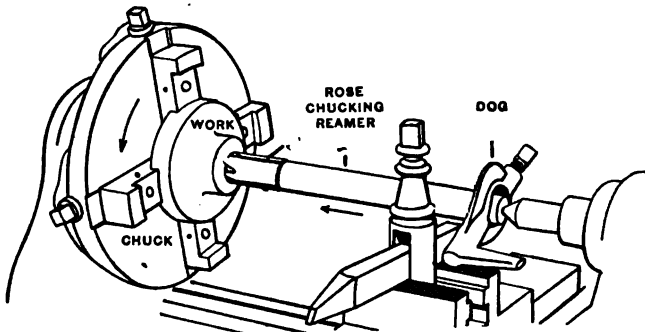


FIG. 25. — REAMING FLANGE CASTING BY POWER IN LATHE.

37. **Broach reamers for small taper pins.** — Collars, *A*, and similar work are often fastened to shafts by drilling, reaming, *B*, and pinning, *C*, Fig. 26.

Broach reamers may be supplied with a handle, as at *E*, and used by hand to enlarge holes and to remove burrs. They are obtainable in tapers of  $\frac{1}{8}$ " and  $\frac{3}{8}$ " per foot, and in sizes from No. 1 to No. 70 (drill and wire gage sizes). Taper pin fluted reamers and taper pins having a taper of  $\frac{1}{4}$ " per foot are used for pinning or doweling, and are obtainable in sizes from  $\frac{1}{8}$ " to  $1\frac{1}{4}$ ". Each reamer overlaps the next smaller size.

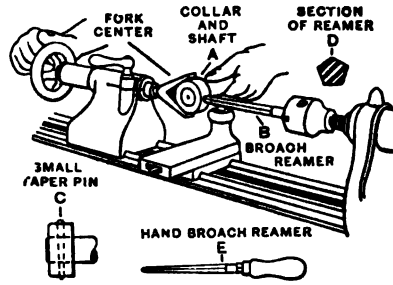


FIG. 26. — REAMING TAPER PIN HOLES WITH BROACH REAMER IN SPEED LATHE.

*Attention.* — To avoid breaking taper reamers, feed slowly, oil freely, and withdraw frequently to remove chips.

#### MACHINING ALLOYS, ETC.

**38. To machine bronze.** — Phosphor, Tobin, and other bronzes are tougher than ordinary brass, and are machined with cutting tools similar to those used for steel and wrought iron, and lubricated with lard oil.

**39. To machine copper.** — Copper is machined with tools similar to those used for steel but preferably with more rake as a keen edge is desirable, and with the point slightly rounded. Lubricate with milk, soda water, or soap mixture. Use speed nearly as fast as for brass.

**40. To machine aluminum.** — Aluminum, owing to its light and ductile nature, is machined with tools having acute cutting angles, more rake than is used for steel, and at a moderately fast cutting speed. See Lubricants for Cutting Tools, p. 148. A very high polish may be obtained on a cotton buffing wheel.

**41. To machine Babbitt and lead.** — Babbitt and lead are machined dry and with keen tools, the same as aluminum.

**42. To machine vulcanite or hard rubber or fiber.** — Rubber and fiber are machined dry, at a moderately fast speed, with cutting tools similar to those used for steel. They

are finished and polished the same as steel, for a very high finish buff on a cotton buffing wheel charged with tripoli or rottenstone.

43. To machine rawhide, use tools similar to those used for steel, but preferably with more rake and with a cutting speed about the same as for brass, and machine dry. For gear blanks, the several layers are confined between riveted plates, and should be shellacked as soon as machined to prevent swelling. Rawhide is milled and drilled dry, and the chips are removed by compressed air or a fan.

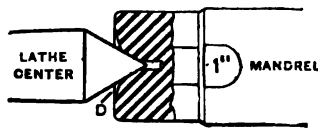
#### MANDRELS OR ARBORS

44. A mandrel, often called an arbor, is pressed, driven, or threaded into work to provide centers so that it may be machined.

An arbor is a shaft used to carry a cutting tool, as a milling machine arbor, a saw arbor, etc.

Four classes of mandrels are used: solid, expanding, built-up and gang. See pp. 421, 422, 613 and Nut Mandrel, pp. 340, 1208.

45. Standard solid mandrel, *AB*, Fig. 27, is made of tool



SECTION OF MANDREL END.

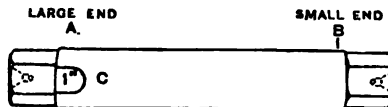


FIG. 27. — MANDREL OR ARBOR.

steel, hardened and ground. See Table of Mandrels, p. 1204. The size is stamped at large end, as at *C*. A portion of each end is reduced and flattened to receive the driving dog. The ends are recessed as at *D*, Fig. 27, around the countersinks to protect them from injury.

*Important.*—For accurate work, mandrels should be tested to see if they run true. See 1211.

46. Expanding mandrel. — Fig. 28 consists of shaft *A* having uniformly tapered slots as at *B*. Sleeve *C* guides tapered jaws *D* (see *D'*) while they are being adjusted to the work by the sliding of the shaft *A*.

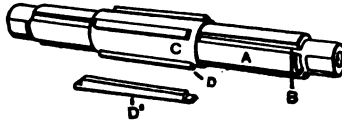


FIG. 28. — EXPANDING MANDREL.

47. Bridges in hollow castings *A*, Fig. 29, are often cast across the ends as at *B*, to provide for center holes.

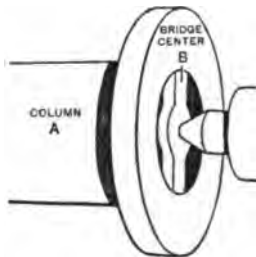


FIG. 29. — BRIDGE IN HOLLOW CASTING FOR CENTER HOLE.

48. Revolving dead center for pipe turning. — To square or turn small pipe, mount upon ordinary lathe centers. For large pipe or cored work, a special large dead center is needed,

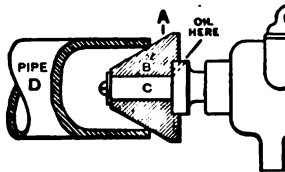


FIG. 30. — REVOLVING DEAD CENTER FOR PIPE TURNING.

preferably one that will revolve as at *A*, Fig. 30, in which cone *B* revolves upon shank *C*. A solid live center or chuck may be used at other end.

**49. Built-up mandrels.** — To face the ends of small engine cylinders or similar work, a built-up mandrel is used. To face the ends of a piece of pipe or cored work, make a mandrel by drilling and tapping three or four holes around each end of a stiff shaft and inserting adjusting screws to bear against the inside of work.

For large shells, tubes, etc., castings called "spiders" are used consisting of arms projecting from a hub, each arm supplied with a screw to bear against the work, and the hub supplied with set screws to fasten spider to mandrel.

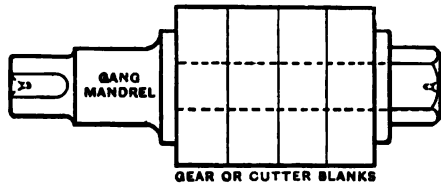


FIG. 31.—GANG MANDREL.

**Gang mandrels** are used to hold several gears or cutter blanks at once and are made with shoulder and reduced part to receive blanks which are fastened by collar and nut on end of mandrel, as in Fig. 31.

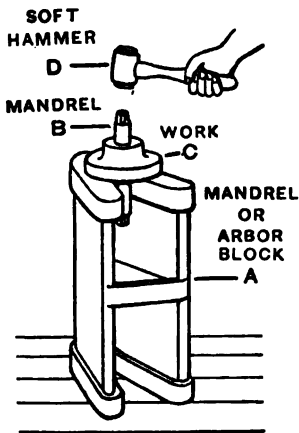


FIG. 32.—DRIVING MANDREL INTO FLANGE.

A special mandrel may be made of any suitable piece of stock by centering, turning, and filing to fit the hole.

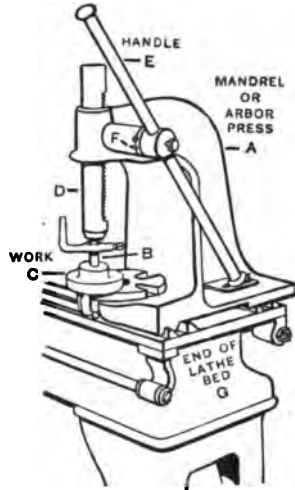
**50. Soft hammers for driving mandrels into work** are made of lead or rawhide. A steel hammer should never be used without protecting work with a block of wood, copper, or lead.

*Attention.* — Molds are obtainable for molding lead hammers.

**51. Mandrel or arbor block.** — Fig. 32 shows the relative position of block A, mandrel B, work C, and soft hammer D when driving a mandrel into the work.

**52. Mandrel or arbor press, A, Fig. 33,** is used to press mandrel *B* into work *C* by forcing spindle *D* against the mandrel with handle *E*. Pointer *F* may be set to adjust mandrel for duplicate pieces. The press may be bolted to a lathe as at *G*, or mounted on a stand. It may be used also for forcing fits.

**53. Center mandrel for bottom holes.** — Mandrels made to fit the hole in the live spindle of a lathe are used to hold caps, oil cups, bottom or blind nuts and similar work that must be machined. The projecting end is turned either to a slight taper to receive work with a plain hole, or threaded to hold threaded pieces.



**FIG. 33. — FORCING MANDREL INTO FLANGE WITH MANDREL PRESS.**

**54. Studs for driving large work instead of dog.** — Work of large diameter, as a large pulley, may be driven by its arms with one or more studs fastened to the face plate of lathe.

*Attention.* — Oil mandrel before pressing or driving it into work. Take light cuts when using small mandrels to avoid springing of mandrel and chattering, producing irregular tool marks.

*Warning.* — To avoid breaking the spokes of a pulley or similar piece of work when driving a mandrel in or out at mandrel or arbor block or pressing a mandrel in or out with mandrel or arbor press, place a collar under hub of pulley so that the pressure will come on the hub and not on the rim of the pulley.

## TURNING FLANGES

55. To clamp carriage to face large work in engine lathe. — Feed tool to its cut by hand, then clamp carriage with binding screw and use power cross feed.

In the absence of power cross feed and clamp, throw feed belt off or feed gears out of mesh. Run tool close to work, tighten long feed friction knob, revolve feed shaft by hand until tool takes required cut and then feed tool inward or outward with hand cross feed.

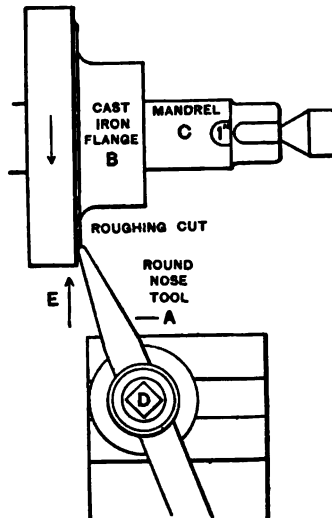


FIG. 34. — ROUGH FACING FLANGE.

56. To rough turn face of cast-iron flange, Fig. 34. — Use round-nose tool A for roughing flange B on mandrel C. Fasten tool in post D, and clamp carriage. Feed in direction of arrow E to outer edge of fillet.

57. To finish and scrape face of cast-iron flange to prepare for polishing, Fig. 35.—Take light finishing cuts with

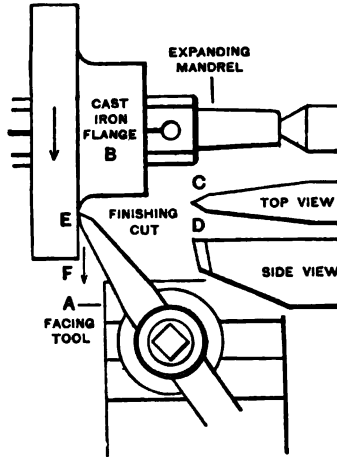


FIG. 35. — FINISH FACING FLANGE.

facing tool *A* ground to  $60^\circ$ , as at *C* and *D*, at medium high speed. Grind and oilstone top face of tool. Set it to drag a little as at *E* and feed in direction of arrow *F*. Use scraper

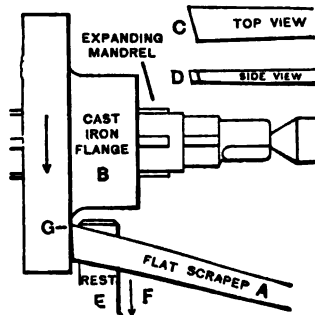


FIG. 36. — SCRAPING RADIAL FACE OF FLANGE.

*A*, Fig. 36, with cutting edge *C D* ground straight, or slightly convex, at medium speed. Hold scraper on rest *E* and move in direction of *F* with point dragging a little as at *G*. A piece of leather placed under scraper will often prevent chattering.



58. To scrape inside rounds or fillets to the desired curvature. First shape with a round-nose lathe tool. Then use a

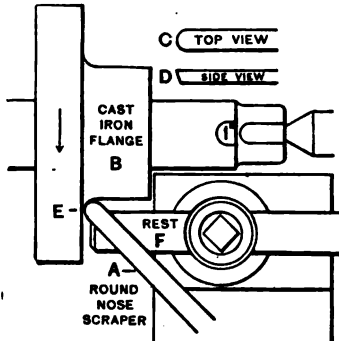


FIG. 37. — SCRAPING FILLET IN FLANGE.

round-nose hand tool, A, Fig. 37, to prepare filleted corner of flange B for polishing. C and D show point and clearance of tool. To avoid chattering, curvature of end E should be greater than that of fillet for clearance and the tool should be held firmly on rest. A round or half-round file is sometimes used to smooth a fillet.

*Attention.* — Cylindrical surfaces are more easily prepared for polishing than radial and curved surfaces. On small work a light finishing cut is taken with a fine feed, and on very large work a light finishing cut is taken with a broad-nose tool and a coarse feed, and the surfaces filed to erase the tool marks.

*Warning.* — Do not rub greasy fingers on cast iron before or during filing or scraping as the file or scraper will slip, glaze and scratch a greasy cast iron surface.

*Warning.* — Do not rub greasy fingers on cast iron before or during filing or scraping as the file or scraper will slip, glaze and scratch a greasy cast iron surface.

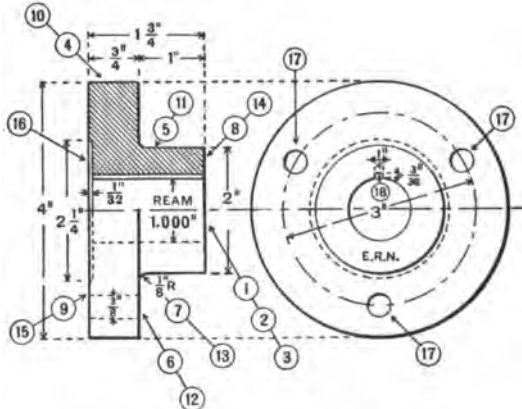


FIG. 38. — SCHEDULE DRAWING OF MAKING A CAST-IRON FLANGE

59. To make a cast-iron flange finished all over, Fig. 38.

Specifications: Material, iron casting  $\frac{1}{8}$ " large; weight 4 lb. 4 oz.

Hardness, 26 to 28 (scleroscope).

Set dead center in approximate alinement.

High-speed steel or stellite cutting tools.

Time: Study drawing and schedule in advance, 5 min.—Oil machines, 7 min.—Chuck, 25 min.—Rough turn, 25 min.—Finish, 25 min.—Polish, 20 min.—Drill, 10 min.—Cut keyway, 8 min.—Clean machines, 12 min.—Total, 2 h. 17 min.

#### SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS, MACHINES AND TOOLS

OPERATIONS.	MACHINES, FEEDS, SPEEDS	TOOLS.
Snag casting. Mount in chuck and adjust until hub runs true. Drill and rough ream hole, (1), (2).	Engine lathe, 12" to 16". 2d or 3d speed, or 115 R.P.M. Hand feed.	File, independent chuck, chalk, drill rest, flat drill, $\frac{3}{16}$ ", flat reamer, $\frac{9}{16}$ ".
Finish ream hole by starting reamer in lathe, pull belt by hand, complete at reaming stand or vise, (3). See pp. 415, 414.	Reaming stand or vise.	1" standard hand reamer, reamer wrench.
Oil mandrel and press into hole in direction hole was reamed. See pp. 422, 423, and mount on centers.	Mandrel press.	1" mandrel.
True live center.		
Rough turn $\frac{1}{16}$ " oversize, (4), (5).	Engine lathe, 4th speed. Back gears in, or 35 F. P. M. Medium power feed.	Holder and cutter or diamond-point tool, 15° rake, calipers, rule.
Rough face, (6); feed inward; rough fillet, (7); rough face, (8); reverse work on centers, then rough (9).	4th speed. Back gears in, or 35 F.P.M. Hand or medium power feed.	Holder and cutter 15° rake or round-nose tool. 2 rules to measure length of hub.
Finish turn, (10) (see <i>Attention</i> ), (11).	2d or 3d speed (back gears out) or 125 F.P.M. Fine power feed—140 to 1".	Holder and cutter or diamond-point tool, 15° rake, calipers, rule.
File, (10), (11).	3d speed, or 175 F.P.M.	8" or 10" mill bastard file, file card.
Finish face with cuts .002" to .003" deep and scrape, (12).	2d or 3d speed, or 125 F.P.M.	Facing tool, flat scraper.

Finish and scrape fillet, (13).	2d or 3d speed, or 125 F.P.M.	Round - nose tool, round-nose scraper.
Finish face and scrape, (14).	2d or 3d speed, or 125 F.P.M.	Facing tool, flat scraper.
Finish (do not scrape or polish), (15) (see <i>Attention</i> ).	1st or 2d speed, or 60 F.P.M.	Facing tool, calipers, rule.
Cut recess $\frac{1}{2}$ " deep. Set side tool at 45°, feed outward, two or three cuts, (16).	1st or 2d speed, or 50 F.P.M. Hand or medium power feed — 80 to 1".	Side tool, calipers, rule.
Polish, (10), (11), (12), (13), (14). See pp. 432, 433.	Speed lathe, highest speed.	Polishing stick, 60, 90, 120, emery cloth, oil.
Jig drill, and ream holes, (17).	2-spindle drilling machine. Drill 600 R. P. M. Power reamer, 400 R.P.M. Hand feed.	Box jig, $\frac{3}{4}$ " drill, $\frac{1}{8}$ " power reamer.
Cut keyway central, (18).	Planer and vise or key seating machine.	Keyway tool holder and cutter, $\frac{1}{4}$ " wide.
Stamp name or initials in recess, as E.R.N.		Steel name stamp, hammer.

*Attention.* — Finishing cuts 10 and 15 may be omitted until flange is keyed to its shaft. The hole may be chucked with a  $\frac{3}{8}$ " twist drill or, if cored, with a three or four-groove drill, and hand reamed (1), (3). The hand tools may be carbon steel.

*Note.* — Bushings, collars and step pulleys or any other work mounted on a mandrel, with one, two, or more diameters, are machined in the same general manner as the flange in Fig. 38.

#### TURNING PULLEYS

60. The taper or crowning on the face of pulleys, ranges from  $\frac{1}{4}$ " per foot for large pulleys to  $\frac{3}{4}$ " per foot for small pulleys. Tapered-face pulleys are made commercially in a pulley lathe with two cutting tools operating at same time, — one on the front, the other on the back of machine, or in turret lathes with special tools.

The face of the pulley is often crowned in a forming lathe or ground in special grinding machines from the rough casting. The hubs of pulleys used in combination, as tight and loose pulley mechanism, are squared.

Pulley *A*, Fig. 39, is turned in an engine lathe. The rim is faced as at *B*. The face is tapered as at *C*. The rim may be chamfered as at *D*, or rounded with a right-and-left forming tool as at *E, E'*.

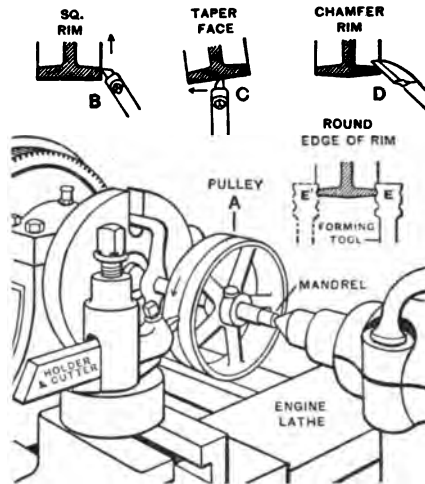


FIG. 39. — PULLEY TURNING IN ENGINE LATHE.

The set-over of footstock for ordinary tapers is forward, as at *A*, Fig. 40, and for pulleys it is backward as at *B*.

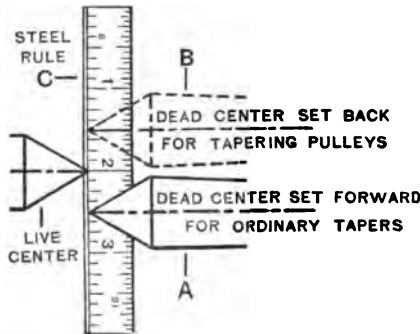


FIG. 40.

**Information.**— Omit straight turning on large pulleys and pulleys for rough work. Rub chalk on face, find middle with rule, turn taper from rough casting, then round edges of rim with forming tool (see *E, E'*, Fig. 39) and file face.

## 61. To make a pulley 5" in diameter. Fig. 41.

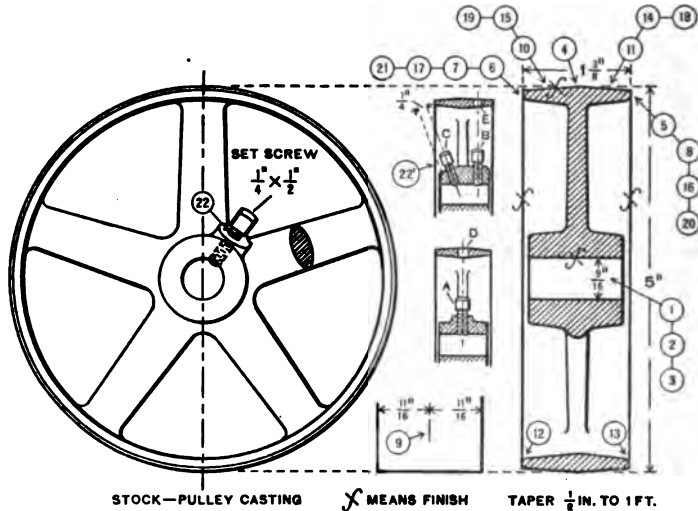


FIG. 41. — SCHEDULE DRAWING.

**Specifications:** Material, pulley casting with surfaces to be finished  $\frac{1}{8}$ " large; weight, 2 lb. 5 oz. Hardness, 24 to 30 (scleroscope).  
Set dead center in approximate alinement.

High-speed steel or stellite cutting tools.

**Time:** Study drawing and schedule in advance, 5 min. — Oil machines, 5 min. — Chuck, 20 min. — Turn, square, and taper, 40 min. — File and polish, 15 min. — Drill and tap, 10 min. — Stamp, snag and paint, 8 min. — Clean machines, 7 min. — Total, 1 h. 50 min.

## SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS, MACHINES AND TOOLS

OPERATIONS.	MACHINES, SPEEDS, FEEDS.	TOOLS.
Snag casting. Mount in chuck and adjust until edge and inside of rim run true. Drill and rough ream hole, (1), (2).	Engine lathe, 12" to 16". 3d speed, or 400 R.P.M. Hand feed.	File, chuck, chalk, lathe centering tool, $\frac{3}{8}$ " twist drill, dog, chucking reamer, .005" small.
Finish ream hole by hand at reaming stand or vise, pp. 415, 414, (3).	Reaming stand or vise.	$\frac{3}{8}$ " standard hand reamer, reamer wrench.
Oil mandrel and press into hole. See pp. 422, 423.	Mandrel press.	$\frac{1}{8}$ " standard mandrel.
True live center.	3d speed.	Center truing tool, center gage.

<p>Mount pulley on centers. Rough turn to 5", (4), one or two cuts. See A, Fig. 39.</p>	<p>Engine lathe, 3d or 4th speed, back gears in, or 35 F.P.M. Medium power feed — 80 to 1".</p>	<p>Dog, holder and cutter or diamond, point tool, 15° rake calipers, rule.</p>
<p>Rough square edge of rim (5), reverse pulley on centers and rough square (6) to 1 3/4" + 1/4".* See B, Fig. 39.</p>	<p>3d or 4th speed, back gears in, or 50 F.P.M. Hand or medium power feed — 80 to 1".</p>	<p>Holder and cutter or round-nose tool, calipers, rule.</p>
<p>Finish square edge (7), reverse pulley on centers and finish square (8) to 1 3/4" one cut each. See B, Fig. 39.</p>	<p>.....</p>	<p>.....</p>
<p>Coat a small portion of face with copper sulphate or chalk and make line midway between edges, (9).</p>	<p>.....</p>	<p>Copper sulphate or chalk, divider calipers or dividers, rule.</p>
<p>Regrind tool. Set footstock back to turn taper of 1/4" per foot (7/16" for 5 1/2" between centers) and set tool to touch line (9), see C, Fig. 39, and feed toward headstock. Reverse pulley, reset tool and repeat. (10), (11).</p>	<p>3d or 4th speed, back gears in, or 50 F.P.M. Fine power feed — 140 to 1".</p>	<p>Rule, dividers, holder and cutter or diamond-point tool.</p>
<p>Chamfer at 45° inside corners of rim, see D, Fig. 39, or round with forming tool. (12), (13).</p>	<p>2d speed, back gears in, or 25 F.P.M., hand feed.</p>	<p>Side tool, 15° rake.</p>
<p>File face, (14), (15). Scrape edges, (16), (17).</p>	<p>2d speed, or 175 F.P.M.</p>	<p>8" or 10" mill bastard file, graver.</p>
<p>Polish face and edges, (18), (19), (20), (21), See pp. 432, 433.</p>	<p>Speed lathe, highest speed.</p>	<p>60, 90, 120 emery cloth, polishing stick, oil.</p>
<p>Drill and tap hole for set screw, insert 1/4" x 1/2" round-point set screw.</p>	<p>Vertical drilling machine, 3d speed, hand feed. Tilting vise or fixture.</p>	<p>1/16" extension drill, 1/4" x 20 U. S. S., pulley tap, wrench, lard oil.</p>
<p>Stamp name or initial on end of hub.</p>	<p>.....</p>	<p>Steel name stamp, hammer.</p>
<p>Snag and paint unfinished parts.</p>	<p>.....</p>	<p>Special black paint.</p>

\* *Information.* — Take an equal amount of material from each edge of rim so that the arms will be approximately central.

*Important.* — Filing, scraping and polishing are omitted on large pulleys and rough work.

*Attention.* — Power chucking reamer may be omitted, as a good hole may be obtained with a drill and hand reamer.

When possible, place arms of pulley opposite chuck jaws. The hand tools may be carbon steel.

**62. To locate set screws, Fig. 41.**—If the boss is central as at *A*, drill body hole *D* in rim through which to tap hole *A*, and use a cup or round-pointed set screw. Where the boss is flat as at *B* and placed at one side, drill a body hole through rim *E*. If a body hole through rim is objectionable, hold pulley in a tilting vise or fixture and drill and tap hole at angle, as at *C*. In large pulleys use two set screws or key.

#### POLISHING LATHE WORK

**63. Use a speed lathe for polishing but never an engine lathe** when it can be avoided, as the gritty splatterings injure its bearings. Make exception only to work machined in a chuck of an engine lathe which must be polished before it is removed.

An effective polishing speed for emery, alundum, carborundum or aloxite cloth is between 5000 and 6000 F.P.M.; that is, surface speed of about a mile a minute (5280 feet).

It is not always possible to obtain this high speed, as speed lathes are usually belted for a great variety of work, as drilling, hand turning, etc., and their highest speed will not give the maximum polishing speed for small work.

On work that is unbalanced, it is not desirable, and often dangerous, to polish at the maximum speed, as it will shake the lathe and the work may fly off the centers. It is best to use as high a speed as the nature of the work will permit, since the polishing can then be done with less labor and with less tendency to destroy the truth of the work.

**64. Order of applying different numbers of emery cloth.**—If the work is carefully finished, limited application of 60 and 90 will produce an effective polish; and if the work is finished extra fine, 90 will be sufficient. If a more brilliant polish is desired, use 120 and flour. For large work not given a fine finish it may be necessary to begin with 46 or 54.

Apply 60 emery first with hard pressure until all tool marks and scratches are removed and the pores in the metal have nearly disappeared. Then apply 90 emery with lighter pressure until all evidence of 60 is removed. If on applying

90, tool marks, deep scratches, or large pores appear, return at once to 60 emery. Follow this method in applying successive grades of emery.

Use lard oil on the emery cloth or work, distributing it with the fingers.

**65. To polish flange, Fig. 42.** — Oil speed lathe and shift belt to highest speed. Press mandrel into flange *A*, which has been carefully finished by turning, filing, and scraping. Fasten dog on mandrel. Mount and adjust on centers. Wrap a strip of No. 60 emery cloth *B* around end of wedge-shaped soft-pine stick *C*. Drop a little oil on emery cloth or flange and distribute with fingers. Start lathe and pivot stick on rest *D* which should be clamped from 2" to 2½" from the work.

Keep emery moving back and forth slowly along the work so that the marks will cross and recross each other, to avoid cutting grooves. Grades 60 and 90 will produce a good polish on a flange.

To polish radial face of flange, clamp rest *D* parallel to face and from 2" to 2½" distant. Apply emery cloth in same order

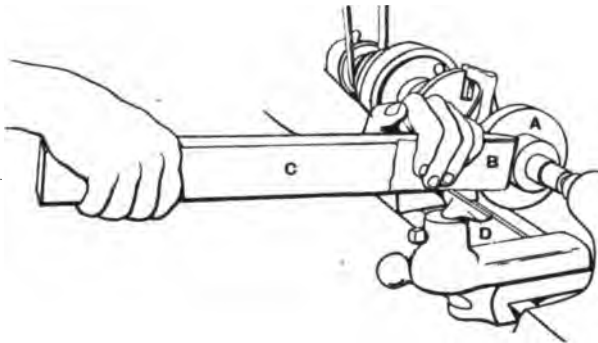


FIG. 42. — POLISHING A FLANGE IN SPEED LATHE.

as on hub. Keep emery moving slowly, advance and recede in short strokes toward the center to avoid cutting grooves, then recede in the same order. To polish the fillet, move emery cloth back and forth in short strokes following the curve.



**66. To polish a shaft with wood polishing clamp, AA' Fig. 43, hinged by leather at end. —** Oil speed lathe and shift belt to highest speed. Place dog on shaft with copper under set screw, and mount shaft on centers. Drop a little oil on emery cloth or shaft and distribute with the fingers. Wrap

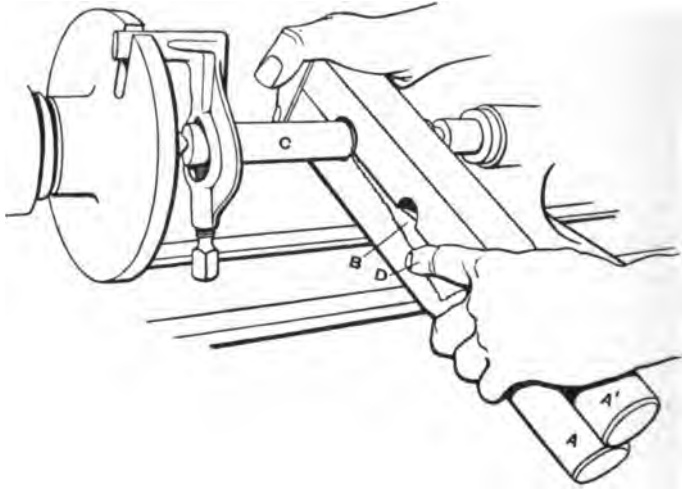


FIG. 43. — POLISHING A SHAFT IN SPEED LATHE.

emery cloth *B* around shaft *C* in one fold only, and hold end as at *D*, to prevent it from winding around shaft. Apply pressure with the left hand, and with the right move clamp back and forth in short strokes along shaft so that the marks will cross and recross each other. Move clamp continuously when in contact with revolving work, otherwise emery will cut grooves. Grades 60 and 90 will produce a good polish on a shaft.

**67. To polish brass and copper, use a finer emery cloth than for steel or iron, as the material is softer. Start with a No. 90, continue with No. 120 flour, and crocus cloth. If a more brilliant luster is desired, the work may be buffed.**

For Polishing and Buffing with Wheels and Belts, and Lacquering, see p. 440.

*Attention.* — Use oil sparingly to avoid excessive spattering. Do not allow the emery cloth to slip off the edge of work as it will round the corners. Adjust mandrel, or work freely on centers, and occasionally loosen and oil dead center, as the heat generated will expand the work or mandrel and burn off the dead center.

To lay lines uniformly after work is polished, moisten a piece of worn emery cloth of fine grade with oil (or oil the work, distributing it with the fingers) and move the emery cloth slowly along the work.

*Important.* — If holes are to be drilled in a surface that is to be polished, polish the surface first and drill the holes afterward.

*Warning.* — To avoid excessive vibration of lathe when polishing which may cause the work to fly off the centers, use a light malleable iron dog.

#### CURVE TURNING AND FORMING

68. *Curve turning.* — Small outside and inside rounds (convex and concave surfaces), ogees and other irregular curves may be rough formed, as in Fig. 44, with one hand operating the cross feed and the other the long. feed. The tool

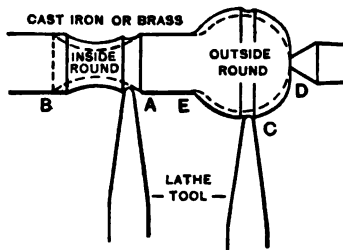


FIG. 44. — CURVE TURNING, OPERATING FEEDS BY HAND.

for the inside round is moved, approximately to the correct curve, repeatedly from A to B; for the outside round, from C to D and from C to E. By moving one feed more rapidly than the other, as the curve may require, good results may be obtained. If the work is slender or the curve large, it is

usually finished with hand tools in the speed lathe (see Templet, p. 437). If the curve is small and work stiff, forming tools may be used.

69. Forming tools for engine lathe work are used for forming duplicate pieces. They may be made by milling or filing. If much stock has to be removed, rough form with a suitable lathe tool. Forming tool A, Fig. 45, is rounding the end of shaft, after which it may be filed and polished.

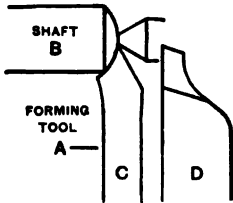


FIG. 45.—FORMING WITH FORGED TOOL.

Forming tools are also used in turret lathes, screw machines and planers.

70. Forming cutters and holders. —

Forming cutters, to fit thread tool holders, are obtainable. In Fig. 46, forming cutter A, held in holder B, is forming wheel C.

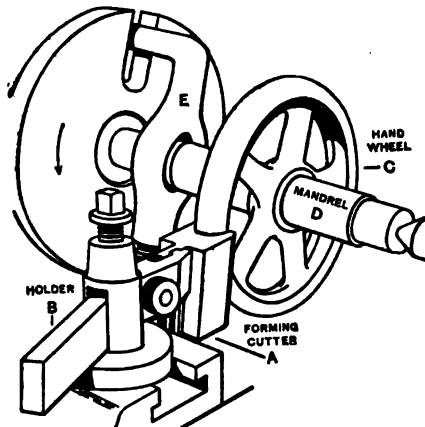


FIG. 46. — FORMING WITH HOLDER AND CUTTER.

The manufacturing method of machining hand wheel rims is to mill them with a vertical milling machine or form them in a special machine which carries a pointed tool mounted on a turn table around the curve. See pp. 127, 309.

MAKING FORMED MACHINE HANDLES

71. Single handles are made as outlined in Figs. 47, 48, 49. When manufactured in quantities, they are drop-forged to shape or made from bar stock with a forming tool in

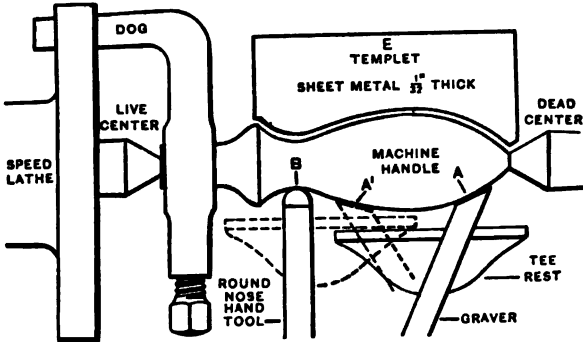


FIG. 47. — CURVE TURNING WITH HAND TOOLS. TESTING WITH TEMPLET.

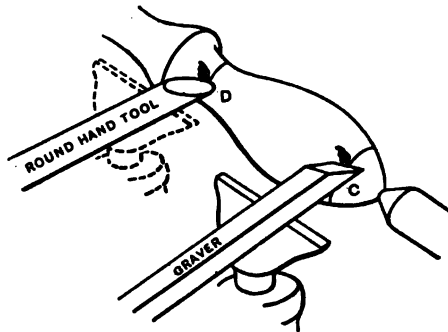


FIG. 48. — FINISHING FORMED HANDLE WITH HAND TOOLS. OVERHEAD TURNING.

a turret lathe. By either of the latter methods, they require but a small amount of hand finishing.

72. Templets of sheet brass or steel, *E*, Fig. 47, are used for duplicate work, serving as a pattern or guide to uniform production.

They are lined out from specifications on the drawing, and are rough cut by chipping, or with shears, and finished by filing. Templets are used as guides when rough turning or planing, and for careful tests when finishing.

73. To make a formed machine handle to templet, Fig. 49.

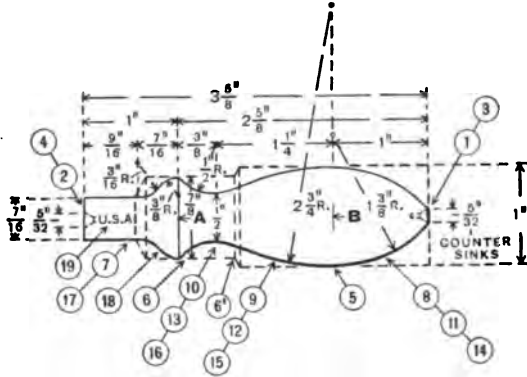


FIG. 49. — SCHEDULE DRAWING OF MACHINE HANDLE.

**Specifications:** Material, machine steel  $\frac{1}{8}$ " to  $\frac{1}{4}$ " large; weight, 15 oz. Hardness, 15 to 16 (scleroscope).

True live center. Set dead center in approximate alinement.

Lard oil may or may not be used in squaring and turning steel or wrought iron. Carbon-steel or stellite cutting tools.

**Time:** Study drawing and schedule in advance, 5 min. — Oil lathe, 6 min. — Center and square, 10 min. — Rough turn, 10 min. — Rough form, 10 min. — Finish with hand tools, 30 min. — File and polish, 14 min. — Clean lathes, 5 min. — Total, 1 h. 30 min.

#### SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS, MACHINES AND TOOLS

OPERATIONS.	MACHINES, SPEEDS, FEEDS.	TOOLS.
File ends flat.	Vise.	File.
Center, (1), (2).	Centering machine. Drill, 1250 R.P.M. Countersink, 700 R.P.M.	$\frac{3}{8}$ " drill, 60° counter-sink, lard oil.
Rough square, (3), (4) to $3\frac{5}{8}$ ". See Step Method of Rough Squaring, p. 301.	Engine lathe, 12 to 16". 2d speed, or 35 F.P.M. Hand feed.	Dog, side tool, 35° rake, calipers, rule.

Recenter. Omit finish square.	Speed lathe, 2d or 3d speed.	
Rough turn $\frac{1}{8}$ " (5), large. One cut. Turn one-half of length, reverse and turn the other half.	2d speed, or 35 F.P.M. Medium power feed — 80 to 1".	Diamond-point tool, or holder and cutter, 35° rake, calipers, rule.
Rough turn (6), $\frac{1}{8}$ " large. One cut. Turn (6'), to about 1½" from end.		
Hold in vise and mark lines 1" from each end at (A) and (B).	Vise.	Copper sulphate, scriber, rule.
Rough turn $\frac{1}{8}$ " large, (7). Two or three cuts.	3d speed, or 35 F.P.M. Medium power feed — 80 to 1".	Calipers, rule.
Rough turn convex parts (8), (9), and concave part (10), several cuts. Operate both feeds in combination, by hand, and test with templet, as at E, Fig. 47.	3d speed, or 50 F.P.M.	Copper under set screw of dog, diamond-point tool, or holder and cutter, 35° rake, templet.
Rough turn with graver, (11), (12). See A and A', Fig. 47. Test often with templet.	Speed lathe, 8 to 12", 2d speed, or 150 or F.P.M.	Graver.
Rough turn, (13). See B, Fig. 47. Test with templet and calipers at diameters $\frac{1}{4}$ " and 1".	.....	Round - nose hand tool, templet, calipers, rule.
Finish turn, (14), (15). See C, Fig. 48.	3d speed, or 225 F.P.M.	Graver, templet, calipers, rule.
Finish turn, (16). See D, Fig. 48.	.....	Round-hand tool templet, calipers, rule.
Finish turn, (17).	Engine lathe, 12 to 16", 3d speed, or 50 F.P.M. Fine power feed — 140 to 1".	Diamond-point tool, or holder and cutter, 35° rake, calipers, rule.
Rough and finish turn, (18). Copy the reverse curve (the ogee) as accurately as can be determined by the eye, or make a templet from specifications or curve on drawing. See p. 437.	Speed lathe, 3d speed, or 225 F.P.M.	Graver, round-nose hand tool. Use two pieces of copper under No. 2 clamp dog.
File, (18) and (16).....	.....	5" to 8" half-round smooth file.
Polish, (18).	Speed lathe, highest speed.	60, 90, 120 and flour emery cloth and stick, oil.

File, (14) and (15).  Polish, (14) and (15). Stamp name or initials, (19).  (File off burr.)	3d speed, or 175 F.P.M.  Vise.	8" to 10" mill bastard file.  Steel name stamp, hammer, copper jaws.
---	---	---

*Attention.* — Part 17 is usually fitted to a hand wheel, or other machine part, by a forcing or threaded fit; if so, operation 17 is omitted to allow the desired fit to be made later.

*Note.* — The machine handle may be finished with graver and round-nose hand tool used horizontally, as in Fig. 47, or with graver and round hand tool, by overhead turning, as in Fig. 48.

#### POLISHING, BUFFING, AND LACQUERING

**74. Polishing and buffing with wheels and belts.** — The term polishing is applied to the production of surfaces of the ordinary degree of finish; and buffing, to the production of brilliant lustre. These methods are employed upon castings and forgings which require lustre rather than accuracy; and on work of irregular outline, as automobile and bicycle parts, electrical instruments, silverware and nickel-plated work. The polishing is done on felt wheels and canvas belts to which emery is glued.

Buffing is done on cloth wheels of cotton or muslin charged with flour of emery, crocus, tripoli, rouge, etc., according to grade of lustre desired. The work is held with the hands and brought against the revolving wheel or belt, moved and turned, changing from a coarse to a finer wheel and so on, and then continued on the buffing wheels.

**75. Lacquering** is coating highly polished useful and ornamental articles of silver, brass, bronze, etc., with a liquid called lacquer to prevent them from tarnishing or oxidizing. Some lacquers are transparent, others are colored, according to the shade desired upon the work. To lacquer, clean work by wiping or, preferably, by dipping in a solution of potash and apply lacquer with a brush. Some work is dipped in a tank of lacquer.

# ADVANCED MACHINE WORK

## SECTION 5

### LATHE WORK

**Inside Calipers and Inside Micrometers. Boring and Inside Threading. Square Threads. Acme Standard or 29° Threads. Multiple Threads. Brass Finishing. Alinement Drilling and Tapping. Drilling, Tapping and Hand Threading In Speed Lathe. Broaching Holes, Keyways and Slots.**

#### INSIDE CALIPERS AND INSIDE MICROMETERS

1. To set inside calipers. Fig. 1.—Hold rule *A* perpendicularly against carriage *B*. Place calipers *C* with point at *D*, and adjust nut *E* until other point coincides with middle of line *F*.

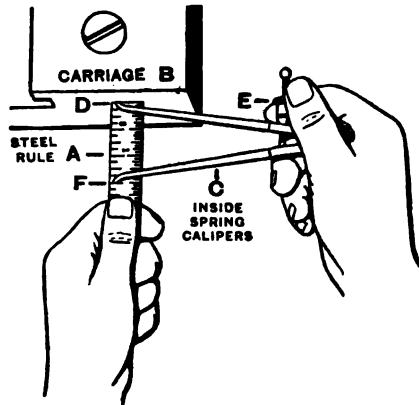


FIG. 1. — SETTING INSIDE CALIPERS.

Another method is to set calipers to a standard ring gage, or to a hole of the desired diameter in any piece of work.

2. To measure diameters of holes with inside calipers.— Work to be measured may be held in any position on the bench,



in vise or chuck. To measure work *G*, Fig. 2, in chuck *H*, set calipers *K* to size and insert point *M* in the lower side of hole, and steady with finger while a gentle effort is made to

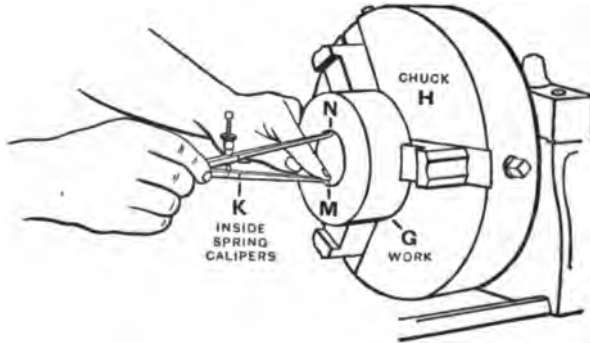


FIG. 2. — MEASURING WITH INSIDE CALIPERS.

insert point *N*, pivoting calipers on point *M* by raising and lowering the outer end; also move point *N* to right and left to locate maximum diameter.

3. To adjust the tool to bore a hole to diameter to which inside calipers are set.— Take trial cuts and test frequently with calipers. See pp. 504, 505.

4. Small inside micrometer calipers, Figs. 3, 4 and 5, are obtainable in two sizes, one measuring from two-tenths

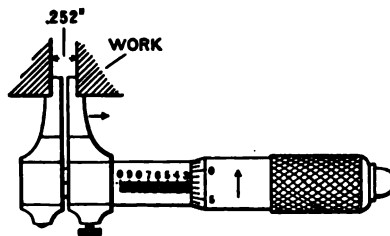


FIG. 3. — MEASURING WITH 1" INSIDE MICROMETER.

of an inch to one inch, and the other from one inch to two inches.

Except that the barrels are figured from right to left, they are similar to outside micrometers having 40 threads to the inch.

The reading of the one-inch micrometer in Fig. 3 equals  $10 \times .025 = .250'' + .002 = .252''$  or  $\frac{1}{4}'' + .002''$ .

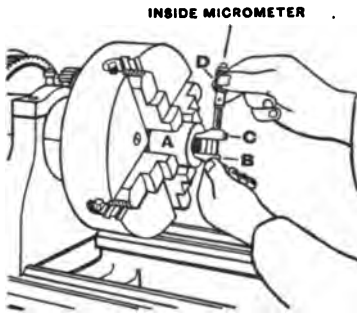


FIG. 4.—MEASURING BORE OF BUSHING.

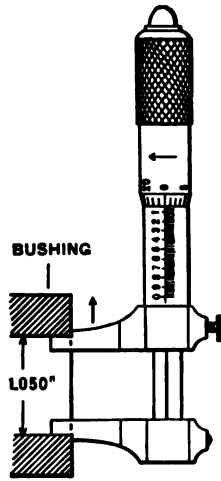


FIG. 5.—MEASURING WITH 2" INSIDE MICROMETER.

In Fig. 4 a two-inch micrometer is shown as used to measure the hole in bushing A.

Solid jaw B is placed against the lower wall of hole.

Sliding jaw C is moved against the upper wall of hole by turning thimble D to right. The hole is bored out with a boring tool (see pp. 504, 505) until the two-inch micrometer reads  $2 \times .025'' = .050''$ .

$1'' + .050'' = 1.050''$  diameter of bore of bushing, as in Fig. 5.

**5. Large inside micrometer caliper.**— Fig. 6 consists of barrel A graduated into 40 divisions to the inch, thimble B graduated into 25 divisions, attached to a screw having 40

threads to the inch, passing through a nut in end of barrel *A*. The screw has a movement of half an inch. Measuring point *C* is fixed to the thimble, but measuring point or rod *D* is held in chuck *E* and clamped by nut *F* and is removable in

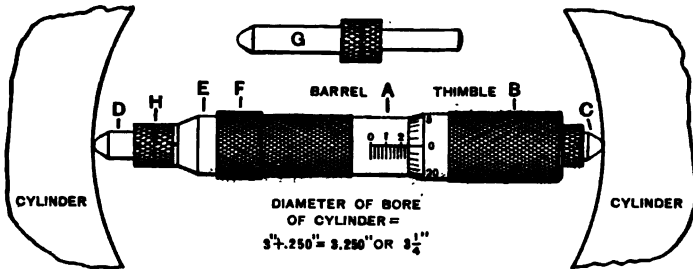


FIG. 6. — MEASURING BORE OF CYLINDER WITH LARGE INSIDE MICROMETER.

order to insert extension rods, a number being supplied varying in length by half an inch ( $\frac{1}{2}''$ ), one being shown at *G*. Adjustment for wear on rods is provided by adjusting nuts *H*. Fig. 6 shows how the micrometer is used to measure the bore of a cylinder. The net length of micrometer is 3'' and the reading is  $3.200'' + 2 \times .025 = 3.250''$ .

#### BORING AND INSIDE THREADING

6. Boring tools. — Fig. 7 shows a forged boring or inside turning tool. Cutting edges *A* and *B* must be shaped with accuracy. The point is rounded slightly in order to make it

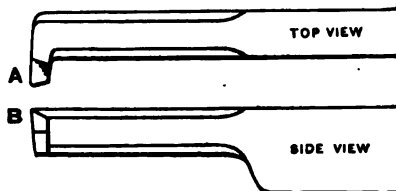


FIG. 7. — FORGED BORING TOOL.

cut smoothly, and, also, not dull quickly; if rounded too much, the tool will spring away from the cut, or chatter.

## 7. To set and use boring tool in lathe. — Fig. 8.

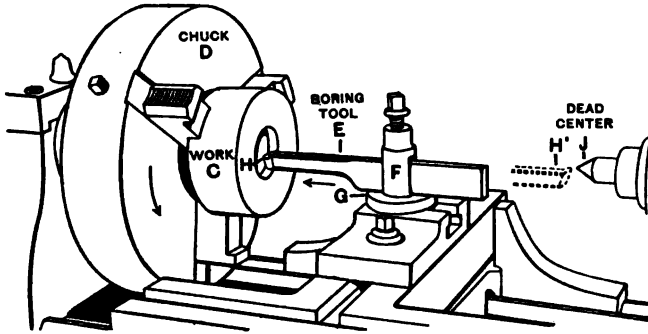


FIG. 8. — BORING IN ENGINE LATHE.

## SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. True up cored work <i>C</i> in chuck <i>D</i> and face front end.</li> <li>2. Set tool <i>E</i> height of dead center <i>J</i> as at <i>H'</i>, reverse tool and post <i>F</i> into position parallel to ways of lathe and clamp tightly on <i>G</i>.</li> <li>3. Run tool in length of hole</li> </ol> | <p>to see that shank clears walls, also chalk top of tool to show length of hole.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>4. Rough bore hole and caliper frequently.</li> <li>5. Take two or three light finishing cuts to leave hole smooth and true. See pp. 501-503.</li> </ol> |
|---|---|

*Attention.* — A method sometimes used to bore a straight and smooth hole is to take a light finishing cut inward, then reverse the feed and let the tool cut outward.

*Note.* — While a boring tool will cut satisfactorily if set at height of centers, as *H'*, Fig. 8, still the tool will cut better if set below the centers, the amount increasing with the diameter of the hole, as is inversely true with outside turning tools. See pp. 133, 134.

This, however, is not always possible, especially in small holes as the size of tool will not allow sufficient clearance and will cause it to ride on the wall of the hole, which must be avoided.

8. Squaring of an inside shoulder with the tool *K*, Fig. 9.
9. *L* is a section taken at *MN*. The rounded point of a boring tool leaves a fillet at the termination of the cut and if

a square shoulder is desired an inside squaring tool is used to remove the fillet and square the shoulder by cutting to or from the center.

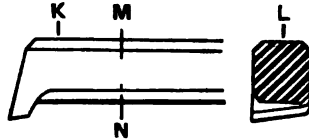


FIG. 9. — INSIDE SQUARING TOOL.

9. Boring holders and cutters are used in the same manner as a forged tool. *A*, Fig. 10, shows holder and double-end cutter rough boring a cored hole, *B*, in work *C*.

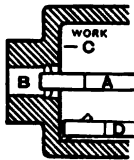


FIG. 10. —

BORING AND INSIDE SQUARING WITH HOLDERS AND CUTTERS.

For inside squaring a special cap is supplied which holds the cutter at an angle of  $45^\circ$  as at *D*. See No. 20, Chart, p. 309.

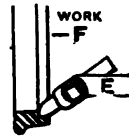


FIG. 11. —

BORING AND FACING WITH BENT HOLDER AND CUTTER.

At *E*, Fig. 11, a right-bent outside holder and cutter is shown used as a boring tool and for squaring and facing as at *F*.

For boring long holes it is more practical to use drills, boring bars, boring heads, etc.

10. Inside threading tools, United States Standard or Sharp V threads. — Fig. 12 shows point of inside threading tool. It

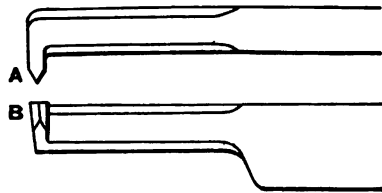


FIG. 12. — INSIDE V-THREADING TOOL.

may be ground as at *A* and *B* for United States Standard or Sharp V threads. It is similar to a boring tool. See No. 34, Chart, p. 127.

The method of setting an inside United States Standard or Sharp V-threading tool at right angles to the work is shown

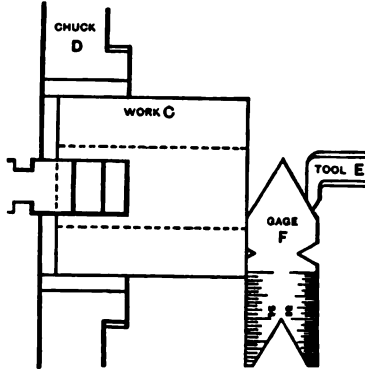


FIG. 13. — SETTING UNITED STATES STANDARD OR SHARP V-THREADING TOOL WITH CENTER GAGE.

in Fig. 13. Work *C* is held in chuck *D* and is bored to size and end rough and finish squared. Tool *E* is then set to gage *F*.

11. To cut an inside thread in lathe. — Fig. 14.

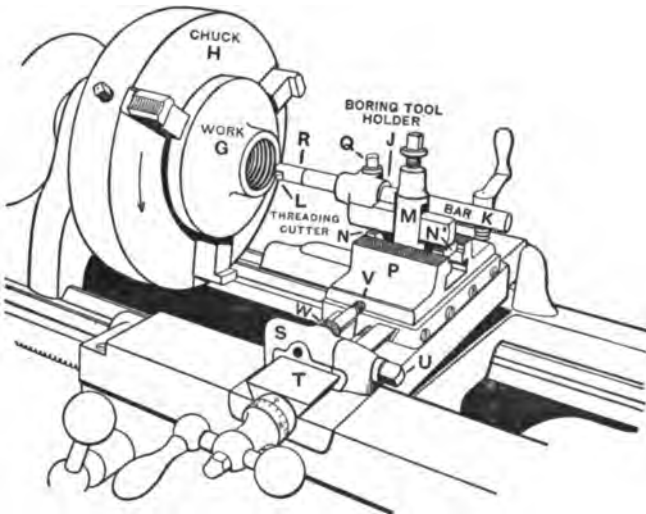


FIG. 14. — INSIDE THREADING IN ENGINE LATHE.

## SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS

1. True up work *G* in chuck *H*, square end and bore hole about  $\frac{1}{8}$ " larger than root diameter of screw that it is to fit. See Table of Tap Drills and Screw Cutting, *Principles of Machine Work*.

2. Assemble holder *J*, cutter bar *K*, threading tool *L*, which should be ground to fit thread gage, and clamp in tool post *M* supported by blocks *N* and *N'* in tool block *P*.

Adjust tool to height of center, set by gage *F*, Fig. 13, and clamp bar and cutter firmly by screw *Q* and cap *R*.

3. The cutter may be removed, reground and reset to resume its cut by means of cap *R*.

4. Clamp thread stop *S* to slide *T* by screw *U* and adjust feed of tool by rotating nurlled head *W* which is fast on screw *V*.

5. Rough thread with cuts from .003" to .004" nearly to size. Finish thread with cuts from .001"

to .002" until thread fits screw, as follows:

Set outside calipers to the outside of the thread, then transfer setting to inside calipers or to a wire filed to fit outside calipers, and pointed at each end more acute than the thread. Cut thread slightly smaller than inside calipers or wire, then test it with the screw.

If work is to fit a lathe spindle or other work that cannot be removed, take chuck and work from lathe, clean, oil, and try on the screw. If it does not fit take another light cut, and so on until desired fit is obtained.

*Attention.*—If work is cast iron, thread dry; if steel or wrought iron, use lard oil.

Use oil for all materials when fitting to screw or work may seize screw and have to be split off, thereby destroying work and possibly the screw.

12. To finish tap the back plate of a chuck, Fig. 15.—When cutting an accurate thread such as that in a back plate, *A*, of a chuck or face plate of a lathe, it is best, if a suitable tap is available, to cut about three-quarters of a full thread with a threading tool, then finish tap as in Fig. 15. Clean and oil thread and tap and place tap wrench *B* on tap *C*, and mount on dead center with tap in thread. Start tap carefully so that it will follow the thread already cut and not split and destroy it. Pull belt *D* by hand and follow tap with dead center with handle *E*. To back out tap, unclamp foot-stock and run lathe backward by hand or by power. Then square up end *F* and bore out about two threads, as at *G*, to

permit screwing plate to shoulder on nose of spindle or on a mandrel to be machined.

13. Interrupted thread tap, Fig. 15. — Instead of using adjustable tap *C*, with regular thread, preferably, use an

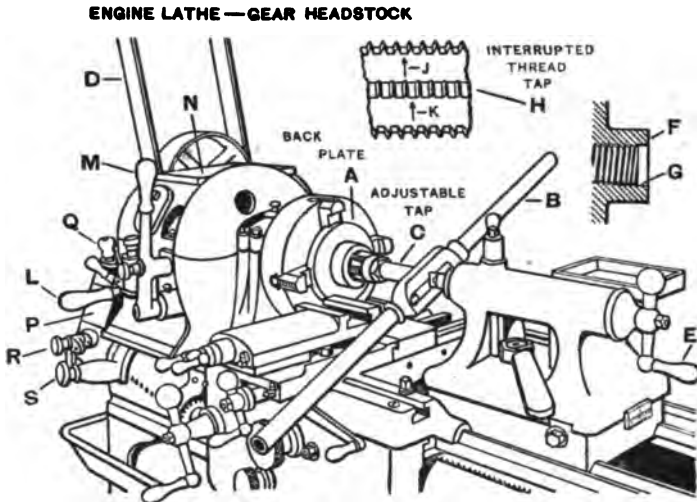


FIG. 15. — FINISHING THREAD WITH A TAP.

interrupted thread tap, as at *H*, which is obtainable. This tap requires less power to drive it. Every other tooth is cut away. The teeth of each land follow in the spaces of the land preceding as shown by arrows *J* and *K*.

14. Engine lathe, gear headstock, Fig. 15, shows an engine lathe equipped with a gear speed change located in the head in place of the cone pulley. The different speeds and positions of the levers *L* and *M* to obtain them are given in a table at *N*.

*Attention.* — Some all-gear headstock engine lathes have a variable speed countershaft to give a still greater variety of speeds.

This lathe is also equipped with a rapid change-gear mechanism for feeds and threads. In a table at *P* are given the different threads, and positions of the levers *Q*, *R*, and



*S*, to obtain them. The feed is usually seven times threads per inch.

**15. To cut right inside thread to shoulder.** — Fig. 16.

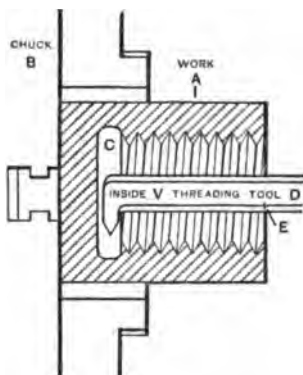


FIG. 16. — CUTTING INSIDE UNITED STATES STANDARD OR SHARP V THREAD TO A SHOULDER.

#### SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Work <i>A</i> , held in chuck <i>B</i> , is bored to correct diameter and depth. | 3. Mark line <i>E</i> with chalk to indicate when tool <i>D</i> reaches groove. |
| 2. Cut groove <i>C</i> to full diameter of thread with inside forming tool.         | 4. Cut thread to desired depth.   |

**16. To cut a left inside thread to a shoulder, or any portion of the hole less than its entire length, cut groove as at *C*, Fig. 16, from which start tool outward, and make a mark at *E* to know when to adjust the tool forward into groove preparatory to starting to cut outward.**

#### SQUARE THREADS

**17. Square threads, Fig. 17, right or left, are used for screws to transmit motion, as the cross feed and lead screws of an engine lathe, valve stems, presses, rock drill feed screws, etc. They cannot be cut successfully with dies, or milled with a thread milling machine. See Acme Standard or 29° Threads, pp. 521-531.**

The thickness of thread and width of space are each nominally one-half the pitch. The depth is one-half pitch plus the clearance. The fit is on the sides of the thread with clearance top and bottom. A larger clearance is advisable for large diameters and coarse pitches.

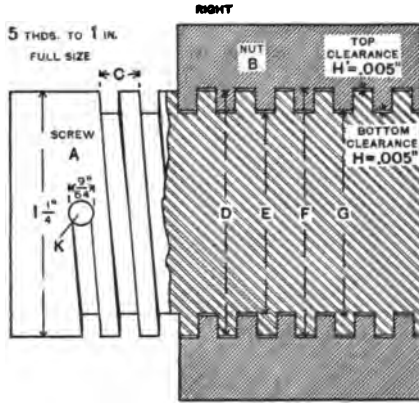


FIG. 17. — SECTIONAL VIEW OF SQUARE THREAD SCREW AND NUT.

NAMES OF PRINCIPAL PARTS OF SQUARE THREAD

<p><i>C.</i> — Pitch.  <i>D.</i> — Diameter standard.  <i>E.</i> — Root diameter (which is also root diameter of tap).  <i>F.</i> — Diameter of bottom of nut (which is also diameter of tap).</p>	<p><i>G.</i> — Bore of nut.  <i>H</i> and <i>H'</i>, clearances; same for all pitches. <i>H</i> made by cutting the thread .005" deeper than <math>\frac{1}{2}P</math>.  <i>H'</i> made by making tap .01" larger in diameter than <i>D</i>.</p>
--	--

18. To obtain parts of Square thread.—

Width of tool for screw thread =

$$\frac{1}{\text{No. of threads per inch}} \div 2.$$

Width of tool for tap thread =

$$\frac{1}{\text{No. of threads per inch}} + 2 -$$

.0005" for each linear inch of nut for shrinkage of tap.

Diameter of screw = any

Diameter of tap = diameter of screw + .010"

Diameter of screw or tap at root of thread = diameter of screw -

$$\frac{1}{\text{No. threads per inch}} + .010"$$

Diameter to bore nut = diameter of screw -

$$\frac{1}{\text{No. of threads per inch}}$$

Clearance = .005", top and bottom of thread.

19. Table of Square threads. — While any pitch may be assumed, it is best, when it will answer the purpose, to use whole numbers of threads per inch as near as possible to three-quarters of the United States Standard thread. See p. 323.

DIAMETER.	THREADS PER INCH.	DIAMETER.	THREADS PER INCH.
$\frac{1}{8}$ "	10	1"	6
$\frac{3}{8}$ "	9	$1\frac{1}{4}$ "	5
$\frac{1}{2}$ "	8	$1\frac{1}{2}$ "	4
$\frac{3}{4}$ "	7	2"	3

20. Square threading tool, Fig. 18.

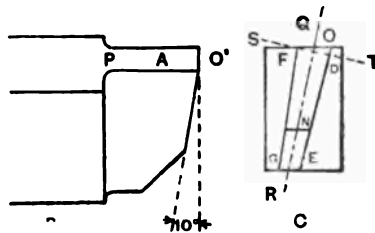


FIG. 18. — OUTSIDE SQUARE THREADING TOOL.

A, top face, B, side view partially rotated, and C, end view. DE and FG inclined to line QR to give clearance.

21. To find inclination of thread and to file tool.

SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS

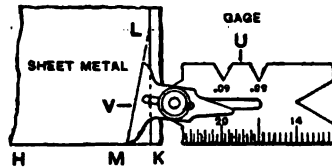


FIG. 19. — MAKING A TEMPLT AND SETTING GAGE TO ANGLE OF INCLINATION FOR SQUARE THREADING TOOL.

*Inclination.* Fig. 19.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. File line <i>HK</i> true.</li> <li>2. Draw <i>KL</i> at <math>90^\circ</math> to <i>HK</i>.</li> <li>3. Make <i>KL</i> equal to circumference at root of thread.</li> <li>4. Make <i>MK</i> equal to pitch.</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>5. File to <i>LM</i> which gives inclination of thread and use as a templet to test tool or omit filing and set angle gage <i>U</i>, Fig. 19, to angle <i>LM</i> as at <i>V</i>.</li> </ol> |
|--|--|

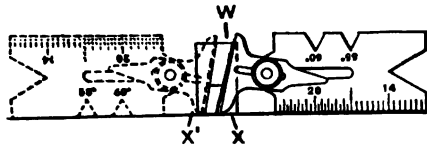


FIG. 20. — TESTING INCLINATION OF SQUARE THREADING TOOL WITH ANGLE GAGE.

*To File Tool.* Fig. 20.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. File bottom of tool flat, and end square as in Fig. 18. File sides with an 8" or 10" hand smooth file and 8" dead smooth file to give inclination, clearance, and size.</li> <li>2. Test tool with gage <i>U</i> as at <i>X</i> and <i>X'</i>, Fig. 20, or with sheet</li> </ol> | <p>metal templet <i>V</i>, as in Fig. 19.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Measure with micrometer calipers.</li> <li>4. Harden and temper to a straw color.</li> <li>5. Grind on end and a little on top.</li> </ol> <p><i>Do not grind on sides.</i></p> |
|--|---|

*Attention.* — The amount of inclination varies with different pitches and diameters, but with a generous side clearance one tool will do for several diameters. The tool is parallel from *O'* to *P*, Fig. 18.

For very coarse pitches tool is narrower at  $P$  than at  $O'$ . For fine pitches top face  $A$  is ground horizontal; for coarse threads it is ground on line  $ST$  at right angles to line  $QR$ .

*Note.*—The tool may be forged, and ground to the proper angle with a universal tool grinder, see *Principles of Machine Work*, then hardened and tempered, reground and the filing omitted.

22. An outside square threading holder and cutter is shown at  $A$  and  $B$ , Fig. 21. Holder  $C$  supports cutter  $D$ . Clamp  $E$  and bolt  $F$  fasten cutter to holder and hold different widths of

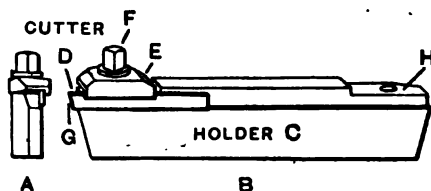


FIG. 21. — OUTSIDE SQUARE THREADING HOLDER AND CUTTER.

cutters. Cutter is ground upon end  $G$  only. Roughing and finishing cutters are used for coarse threads. End  $H$  is for left threads.

23. Method of setting outside Square threading tool. — Fasten tool  $A$ , Fig. 22, in tool-post lightly and adjust to height of dead center. Mount screw blank  $B$  on centers.

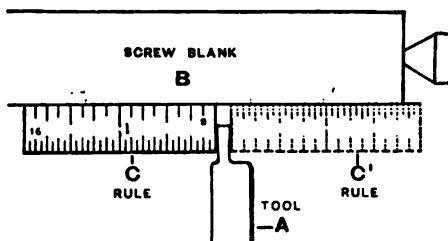


FIG. 22. — SETTING SQUARE THREADING TOOL WITH STEEL RULE.

Place steel rule  $C$  against blank parallel to axis and rap tool until parallel to end of rule, testing from both sides as at  $C$  and  $C'$ . Fasten tool firmly.

24. An inside Square threading tool, Fig. 23, is used for cutting inside threads. The blade *AB* is inclined, shaped and sized to suit thread to be cut in the same manner as the outside Square threading tool, Fig. 20, p. 512. Inside Square threads

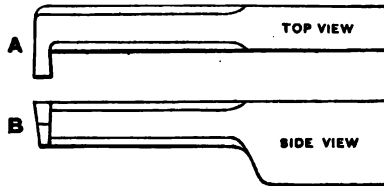


FIG. 23. — INSIDE SQUARE THREADING TOOL.

are cut also by inserting properly shaped cutters in boring tool holders. See No. 23, Chart, p. 309.

25. Method of setting inside Square threading tool. — Nut blank *C*, Fig. 24, is held in chuck *D*. End *E* is faced and hole bored to size. Place tool *G* in tool-post and adjust to height of dead center (see No. 2, p. 505) and fasten lightly

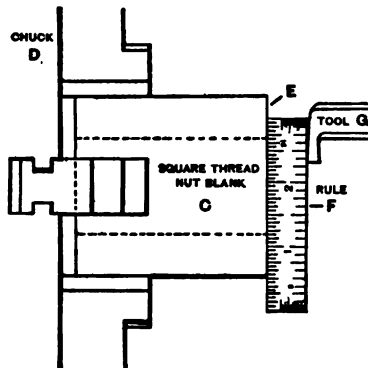


FIG. 24. — SETTING INSIDE SQUARE THREADING TOOL.

in approximate position. Hold rule *F* against end *E* and rap tool until blade of tool is parallel with rule. Then clamp firmly.

26. **Roughing tool.** — For Square threads, five pitch or coarser, use a roughing tool .010" less in width, *O*, Fig. 18, than finishing tool.

27. **Square thread tap**  $1\frac{1}{4}$ " diameter, 5 threads to 1", Fig. 25, is used to tap both loose and fixed nuts. Loose nuts are usually rough threaded in the engine lathe with an inside rough Square threading tool, Fig. 23, then finish threaded with one or more taps.



FIG. 25. — SQUARE THREAD TAP,  $1\frac{1}{4} \times 5$ .

For fixed nuts such as parts of machine frames, one or two roughing taps are used, followed with the finishing tap.

They are made without a leader as at *A*, Fig. 25, or with plain or threaded leaders, *A*, Fig. 33. See *Alinement Drilling and Tapping*, p. 538.

The diameter is made one-hundredth of an inch larger than the screw for clearance. The root diameter is the same as the screw. See pp. 511, 512.

Shank *B* is made about one-hundredth of an inch smaller than the bore of the nut.

These taps cannot be obtained commercially, but must be specially made.

28. To cut a Square thread screw, Fig. 26.

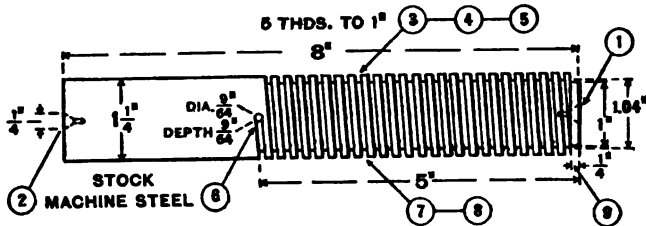


FIG. 26. — SCHEDULE DRAWING OF SQUARE THREAD SCREW.

**Specifications:** Material, machine steel  $\frac{1}{8}$ " large; weight, 3 lb. 8 oz. Hardness, 14 to 16 (scleroscope).

True live center. Set dead center in approximate alinement.

High-speed steel or stellite cutting tools.

**Time:** Study drawing and schedule in advance, 5 min. —

Oil lathe, 4 min. — Prepare screw blank, 1 h. 5 min. —

Rough and finish thread and fit to nut, 1 h. 10 min. — (All tools furnished.) —

Clean lathe, 3 min. — Total, 2 h. 27 min.

### SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS, MACHINES AND TOOLS

OPERATIONS.	MACHINES, SPEEDS, FEEDS.	TOOLS.
Center.	Centering machine.	$\frac{3}{8}$ " drill, 60° countersink, lard oil.
Rough square, (1), (2).	Engine lathe 12" to 18". 2d or 3d speed, or 50 F.P.M. Hand or power feed.	Dog, rule, calipers, side tool, 35° rake.
Recenter.	Speed lathe, drill, 4th speed; countersink 3d speed.	
Finish square, (1), (2).	Engine lathe, 3d or 4th speed or 80 F.P.M. Hand or power feed.	
Rough turn $\frac{1}{8}$ " large, (3), one cut.	2d or 3d speed, or 60 F.P.M. Coarse power feed — 40 to 1".	Diamond-point tool or holder and cutter, 35° rake, calipers, rule.
Set dead center in accurate alinement to turn straight using this shaft or a trial piece the same length. See pp. 116, 117.	3d or 4th speed or 80 F.P.M. Fine power feed — 140 to 1".	Dog, copper, diamond-point tool or holder and cutter, 35° rake, micrometer.
Finish turn 1.25" + .003", (4).	3d or 4th speed, or 80 F.P.M. Fine power feed — 140 to 1".	Copper under set screw of dog, diamond-point tool or holder and cutter, 35° rake, micrometer.
File 1.25" + .001", (5).	4th or 5th speed, or 175 F.P.M.	8" or 10" mill bastard file.
Polish 1.25", (5).	Speed lathe, highest speed.	60 and 90 emery cloth, polishing clamps.
Or rough turn .01" large, and grind, after threading.	See Cylindrical Grinding Machine, p. 701.	



OPERATIONS.	MACHINES, SPEEDS, FEEDS.	TOOLS.
Drill hole, (6).	Speed lathe, drill chuck, 3d or 4th speed, or 1000 R.P.M.	Center punch, $\frac{1}{4}$ " straight shank twist drill, V center, depth gage, lard oil.
Grind square thread roughing tool.		
Set tool (see p. 514) and thread stop, arrange lathe for 5 threads. Pull belt downward to take up back-lash, loosen set screw of dog and adjust shaft until tool terminates in hole, (6). Tighten set screw. Rough thread to $1.04'' + .01''$ , (7), twenty cuts $.005''$ each. Depth of thread $.100''$ .	Engine lathe. 1st speed, or 25 F.P.M.	Forged Square thread roughing tool, width $.090''$ . See Fig. 18, or use holder and cutter, see Fig. 21, calipers, rule, lubricate freely with lard oil.
Set finishing tool to cut on both sides of groove by loosening dog, adjusting shaft and testing cut at end thread. Tighten set screw. Finish thread to $1.04''$ , (8), twenty cuts $.005''$ , two cuts $.002''$ , one cut $.001''$ . Depth of thread $.105''$ .	1st speed, or 25 F.P.M.	Forged finishing tool, width $.100'' + .002''$ for fit, 1" micrometer, file, harden and temper and grind or use holder and cutter; calipers, rule, lard oil.
Turn off thick end thread, (9), and smooth thread with file.	2d or 3d speed, or 50 F.P.M. Hand feed.	Diamond-point and side tools, or holder and cutter, 8" or 10" mill bastard file.
File top of threads to remove burr.	4th or 5th speed, or 175 F.P.M.	8" or 10" mill bastard file.
File sides of thread slightly if needed to make the fit easier. (Preferably with file and speed reversed.)	1st speed, or 10 F.P.M.	5" or 6" warding bastard file, two safe edges.

*Attention.* — Terminate each cut as follows: stop lathe when tool is  $\frac{1}{4}$  or  $\frac{1}{2}$  revolution from hole, then carefully pull belt to continue cut almost to hole and end the cut by moving tail of dog in slot of face plate.

*Note.* — Roughing tool may be removed, ground, and reset if necessary, but not the finishing tool.

29. To make a Square thread nut, Fig. 27.

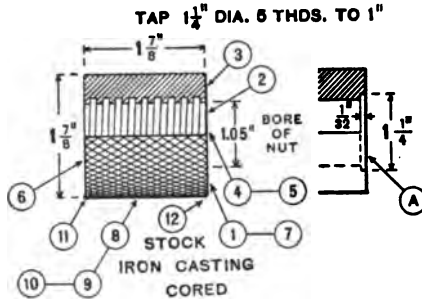


FIG. 27. — SCHEDULE DRAWING OF SQUARE THREAD NUT.

**Specifications:** Preparing nut blank. Rough threading. Tapping.  
**Material,** iron casting, cored; weight, 1 lb. 6 oz.  
**Hardness,** 29 to 31 (scleroscope.)  
**High-speed steel or stellite cutting tools.**  
**Time:** Study drawing and schedule in advance, 5 min. —  
 Oil lathe, 4 min. — Bore, thread, and tap nut, 40 min. —  
 Square, turn, and nurl nut, 28 min. — (All tools furnished.) —  
 Clean lathe, 3 min. — Total, 1 h. 20 min.

SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS, MACHINES AND TOOLS

OPERATIONS.	MACHINES, SPEEDS, FEEDS.	TOOLS.
Mount in chuck, true up and clamp hard in chuck.	Engine lathe 12" to 16". 3d speed, or 115 F.P.M.	Independent chuck, chalk.
Rough square, (1), one or two cuts. Feed inward.	2d or 3d speed, or 40 F.P.M. Hand or power feed.	Round-nose tool, or holder and cutter, 15° rake.
Rough bore hole to about 1.03", (2), two or three cuts.	1st or 2d speed, or 40 F.P.M. Medium power feed — 80 to 1".	Boring tool, see p. 504. Inside calipers, rule.
Finish bore hole, (2), two or three cuts.	3d speed, or 60 F.P.M. fine power feed — 140 to 1".	
Or omit boring, bevel corner of hole and drill to size.	2d or 3d speed, or 60 F.P.M.]	3 or 4-groove high-speed steel twist drill (1.05"). See p. 410 and <i>Principles of Machine Work.</i>

## SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS, MACHINES AND TOOLS

*Continued*

OPERATIONS.	MACHINES, SPEEDS, FEEDS.	TOOLS.
Set inside Square thread tool (see Fig. 24), and cut recess for improvised gage $\frac{1}{32}$ " $\times$ $1\frac{1}{2}$ ", (3). See (A).	2d speed or 50 F.P.M. Hand feed.	Forged Square thread tool, width .090", or holder and cutter, inside calipers, rule.
Arrange lathe for 5 threads with thread stop reversed. Rough thread to $1\frac{1}{4}$ " the diameter of gage A, (4), fifteen cuts, .006" each, five cuts, .002" each. Depth of thread, .100".	1st speed, or 30 F.P.M.	Without oil.
Start tap in lathe, pull belt downward and follow with dead center. Be sure that tap follows thread or it may ream. Remove nut and tap to reaming stand or vise, and finish tapping, (5).	Reaming stand or vise and grooved wooden jaws.	$1\frac{1}{4}$ " $\times$ 5 Square thread, tap and tap wrench, lubricate tap freely with lard oil.
Mount nut on nut mandrel and rough square, (6), one or two cuts.	2d or 3d speed, or 40 F.P.M.	$1\frac{1}{4}$ " $\times$ 5 Square thread nut mandrel, dog, round-nose tool, or holder and cutter, calipers, rule.
Finish square, (6), one or two cuts.	3d or 4th speed, or 60 F.P.M.	Facing tool or holder and cutter.
Reverse nut and square to length to remove recess, (7), two or three cuts.	2d or 3d speed or 60 F.P.M.	Round-nose tool or holder and cutter, and facing tool, calipers, rule.
Rough turn, (8), one or two cuts.	1st or 2d speed, or 35 F.P.M. Medium power feed — 80 to 1".	Diamond-point tool or holder and cutter, 15° rake, calipers, rule.
Finish turn, (8), one cut.	2d or 3d speed, or 50 F.P.M.	Diamond-point or round-nose tool, or holder and cutter, calipers, rule.
File, (9).	4th speed, or 175 F.P.M.	8" or 10" mill bastard file.
Nurl, two to four times, (10). See Machine Nurling, p. 636.	1st or 2d speed, or 35 F.P.M. Medium power feed — 80 to 1".	Machine nurling tool, medium pitch, oil.
File corners slightly to remove burr, (11), (12).	4th speed or 175 F.P.M.	8" or 10" mill bastard file.

See *Attention and Note*, p. 521.

*Attention.* — In the absence of a tap an inside tool may be made one-half pitch  $\times .001''$  to finish the thread, but the thread will not be as smooth or the fit of screw and nut as good.

*Note.* — The nut in Fig. 27 is nurlled for convenience in handling as a problem. For practical styles of nuts to transmit motion, see p. 538.

30. To fit screw to nut. Figs. 26 and 27.

SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>1. Ascertain if thread binds on top or bottom by testing with calipers and comparing with tap, Fig. 25; if so, file top of threads on screw or cut thread deeper.</p> <p>2. Hold nut in grooved wooden jaws in vise. Oil screw, grasp dog</p> | <p>with both hands and force in with hand pressure.</p> <p>3. If need be file side of threads with a warding file</p> <p>4. After screw is fitted to nut, polish top of thread with 90 emery cloth, polishing clamps and lard oil.</p> |
|--|--|

*Attention.* — To file sides of a right thread, preferably, run lathe backward at a slow speed, reverse file and file toward footstock.

ACME STANDARD OR 29° THREADS

31. Acme Standard or 29° threads, Fig. 28, right or left, are used for screws to transmit motion, as on lead screws, feed

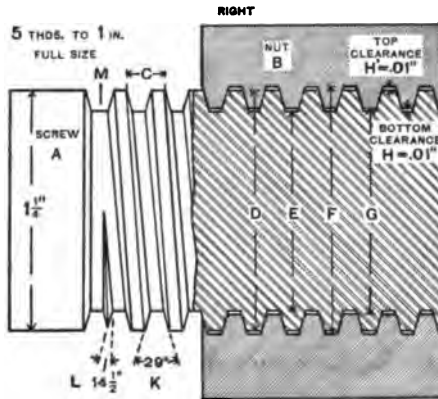


FIG. 28. — SECTIONAL VIEW OF ACME STANDARD OR 29° THREAD SCREW AND NUT.

screws, elevating screws, valve stems, presses, rock drills, etc., and they are displacing Square threads for other purposes

because they can be more readily cut in the lathe, and also successfully and rapidly cut with dies, with bolt cutters and turret lathes, and milled with thread milling machines.

The depth of the thread is equal to one-half the pitch plus .01" for clearance. The fit is on the sides with clearance on top and bottom.

#### NAMES OF PRINCIPAL PARTS OF 29° THREAD

<i>C</i> — Pitch.	<i>H</i> and <i>H'</i> — Clearances, same for all pitches. ( <i>H</i> obtained by cutting thread .01" deeper than $\frac{1}{2}P$ ; <i>H'</i> , by making tap .02" larger than diameter of screw.) <i>K</i> — Included angle 29°. <i>L</i> — Side angle 14½°.
<i>D</i> — Diameter, standard.	
<i>E</i> — Root diameter (which is also root diameter of tap).	
<i>F</i> — Diameter at bottom of thread on nut (which is also diameter of tap).	
<i>G</i> — Bore of nut.	

#### 32. To obtain parts of thread. —

Width of point of tool for screw or tap thread =

$$\frac{.3707}{\text{No. threads per inch}} - .0052.$$

Width of point of screw or nut thread =

$$\frac{.3707}{\text{No. threads per inch}}.$$

Diameter of tap = diameter of screw + .020.

Diameter of screw = any

Diameter of tap or screw at root of thread = diameter of

$$\text{screw} - \left( \frac{1}{\text{No. threads per inch}} + .020'' \right).$$

Depth of thread =  $\frac{1}{2 \times \text{No. threads per inch}} + .010$ .

Diameter to bore nut = diameter of screw —

$$\frac{1}{\text{No. threads per inch}}.$$

Clearance = .01" top and bottom of thread.

33. Table of Thread Parts for Acme Standard or 29° Thread.

PITCH.	NO. OF THREADS PER INCH.	DEPTH OF THREAD.	WIDTH AT TOP OF THREAD.	WIDTH AT BOTTOM OF THR'D.	SPACE AT TOP OF THREAD.	THICKNESS AT ROOT OF THREAD.
2	1/2	1.010	.7414	.7362	1.2586	1.2637
1 1/2	3/4	.9475	.6950	.6897	1.1799	1.1850
1 1/4	5/8	.8850	.6487	.6435	1.1012	1.1064
1 1/3	2/3	.8225	.6025	.5973	1.0226	1.0277
1 1/2	3/4	.7600	.5560	.5508	.9439	.9491
1 1/4	5/8	.7287	.5329	.5277	.9046	.9097
1 1/3	2/3	.6975	.5097	.5045	.8652	.8704
1 1/2	3/4	.6662	.4865	.4813	.8259	.8311
1 1/4	5/8	.635	.4633	.4581	.7866	.7918
1 1/3	2/3	.6037	.4402	.4350	.7472	.7525
1 1/2	3/4	.5725	.4170	.4118	.7079	.7131
1 1/4	5/8	.5412	.3938	.3886	.6686	.6739
1	1	.510	.3707	.3655	.6293	.6345
1 1/2	3/4	.4787	.3476	.3424	.5898	.5950
1 1/4	5/8	.4475	.3243	.3191	.5506	.5558
1 1/3	2/3	.4162	.3012	.2960	.5112	.5164
1 1/2	3/4	.385	.2780	.2728	.4720	.4772
1 1/4	5/8	.3537	.2548	.2496	.4327	.4379
1 1/3	2/3	.3433	.2471	.2419	.4194	.4246
1 1/2	3/4	.3225	.2316	.2264	.3934	.3986
1 1/4	5/8	.2912	.2085	.2033	.3539	.3591
1	2	.260	.1853	.1801	.3147	.3199
1 1/2	3/4	.2287	.1622	.1570	.2752	.2804
1 1/4	5/8	.210	.1482	.1430	.2518	.2570
1 1/3	2/3	.1975	.1390	.1338	.2359	.2411
1 1/2	3/4	.1766	.1235	.1183	.2098	.2150
1 1/4	5/8	.1662	.1158	.1106	.1966	.2018
1 1/3	2/3	.1528	.1059	.1007	.1797	.1849
1 1/2	3/4	.1350	.0927	.0875	.1573	.1625
1 1/4	5/8	.1211	.0824	.0772	.1398	.1450
1	5	.110	.0741	.0689	.1259	.1311
1 1/2	3/4	.1037	.0695	.0643	.1179	.1232
1 1/4	5/8	.0933	.0617	.0565	.1049	.1101
1 1/3	2/3	.0814	.0530	.0478	.0899	.0951
1 1/2	3/4	.0725	.0463	.0411	.0787	.0839
1 1/4	5/8	.0655	.0413	.0361	.0699	.0751
1	10	.060	.0371	.0319	.0629	.0681
1 1/2	16	.0412	.0232	.0180	.0392	.0444

34. Table of Acme Standard or 29° threads. — While any pitch may be assumed, it is best to use whole numbers of threads per inch as near as possible to three-quarters of the United States Standard. See p. 323.

DIAMETER.	THREADS PER INCH.	DIAMETER.	THREADS PER INCH.
$\frac{1}{2}$ "	10	1"	6
$\frac{3}{8}$ "	9	$1\frac{1}{4}$ "	5
$\frac{1}{2}$ "	8	$1\frac{1}{2}$ "	4
$\frac{3}{4}$ "	7	2"	3

35. To file or grind Acme Standard or 29° threading tool, Fig. 29. — *A* is top face, *B* and *C* are side and end views. For method of finding inclination of thread, see Square Threading Tool, pp. 513, 514.

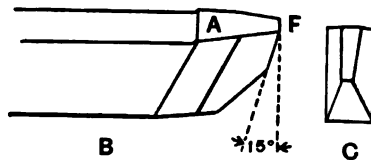


FIG. 29. — ACME STANDARD OR 29° THREADING TOOL.

#### SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. File bottom and end of tool.                              | 4. Grind end until point <i>F</i> , Fig. 29, will fit notch in gage as at <i>G</i> , Fig. 30, the desired pitch. |
| 2. File sides to fit gage <i>D</i> as at <i>E</i> , Fig. 30. | 5. Grind top face, <i>A</i> , Fig. 29, slightly.   |
| 3. Harden and temper to a straw color.                       |  |

*Attention.* — For fine pitches, use same tool for roughing and finishing. For 5 pitch or coarser, rough with Square threading tool .01" narrower than point of 29° tool. In case of very coarse pitches, cut a square groove, then with right and left side tool cut down sides of thread, after which use finishing tool of desired shape. A compound rest is often used for coarse pitches.

*Note.* — The tool may be forged and ground to the proper angle with a universal tool grinder (see *Principles of Machine Work*), then hardened and tempered, reground, and the filing omitted. The thread is also cut with 29° threading holder and cutter. See No. 16, Chart, p. 309.

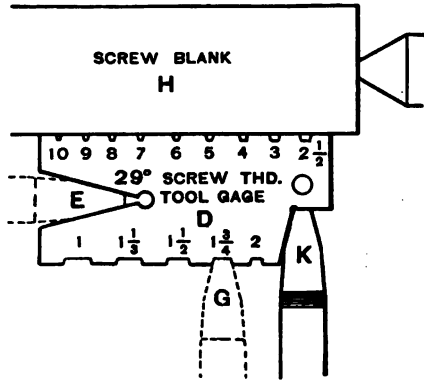


FIG. 30. — SETTING TOOL TO CUT ACME STANDARD OR 29° THREAD.

**36. Method of setting outside Acme Standard or 29° threading tool.** — Fasten tool *K*, Fig. 30, in tool post lightly and adjust to height of dead center. Mount screw blank *H* on centers. Place gage *D* against screw blank *H* parallel to axis and rap tool until angle of tool fits angle of gage. Then fasten tool firmly.

**37. An inside Acme Standard or 29° threading tool.** — Fig. 31 is used for cutting inside threads. The blade *AB* is inclined, shaped and ground to suit thread to be cut in the same

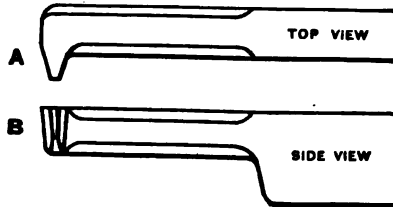


FIG. 31. — INSIDE ACME STANDARD OR 29° THREADING TOOL.

manner as the outside Acme Standard or 29° threading tool, Fig. 29.

Inside 29° threads are cut also by inserting properly shaped cutters in boring tool holders. See No. 24, Chart, p. 309.



38. Method of setting inside Acme Standard or  $29^\circ$  threading tool. — Nut blank *C*, Fig. 32, is held in chuck *D*. End *E* is faced and hole bored to size. Place tool *F* in tool post

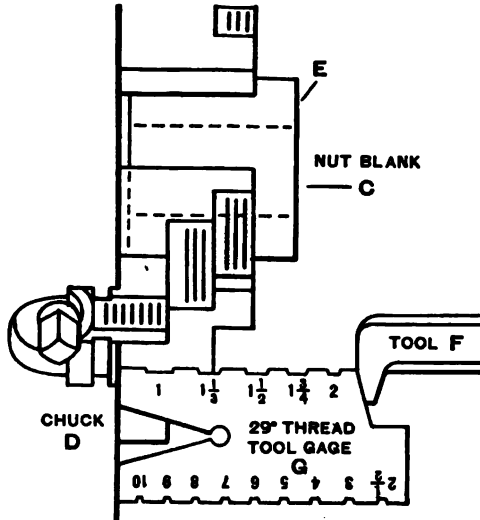


FIG. 32. — SETTING INSIDE ACME STANDARD  $29^\circ$  THREADING TOOL.

and adjust to height of dead center (see No. 2, p. 505) and fasten lightly in approximate position. Hold gage *G* against face of chuck *D* and rap tool until angle of tool fits angle of gage. Then fasten tool securely.

39. Acme Standard or  $29^\circ$  thread tap  $1\frac{1}{2}$ " in diameter, 5 threads to 1, Fig. 33, is used to tap both loose and fixed nuts.



FIG. 33. — ACME STANDARD OR  $29^\circ$  THREAD TAP  $1\frac{1}{2} \times 5$ .

Loose nuts are usually rough threaded in the engine lathe with an inside threading tool, Fig. 32, to about  $\frac{3}{4}$  of a full thread, then finish threaded with a tap.

For fixed nuts, such as parts of machine frames, one or two roughing taps are used, followed by the finishing tap, preferably of type shown at *H*, Fig. 15. These taps are made with leaders as at *A*, Fig. 33, or without leaders, *A*, Fig. 25. See *Alignment Drilling and Tapping*, p. 538. The diameter is made two-hundredths of an inch larger than the screw for clearance. See p. 522. The root diameter of tap is the same as screw.

Leader *A* and shank *B* are two-thousandths of an inch smaller than bore of nut, and the leader may be used as a gage to test the bore of nut. These taps cannot be obtained commercially but must be specially made.

40. To cut Acme Standard or 29° thread screw, Fig. 34.

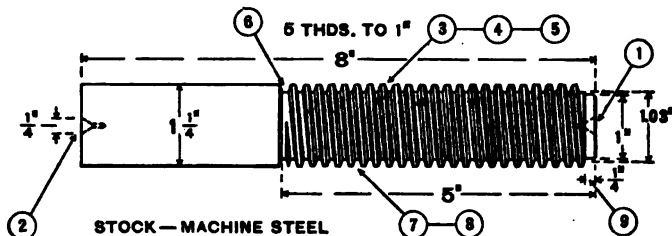


FIG. 34. — SCHEDULE DRAWING OF ACME STANDARD OR 29° THREAD SCREW.

**Specifications:** Preparing screw blank. Threading. Material, machine steel  $\frac{1}{8}$ " large; weight, 3 lb. 8 oz.

Hardness, 14 to 16 (scleroscope).

True live center. Set dead center in approximate alinement.

High-speed steel or stellite cutting tools.

**Time:** Study drawing and schedule in advance, 5 min. —

Oil lathe, 4 min. — Prepare screw blank, 65 min. — Rough and finish thread, and fit to nut, 1 h. 10 min. — (All tools furnished.) — Clean lathe, 3 min. — Total, 2 h. 27 min.

SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS, MACHINES, AND TOOLS

OPERATIONS.	MACHINES, SPEEDS, FEEDS.	TOOLS.
Center.	Centering machine.	$\frac{3}{8}$ " drill 60° counter-sink, lard oil.
Rough square, (1), (2).	Engine lathe 12" to 16". 2d or 3d speed, or 50 F.P.M. Hand or power feed.	Dog, rule, calipers side tool, 35° rake.

## SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS, MACHINES AND TOOLS

*Continued*

OPERATIONS.	MACHINES, SPEEDS, FEEDS.	TOOLS.
Recenter.	Speed lathe, drill, 4th speed; countersink, 3d speed.	
Finish square, (1), (2).	Engine lathe, 3d or 4th speed, or 80 F.P.M. Hand or power feed.	
Rough turn $\frac{1}{8}$ " large, (3), one cut.	2d or 3d speed, or 60 F.P.M. Coarse power feed — 40 to 1".	Diamond-point tool or holder and cutter, 35° rake, calipers, rule.
Set dead center in accurate alinement to turn straight using this shaft or a trial piece the same length. See pp. 116, 117.	3d or 4th speed or 80 F.P.M. Fine power feed — 140 to 1".	Dog, copper, diamond-point tool or holder and cutter, 35° rake, micrometer.
Finish turn 1.25" + .003", (4).	3d or 4th speed, or 80 F.P.M., Fine power feed — 140 to 1".	Copper under set screw of dog, diamond-point tool or holder and cutter, 35° rake, micrometer.
File 1.25" + .001", (5).	4th or 5th speed, or 175 F.P.M.	8" or 10" mill bastard file.
Polish 1.25", (5).	Speed lathe, highest speed.	60 and 90 emery cloth, polishing clamps.
Cut groove, (6), to root diameter of thread, 1.03".	Engine lathe, 1st or 2d speed, or 25 F.P.M. Hand feed.	29° grooving tool, calipers, rule, lard oil.
Grind Square thread 29° roughing tool.	Engine lathe, 1st speed, or 30 F.P.M.	Forged Square thread (29° roughing tool) — width .060", see Fig. 18, or holder and cutter, see Fig. 21.
Set tool (see p. 514) and thread stop, arrange lathe for 5 threads.		Calipers, rule; lubricate freely with lard oil.
Rough thread to 1.03" + .02", (7), twenty cuts .005" each. Depth of thread, .100".		Calipers, rule; lubricate freely with lard oil.
Set finishing tool to cut on both sides of groove by taking up back-lash, loosening dog, adjusting shaft and testing cut at end thread.	1st speed, or 25 F.P.M.	Forged 29° finishing tool, ground to fit angle and notch 5 on gage, Fig. 30, or use holder and cutter, calipers, rule, lard oil.
Finish thread, (8), twenty cuts of .005" each, two cuts of .002" each. Then take 1 cut .001", clean, oil, and test and repeat until screw fits nut. Depth of thread .110". See (8).		

SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS, MACHINES AND TOOLS  
*Concluded*

OPERATIONS.	MACHINES, SPEEDS, FEEDS.	TOOLS.
Turn off end of thread, (9), and smooth off thread with file.	2d or 3d speed, or 50 F.P.M. Hand feed.	Diamond-point and side tools, or holder and cutter, 8" or 10" mill bastard file.
File top of threads to remove burr.	4th or 5th speed, or 175 F.P.M.	8" or 10" mill bastard file.
File sides of thread slightly if needed to make the fit easier. (Preferably with file and speed reversed.)	1st speed, or 10 F.P.M.	5" or 6" warding bastard file, two safe edges.
Polish tops of threads.	Speed lathe, highest speed.	90 emery cloth, polishing clamps, lard oil.

*Attention.* — Terminate each cut as follows: stop lathe when tool is  $\frac{1}{2}$  or  $\frac{1}{3}$  of a revolution from groove, then carefully pull belt to continue cut to groove.

A hole instead of a groove is sometimes used in which to terminate the cut. See K, Fig. 17.

For fine pitches a groove, or hole, is sometimes omitted and a tapering termination used the same as United States Standard and Sharp V threads. See p. 330, 331.

*Warning.* — Roughing tool may be removed, ground, and reset, if necessary, but it is best not to remove the finishing tool until thread is completed.

*Important.* — A 29° thread nut must be made first in order to fit the screw to it.

**41. To make an Acme Standard or 29° thread nut, Fig. 35.**

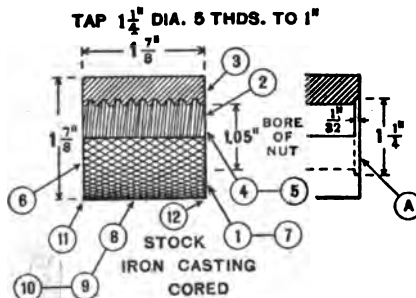


Fig. 35. — SCHEDULE DRAWING OF ACME STANDARD OR 29° THREAD NUT.

**Specifications:** Preparing nut blank. Rough threading. Tapping.  
**Material,** iron casting, cored; weight, 1 lb. 5 oz.  
**Hardness,** 29 to 31 (scleroscope).  
**High-speed steel or stellite cutting tools.**  
**Time:** Study drawing and schedule in advance, 5 min. —  
 Oil lathe, 4 min. — Bore, thread, and tap nut, 40 min. — Square,  
 turn, and nurl nut, 28 min. — (All tools furnished.) Clean lathe, 3  
 min. — Total, 1 h. 20 min.

### SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS, MACHINES AND TOOLS

OPERATIONS.	MACHINES, SPEEDS, FEEDS.	TOOLS.
Mount in chuck, true up, and clamp hard in chuck.	Engine lathe 12" to 16". 3d speed, or 115 F.P.M.	Independent chuck, chalk.
Rough square, (1), one or two cuts. Feed inward.	2d or 3d speed, or 40 F.P.M. Hand or power feed.	Round-nose tool or holder and cutter, 15° rake.
Rough bore hole to about 1.03", (2), two or three cuts.	1st or 2d speed, or 40 F.P.M., medium power feed — 80 to 1".	Boring tool, p. 504. Inside calipers, rule.
Finish bore hole 1.05", (2), two or three cuts.	3d speed, or 60 F.P.M. Fine power feed — 140 to 1".	
Or omit boring, bevel corner of hole and drill to size.	2d or 3d speed, or 60 F.P.M.	3 or 4-groove high speed steel twist drill (1.05"). See p. 410 and <i>Principles of Machine Work</i> .
Set inside 29° thread tool, Fig. 32, cut recess for improvised gage $\frac{1}{2}$ " $\times$ 1 $\frac{1}{4}$ ", (3). See (A).	2d speed, or 50 F.P.M. Hand feed.	Forged 29° thread tool, or holder and cutter, inside calipers, rule.
Arrange lathe for 5 threads with thread stop reversed.		
Rough thread to 1 $\frac{1}{4}$ " the diameter of gage A, (4), fifteen cuts .008" each, five cuts .002" each. Depth of thread .100".	1st speed, or 30 F.P.M.	Without oil.
Start tap in lathe, pull belt downward and follow with dead center. Be sure that tap follows thread or it may ream out thread. Remove nut and tap to reaming stand or vise, and finish tapping, (5).	Reaming stand, or vise and grooved wooden jaws.	1 $\frac{1}{4}$ " $\times$ 5, 29° thread tap and tap wrench, lubricate tap freely with lard oil.

SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS, MACHINES AND TOOLS  
*Concluded*

OPERATIONS.	MACHINES, SPEEDS, FEEDS.	TOOLS.
Mount nut on nut mandrel and rough square, (6), one or two cuts.	2d or 3d speed, or 40 F.P.M.	1½" × 5, 29° thread nut mandrel, dog, round-nose tool or holder and cutter, calipers, rule.
Finish square, (6), one or two cuts.	3d or 4th speed, or 60 F.P.M.	Facing tool, or holder and cutter.
Reverse nut and square to length to remove recess, (7), two or three cuts.	2d or 3d speed, or 60 F.P.M.	Round-nose tool, or holder and cutter and facing tool.
Rough turn, (8), one or two cuts.	1st or 2d speed, or 35 F.P.M. Medium power feed.	Diamond-point tool or holder and cutter, 15° rake, calipers, rule.
Finish turn, (8), one cut. File, (9).	2d or 3d speed, or 50 F.P.M. 4th speed, or 175 F.P.M.	Diamond-point or round-nose tool, or holder and cutter, calipers, rule. 8" or 10" mill bastard file.
Nurl, (10), two to four times. See Machine Nurling, p. 636.	1st or 2d speed, or 35 F.P.M. Medium power feed — 80 to 1".	Machine nurling tool, medium pitch, lard oil.
File corners slightly to remove burr, (11), (12).	4th speed, or 175 F.P.M.	8" or 10" mill bastard file.

*Attention.* — In the absence of a tap the inside 29° thread tool may be used to finish the thread but the thread will not be as smooth or the fit of screw and nut as good.

*Note.* — The nut in Fig. 35 is nurlled for convenience in handling as a problem. For practical styles of nuts to transmit motion, see p. 538.

MULTIPLE THREADS

42. Multiple-threaded screws, such as double and triple threads, etc., in Square, 29°, and other forms of threads, are used in cases where a quick lead is required, but a deep thread is not desirable.

43. To cut double Square thread, Fig. 36, 8 threads to 1", pitch  $\frac{1}{8}$ ".

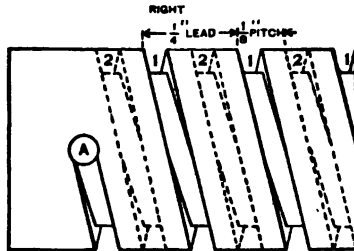


FIG. 36. — DOUBLE SQUARE THREAD SCREW.

### SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS

1. Gear lathe to cut 4 threads per inch. Dog the work and with threading tool trace a line for groove 1.

2. At end of line center punch and drill finishing hole *A* to terminate groove 1. See pp. 516–518.

3. Cut groove 1 to diameter.

4. If ratio of stud spindle and lathe spindle is 1 to 1, and stud gear has an even number of teeth, mark with chalk a tooth on stud gear and the corresponding space in idler gear. Then mark a tooth on stud gear dia-

metrically opposite, which is determined by counting half the teeth in the stud gear.

Disengage idler gear from stud gear, rotate lathe spindle and bring gears into mesh as indicated by chalk marks on the teeth of the gears.

5. Now, with threading tool trace a line for groove 2 and on this line opposite *A*, center punch and drill finishing hole *A'* (not shown) to terminate groove 2.

6. Cut groove 2 to diameter.

*Attention.*—To cut a triple thread, the lathe spindle is rotated one-third of a revolution to cut the second thread, and another third to cut the third thread. If gear on stud is not divisible by number of threads to be cut, select change gears that have a stud gear that is.

*Important.*—Special face plates with multiple equidistant slots (index milled) are convenient for cutting multiple threads, as the tail of the dog can be more readily shifted than the gears after each thread is cut.

44. **Width and inclination of tool for multiple threads.**—The width or shape of tools for multiple threads is governed by pitch of the screw; and the inclination by the lead of the screw.

45. **Multiple-thread taps** are similar to those for square and 29° thread nuts. See pp. 516, 526, 527. The Sharp V and 29° forms of this thread can be cut with dies.

## BRASS FINISHING

46. To turn brass in the engine lathe. — Brass, also known as composition, ranging in hardness from soft yellow to hard brass or bronze, is generally turned with tools having little or no rake. High speeds and fine feeds are used and the tools must be kept sharp by frequent grinding to obtain the best results. See To Machine Bronze, p. 419. For Cutting Speed, see p. 145.

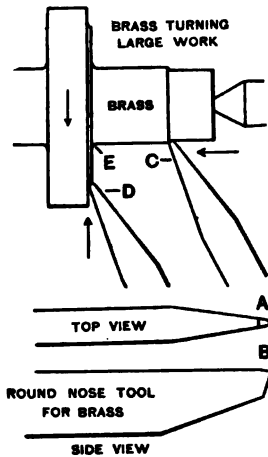


FIG. 37. — BRASS TURNING WITH ROUND-NOSE TOOL.

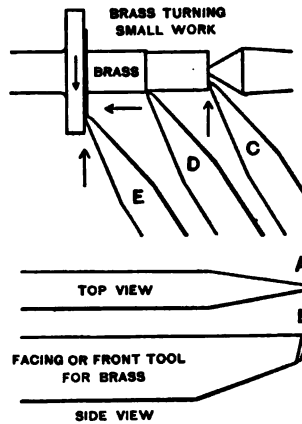


FIG. 38. — BRASS TURNING WITH FRONT TOOL.

47. The round-nose tool, as at A and B, Fig. 37, is generally used for large brass work. It may be used to turn the diameter as at C, the shoulder, as at D, and the round corner or fillet as at E, without change of position in the tool post.

48. Use front tool, Fig. 38, with point A, B ground at angle from 50° to 60° for squaring, turning, or facing, without change, as at C, D, and E. If the work is rigid, cut inward or outward; if slender, cut inward only. This tool may be ground to fit thread gage, and used as a threading tool for United States Standard or Sharp V threads.



*Attention.* — As bronze and brass will stretch, it is necessary, when fitting a steel screw to a bronze or brass nut, to force the screw in hard at first to avoid a loose fit.

Reamed and drilled holes in brass or bronze are usually smaller than holes made with the same tools in cast iron on account of the resilient and adhesive quality of these materials.

Taps, dies, reamers, and files that are used on steel or iron may be used on brass, but it is best to have separate tools, for such tools never work as well on brass after they are used on steel or iron.

Brass in general is machined dry, but to thread rolled brass, as rod and tubing, with a die, it is usually necessary to use lard oil to prevent the chips from clinging to the threads of the die and stripping the threads on the work.

Monel metal is a natural nickel-copper alloy made directly from the ore, 67 per cent nickel, 28 per cent copper and 5 per cent of other metals.

It takes the same finish as pure nickel and is used for pump rods, valve stems, boat fittings, dairy and tannery machinery and other purposes where strength and non-corrodibility are required. It can be machined, forged, soldered, brazed and welded by the autogenous and electric processes.

To machine, use tools with 25° to 30° rake, dry or with a lubricant of lard oil, borax and aquadag.

**49. To make brass binding post, Fig. 39.**

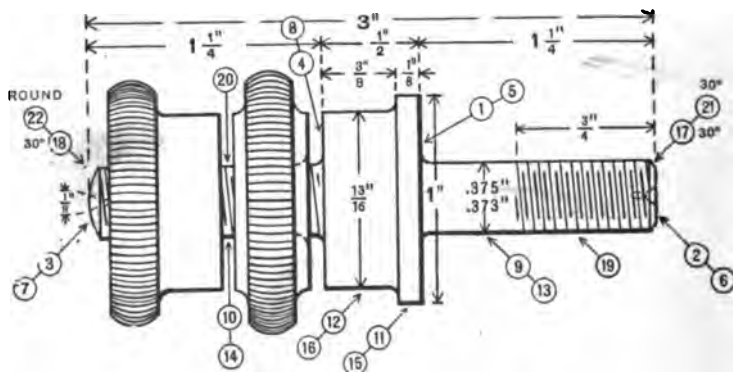


FIG. 39. — SCHEDULE DRAWING OF A BINDING POST.

**Specifications:** Material, composition or brass castings  $\frac{1}{8}$ " large; weight, 10 oz. Hardness, 10 to 12 (scleroscope).

True live center. Set dead center in approximate alinement.

Carbon-steel cutting tools.

**Time:** Study drawing and schedule in advance, 10 min. — Oil lathe, 3 min. — Make post, 38 min. — Chuck and true nuts, 37 min. — Nurl nut and thread post, 40 min. — Assemble, finish, polish, and lacquer, 34 min. — Clean lathes, 6 min. — Total, 2 h. 48 min.

### SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS, MACHINES AND TOOLS

OPERATION.	MACHINES, SPEEDS, FEEDS.	TOOLS.
File ends flat and center to $\frac{1}{8}$ " diameter.	Vise, centering machine, drill, 3500 R.P.M., countersink, 1700 R.P.M.	File, $\frac{1}{8}$ " drill, 60° countersink.
Rough square, (1), (2), (3), (4). Take as little as possible off 1. See pp. 533, 534.	Engine lathe, 12" to 16", 4th or 5th speed, or 90 F.P.M. Hand feed.	Round-nose tool $\frac{1}{8}$ " wide, (1), (4), front tool, (2), (3), calipers, rule.
Recenter to $\frac{1}{8}$ " diameter.	Speed lathe, 3d or 4th speed.	60° countersink.
Finish square, (5), (6), (7), (8).	Engine lathe, 4th or 5th speed, or 150 F.P.M. Hand feed.	Round-nose tool, (5), (8), front tool, (6), (7), calipers, rule.
Rough turn diameter to $\frac{1}{8}$ " large, (9), (10), (11), (12).	4th or 5th speed, or 90 F.P.M. Fine power feed — 140 to 1".	Copper under set screw of dog, round-nose tool, calipers, rule.
Finish turn, (13), (14), to fit $\frac{3}{8}$ " gage (easy fit) or use micrometer, tool finish, filing not necessary. Finish turn, (15), (16.)	4th or 5th speed, or 150 F.P.M. Fine power feed — 140 to 1".	Calipers, rule, $\frac{3}{8}$ " mandrel, $\frac{3}{8}$ " ring gage, or micrometer.
Chamfer ends 30° to depth of thread, (17), (18).	Hand feed.	Front tool.
Thread in engine lathe to fit nuts, (19), (20), or	2d or 3d speed, or 25 F.P.M. Arrange change gears for 24 threads.	U.S.F.-threading tool.

Thread with $\frac{3}{8}$ " $\times$ 24 U.S.F. die, (19), (20). Start in lathe. Pull belt by hand, and finish in vise. See p. 542. If desired, post and nuts may be threaded $\frac{3}{8}$ " $\times$ 16, United States Standard thread.	Speed lathe — 8" to 12". Vise.	3" universal chuck, $\frac{3}{8}$ " $\times$ 24 U.S.F. thread die and die stock, special vise jaws. See Automobile Screws, pp. 354, 355.
Rechamfer, (21).	Engine lathe, 4th or 5th speed, or 90 F.P.M.	Clamp nut, front tool.
Round end with forming tool, or By hand tool, (22).	Speed lathe, 4th or 5th speed, or 500 F.P.M.	Forming tool. Planisher or graver

50. To make brass nurlled thumb nuts, Fig. 40.

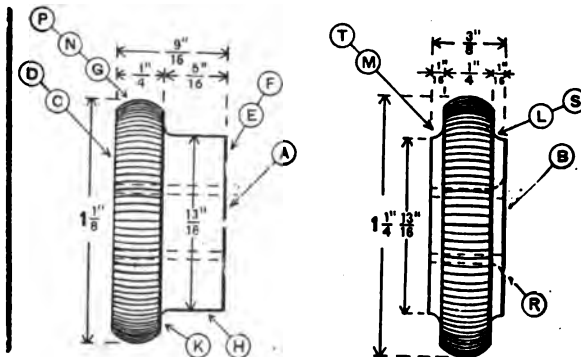


FIG. 40. — SCHEDULE DRAWING OF NURLLED NUTS.

SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS, MACHINES AND TOOLS

OPERATIONS.	MACHINES, SPEEDS, FEEDS.	TOOLS.
Chuck, drill, and tap nuts, (A), (B), see pp. 540-542.	Speed lathe, 4th or 5th speed, or 1500 R.P.M. Vise.	3" universal chuck, planisher or graver. P, or $\frac{3}{16}$ " drill, dog, $\frac{3}{8}$ " $\times$ 24 U.S.F. thread tap, tap wrench.
Screw on nut mandrel, mount on centers, rough square, (C). Finish square, (D).	Engine lathe, 4th or 5th speed, or 90 to 150 F.P.M. Hand feed.	Dog, $\frac{3}{8}$ " $\times$ 24 U.S.F. thread, nut mandrel, front tool.

OPERATIONS.	MACHINES, SPEEDS, FEEDS.	TOOLS.
Reverse on mandrel, rough square. (E). Finish square to thickness, (F).	.....	Front tool, calipers, rule.
Rough turn to diameter, $1\frac{1}{2}$ ", (G).	Engine lathe, 4th or 5th speed, or 90 to 150 F.P.M. Fine power feed — 140 to 1".	Round-nose tool, calipers, rule.
Rough and finish turn to diameter, (H). Rough and finish square to thickness, (K).	.....	Round-nose tool, calipers, rule.
Square and turn nut (B) in same order as (A), except leave diameters (L) (M) $\frac{1}{4}$ " large.		
Round nut (N) to fit concave single nurl. See p. 635.	Speed lathe, 4th or 5th speed, or 500 F.P.M.	Planisher.
Nurl (P), also round and nurl nut (B). See p. 635.	2d or 3d speed or 300 F.P.M.	Hand nurling tool.
Hold nut mandrel in chuck, screw on nut (B), and recess (E) to fit against 4 on binding post, Fig. 39.	4th or 5th speed, or 500 F.P.M.	Chuck, nut mandrel with thick collar, planisher or graver.
Screw nuts on binding post, mount on centers and hand turn, (S). (T), to correct diameter of post and nut (A).	4th or 5th speed, or 500 F.P.M.	Clamp nut, round-nose hand tool.
File.	3d or 4th speed, or 250 F.P.M.	5" half-round smooth file.
Stamp name or initials at end, (C).	Place on metal block.	Steel name stamp, hammer.
Polish and lacquer posts and nuts all over, except threads and nurling. See pp. 432, 440.	Highest speed, or 6000 F.P.M. See <i>Principles of Machine Work</i> .	120 and flour emery cloth, crocus cloth (an oxide of iron), rouge (a red iron peroxide), lacquer, brush.

*Attention.* — The cutting speeds in schedule are for soft brass or composition castings; but if castings are hard, reduce the cutting speed.

## ALINEMENT DRILLING AND TAPPING

51. Fixed nuts, Fig. 41, which receive screws to transmit motion are made in various forms, as bushing nut *A*, which is threaded and forced into a bored hole and used to

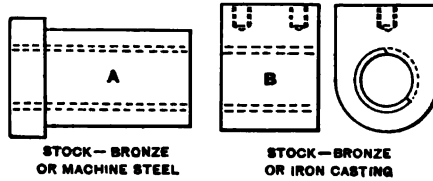


FIG. 41. — BUSHING AND BRACKET NUTS.

receive vertical feed screw on a milling machine, or bracket nut *B*, used to receive cross-slide screw on a lathe, or bracket nut *C*, Fig. 42, for cross-slide screw on a milling machine.

Bracket nuts are drilled and tapped in alinement with scraped slide and bearing of screw, and the work may be done with a regular jig, or with a part of the machine itself used as an improvised jig, as knee *B*, Fig. 42.

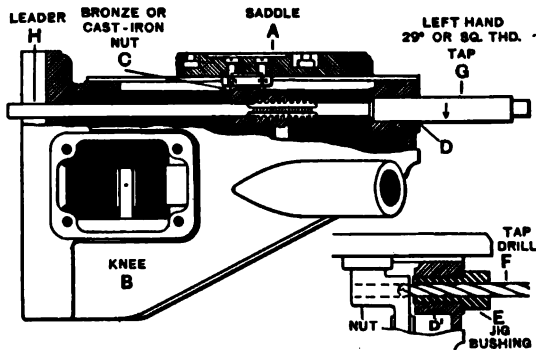


FIG. 42. — ALINEMENT DRILLING AND TAPPING, MILLING MACHINE CROSS-FEED SCREW NUT. HOLE IN KNEE USED AS A JIG.

52. To drill and tap cross-feed screw nut in axial alinement in milling machine saddle and knee, Fig. 42. Improved jig, 29° or Square thread tap.

## SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS

Place saddle *A* on knee *B*. Fit and bolt nut *C* to saddle and move close to hole *D*.

Clamp saddle and knee to angle plate at vertical drilling machine or to table of horizontal drilling machine and aline with spindle.

In hole *D'* insert jig bushing *E*, and drill nut with tap drill *F*.

Move saddle and nut away

from hole *D*, and clamp saddle. Remove bushing, insert tap *G*, and tap hole by hand. Three or four taps of increasing diameters are used.

*Attention.* — Taps without leaders are used, but taps with leaders, either threaded or plain, as at *H*, are preferred for accuracy.

## 53. To make bronze bushing, Fig. 43.

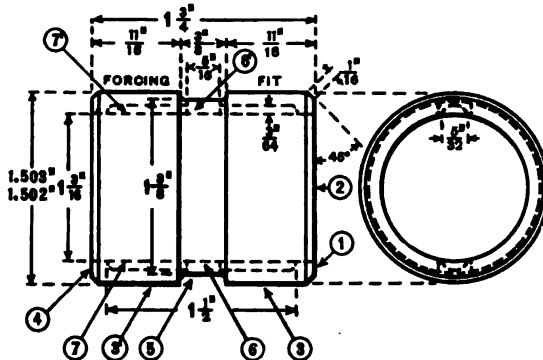


FIG. 43. — SCHEDULE DRAWING.

**Specifications:** Material, bronze casting  $\frac{1}{8}$ " large, cored; weight, 10 oz.

Hardness, 11 to 14 (scleroscope).

High-speed steel, or stellite cutting tools.

Time: 1 h. 30 min.

## SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS, MACHINES AND TOOLS

OPERATIONS.	MACHINES, SPEEDS, FEEDS.	TOOLS.
<b>Snag casting.</b> Set dead center in approximate alinement. Mount casting in chuck, true up and clamp firmly.	Engine lathe, 12" to 18". 3d speed.	Independent chuck, chalk.

<b>Rough and finish square end</b> (1), two or three cuts.	4th or 5th speed, or 150 F.P.M. Hand feed.	Holder and cutter no rake, or front tool.
<b>Rough bore hole to <math>1\frac{1}{4}</math>"</b> , (2), two or three cuts. See p. 504.	Medium power feed — 80 to 1".	Boring tool no rake, inside calipers, rule.
<b>Finish bore hole to 1.1825"</b> , (2), one cut.	Fine power feed — 140 to 1".	2" inside micrometer (or calipers and rule).
<b>Finish ream hole by hand with hand reamer in lathe</b> (3). See p. 416.	.....	$1\frac{3}{8}$ " hand reamer, reamer wrench.
<b>Oil mandrel and press lightly into hole in direction reamed.</b>	Mandrel press.	$1\frac{3}{8}$ " mandrel, oil.
<b>True live center. Set dead center in accurate alinement</b> (see pp. 116, 117), using a shaft same length as mandrel.	Engine lathe.	
<b>Rough turn to 1.503" + .010"</b> , (3), (3'), one or two cuts.	4th or 5th speed, or 150 F.P.M. Medium power feed — 80 to 1".	Holder and cutter no rake, or round-nose tool, 2" micrometer.
<b>Finish turn to 1.503" + .003"</b> , (3), (3'), one cut.	Fine power feed — 140 to 1".	
<b>Rough and finish square to length</b> (4), three or four cuts.	Engine lathe, 4th or 5th speed, or 150 F.P.M. Hand feed.	Calipers, rule.
<b>Turn groove in center of bushing</b> (5), two cuts.	Fine power feed — 140 to 1".	Tool holder and round-nose cutter.
<b>Chamfer ends</b> (1), (4), to 45°.	4th speed.	8" or 10" mill-bastard file, file card, 2" micrometer.
<b>File to limit</b> (3), (3').		Rule, scribe, center punch, hammer, $\frac{3}{8}$ " straight fluted drill, V center.
<b>Drill oil holes</b> (6), (6').	Vise, copper jaws. Speed lathe, 4th or 5th speed, or 1500 R.P.M.	Bent center chisel, hammer (or inside grooving tool).
<b>Chip (or plane) oil grooves</b> (7), (7').	Vise, copper jaws (shaper).	Half-round smooth file.
<b>Remove burr from hole by running reamer through by hand.</b>	.....	

DRILLING, TAPPING, AND HAND THREADING IN SPEED LATHE

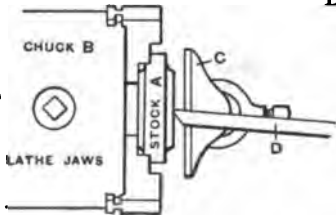


FIG. 44. — CUTTING A CONICAL CAVITY AXIALLY TRUE WITH GRAVER TO START TWIST DRILL.

**54. To cut a conical cavity axially true with graver, Fig. 44.** — Hold nut A in chuck B. Set Tee rest C to bring edge of graver D at height of center. Hold graver down hard on Tee rest and at the same time press it into work. If graver is not

held firmly, it will not produce a cavity axially true. If the work is brass, it is best to use the corner of the planisher.

**55. To chuck with twist drill in speed lathe, Fig. 45.** — Make a conical cavity in work *E*, true to axis of rotation and, approximately, to the angle and diameter of drill. Fasten dog *G* to drill *F* and place in conical hole, with dog on rest *J* and dead center *H* in end of drill. Grip dog with left hand, start lathe and feed drill toward headstock with the right hand.

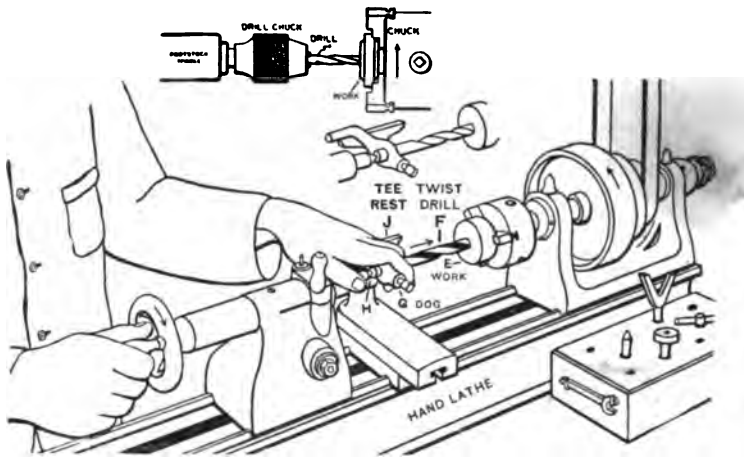


FIG. 45. — CHUCKING WITH TWIST DRILL IN SPEED LATHE.

**Warning.** — Drills not larger than  $\frac{3}{8}$ " in diameter may be safely held on dead center by hand pressure. A larger drill may draw off dead center when point of drill breaks through the work. This is liable to injure the hand, break the drill and spoil the work. For larger drills, see p. 409.

**Information.** — Small drills, as at *F'*, Fig. 45, may be conveniently held for chucking by fitting a chuck to the footstock spindle of a speed lathe or engine lathe.

**56. To tap work in speed lathe, Fig. 46.** See Tapping, *Principles of Machine Work*. — Place tap wrench *K* on tap *L* and then insert in hole in work *M*, held in chuck *N*. Guide tap by dead center *O*, allowing handle of wrench to bear on rest *P*.



Rotate work by pulling belt *Q*, or rotate cone *R*, and feed footstock spindle to follow up tap with dead center.

*Attention.* — Carefully follow up tap with dead center, as the tap will break if it slips off.

*Important.* — As small taps break easily, it is best only to start tap in the lathe and then finish at vise.

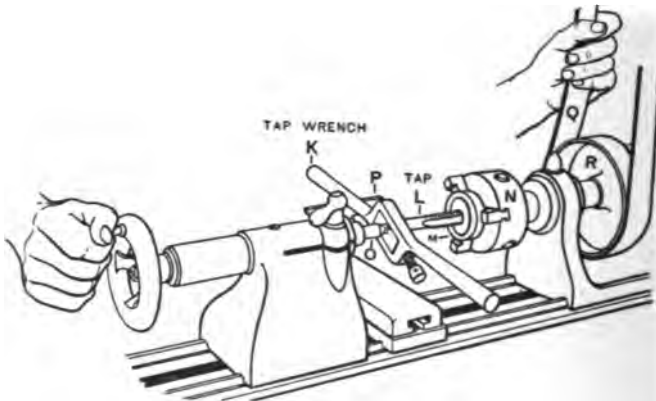


FIG. 46. — TAPPING IN A SPEED LATHE.

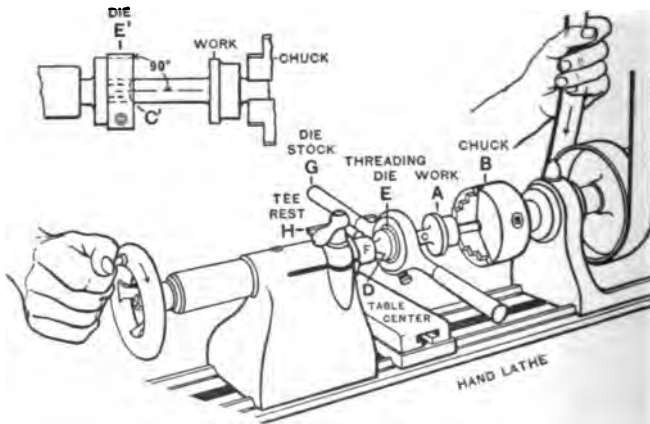


FIG. 47. — THREADING WORK IN SPEED LATHE WITH A DIE BY HAND.

57. To thread work held in chuck with die and stock by hand, Fig. 47. — Chamfer end of work *A*, held in chuck *B*, as at *C'*, to assist starting die centrally. Remove dead center,

insert table center *D*, place muzzle side of die *E* against work (see *E'*) and handle *G* on Tee rest *H*. Feed spindle *F* in until *D* presses against die stock. Rotate lathe by hand, following up die with *D* until thread is started. To terminate thread abruptly reverse die.

*Attention.*—The work must be adjusted in chuck to run true, otherwise die will cut a crooked thread.

*Warning.*—Chamfer ends of work as at *C'*, Fig. 47, before mounting in chuck.

### BROACHING HOLES, KEYWAYS AND SLOTS

**58. Machine broaching** is a process used in producing non-circular holes, such as square, hexagonal, rectangular and irregularly-shaped holes that have been drilled, cored or punched; also for cutting slots, keyways, etc. See Chart, Fig. 49. For large quantities of work, the broaching process is more economical than the production of such holes by milling, slotting, planing, filing, etc. One or more long cutters called broaches, as in Fig. 48, are drawn through a drilled or cored hole in work in a broaching machine, as in Fig. 51, or one or more short broaches are forced or pushed through in a press, as in Fig. 53. The broach is the same shape as the cross section of the desired hole. A typical square machine broach is shown in Fig. 48. Each tooth on the tapered part *A* is from .002" to .005" larger than the preceding tooth and gradually changes a round hole to a square hole. Part *B* is straight and full size. The broach is fastened in the broach holder *C* by key *D*. The threaded end *E* is screwed into the end of the driving screw on machine. Guide bushing *F* centers the broach.

A sectional view of a broach producing a square hole is shown in Fig. 50. The teeth are often inclined and in opposite directions on the sides, and may be undercut, as at *A* to give rake and

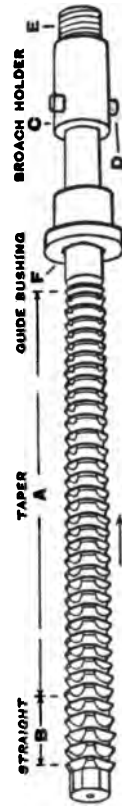


FIG. 48.—  
SQUARE  
MACHINE  
BROACH.

CHART OF BROACHED HOLES SLOTS AND KEYWAYS

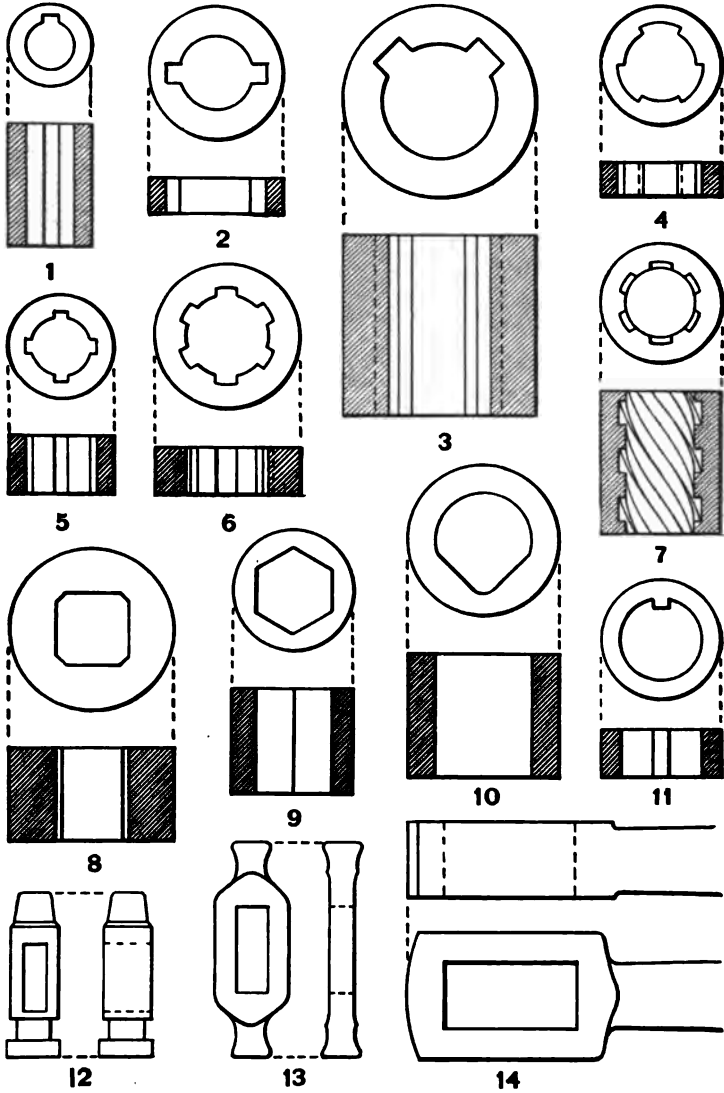


FIG. 49.

produce a shearing cut. Rounded or truncated corners should be used whenever possible as sharp corners are liable to break.

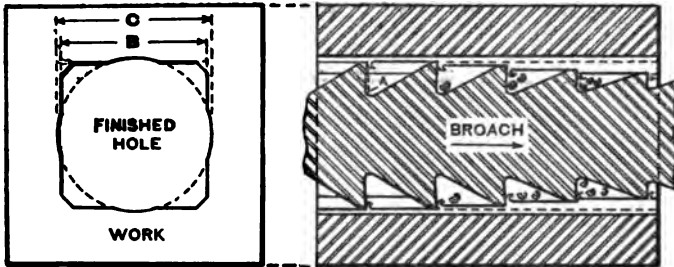


FIG. 50.—SHOWING HOW A BROACH CUTS.

A broaching machine (draw-cut principle) is shown in Fig. 51 broaching six keyways in yoke *A* of an automobile universal

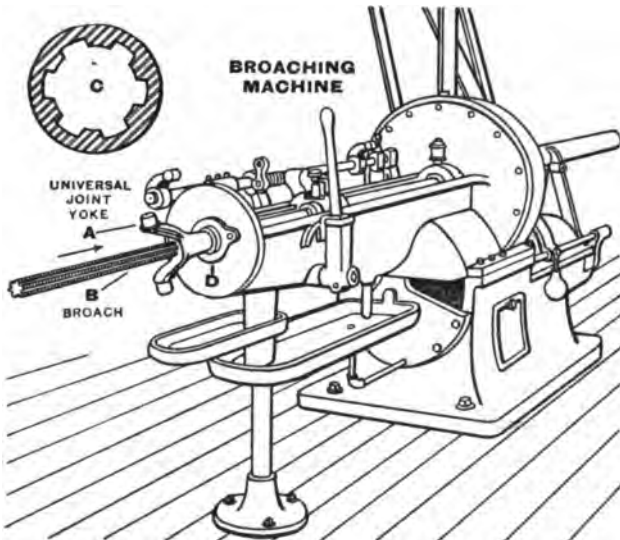


FIG. 51.—BROACHING SIX KEYWAYS IN YOKE FOR AUTOMOBILE UNIVERSAL JOINT.

joint with one stroke of broach *B*. The finished hole is shown in section at *C*. The work is held against bushing *D* by the pressure of the cut.

**59. Preparation of holes for broaching.**—Only a small amount of stock should remain in holes to be broached. Cored castings and drop forgings may be broached successfully. The amount of stock that the broach has to remove is reduced by drilling hole *C*, Fig. 50, larger than desired size of broached hole *B* which leaves sufficient bearing for all mechanical purposes.

Where keyways are to be broached in the work, the hole is prepared in the regular way by reaming.

**60. Cutting speeds for broaching.**—Nickel steel 18 F.P.M., machine steel and wrought iron 40 F.P.M., cast iron, malleable iron, and brass, 108 F.P.M.

**61. Lubricants for broaching.**—For steel, wrought and malleable iron the broach and work are lubricated with lard oil or a good lubricating compound. For cast iron the sides of broach may be lubricated with lard oil or the broach may be flooded with a soap mixture. Brass and bronze are machined dry.

**62. Hand broaching or drifting.**—A plain broach or drift is used for bottom hole, as the socket or chuck screw wrench in Fig. 52. The broach at *A* and *A*, Fig. 53, is made of carbon steel with shank to fit the spindle of mandrel press. It is hardened, tempered and ground a little smaller at *B* than at *C* for clearance, and sharpened by grinding end *D*. The hole is prepared by drilling slightly larger than the square and considerably deeper, as at *E* and *E'*, to receive the chips. The socket wrench *F* is held by holder *G* and the square broach is then pressed into the drilled hole as shown in Fig. 53. Small broaches of this type may be driven in with a hammer.

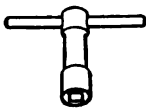


FIG. 52.—SOCKET  
WRENCH.

**63. Improvised broach or drift.**—For small bottom holes a broach or drift may be made by grinding a chisel to a desired shape and driving it into a drilled hole with a hammer.

**64. Broaching circular holes, Fig. 54.**—Broaching produces better holes in bronze and brass than reaming and is used on some classes of work.

Broach *A* is forced through bronze bushing *B*. Cored holes

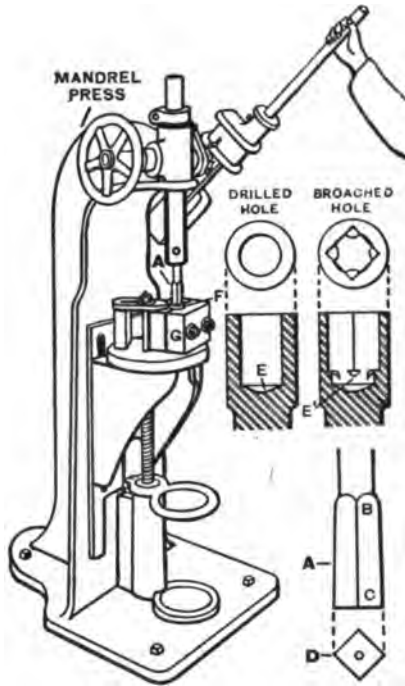


FIG. 53.—BROACHING WRENCH IN MANDREL PRESS WITH PLAIN BROACH.

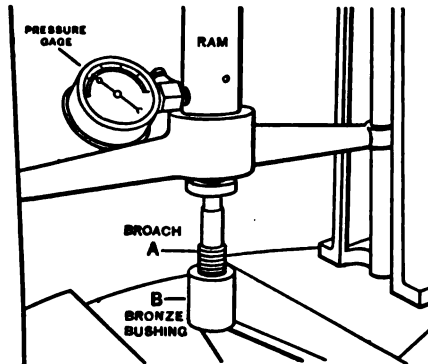


FIG. 54.—BROACHING HOLE IN BRONZE BUSHING. BELT POWER FORCING PRESS.

require two or more broaches. Holes bored nearly to size require but one. Broaches are made  $1/100''$  oversize then hardened and ground to size. For finishing, hole is  $.002''$  undersize and leader on broach must fit hole. Broaches are also grooved spirally with a ratchet thread. Ratchet groove on broach *A* is cut  $60^\circ$ , making perpendicular tooth.

# ADVANCED MACHINE WORK

## SECTION 6

### DRILLING JIGS BORING BARS ECCENTRIC TURNING

**Drilling Jigs and Multiple-Spindle Drilling Machines. Radial Drilling Machines. Boring, Boring Bars and Boring Machines. Vertical Boring and Reaming. Taper Holes, Taper Reamers and Spindle Making. Magnetic Chucks. Steady and Follower Rests. Eccentric Turning. Nurling.**

#### DRILLING JIGS, AND MULTIPLE-SPINDLE DRILLING MACHINES

1. The demand for machinery with interchangeable parts has compelled builders to design drilling, milling and planing jigs, gages, and templets to produce standard and duplicate parts accurately and economically. See Precision Methods of Locating Holes for Jigs and Accurate Machine Parts, pp. 1248-1263.

2. Drilling jigs are fixtures carefully made with hardened bushings to guide drills, reamers, etc., so that their operation shall be the same on each piece. They may be divided into about five classes, and each class is best adapted to some particular kind of work.

I. Plate jigs are used for flanges, machine frames, etc. See pp. 602, 603.

II. Solid jigs are used for work that can be readily clamped to jig body. These jigs are preferred by some for general work. See pp. 609, 610.

III. Box jigs are used for general work. The work is placed in a box, the hinged cover closed and fastened and the work held in place by binding screws. See pp. 604, 606.

IV. Rotary jigs are for work where the jig is too heavy to be easily turned over at the drilling machine. The jig consists of a box mounted on trunnions to facilitate revolution.

V. Multiple jigs are for work that is to be index-drilled. The bushings are placed in a turret head.

3. An improvised jig or templet.—To drill and ream bolt holes *B*, *C*, and *D*, Fig. 1, equidistant in two or more flanges: First, lay out, drill, and ream one flange carefully. Next, clamp one drilled flange to another in the way they are



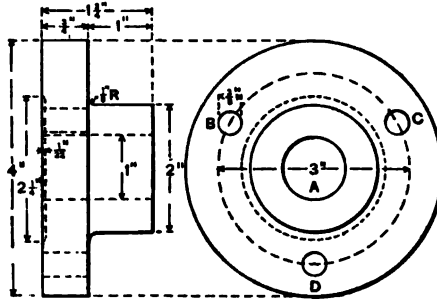


FIG. 1. — COUPLING FLANGE.

to fit, and insert a plug or mandrel through centers *A* to align them. Drill and ream holes in the other flange. Other methods are to drill both flanges then ream together, or drill and ream in pairs.

4. Plate (flange) drilling jig, Fig. 2, is a cast-iron disk *E* supplied with a plug *FG* to align flange and jig, a hardened

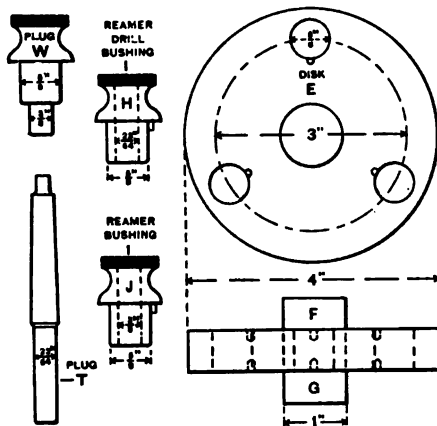


FIG. 2. — FLANGE DRILLING JIG. (PLATE JIG.)

steel drill bushing *H* and reamer bushing *J*. Plug *T* is for aligning drill and jig and plug *W* to prevent relative movement of flange and jig.

5. To use flange jig, Fig. 3. — Place flange *K* on parallel pieces *L* and *M*, with jig *N* on top of flange; clamp lightly by strap *P*, block *Q*, and bolt *R* to table *S*. Aline jig and drill spindle with plug *T*, Fig. 2, moving work by rapping with a soft hammer until the plug will enter bushing exactly central; clamp firmly. Drill hole with reamer drill *U*. Substi-

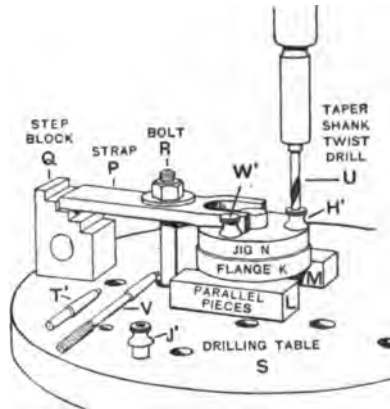


FIG. 3. — DRILLING AND REAMING WITH FLANGE JIG.

tute reamer bushing *J'* for drilling bushing *H'*, and ream with fluted reamer *V*. Place plug *W*, Fig. 2, in first hole to keep jig and flange in alinement as at *W'*, Fig. 3, while drilling and reaming second and third holes. Reverse jig to drill the second flange.

6. Drilling and tapping engine cylinder heads. — When two pieces of work are to be clamped together with cap screws or stud bolts, as a cylinder and cylinder head, two removable bushings are required for the jig; the first with body drill holes for the head, the second with tap drill holes for the cylinder. To tap the holes by hand, a tap bushing is sometimes used to guide the tap. See Automatic Tapping Attachment, Fig. 6.

7. Multiple-spindle drilling machines are used to save time in changing drills, reamers, and counterbores, in moving work

from one machine to another, as is necessary with a one-spindle drilling machine. One spindle holds a tap drill, another a body drill, another a counterbore, etc., all running, and the work is moved along the table from one spindle to another without stopping the machine. See Figs. 4 and 8.

8. Box jigs are used to further increase the rapidity and accuracy of drilling, reaming, tapping, and counterboring.

The work is locked in a box provided with accurately machined bearings to rest on the drilling table. The jigs are made heavy and are held in position by their own weight, thus saving the time that would be consumed in clamping and alining.

9. To drill and ream bolt holes in coupling flange with a box jig and a two-spindle high-speed drilling machine, Fig. 4.

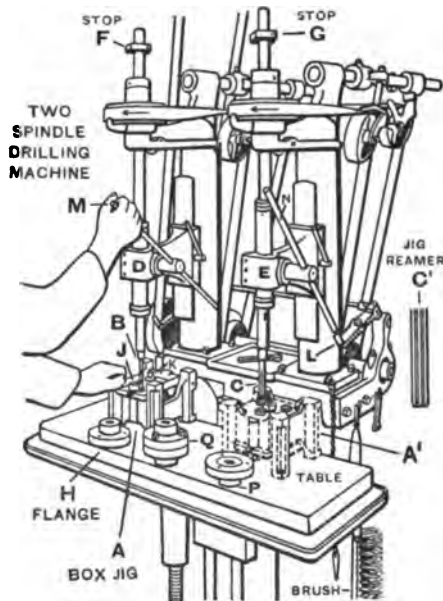


FIG. 4. — DRILLING AND REAMING HOLES IN COUPLING FLANGE WITH BOX JIG.

SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS

$\frac{3}{4}$ " High-speed steel drill,  
600 R.P.M.

$\frac{1}{2}$ " High-speed steel reamer,  
400 R.P.M.

Time, 6 min.

1. Place box jig *A* on table. Insert drill *B* and reamer *C*, *C'* in spindles.

Locate heads *D* and *E* on column and clamp stops *F* and *G* on spindles to limit travel of drill and reamer as tested by passing drill and reamer through bushing into empty jig, or test drill and reamer by lines placed on outside of jig which indicate position of bushings.

Place flange *H* in jig with hub up, and secure with button *J* and screw *K*. Start machine by shipper *L*.

2. With left hand move jig to aline drill bushings with drill. Use lever feed *M* and drill three holes.

3. Turn jig over as shown, dotted, at *A'*.

4. Ream the holes, using lever feed *N*. *P* shows position of flange as it is reamed, and *Q* shows two flanges bolted together.

*Attention.* — Stop *G* must check reamer before it strikes drill bushing or reamer and bushing will be spoiled.

*Important.* — A reamer tapered at the end has a tendency to follow the drilled hole. Jig reamers are beveled at the point, as at *C'*, Fig. 4, to correct the error of the hole when used in a jig, see *F*, p. 820.

*Note.* — Before placing jig on table, and before turning jig over, brush off table.

To prevent abrasion of bushings, drill, and reamer, apply a little oil with finger to upper part of drill and reamer.

10. Box jig for pieces to be drilled, reamed, and tapped in different directions, Fig. 5.

SCHEDULE OF PARTS

*A* — Box jig for pieces to be drilled, reamed, and tapped in different directions.

*B* — Duplicate of work held in jig *A*.

*C* — Cover held in place by thumb nut *D*.

*E* and *E'* — Two of the binding screws for adjusting work in jig.

*F* — Table.

*G* — Hole in piece *B* that is being drilled in the duplicate.

*H* — Drilling bushing.

*K* — Reaming bushing put in position after drilling.

*L* — Drill  $\frac{1}{8}$ " small to allow for reaming.

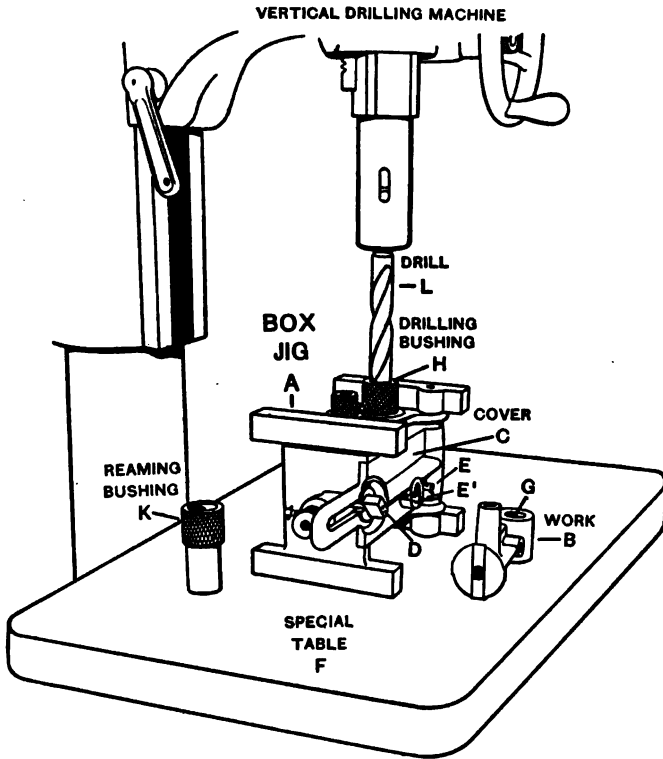


FIG. 5. — A BOX JIG FOR DRILLING, REAMING, AND TAPPING IN DIFFERENT DIRECTIONS.

#### RADIAL DRILLING MACHINES

**11. Radial drilling machines**, commonly called radial drills, differ from vertical drilling machines in that the drill is moved to align with the work, which is more convenient for large work, such as machine frames, that cannot be moved easily.

A plain radial drilling machine can be used only for vertical drilling, while a universal radial drilling machine may be used not only for vertical drilling but may be adjusted, also, to drill at almost any angle and used with hand or power feed.

12. Plain radial drilling machine, Fig. 6.

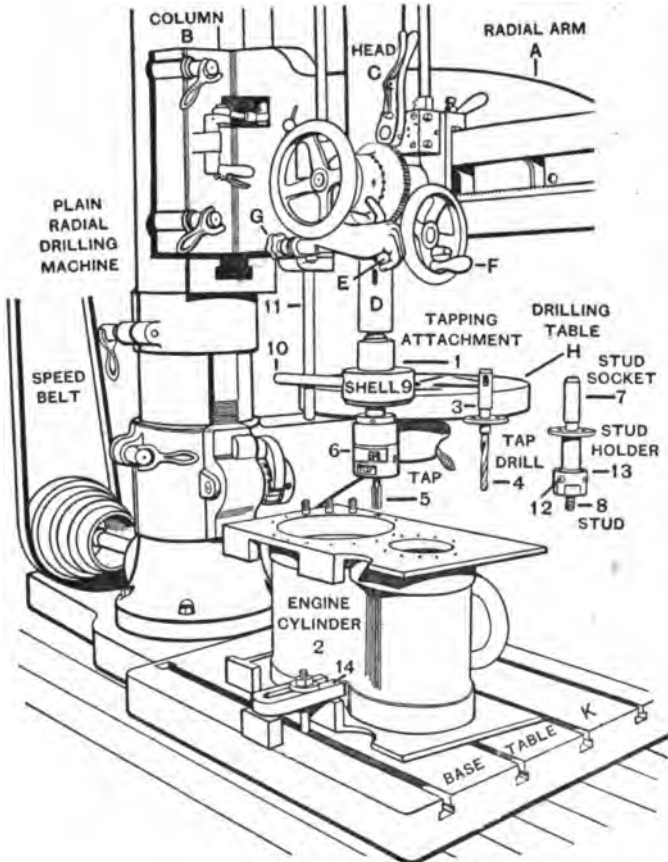


FIG. 6. — DRILLING, AUTOMATIC TAPPING, AND STUD SETTING.

SCHEDULE OF PARTS

*A* — Radial arm; may be swung around column by hand, and raised up or down by power.  
*B* — Column.  
*C* — Spindle head; may be moved back and forth on arm *A*.  
*D* — Spindle; may be moved up and down in head *C* by hand.

*E* — Levers for quick movement of spindle *D*.  
*F* — Hand wheel for slow movement of spindle.  
*G* — Knob operating clutch throwing "in" or "out" power feed.  
*H* — Drilling table for light work.  
*K* — Base table for heavy work.

**13. Automatic tapping attachment, friction drive** is shown at 1, Fig. 6, fitted to the spindle of a radial drilling machine for drilling, tapping, and setting studs in an engine cylinder 2, without stopping or reversing the drill spindle. Socket 3 holding tap drill 4 is used to drill the hole, and is followed by tap 5 in tap socket 6, which in turn is replaced by stud socket 7 that sets stud 8 in place. Shell 9 holds reversing mechanism and is kept from revolving by rod 10 resting against rod 11. The attachment holds drill sockets and will drill holes in the regular way. To tap, press spindle *D* downward by hand lever *E* until the tap reaches the bottom of the hole as indicated by the slip of the friction drive, then raise handle *E*, which throws in the reversing mechanism and backs out the tap. After setting stud 8, raise handle *E* to back off holder 13, leaving stud 8 in cylinder 2. See *Principles of Machine Work*.

With some stud holders, stud 8 is released by rapping pin 12 lightly with a hammer before reversing the holder; on others, the release of stud is obtained by a stud nut which operates on the principle that the coarser threads of the holder, when reversed, will release the finer threads of the stud. The cylinder is clamped to base table *K* at 14.

*Attention.* — The studs may be set to project to any uniform height by using a gage block between stud holder and cylinder.

*Note.* — Cap screws, nuts, and slotted screws may be set in like manner by using special wrenches and screw drivers.

**14. Jig vise.** — In the absence of a regular jig, duplicate work of certain classes may be done with the aid of a jig vise as in Fig. 7. To use this vise lay out and drill one piece and use it as a gage by which to set the stop and jig plate. Vise *A* is heavy and rests without clamping on table *B* of drilling machine *C*. Work *D* is set against adjusting stop *E* and clamped by setting up sliding jaw *F* with lever *G*. Jig plate *H* carrying removable bushing *K* is then adjusted to the desired position for the hole and clamped to fixed jaw

of vise. A radial drilling machine being used, spindle *L* and drill *M* may be moved to suit the position of work. Cylindrical distance gage *N*, cut to its center, is sometimes used to set the center of the hole in the jig a given distance from the fixed jaw.

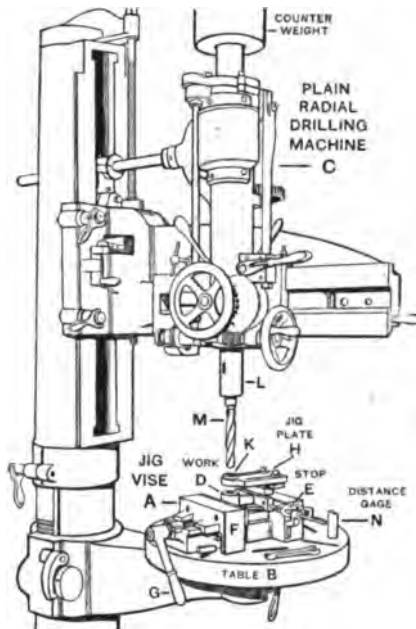


FIG. 7. — DRILLING WITH JIG VISE.

15. To drill and counterbore duplicate parts. — In Fig. 8, a multiple-spindle drilling machine is arranged to drill and spot face casting, as *A*, *A'* held by jig *B*. Insert drill *C* in spindle *D* and drill a hole until arrested by stop *E*. A smaller drill in spindle *F* finishes the hole as shown in section at *F'*. The jig is turned over and drill *G* used to drill the holes in lugs *H* and *H'* through bushings *K* and *K'*. Counterbore *L* is



fitted to spindle *M* for spot facing lugs *H* and *H'* for the screw or bolt heads. Fixture *N* of the jig is used to clamp the rod of the other half of the strap while it is being drilled.

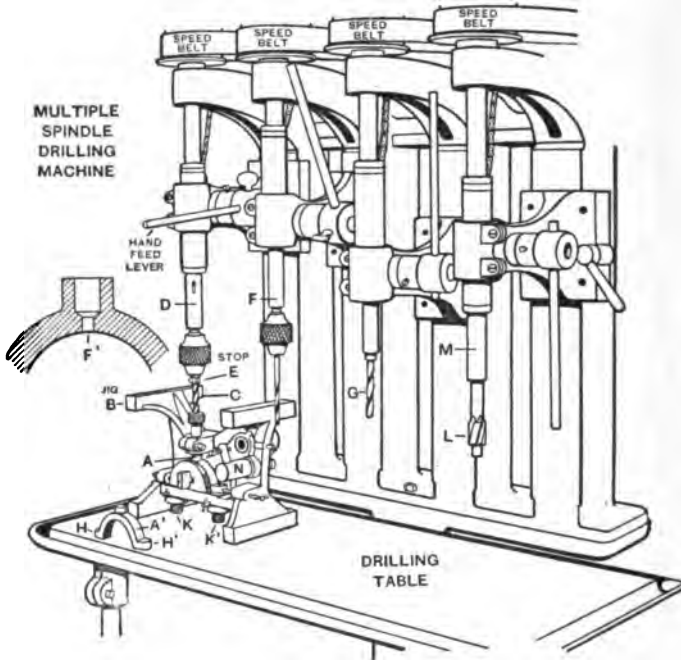


FIG. 8. — DRILLING AND COUNTERBORING DUPLICATE PARTS

#### BORING, BORING BARS AND BORING MACHINES

**16.** To bore a cylinder or holes in frame of machine where it is not practicable to use drill or boring tool, a boring bar and cutter is used.

**17.** Three types of boring bars are the fixed cutter, Fig. 9, traveling head, Figs. 11 and 12, and sliding bar, Figs. 15, 17.

**18.** Fixed cutter type of boring bar boring cylinder, Figs. 9, 10.

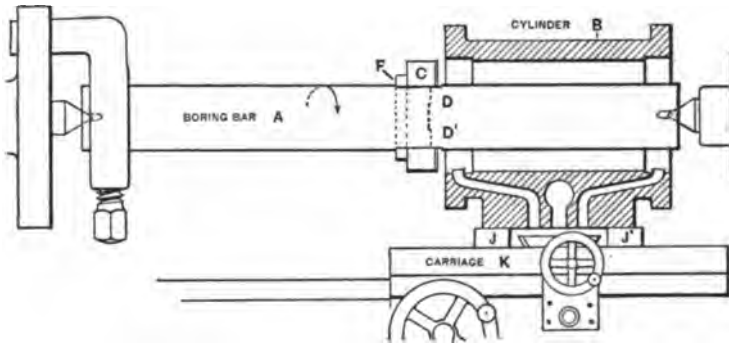


FIG. 9. — BORING CYLINDER WITH FIXED CUTTER BORING BAR IN ENGINE LATHE.

#### SCHEDULE OF PARTS

Boring bar *A* is mounted on centers of an engine lathe to bore

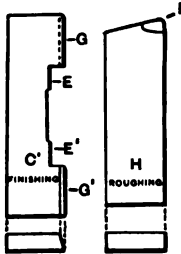


FIG. 10. — BORING BAR CUTTERS.

cylinder *B*. Double-end high-speed finishing cutter *C*, detail *C'*, Fig. 10, is used. Bar is filed at *D*, *D'*, Fig. 9, and cutter at *E*,

*E'*, Fig. 10, to set cutter true. Cutter is fastened by key *F*, turned on top and face, clearance filed as at *G*, *G'*, Fig. 10, hardened and tempered. The bore is first roughed out with double-end cutters to within  $\frac{1}{4}$ " or  $\frac{3}{8}$ " of size or with a single-end roughing cutter *H*, Fig. 10, cutting point at *I*.

Single-end cutters of high-speed steel, Fig. 13, of round stock, for roughing and finishing, fastened by set screw and adjustable, are often used. The cylinder is set on parallels *J*, *J'* and clamped to carriage *K*.

A suitable speed and feed are used.

*Information.* — Cylinders are set true with bar by using inside calipers to test work and bar at either end, or by fastening piece of wire in head in place of one of cutters and revolving bar, testing cylinder at both ends and adjusting. When set true, cylinder is securely fastened. The screws may be slacked slightly for finishing cut.

**19. Continous finishing cut.**—The machine should not be stopped during finishing cut as change in size of work by expansion and contraction caused by heat generated by cut, combined with spring of bar will make a ridge wherever cutter is stopped and a second cut may be necessary.

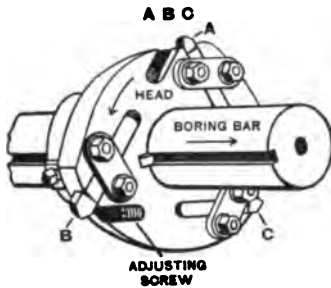


FIG. 11.—BORING HEAD WITH HIGH-SPEED STEEL CUTTERS.

**20. Boring heads.**—For holes too large for boring bar, boring heads of different sizes with adjustable multiple cutters A, B, C, Fig. 11, are used.

**21. Traveling head type boring bar boring cylinder, Figs. 12, 13.**

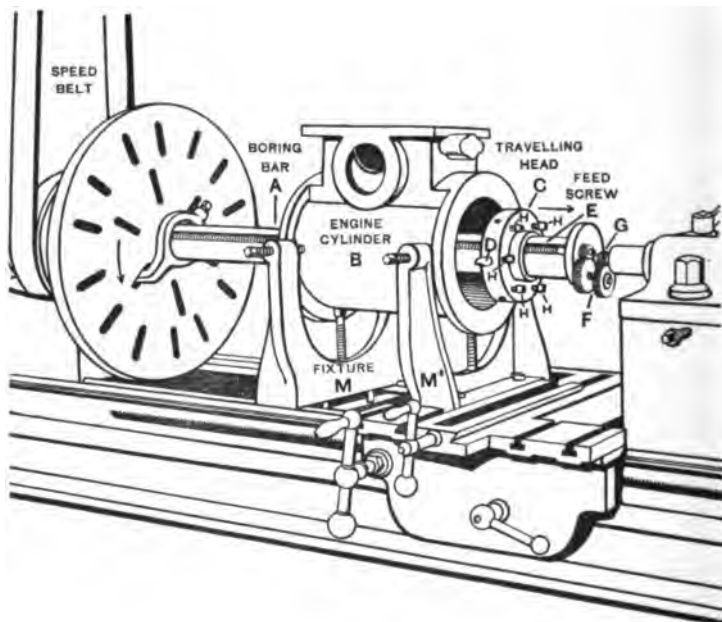


FIG. 12.—BORING ENGINE CYLINDER WITH TRAVELING HEAD BORING BAR IN ENGINE LATHE.

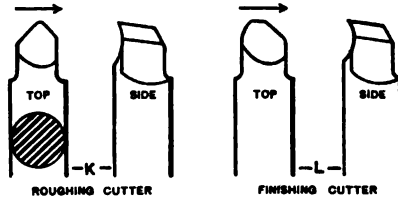


FIG. 13. — CUTTERS FOR TRAVELING-HEAD BORING BAR.

## SCHEDULE OF PARTS

Boring bar *A* is mounted on centers to bore cylinder *B*.

Traveling head *C* carries cutters as at *D*. Head is fed along bar by feed screw *E* operated by gears *F* meshing with stationary gear *G* fast to dead center.

Several cutters may be used, held by set screws *H*. Roughing and finishing cutters are shown at *K*, *L*, Fig. 13.

Special fixtures *M*, *M'* for holding cylinder, are bolted to lathe bed.

**22. Portable boring machines** are obtainable for use when it is more convenient to take machine to work; and for re-boring large cylinders, and work of that class, in place.

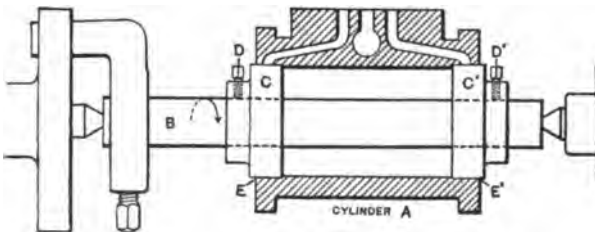


FIG. 14. — TO FACE AND TURN CYLINDER ENDS ON "BUILT-UP" MANDREL.

**23. Radial facing or turning ends of cylinders.**—After boring, small cylinders are sometimes placed on built-up mandrels mounted on lathe centers, as at *A*, Fig. 14, and the ends squared with lathe tools. Mandrel consists of shaft *B*, two large collars *C* and *C'* which are fastened by screws *D* and *D'*. Collars are turned slightly taper to fit counterbored portions *E* and *E'* of cylinder.

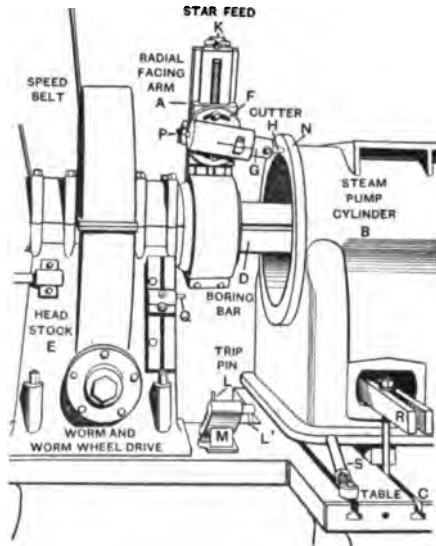


FIG. 15. — FACING LARGE CYLINDER.

A facing arm may be clamped upon an ordinary boring bar for facing cylinders.

A compound rest, or any slide that will carry a cutter, may be clamped to lathe face plate and operated by hand or star feed.

**24. Radial facing arm with star feed, Fig. 15.**

## SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS

Radial facing arm <i>A</i> is attached to nose of spindle of boring machine.	bored with sliding bar <i>D</i> , sliding in headstock spindle <i>E</i> .
Cylinder <i>B</i> clamped to table <i>C</i> is	Tool block <i>F</i> carries tool holder <i>G</i> and cutter <i>H</i> .

Feed is obtained by star wheel *K* striking pin *L* on bracket *M* at each revolution of radial facing arm. To feed in opposite direction, pin *L'* is used. To turn outside of flange, as at *N*, tool block is set parallel to bar, and feed obtained by wheel *P* and pin *Q*. Cylinder is clamped as at *R* and *S*.

As a time saver, a similar radial facing arm is sometimes used on opposite end and both ends faced and cylinder bored simultaneously.

25. Drilling, reaming and counterboring in horizontal boring machines, Fig. 16. Bracket casting *A*, is faced and

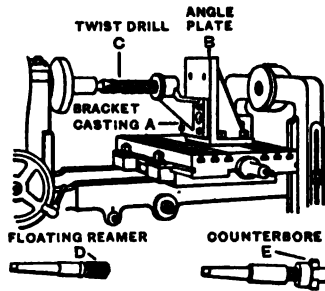


FIG. 16. — DRILLING, REAMING AND COUNTERBORING IN HORIZONTAL BORING MACHINE.

bolted to angle plate *B*. If casting *A* is solid, the hole is drilled with two-groove twist drill; if cored, with three- or four-groove twist drill *C*, reamed with floating reamer *D*, and faced to length with counterbore *E*. The floating reamer has side or floating movement and will produce a true hole.

## 26. Sliding bar type boring bar, Fig. 17.

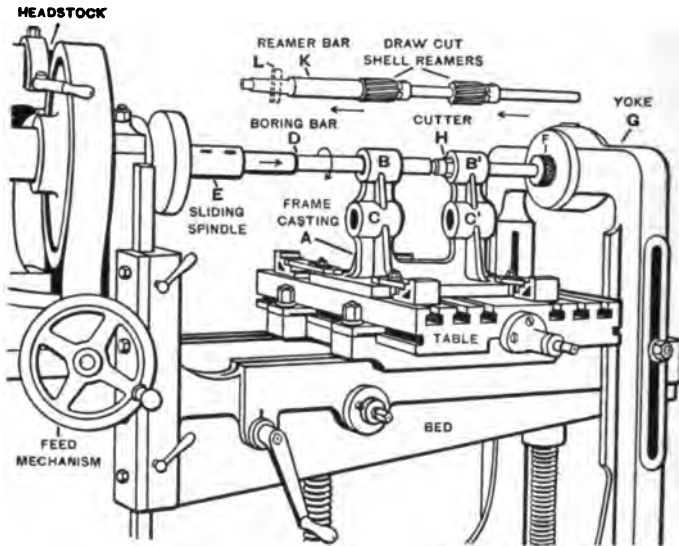


FIG. 17. — ALINEMENT AND PARALLEL BORING AND REAMING.  
HORIZONTAL BORING MACHINE.

## SCHEDULE OF PARTS

## Parallel Boring Alinement Boring and Reaming

Frame casting *A* is bolted to table of horizontal boring machine. Cored holes *B*, *B'* and *C*, *C'*, are bored and reamed parallel to each other.

Circles are described about holes. Boring bar *D* held in sliding spindle *E*, is supported in bushing *F'* in yoke *G*.

Holes are rough and finish bored with cutter *H*, and line-

reamed with shell reamers supported on bar *K*. Bar is held by key *L* and drawn in direction of arrows.

Holes *C*, *C'*, are bored and reamed exact distance from *B* and *B'* by raising bed required number of thousandths as indicated by dial graduated to read to one-thousandth of an inch.

## VERTICAL BORING AND REAMING

27. **Vertical drilling machines**, radial drilling machines and vertical boring mills are used for vertical boring and reaming holes in alinement in frames of machines, small cylinders, etc. Holes are cored nearly to size then bored with boring bars and reamed with special or shell reamers. The boring bar has taper shank to fit sliding spindle of machine, and lower end is straight to run in guide bushing fitted to hole in table or base. Work may be held in jigs, fixtures, or clamped to table or base of machine.

28. **Shell reamers** are hollow reamer heads fitted to an arbor. One arbor can be used for a number of sizes. They are obtainable to 5" diameter, fluted, rose and adjustable, with straight or spiral teeth, and are much used in chucking lathes, horizontal and vertical boring machines, boring mills, etc.

29. **Boring taper holes with boring bar**, Fig. 18.

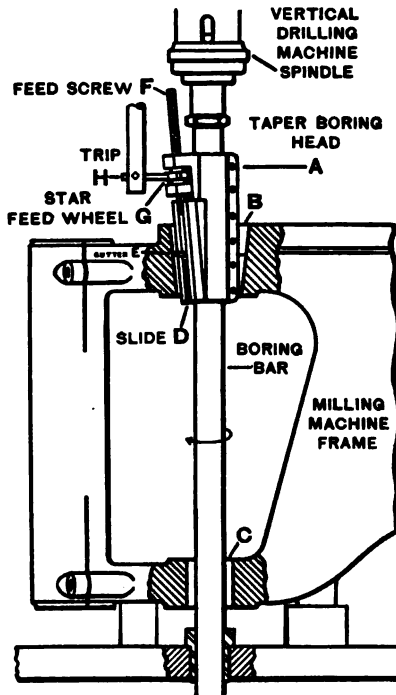


FIG. 18. — BORING TAPER HOLE.

## SCHEDULE OF PARTS

Taper hole in milling machine frame is bored with taper boring head A. Holes B and C are first bored straight. Hole B is then

step bored. Slide D carries cutter E, which is fed downward by star-feed mechanism F, G, H.



**30. Boring taper holes with boring bar in lathe.** — Large cored work may be bored taper by clamping to lathe carriage or in steady rest, and bored with traveling head boring bar. A special center is clamped to face plate a calculated distance from line of centers. Bar is mounted on special live center and dead center. One cutter is used. In principle this method is similar to taper boring head.

**31. Hand alinement reaming with shell reamer, Fig. 19.**

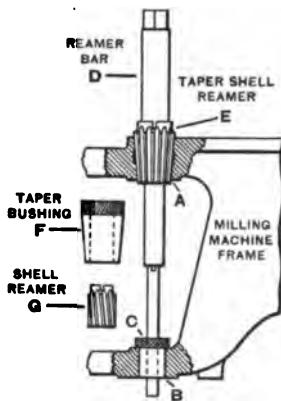


FIG. 19. — HAND ALINEMENT REAMING.

#### SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS

1.—Bore taper hole <i>A</i> and straight hole <i>B</i> in alinement.	reamer <i>E</i> then remove both <i>C</i> and <i>E</i> .
2.—Place bushing <i>C</i> in lower hole to aline reamer bar <i>D</i> .	4.—Place taper bushing <i>F</i> in hole <i>A</i> and reamer <i>G</i> on bar, and ream hole <i>B</i> .
3.—Ream taper hole <i>A</i> with	

**32. Power alinement reaming with jig, Fig. 20.**

#### SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS

1.—Place frame casting <i>A</i> in jig <i>B</i> and drill holes <i>C</i> and <i>C'</i> .	its driving collar <i>F</i> in position and adjust bushings <i>G</i> and <i>G'</i> to keep reamer bar in alinement.
2.—Bring reamer bar <i>D</i> and shell reamer <i>E</i> down part way.	4.—Ream both holes at once.
3.—Place shell reamer <i>E'</i> and	

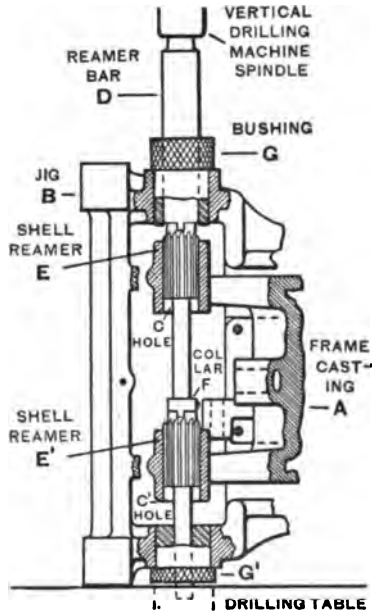


FIG. 20. — POWER ALINEMENT REAMING.

TAPER HOLES, TAPER REAMERS AND SPINDLE MAKING

33. Small taper holes are made by drilling a straight hole slightly smaller than diameter of small end, then reaming with roughing and finishing taper reamers. Large taper holes are made by boring and reaming, or boring without reaming.

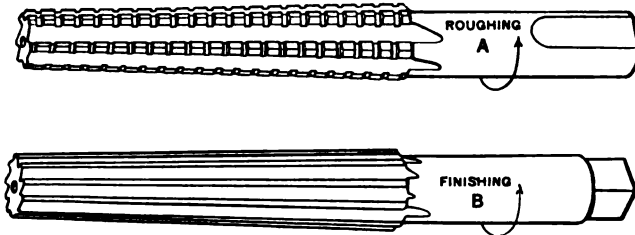


FIG. 21. — TAPER REAMERS.

34. Taper reamers *A* and *B*, Fig. 21, obtainable in Morse and Brown & Sharpe tapers and also in special tapers for spindles, sockets and collets. Fig. 22, is a stepped-roughing reamer for large holes.

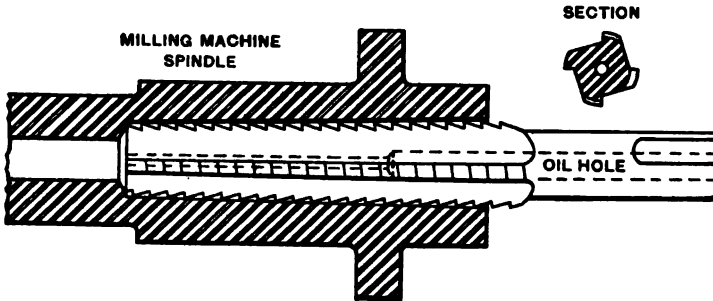


FIG. 22. — STEPPED ROUGHING TAPER REAMER.

35. Stepping work for taper holes. — Above 2" at small end, taper holes are stepped with drill or boring tools to remove stock, as in Fig. 23, or bored with taper boring head.

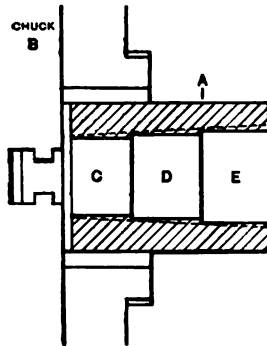


FIG. 23. — STEP-BORING FOR TAPER HOLES.

36. Boring taper holes. — Instead of stepping hole, it may be bored to required taper with taper attachment or compound rest and may or may not be reamed.

37. Taper plug and ring gages are used for standardizing taper holes and shanks, diameters and lengths. See Morse tapers, pp. 233, 234, Brown & Sharpe tapers, pp. 233, 235. Spindle *A*, Fig. 24, is reamed until line *B* of gage *C* is even with end.

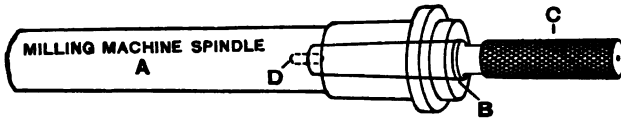


FIG. 24. — TAPER PLUG GAGE.

Shank 1, Fig. 25, of arbor 2, is filed or ground to fit gage 3 until end is even with end of gage at 4. The flat portion at 5 is the gage for milled tang. Line 6 gives reamer depth; line 7, plug depth. The gage is adjustable to compensate for wear.

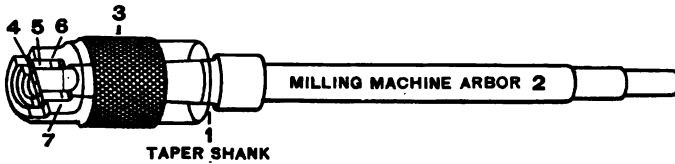


FIG. 25. — TAPER RING GAGE.

38. Stub mandrel *A*, Fig. 26, is used for spindles and drill sockets which have to be turned after taper hole is reamed. The body is accurately ground to fit taper hole in spindle *B*.

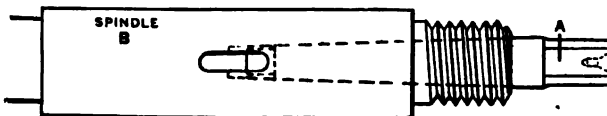


FIG. 26. — STUB MANDREL FOR TAPER WORK IN SPINDLE OR SOCKET.

## 39. To make small lathe spindle, Fig. 27.

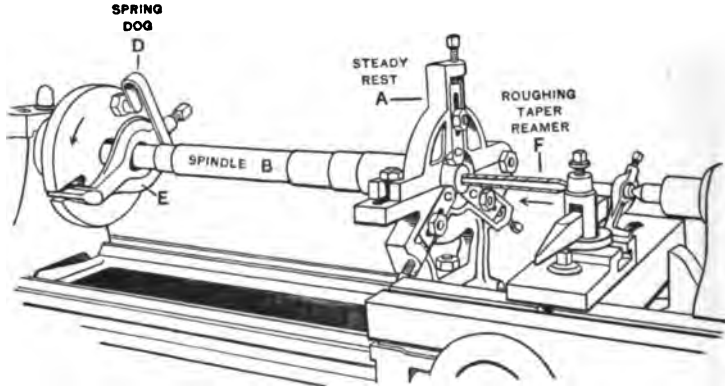


FIG. 27. — CHUCKING SPINDLE.

**Specifications:** Material, crucible steel spindle forging  $\frac{1}{8}$ " to  $\frac{1}{4}$ " large.

**Machines and tools:** Engine lathe, holder and cutter, calipers, rule, micrometer, steady rest, drills, roughing and finishing taper reamers, proof bar, test indicator, center scraper, stub mandrel, spring dog, threading tool, universal grinding machine.

## SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS

**I. Preparing blank.** Center, square to length, rough turn all diameters  $\frac{1}{8}$ " large, turn and file spot on nose-end of spindle for steady rest.

**II. Mounting in steady rest.** Clamp steady rest *A*, Fig. 27, to lathe bed. Mount spindle *B* on centers and adjust jaws *CCC* to face plate, fasten spring dog *D* to face plate and secure dog *E* (or tie dog to face plate with belt lacing) to hold spindle on live center. Move dead center away from work.

**III. Drilling and reaming hole.**

Drill hole in spindle *B* proper size, deeper than required depth of reamer hole, power ream with roughing taper reamer *F*. Hand ream taper hole carefully at vise with finishing reamer.

**IV. Testing truth of hole with proof bar and indicator.** Place tapered end of proof bar *H* in spindle and mount on centers, as in Fig. 28. Adjust feeler *K* of indicator to proof bar, rotate spindle by hand and determine error.

**V. Correcting error.** Remove spindle from lathe and scrape center hole on side where spindle is

most eccentric, with center scraper. Test again. Repeat process until error is less than .001".

**VI. Mount opposite end of spindle in steady rest.** Insert stub mandrel, as in Fig. 26, reverse spindle in lathe, turn and file spot on spindle near dead center for steady rest. Adjust steady rest to spot and secure work on live center.

**VII. Drill hole through spindle.** Drill hole through spindle to meet

hole in opposite end. Center and fit plug to hole.

**VIII. Test.** Again use proof bar. Mount on centers, test and correct as in V.

**IX. Finish bearings.** Place stub mandrel again in taper hole. Mount on centers, turn and grind all bearings, and thread nose of spindle.

*Attention.* — Solid spindles are slotted at end of taper hole to allow use of center key to force out arbor or center.

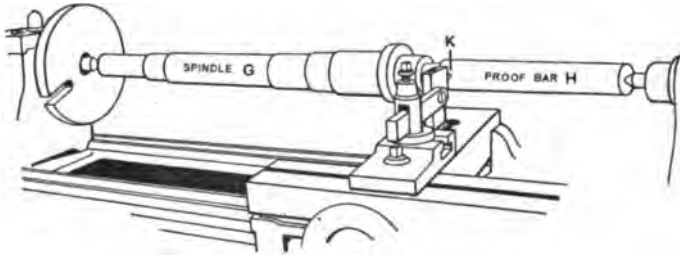


FIG. 28. — TESTING SPINDLE.

**40. To make large spindles,** first turn and fit all bearings, then mount in its own bearings and drill straight hole through it. Bore taper hole in end, either with taper attachment or compound rest, finish with hand reamer.

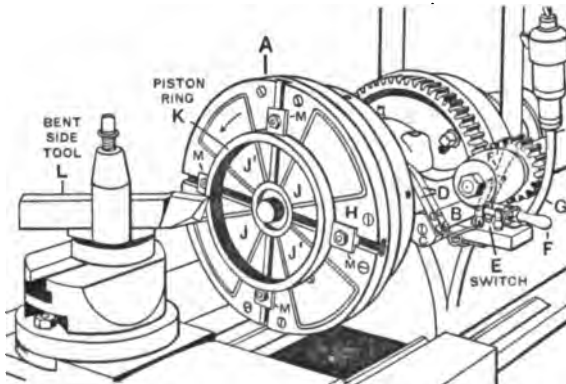


FIG. 29. — FACING PISTON RING. HELD WITH MAGNETIC CHUCK.

## MAGNETIC CHUCKS

**41. Magnetic chucks** are used to hold accurately by magnetic contact, thin work, iron or steel, to be finished, as disks, rings and parallels. These chucks are best adapted for surface and cylindrical grinding machines, but may be applied to any machine tool. See pp. 802-804.

**42. Lathe magnetic chuck**, Fig. 29, shows magnetic rotary chuck *A*, applied to an engine lathe. Projecting from back of chuck shell are two insulated brass rings (not shown) connected to terminals of electric coils, forming magnets within chuck. Bracket *B* is fastened to headstock of lathe and carries at one end fiber collars *C* and brushes *D*, which bear against contact rings. Bracket *B* is also fastened to switch *E* and is opened and closed by handle *F*. The switch is connected at one end to brushes and at other end to direct current supply wire *G*. (Not an alternating current.) The chuck is supplied with detachable face plate *H* made up of magnetically insulated segments *JJ* and *J'J'* which, when in place, form surfaces of opposite polarity. The contour of these segments or interlocking surfaces may be varied to suit different kinds of work.

In Fig. 29, edge of piston ring *K*, is being faced with tool *L*. The piston ring is turned inside and outside and finished on one side in usual way, then cut off a little oversize.

The finished side is held against magnetic chuck and handle *F* swung downward closing circuit, as in full lines, and the rough side faced smooth to size and perfectly parallel. To release ring, handle *F* is swung upward breaking circuit as dotted at *F*. To avoid slipping under heavy cut, stops, *M, M, M, M*, are placed against ring.

**43. Magnetic planer chuck.**—Fig. 30 is used to hold work to be finished in iron or steel by magnetic contact. It is adapted to thin work that cannot be accurately held by other methods.

Magnetic chuck *A* is clamped to planer table and arranged to hold pieces *B*. The pieces are separated about  $\frac{1}{8}$ " by non-magnetic material, as brass, wood or fiber, otherwise holding action will be weakened. The direct current is sup-

plied by wire *C*, and switch *D* is closed to grip work and opened to release it. Lamp *E* indicates whether current is on or off.

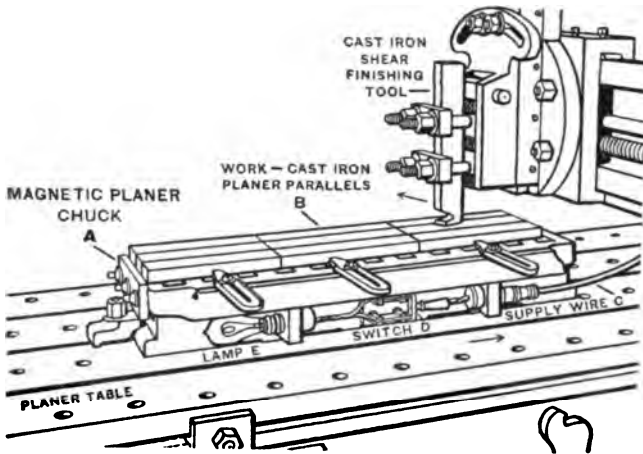


FIG. 30. — HOLDING PLANER WORK.

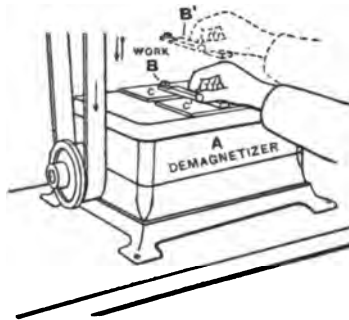


FIG. 31. — DEMAGNETIZING STEEL OR CAST IRON.

44. To demagnetize work, Fig. 31. — Hardened steel and, to some extent, cast iron, coming in contact with magnetic chucks, becomes permanently magnetized. To demagnetize work, start demagnetizer *A* (1200 R.P.M.) and place work *B* on plates *C*, *C'*. Then vibrate work upward 1" to 2" from plates as shown dotted at *B'*, and replace on plates. Repeat operation several times. Each time work is lifted out of magnetic influence, a portion of the magnetism is left behind.



**45. Electrical units.—**

**VOLT.** — The unit of electro-motive force, (E.M.F.) The force required to send one ampere of current through one ohm of resistance.

**AMPERE.** — The unit of current. The current which will pass through one ohm resistance when impelled by one volt. A milli-ampere = one-thousandth of an ampere.

**OHM.** — The unit of resistance. The resistance offered to the passage of one ampere when impelled by one volt. The megohm = one million ohms.

**WATT.** — The unit of power:

One ampere  $\times$  one volt = one watt.

Amperes  $\times$  volts = watts.

(Amperes)<sup>2</sup>  $\times$  ohms = watts.

(Volts)<sup>2</sup>  $\div$  ohms = watts.

746 watts = 1 horse power.

1000 watts = 1 kilo watt,  
approximately  $1\frac{1}{2}$  horse power.

**COULOMB.** — The quantity of current which impelled by one volt would pass through one ohm in one second.

**JOULE.** — The unit of work. The work done by one watt in one second.

*Information.* — In ordering electric motors, it is absolutely necessary to state *voltage* and whether current is *direct* or *alternating*, and if alternating, whether *one*, *two* or *three phase* and *number of cycles*.

**STEADY AND FOLLOWER RESTS**

**46. A steady rest, Fig. 32, is used to support a slender shaft to prevent vibration.**

**SCHEDULE OF PARTS**

A — Rest; two parts, — base and top.	F — Bolt, hinges top to base.
B — Base.	G — Clamp, fastens top to base.
C — Top, hinged to base.	H — Sliding jaws adjusted to spot J on shaft.
D — Clamp strap.	K <sub>1</sub> K <sub>2</sub> K <sub>3</sub> — Adjusting screws.
E — Bolt to clamp rest at any location, on ways of lathe.	L — Nuts to clamp jaws in position.

47. To turn spot on shaft, then adjust jaws to that spot and turn shaft, Fig. 32.

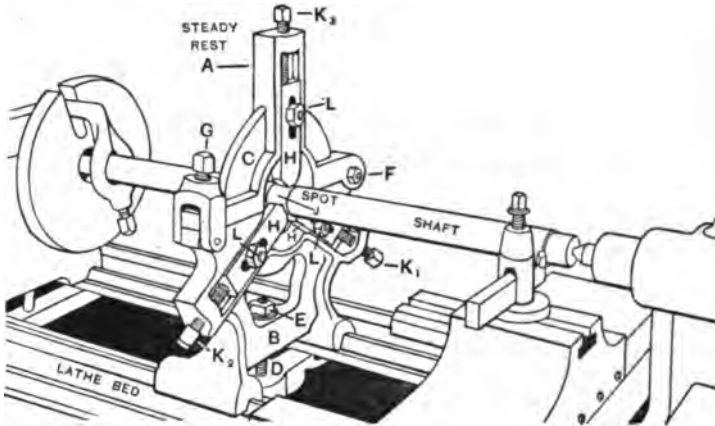


FIG. 32. — TURNING SLENDER SHAFT SUPPORTED BY A STEADY REST SET TO A TURNED SPOT.

### SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS

True live center Set dead center in accurate alinement

1. Center and straighten shaft, rough square, recenter, finish square.

2. Turn spot  $J \frac{1}{4}$ " to  $\frac{1}{2}$ " large and wider than jaws  $H$ , central or nearer live center, and file smooth.

3. Move jaws  $H$  back to clear shaft and swing top  $C$  backward. Mount and clamp rest opposite spot. Adjust jaws  $H$  by screws  $K_1$ , first, then  $K_2$  to touch shaft. Swing top  $C$  forward and clamp,

and adjust third jaw  $H$  by screw  $K_3$ . Clamp jaws by nuts  $L$  and oil spot  $J$ .

4. Turn one-half shaft, reverse shaft, adjust jaws to turned portion and turn rest of shaft, or spot the shaft in center and rough and finish both halves to spot by reversing shaft, then move rest along toward live center, readjust jaws and finish spot to size.

48. The cat head,  $M$ , Fig. 33, is used to hold slender shafts to be spotted as well as for steadying slender shafts to

be turned without spotting. It is also used to hold square, hexagonal, or work of irregular section to be turned, as valve stems that have one part square and the other round.

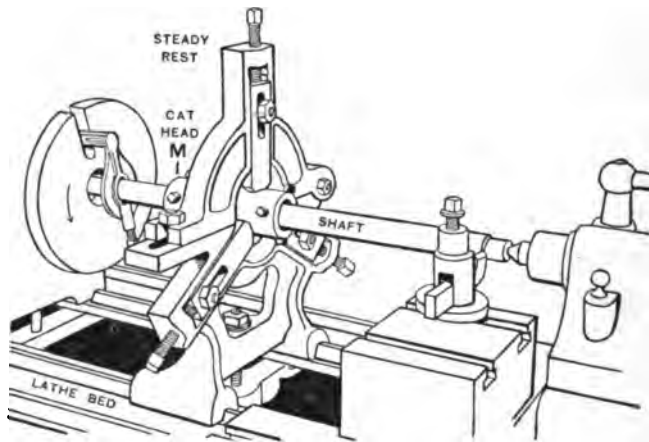


FIG. 33. — TURNING SLENDER SHAFT SUPPORTED BY A STEADY REST SET TO A CAT HEAD.

**49. To true cat head on shaft.** — Place it on shaft and true up accurately by adjusting screws. Test its truth by chalk, copper tool, or a test indicator. If the cat head is used in turning the second end of the shaft, it must be placed on the turned part and trued up as before. Usually the jaws of the steady rest are set directly on the shaft for the second half.

*Attention.* — Do not adjust jaws carelessly to cause the shaft to spring. If piece springs when outside skin is removed, straighten in a press, or if the shaft is slender, mount on centers and straighten. Use wooden jaws in steady rests for finished work.

**50. Follower (Traveling) rest, A, Fig. 34,** is used for turning shaft from end to end, and it is more convenient and produces more accurate work than a steady rest. The rest consists of two jaws and a frame bolted to carriage *B*. A spot of the desired diameter is turned at end *C* of shaft *D*, and the jaws

*E* and *E'* are adjusted to it. The tool must be slightly in advance of the jaws, which should be well lubricated where

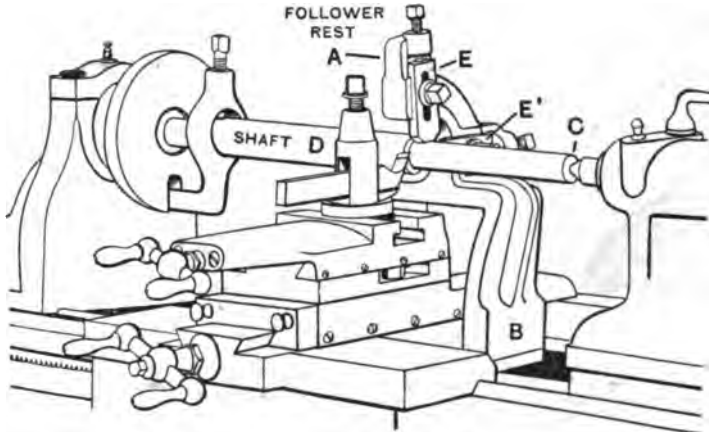


FIG. 34. — TURNING SLENDER SHAFT SUPPORTED BY A FOLLOWER REST.

they bear on the work. One-half of shaft is turned, then it is reversed and the second half turned. For more effective support, use bushings to suit different diameters of shafts in place of jaws. When cutting Square or  $29^\circ$  threads on slender pieces a follower rest is necessary to support the work.

#### ECCENTRIC TURNING

**51. Eccentric turning.** — Besides ordinary straight and taper turning, in which there is only a single axis and a single pair of centers, there is another class of turning, known as eccentric or offset turning, in which there is more than one axis and consequently more than one pair of centers. See Eccentric Shaft, Fig. 35, Engine Eccentric, Fig. 38, and crankshaft, Fig. 41.

Crankshafts are made with one or more cranks and may have solid eccentrics as well. Small crankshafts, in the rough, may be obtained drop-forged of machine steel, cut from steel slabs or in steel castings. The larger sizes come partly machined after being forged under the steam hammer. Crankshafts are also built up by autogenous welding.

## 52. To make eccentric shaft, Fig. 35.

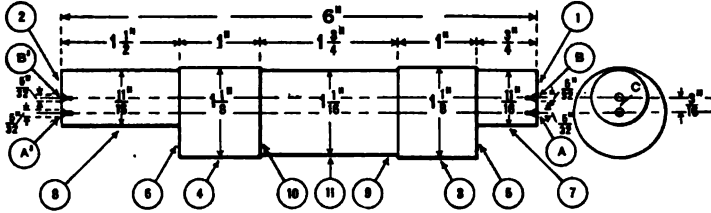


FIG. 35.—SCHEDULE DRAWING.

**Specifications:** Material, machine steel  $\frac{1}{8}$ " to  $\frac{1}{2}$ " large; weight, 1 lb. 15 oz. Hardness, 14 to 16 (scleroscope).

High-speed steel, or stellite cutting tools.

**Time:** Study drawing and schedule in advance, 6 min. — Oil lathe, 4 min. — All squaring, turning, and filing on concentric centers  $A, A'$ , 40 min. — Making eccentric centers, 18 min. — All turning, squaring, and filing on concentric centers  $B, B'$ , 39 min. — Clean lathe, 3 min. — Total, 1 h. 50 min.

## SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS, MACHINES AND TOOLS

OPERATIONS.	MACHINES, FEEDS, SPEEDS	TOOLS.
Center ( $A$ ), ( $A'$ ), $\frac{5}{8}$ ". See that live center is true and dead center in approximate alinement.	Engine lathe, 12" to 16".	
Rough square (1), (2).	3d or 4th speed, or 50 F.P.M. Hand feed.	Dog, holder and cutter 35° rake, calipers, rule.
Recenter ( $A$ ), ( $A'$ ), $\frac{5}{8}$ ". Finish square to length, (1), (2).		
Rough turn to $1\frac{1}{4}$ " + $\frac{1}{8}$ ", (3), (4), one or two cuts. Turn half-way, reverse and turn other half.	2d or 3d speed, or 60 F.P.M. Coarse power feed — 40 to 1".	Holder and cutter 35° rake, calipers, rule.
Make eccentric centers $B, B'$ , then Test and correct throw.		

Lay out eccentric centers  $B, B'$ , distance at  $C$ , as follows: Clamp pointed tool in tool post at height of centers. Mount shaft on centers without dog, and make short lines at each end in same plane as at (1) and (2), Fig. 36. Draw lines on each end as at  $D$ , with pointed tool or center square and scriber. Slant pointed tool to the left with point  $\frac{3}{8}$ " (half the required throw of eccentric) from lathe center, and draw lines at both ends intersecting radial lines as at  $E$ . Make center punch marks at these intersections, and drill and countersink  $\frac{1}{8}$ " small.

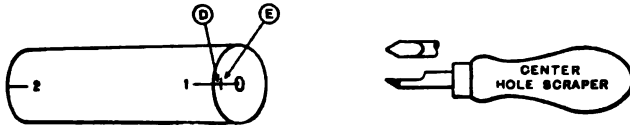


FIG. 36. — ECCENTRIC SHAFT BLANK. FIG. 37. — CENTER HOLE SCRAPER.

**Test and correct throw.**—Mount in lathe on eccentric centers *B, B'*, Fig. 35, and measure throw between lathe tool and work with rule and inside calipers. Correct throw to  $\frac{3}{16}$ " at both ends by scraping over countersinks with center scraper, Fig. 37. Test also with indicator, p. 1210, and make throw same at both ends. Countersink to  $\frac{3}{16}$ ", test and scrape again, if necessary. Limit of error permissible .001".

Draw lines on concentric side of shaft (6), (6), for length of reduced parts. (Fig. 35.)	Vise, copper jaws.	Copper sulphate, rule, scriber.
Rough turn reduced parts (7), (8), five or six cuts each.	2d or 3d speed, or 50 F.P.M. Medium power feed — 80 to 1".	Holder and cutter 35° rake, calipers, rule.
Rough square shoulders to within $\frac{1}{4}$ " of lines (6), (6).	2d or 3d speed, or 50 F.P.M. Hand feed.	Holder and cutter 35° rake, rule.
Finish turn ends (7), (8), one cut.	3d speed, or 70 F.P.M. Fine power feed — 140 to 1".	Holder and cutter 35° rake, calipers, rule.
Finish square shoulder to lines (6), (6). Change to centers <i>A, A'</i> .	Hand feed.	Holder and cutter 35° rake.
Finish turn (3), (4) to 1½", one cut.	Fine feed — 140 to 1".	Holder and cutter 35° rake, caliper, rule.
Draw lines (9), (10).		Copper sulphate, rule, scriber.
Rough turn to 1½", (11), one cut.	Engine lathe, 3d speed, or 50 F.P.M. Medium power feed — 80 to 1".	Holder and cutter 35° rake, calipers, rule.
File (3), (4), (7), (8), to remove tool marks.	4th speed, or speed lathe, 2d or 3d speed.	8" or 10" mill-bastard file, file card.

**Information.**—If desired, parts (3), (4), (7), (8) may be fitted to standard holes the same as a back gear eccentric shaft by filing or grinding.

**Attention.**—To save time in making a number of eccentric shafts, make a jig to drill and countersink ends or use eccentric fixtures. See p. 632.

## 53. To turn engine eccentric, Fig. 38.

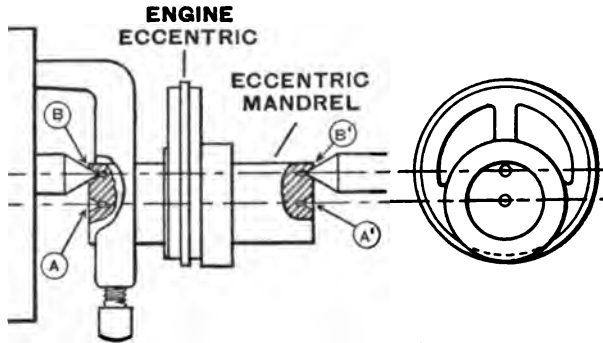


FIG. 38. — TURNING AN ENGINE ECCENTRIC.

## SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS

1. Make eccentric mandrel Fig. 38, of required throw by method, pp. 630, 631.

2. Chuck, ream, and push eccentric casting lightly onto mandrel. Mount in lathe and rap eccentric until it runs true. Take from lathe and press mandrel hard. On large eccentrics, set screws are used to fasten eccentric to mandrel. Do all facing operations and turning of

hubs on regular centers  $AA'$ , and all eccentric diameters on eccentric centers  $BB'$ .

*Attention.* — When eccentric centers lie outside shaft, eccentric may be turned on disk, carrying split stud with expanding screw, the whole being bolted to face plate of lathe in position to give desired throw. Some prefer this fixture to an eccentric mandrel.

54. Crankshaft turning, Fig. 41. — The centers or axes lie outside of the shaft, so that fixtures, arms or flanges, carrying the centers must be provided.

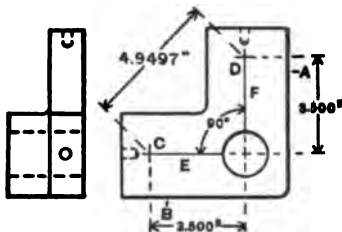


FIG. 39. — LAYING OUT A CENTER FIXTURE FOR A TWO-THROW 90° ENGINE CRANKSHAFT.

55. To lay out two-throw 90° crankshaft center fixtures, Fig. 39.

## SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS

1. In two fixture castings chuck and ream holes to next regular diameter larger than required diameter of ends of crankshaft, mount on mandrel and square arms and hub. Plane

edges *AB*, at right angles and an equal distance from hole.

2. Set pointed tool  $3\frac{1}{2}$ " from point of dead center and describe arcs *CD*. If fixtures are not planed, points *CD* are obtained as follows:

Center punch point on *C*, in middle casting on the arc. Set dividers 4.9497" the hypotenuse of right triangle whose base is  $3\frac{1}{2}$ ", using the one-hundredth graduation of the rule, and with *C* as center intersect arc at *D*. Distance *CD*, may be obtained by the following rule: Find the square root of the sum of the squares of the two throws.

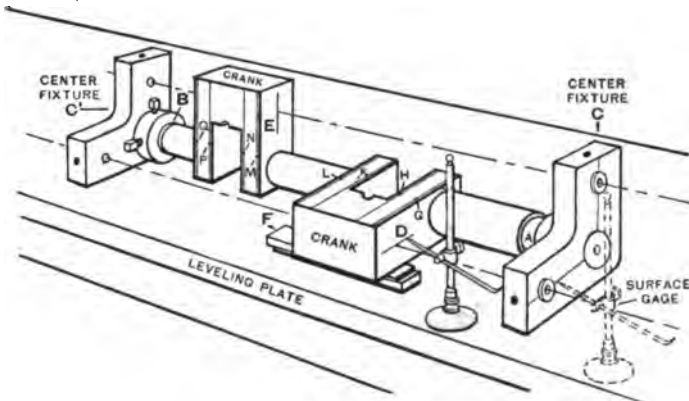
*Example:*  $\sqrt{3\frac{1}{2}^2 + 3\frac{1}{2}^2} =$

4.9497, answer. Lines *EF*, on each fixture are used to aline cranks with fixtures when sides of fixtures are not 90°.

*Attention.* — If only one crankshaft is to be turned, the fixture may be drilled and countersunk in casting. For a number of crankshafts, chuck large holes and drive in hardened and ground steel plugs carrying large center holes.

To make these holes in correct location, clamp fixtures to face plate of lathe with marks *C* and *D*, in axis of rotation as tested with axis indicator (see Lathe Axis Indicator, 1213), then drill and bore to size.

**56. To aline center fixtures and lay out cranks, Fig. 40.**



**FIG. 40. — LAYING OUT TWO-THROW 90° ENGINE CRANKSHAFT AND ALINING CRANKS WITH CENTER FIXTURES.**

**SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS**

Adjust fixtures, center and square shaft in relation to crank webs.

Turn *AB* to fit center fixtures *CC'*.  
Mount fixtures and adjust



centers of cranks *D* and *E* to align with centers of fixtures by wedges *F* and test with surface gage. Lay out crank web by lines and center punch at *G*, *H*, *K*, *L*, *M*, *N*, *P*, *Q*.

Mount in lathe on one pair of crank centers and revolve; regular centers are horizontally opposite. Test top of turned ends with surface gage.

57. To turn crankshaft, Fig. 41.

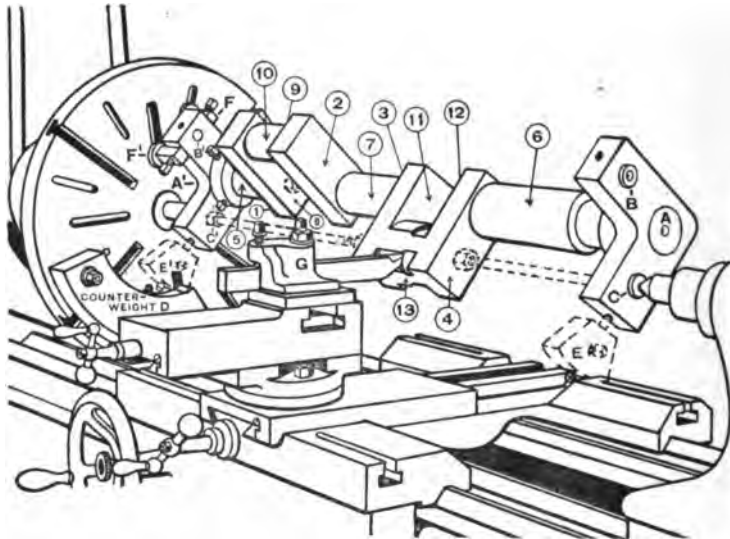


FIG. 41. — TURNING A TWO-THROW 90° ENGINE CRANKSHAFT. SCHEDULE DRAWING.

SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS

Rough turn blank. Mount upon regular centers *AA'*, Fig. 41. Rough square faces of webs 1, 2, 3, 4, and rough turn shaft 5, 6, and 7.

Change to crank centers *BB'*. Rough square and turn 8, 9, and 10.

Change to crank centers *CC'* and rough square and turn 11, 12, 13.

Counterbalance crank fixtures by using weight *D*, or preferably by adjustable weights *EE'*.

Use driver *FF'* with piece of leather to reduce jar.

Season crankshaft between roughing and finishing, if time will permit.

*Finish square and turn in reverse order.*

It is best to spot 7 and use steady rest for finishing. For slender crankshafts use jack or braces as shown by dotted lines. European tool post *G* is preferred to a single tool post. Mill or plane edges of webs.

*Attention.* — Crankshaft lathes are obtainable. Automobile and motorboat crankshafts may be rough turned, then ground, or ground direct from drop forgings or steel castings.

## NURLING

**58. Hand and machine nurling or milling tools, Figs. 42 and 43,** are used to check or mill surfaces of nuts, screw heads, handles, knobs, etc., to increase the grip and facilitate rotation. These indentations are similar to those on the edges of silver and gold coins to detect the removal of metal and called milled edges.

**59. Hand nurling.** Fig. 42. — Thumb nuts and screw heads are often nurlled with single nurl wheel *A* and holder *B*, Fig. 42. Oil work and nurl.

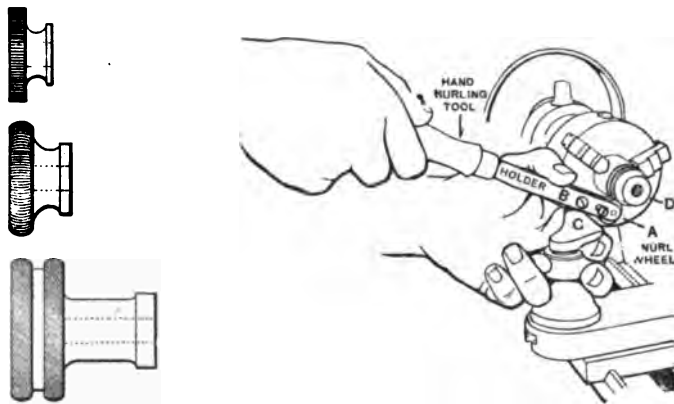


FIG. 42. — HAND NURLING IN SPEED LATHE.

## SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS

Speed for hand nurling brass,  
300 F.P.M.

Speed for hand nurling steel,  
200 F.P.M.

Place holder on rest *C* which should be firmly clamped, and place wheel under thumb nut *D*. Press down firmly with right hand, at same time steadying tool with the left, until desired effect is produced.

*Information.* — Hand nurls are obtainable in a variety of patterns for thumb nuts and screw heads, as shown in Fig. 42.

*Attention.* — Use fine nurls on steel.

## 60. Machine nurling, Fig. 43.

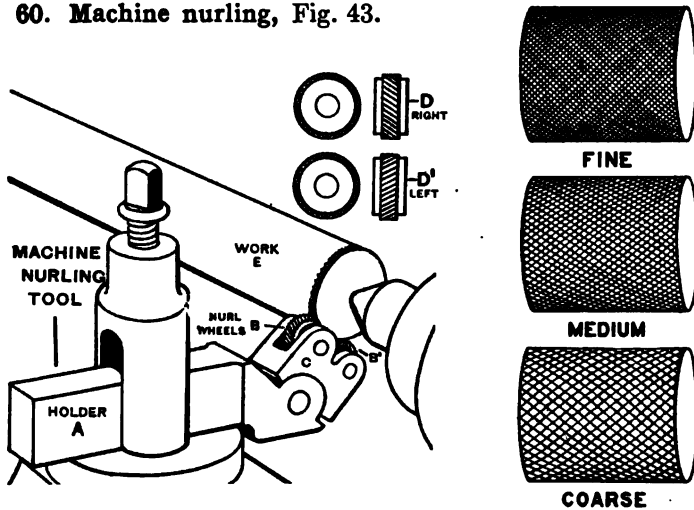


FIG. 43. — MACHINE NURLING IN ENGINE LATHE.

## SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS

Speed for machine nurling iron and steel, 40 F.P.M.

Feed for nurling, medium power feed, 80 to 1".

Nurling tool, Fig. 43, consists of holder *A* and two hardened steel nurling wheels *B*, *B'*, mounted in head *C*, connected with holder by rocking joint. Nurls have opposed helical teeth as at *D*, *D'*. Holder is fastened at right angles to work *E*, and adjusted to have both wheels bear equally on work.

Use power feed. Oil work and nurls. Start lathe. Force nurls with cross feed screw hard against work, preferably with half width of nurls. Stop lathe, and if pitch of checking on work is same as nurls, reduce pressure and throw in power long feed to travel back and forth over surface until projections come nearly to a point.

*Attention.* — To prevent machine nurls from cutting double set of projections twice as fine as the nurls and spoiling the work, press nurls hard at start and move carriage slightly to left and right by hand until desired effect is produced, then partially relieve pressure before starting power feed, to avoid undue wear on centers and center holes. A slow but sure process is to press nurls hard on work and pull belt forward and backward by hand until nurling is reproduced all around work, then start machine and use power feed.

*Note.* — Nurls for machine work are obtainable for fine, medium, and coarse pitches as shown in Fig. 43. Medium is most used.

# ADVANCED MACHINE WORK

## SECTION 7

### CYLINDRICAL GRINDING (EXTERNAL) INTERNAL GRINDING

**Cylindrical Grinding. Grinding on Two Dead Centers. Universal Grinding Machines. Grinding Wheels. Problems in Cylindrical Grinding. Internal Grinding.**

#### CYLINDRICAL GRINDING

1. **Machine grinding** is a scientific method of producing cylindrical, conical, and plane surfaces accurately, rapidly, and economically, with automatic grinding machinery; also of duplicating parts.

Almost any material, as hardened and soft steel, wrought iron, cast iron, brass, copper, aluminum, vulcanite, and wood fiber, may be ground accurately. Grinding machines are not designed to remove a large amount of stock but to produce accurate dimensions on work that has been rough turned.

#### GRINDING ON TWO DEAD CENTERS

2. **The principle of grinding on two dead centers.**— Ground work is more accurate than turned work. This accuracy is obtained by grinding the work on two dead centers as in Fig. 1, which eliminates the error caused by wear of spindle bearings. The wear of dead centers is readily corrected by grinding the centers, but the wear of spindle bearings cannot be readily corrected.

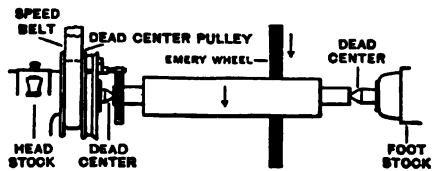


FIG. 1. — ACCURACY OBTAINED BY GRINDING ON TWO DEAD CENTERS.

Machine grinding is also used for finishing as a substitute for polishing as it is more economical than using files and emery cloth.

## UNIVERSAL GRINDING MACHINES

3. Grinding machines may be divided into four general classes: Universal grinding machines for general work; plain grinding machines for outside work only; cutter grinding machines for grinding cutters and similar work; and surface grinding machines for surface grinding only.

Special grinding machines are designed for special purposes, as internal grinding machines, piston grinding machines, and crank grinding machines to rough as well as to finish automobile crank shafts without rough turning.

4. Universal grinding machine, Fig. 2, like the engine lathe, is designed for general work, as straight and taper grinding, both external and internal, facing sides of disks, grinding clearances on cutters, reamers, etc.

## SCHEDULE OF PARTS

COUNTERSHAFT DRIVE.	BELT FEED.
<p><b>5. Machine Parts.</b>  <i>A</i> — Base, contains locker for small parts.  <i>B</i> — Bed, contains feed and reversing, mechanism.  <i>C</i> — Table.  <i>C'</i> — Swivel table.  <i>D</i> — Swivel headstock (90°), position adjustable.  <i>E</i> and <i>E'</i> — Dead centers.  <i>F</i> and <i>F'</i> — Dead center pulleys; large or small may be used.  <i>G</i> — Live spindle pulley.  <i>H</i> — Stop for live spindle pulley.  <i>J</i> — Footstock, position adjustable.  <i>K</i> — Lever to spring dead center "in" or "out."  <i>L</i> — Grinding wheel, head mounted on swivel slide and adjustable "forward" or "backward;" it can also be fed by hand to grind steep tapers.  <i>M</i> — Grinding wheel.</p>	<p><i>N</i> — Water supply pipe.  <i>P</i> — Belt to drive work.  <i>Q</i> — Belt to drive grinding wheel.  <i>R</i> — Belt to drive feed cone.  <i>S</i> — Belt to drive pump.</p> <p><b>6. Countershaft Parts.</b>  I. Line shaft.  II. Tight and loose pulley mechanism controlled by shipper.  III. Belt to drive sleeve carrying feed cone.  IV. Belt to drive work drum.  V. Work drum.  VI. Clutch operated by shipper brake.  VII. Belt to drive grinding wheel drum.  VIII. Grinding wheel drum.  IX. Belt to drive dead center pulley <i>F</i> to give higher speed.  X. Belt to drive live spindle pulley <i>G</i>.</p>

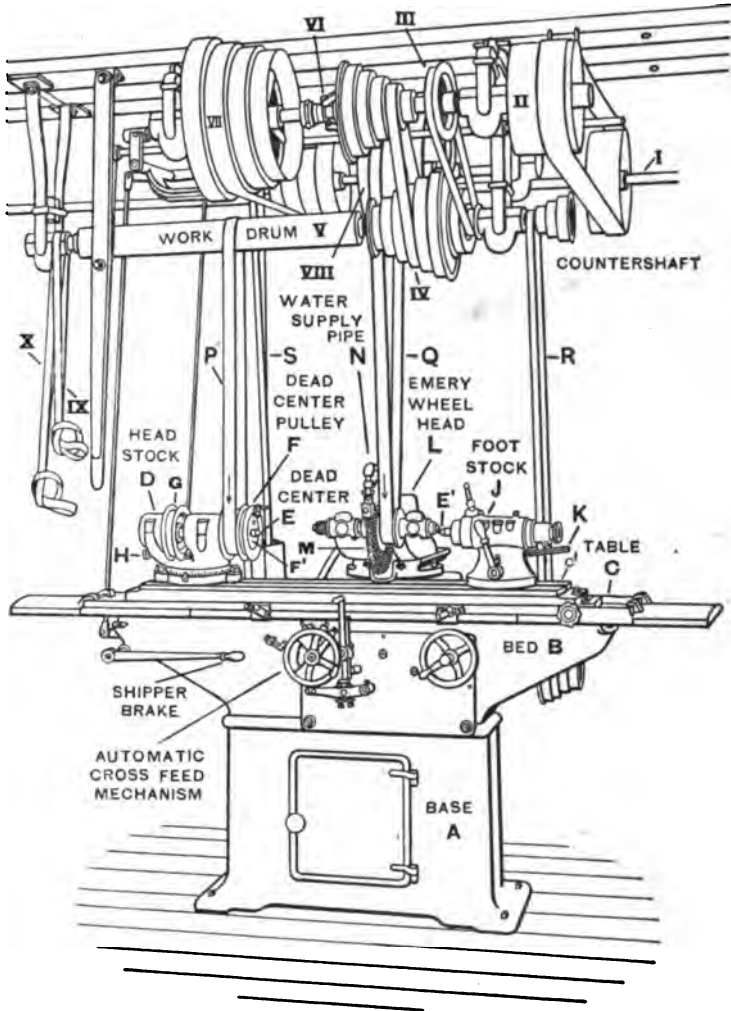


FIG. 2. — UNIVERSAL GRINDING MACHINE.

## GRINDING WHEELS

7. **Grinding wheels**, Chart, Fig. 3, are made from various abrasives, — emery, corundum, alundum, aloxite, carborundum, crystolon, carbolite. The abrasive is mixed with a bond, the amount and composition of which makes a wheel hard or soft and determines its grade or degree of hardness.

They are molded, baked, turned, balanced, and tested for hardness and speed.

The number of a wheel is determined by the number of meshes per linear inch of the sieve through which the abrasive has passed, and for grinding wheels runs from No. 12 to No. 120. Lower numbers indicate coarser wheels and higher numbers finer wheels. See *Principles of Machine Work*.

**8. Coarseness.****Grade of Hardness.**

Coarseness determined by No. of abrasive.	Hardness determined by bond binding grains of abrasive together.
--	--

**Processes.**

Vitrified.	Tanite.
Silicate.	Vulcanite.
Elastic.	Celluloid.

Each process is best adapted to certain *classes* of grinding, yet each may be used for *general* grinding.

9. **Vitrified wheels**, reddish brown in appearance, are made by mixing the abrasive with a bond of clay, sand, spar, etc., they are then molded into shape, placed in ovens similar to pottery kilns and subjected to a prolonged and intense heat (3000° F.). These wheels are even in texture, open and porous. They are especially adapted to grinding hardened steel, as they will not glaze easily and are thus cool-cutting. Wheels made by this process are used for general work and for cylindrical and cutter grinding. See Table of Grades, p. 707.

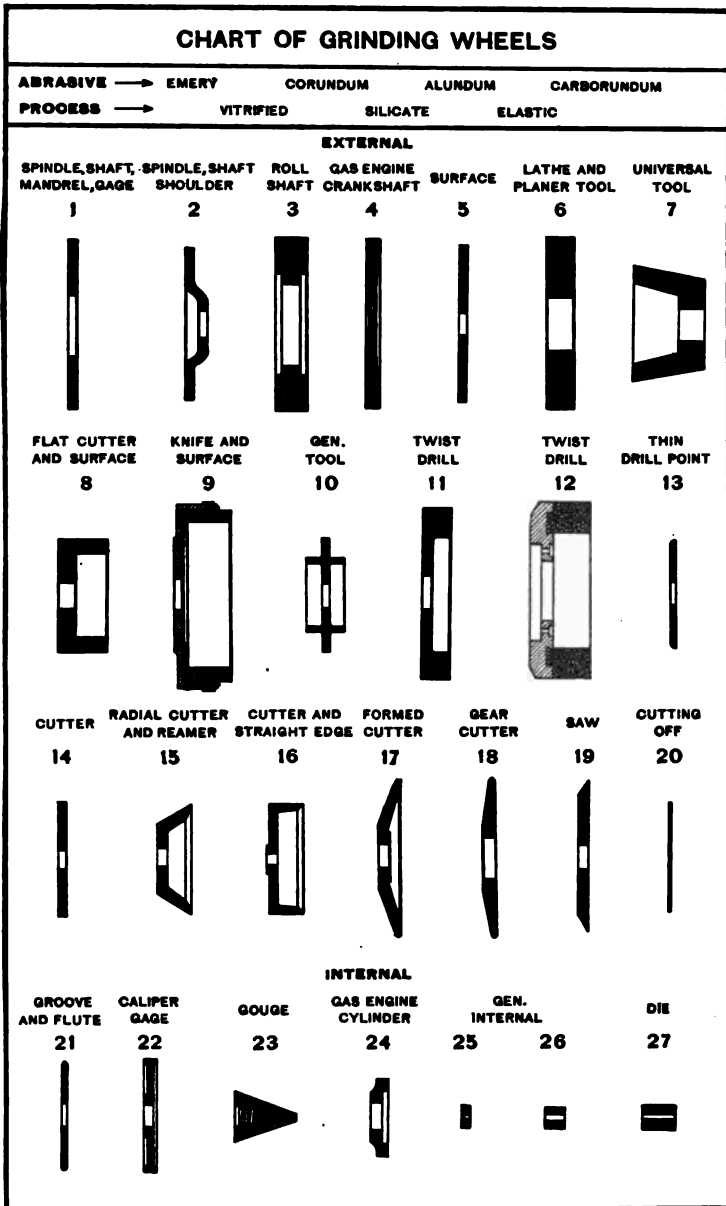


Fig. 3



**10. Silicate wheels**, light gray in appearance, are made by mixing the abrasive with a bond of silicate of soda, and then subjecting to a low heat (300° to 400° F.). These wheels are made porous or dense, as desired, are even in hardness and have unusual strength. They are adapted for wet tool grinding and general purposes. All wheels above 30" in diameter are made by this process. See Table of Grades, p. 707.

**11. Elastic wheels**, black in appearance, are made by mixing the abrasive with a bond of shellac, etc.; and then subjecting to a low heat (300° to 400° F.). These wheels are not brittle, and can be made as thin as  $\frac{1}{16}$ ". They are used for grinding arbors, cutters, reamers for saw gumming, and for cutting off small stock, such as thin steel tubing, wire, etc., also for grinding in narrow openings. See Table of Grades, p. 707.

**12. Tanite wheels** are made by mixing the abrasive with tanite (a chemical and mechanical transformation of leather) and then subjecting to heat under hydraulic pressure. They are used for general grinding in a similar manner to silicate wheels.

**13. Vulcanite wheels** are made by mixing the abrasive with a bond of rubber and sulphur, and subjecting to a low heat (225° F.). These wheels are not brittle and have a high factor of safety. They are used for special work.

**14. Celluloid wheels**, brown in appearance, are made by mixing the abrasive with celluloid; both are subjected to a low heat (250° F.).

**15. Combination wheels** are made by mixing several numbers of the abrasive together in the formation of the wheel. Three numbers are generally used for this purpose, as 24, 36, 46,—the coarsest grade is used for fast cutting and the finest grade is used for a smooth finish. The addition of a small amount of fine abrasive to a coarse wheel will produce wheel of great durability.

16. Table of Grades of Wheels Made by Different Processes

	VITRIFIED PROCESS.	SILICATE PROCESS.	ELASTIC PROCESS.
Very soft...	E	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{2}$ E
	F	1	1 E
	G	$1\frac{1}{2}$	$1\frac{1}{2}$ E
	H	$1\frac{3}{4}$	$1\frac{3}{4}$ E
Soft.....	I	$1\frac{3}{4}$	$1\frac{3}{4}$ E
	J	2	2 E
	K	$2\frac{1}{2}$	$2\frac{1}{2}$ E
	L	$2\frac{3}{4}$	$2\frac{3}{4}$ E
Medium....	M	3	3 E
	N	$3\frac{1}{2}$	$3\frac{1}{2}$ E
	O	4	4 E
	P	$4\frac{1}{2}$	$4\frac{1}{2}$ E
Hard.....	Q	5	5 E
	R	$5\frac{1}{2}$	$5\frac{1}{2}$ E
	S	6	6 E
	T	$6\frac{1}{2}$	$6\frac{1}{2}$ E
Very hard..	U	7	7 E

*Attention.* — The grade of a grinding wheel is more important than the number of the abrasive. The number influences the grade to a slight extent, a fine wheel, as No. 90, grade M, is slightly harder than a coarse wheel same grade as No. 60, grade M.

17. Shapes of wheels. — Plain disk wheels are used for straight and taper work, and plain and cup wheels for surface grinding.

Cup, bevel, and disk wheels are used for grinding drills, cutters, and for grinding to shoulder. Small wheels are used for internal grinding. See Chart of Grinding Wheels, Fig. 3.

18. Selection of wheel depends on hardness of material and nature of work. In general, use a hard wheel for rough grinding and a medium or soft wheel for accurate grinding and fine finish. If a wheel is too hard, it will glaze quickly and heat the work; if too soft, it will wear rapidly and prevent accurate grinding. A coarse wheel is less liable to heat than a fine wheel, as the latter is apt to glaze. A perfect wheel is one with a bond that will release the grains before glazing takes place, and hard enough to take a series of cuts without

changing its shape or diameter, as accurate grinding depends upon the sizing power of wheel.

19. To mount wheels. — Place rubber or blotting-paper washers between wheels and flanges, and clamp. Wheels should fit easily on arbors. Some are bushed with soft metal to fit standard shafting and will run fairly true. Wheels to be interchangeable without truing are provided with individual taper bushings. Small wheels for internal grinding have counterbore depressions for fillister head screws.

20. The periphery speed for wheels should be approximately from 5000 to 6500 feet per minute (F.P.M.). A higher speed may cause the wheel to break. Should a wheel heat or glaze, run it slower. If it is too soft, it can often be made to hold its size by using a higher speed.

TABLE OF SPEEDS FOR GRINDING WHEELS

The table given below designates number of revolutions per minute for specified diameters of wheels, to cause them to run at the respective periphery rates of 4000, 5000, and 6000 feet per minute.

DIAM. WHEEL.	REVOLUTIONS PER MINUTE FOR SURFACE SPEED OF 4000 Ft.	REVOLUTIONS PER MINUTE FOR SURFACE SPEED OF 5000 Ft.	REVOLUTIONS PER MINUTE FOR SURFACE SPEED OF 6000 Ft.
1 inch.	15,279	19,099	22,918
2 "	7,639	9,549	11,459
3 "	5,093	6,366	7,639
4 "	3,820	4,775	5,730
5 "	3,056	3,820	4,584
6 "	2,546	3,183	3,820
7 "	2,183	2,728	3,274
8 "	1,910	2,387	2,865
10 "	1,528	1,910	2,292
12 "	1,273	1,592	1,910
14 "	1,091	1,364	1,637
16 "	955	1,194	1,432
18 "	849	1,061	1,273
20 "	764	955	1,146
22 "	694	868	1,042
24 "	637	796	955
30 "	509	637	764
36 "	424	531	637

21. The periphery speed of work (F.P.M.) should be proportional to the grade and speed of wheel, also to the diameter of work. The speed varies from 15 to 60 feet per minute for different classes of work. The higher speed is best for cast iron and the lower for duplicate work.

22. Direction of rotation of wheel and work must be opposite at cutting point as in Fig. 4.

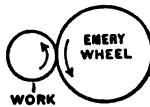


FIG. 4. — DIRECTION OF ROTATION OF WHEEL AND WORK FOR EXTERNAL GRINDING.

23. Feed of table or traverse speed is in proportion to the width of wheel face and finish required. Use coarse feed for roughing. For large work with a heavy machine, use one-half to three-fourths width of wheel to each revolution of work; on light machines use one-third to one-half width of wheel. For a very fine and accurate finish, use one-fourth to one-third width of wheel.

24. Depth of cut. — For roughing take deep cuts, — .001" to .004" at each stroke; for finishing, light cuts, — .00025" to .0005" at each stroke. The sparks thrown off by the grinding wheel indicate the depth of cut: a large volume of sparks indicates a heavy cut, and a small volume a light cut.

25. Width of face of wheel. — A wide wheel with a coarse-feed, removes stock rapidly, and is used where it can pass from one-fourth to one-half its width beyond the end of work or recess.

A narrow wheel is used to grind to a shoulder not recessed to produce an accurate diameter next to shoulder or with narrow recess. The face of a wheel may be narrowed by beveling a corner with a diamond tool.

26. To true grinding wheel. — Grinding wheels wear smooth or become glazed by use, so that they will not cut freely. A new wheel will not run true and must be *trueed* before using.

To true *face* of wheel, mount diamond tool *A*, Fig. 5, in fixture *B*. Feed tool to touch revolving wheel with cross feed, then traverse tool by power or hand long feed. To true

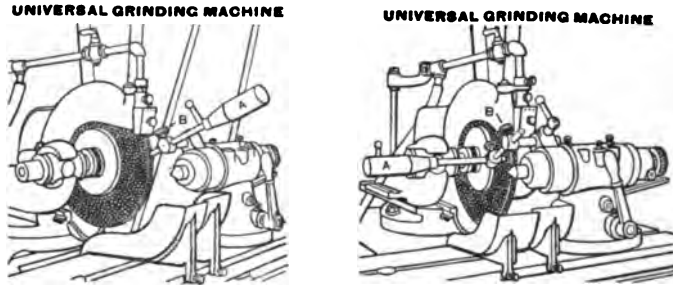


FIG. 5.—TRUING FACE OF WHEEL WITH A DIAMOND TOOL. FIG. 6.—TRUING SIDE OF WHEEL WITH A DIAMOND TOOL.

*side* of wheel, clamp diamond tool *A*, Fig. 6, in slide of fixture *B* at right angles to wheel. Feed tool to wheel by hand long feed until it touches revolving wheel, then operate tool by hand with cross feed.

If a wheel is soft, but little attention may be given it while roughing, as it will wear away fast enough to keep sharp, but it must be sharp and also true, to produce a fine finish.

*Attention.* — Grinding wheels may be trued dry, but the wear on the diamond tool is much less if plenty of water is used.

**27. To true centers, Fig. 7.** — Remove centers, clean holes with waste. Clean dead center and insert it in live center spindle. Belt machine to revolve live spindle, pull out pin *A*, swivel headstock to  $30^\circ$  and clamp. Set reversing dogs and grind center by trial and correction to fit center gage ( $60^\circ$ ). See p. 113. Replace dead center, clean and insert live center in its spindle and grind. Both centers are hardened and tempered. In a plain grinding machine, use a special attachment. Some small grinding machines permit swinging of table to grind centers.

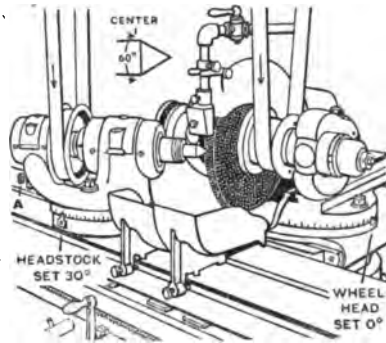


FIG. 7. — GRINDING THE CENTER OF UNIVERSAL GRINDING MACHINE.

**28. Methods of driving work.** — (Two dead centers.) Centered work is ground on two dead centers and driven by dead center pulley and balanced dog, as in Fig. 1. To

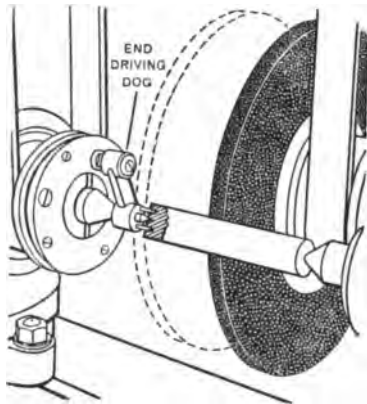


FIG. 8. — END DRIVING DOG FOR WORK OF ONE DIAMETER.

grind work of one diameter, use end driving dog, as in Fig. 8. (With revolving spindle.) For work held in chuck, as face and internal grinding, the spindle revolves.

Some classes of centered work may be rapidly handled and ground by using spindle and triangular live center drive, as in Fig. 9.

A triangular center punch is driven lightly into one center hole to make it fit center. The work is then mounted on centers and not moved until finished.

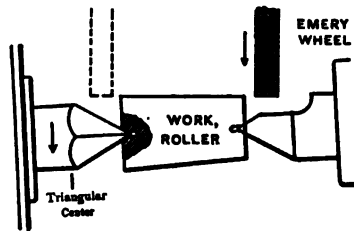


FIG. 9. — TRIANGULAR CENTER DRIVE FOR RAPID PRODUCTION.

**29. To set swivel table to grind straight work.** — Set both zero lines on headstock swivel (graduated in degrees) to coincide, then set both zero lines on swivel table (graduated scale in inches per foot and degrees) to coincide. To obtain accurate setting, take a few light cuts and caliper both ends with micrometer. If they differ, release clamp bolts and swing swivel table a little with adjusting screw at end, clamp bolts and repeat above process until desired accuracy is obtained.

*Attention.* — The graduations on headstock swivel and swivel table are helpful, but the coincidence of lines, even if located with a magnifying glass, give only approximate accuracy, and it is only by the process of trial and correction that accuracy is obtained.

**30. Slight tapers** are obtained by setting swivel table to approximate taper by scale and using a standard taper ring gage to determine exact taper, which is obtained by trial and correction in the same manner as a straight setting.

**31. Steep tapers** on work held in chuck or on headstock spindle are obtained by swiveling the headstock. For work mounted on centers, tapers are obtained by setting wheel slide, and for two abrupt tapers, outside or inside, by setting both headstock and wheel slide at proper angles.

**32. Wet and dry grinding.** — Wet grinding is rapid and accurate. An insufficient or fluctuating supply of water will

cause a change of temperature and produce inaccurate work. If the nature of the work will not permit, or the machine is not arranged for wet grinding, good results may be obtained by grinding dry with very light cuts. Water guards for wet grinding are supplied. See A, Fig. 10.

**33. Lubricants for grinding.** — Use water, and to prevent rusting of machine, add enough sal soda to the water to show a deposit on machine. Machine oil is sometimes added to mixture.

Aluminum is ground with a lubricant of kerosene, or a mixture of kerosene and machine oil.

As most cutter grinders are not arranged for wet grinding, cutters and reamers are ground dry.

**34. To prepare work to be ground. Allowance for grinding.** — Short work that is not to be hardened is rough turned from .006" to .010" large. For large work and long, slender work that will spring and run out of true after turning, and for hardened steel that is liable to spring in hardening, it is good practice to allow from .020" to .030" to grind off. A large allowance means but one cut in the lathe, and it is more economical to grind with the modern grinding machine than to take a second cut in the lathe to reduce the allowance.

**35. Rough and finish grinding.** — In manufacturing machine parts in lots, it is good practice to rough grind all pieces to within .002" or .003" before finishing any. The wheel then need be trued only twice, — once in roughing and once for finishing.

**36. The finish of work.** — An ordinary shaft should be given a "commercial" finish; that is, it should be ground to a good smooth surface. A forcing fit need not be ground to such a fine finish, but close to size. Gages and fine work of this class must be ground both to a fine finish and to an exact size. A fine accurate finish is generally obtained with light cuts, slow feed, a true wheel, and a liberal supply of water.

**37. Expansion of work while grinding.** — Expansion is caused by the friction of the wheel. In grinding work dry, particularly long shafts, it sometimes is made to run out of



true and this is due to its own internal strains or unequal expansion. A grinding operation shows error or truth; an *uneven* volume of sparks indicates error, and an *even* volume of sparks truth of work. To remedy this, flood work with water, reduce speed of work and feed one-fourth thousandth at each end of stroke until work is cylindrically true. When the work becomes round again, increase its speed and the depth of cuts. Spring back rests *B, B, B*, Fig. 17, are often used to remedy this error.

*Attention.* — A distinct difference in the sparks, however, may indicate an error as small as one-tenth to one-fourth thousandth of an inch or less, which may be ignored for some classes of work.

**38. Seasoning work.** — Long slender work is often laid away for a period of time between roughing and finishing, to relieve internal strains, when great accuracy is required. This is usually unnecessary for short or heavy work.

**39. Care of machine and work.** — All bearings should be kept well oiled. The cross slide should be cleaned, oiled, and if need be, adjusted to move smoothly. The centers and center holes in work must be kept absolutely true and clean and well oiled to produce accurate work. While most of the bearings on modern grinding machines are dust-proof, nevertheless the machines should be kept clean.

**40. Measuring tools for grinding.** — Use micrometer calipers and limit gages for general work. For very accurate work use a ten-thousandth micrometer or measuring machine.

*Warning.* — Push the shipper slowly and watch the grinding wheel as it slowly starts. Never stand in front of a wheel when it is starting, to avoid injury if the wheel should happen to break. Modern grinding wheels have a high factor of safety and seldom burst at the speed recommended, but any wheel may be broken by careless usage; accidentally moving the headstock, or footstock, or work, against the side of the wheel, especially a thin, vitrified wheel, revolving or stationary, may break it.

PROBLEMS IN CYLINDRICAL GRINDING

41. Adjustments and movements to operate universal grinding machine, Fig. 10.

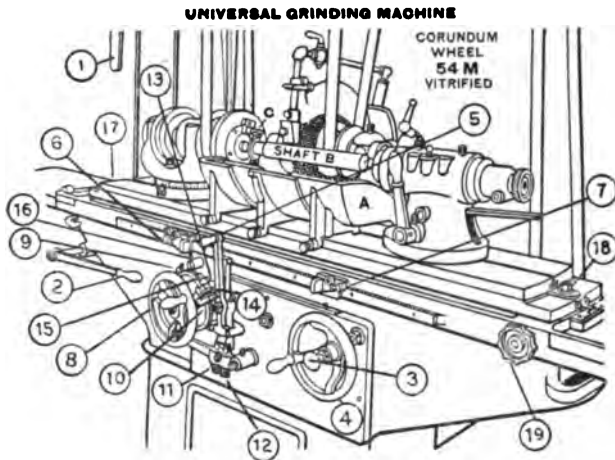


FIG. 10. — GRINDING A RUNNING FIT.

SCHEDULE OF PARTS

1. Shipper to start and stop grinding wheel.	11 and 12. Adjusting screws which control movements of pawl 9 and depth of cut at each end of stroke.
2. Shipper brake to start and stop work.	13. Perpendicular latch.
3. Knob to start or stop long. power feed work (table feed).	14. Latch head.
4. Long. feed hand wheel.	15. Shield.
5. Lever to reverse long. feed by hand.	16. Horizontal latch.
6 and 7. Dogs to reverse long. feed automatically.	
8. Cross feed hand wheel.	
<i>Automatic Cross Feed.</i>	
9. Pawl.	<i>Swivel Table.</i>
10. Ratchet wheel (each tooth reduces work $1/4/1000''$ in diameter and each graduation $1/1000''$ ).	17 and 18. Bolts to clamp swivel table.
	19. Screw to adjust swivel table. To grind straight or taper, see Graduated Scale at end of swivel table.

## 42. To grind running fit on two dead centers, Fig. 11.

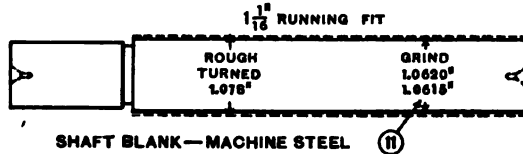


FIG. 11. — SCHEDULE DRAWING.

**Specifications:** Shaft blank, machine steel rough turned 1.078" diameter.

**Machines and tools:** Universal grinding machine.

Grinding wheel 12" × 1/2", No. 54, Grade *M*, vitrified, grinding dog. Speed of wheel, 5000 F.P.M. Speed of work, 50 F.P.M.

Feed 1/4 width of wheel per revolution.

Oil bearings and two dead centers with machine oil.

Lubricant, solution of sal soda and water.

**Time:** Study drawing and schedule in advance, 10 min.—Oil machine and true wheel, 7 min.—Grind fit with machine "set up," 20 min.—Clean grinder, 3 min.—Total, 40 min. ("Set up machine to grind straight, 20 min. extra.)

## SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS

**I. Preparatory Adjustments.** True wheel and centers, p. 709. Set zero lines on head stock and swivel table to grind approximately straight, p. 712. Arrange water guards. See Fig. 10. Unlock horizontal latch 16 from latch head 14, throw out pawl 9 and move grinding wheel back with hand cross-feed wheel 8, to allow space to mount work. Mount shaft *B* on centers with copper under set screw of grinding dog *C*. Start grinding wheel, work and feed, 1, 2, 3, and adjust table dogs 6, 7, to obtain length of stroke and avoid wheel striking dog or foot-stock.

Set automatic cross feed 11, 12, Fig. 10, to feed .001" (4 teeth on ratchet), at each end of stroke.

**II. Grind Trial Diameter (11), Fig. 11.** (Grind out tool marks only.) Move grinding wheel to cut revolving work lightly with hand cross-feed wheel 8. Turn on water and throw in feed pawl 9 to mesh with ratchet wheel 10, and allow automatic cross feed to take three or four trial cuts whole length of work to grind out tool marks. Then throw out pawl 9 and, without moving cross feed, allow wheel to pass over work several times until cutting nearly dies out.

Stop wheel, work and feed 1, 2, 3, with wheel at footstock end.

**III. Correct Straightness.** Measure work at both ends with 2" micrometer, and if not straight, move swivel table (see p. 712). Take one or two cuts with automatic cross feed. Measure, and repeat until machine grinds straight. If there is danger thereby of grinding shaft too small, use trial piece same length.

**IV. Find Amount Oversize.** Measure work with 2" micrometer. Subtract 1.0640" (1.0620" + .002" for finishing) from reading of micrometer. For example, reading of micrometer may be 1.0740", then  $1.0740'' - 1.0640'' = .0100''$  for rough grinding. As each tooth in ratchet wheel  $12 = \frac{1}{1000}''$  in diameter of work and work is .010" large, work is 40 teeth large.

**V. Set Automatic Cross Feed.** Raise perpendicular latch 13 in head 14, throw in pawl 9 and, without moving cross feed, move shield 15 to right or left until end of shield and pawl are 40 teeth apart, then drop latch 13 in ratchet wheel 10.

**VI. Rough Grind (11), .0020" Large,** as follows: Start wheel, work and feed, 1, 2, 3, and rough grind automatically until shield 15 lifts pawl 9. Then lock latch head 14, with horizontal latch 16 (this locks coarse cross feed).

Throw out pawl 9 and allow wheel to pass over work several times until cutting nearly dies out. Stop work with wheel at footstock end with shipper brake 2, shut off water and measure, and from reading subtract 1.0620" ( $1.0640'' - 1.0620'' = .0020''$ ).

**VII. Finish Grind (11), Fig. 11,** with pinch feed (fine cross feed)  $\frac{1}{1000}''$  in diameter of work, as follows: Start work. Take two cuts  $\frac{1}{1000}''$  each (two pinches at each end of work). Stop work and measure (1.0630"). Take one cut  $\frac{1}{1000}''$  (one pinch at footstock end of work) and measure and repeat until work measures 1.0620".

Limit 1.0620" to 1.0615".

*Attention.* — This shaft is for running fit in  $1\frac{1}{8}''$  hole. Hole limit 1.0625" + or -.00025". See Running Fits, pp. 214, 215.

*Information.* — The equipment for wet grinding consists of water tank, pump, piping and valve to supply water to work and water guards, channels in table and frame to carry water back to filter and tank.

*Note.* — When through grinding, unlock horizontal latch 16 from latch head 14, move grinding wheel back to allow space to mount next piece of work. Clean machine with waste.

*Warning.* — To avoid accident, start grinding wheel slowly.

**43. To grind a phosphor bronze taper bushing, A, Fig. 12.**  
 Bushing blank, phosphor bronze. Rough turned to enter taper hole within  $\frac{3}{8}$ " of small end.

Corundum grinding wheel (plain), 12"  $\times$   $\frac{1}{2}$ ", No. 54, Grade M, vitrified.

Speed of wheel, 6500 F.P.M. Speed of work, 75 F.P.M.

Feed,  $\frac{1}{2}$  width of wheel.

True wheel and centers.

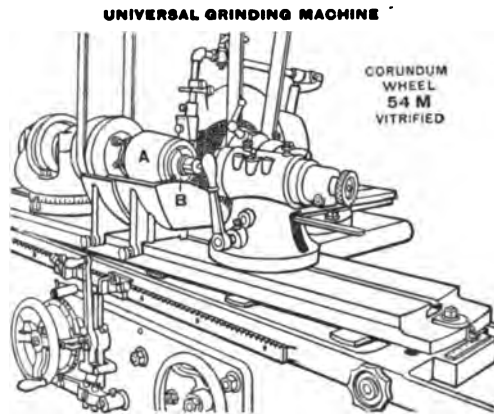


FIG. 12. — GRINDING A BRONZE TAPER BUSHING.

Set automatic feed to feed .001" at both ends of stroke and to grind .002" large, then use pinch feed to finish.

Place bushing A on a built-up taper mandrel B and mount on dead centers.

Set swivel table to grind taper. To obtain correct taper, take light cuts and test taper in taper hole in headstock or frame of machine, and adjust table until taper fits.

**44. Adjustments and movements to operate universal and tool grinding machine, Fig. 13.**

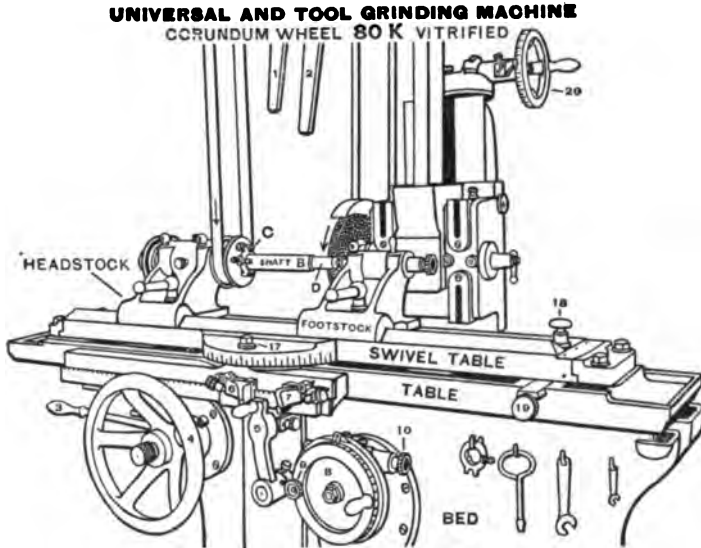


FIG. 13. — GRINDING A FORCING FIT.

SCHEDULE OF PARTS

1. Shipper to start and stop grinding wheel.
2. Shipper brake to start and stop work.
3. Lever to start or stop long power feed (table feed).
4. Long feed hand wheel.
5. Lever to reverse long feed by hand.
- 6 and 7. Dogs to reverse long feed automatically.
8. Cross feed hand wheel. Each graduation reduces work 1/1000" in diameter.

*Fine Cross Feed.*

9. Thumb nut for controlling fine or coarse cross feed.

10. Thumb screw for operating fine cross feed.

*Swivel Table.*

17. Bolt for clamping swivel table.
18. Spring knob for quick adjustment of swivel table.
19. Thumb screw for fine adjustment of swivel table. To grind straight or taper, see Graduated Scale at end.

*Grinding Wheels.*

20. Hand wheel to elevate grinding wheel.

## 45. To grind forcing fit on two dead centers, Fig. 14.

SHAFT BLANK—MACHINE STEEL  
FIG. 14. — SCHEDULE DRAWING.

**Specifications:** Shaft blank, machine steel rough turned, 1.015" diameter.

**Machines and tools:** Universal grinding machine.

Grinding wheel 7"  $\times$   $\frac{1}{2}$ ", No. 80, K, vitrified, grinding dog.

Speed of wheel, 5000 F.P.M. Speed of work, 50 F.P.M.

Feed  $\frac{1}{4}$  width of wheel per revolution.

Oil bearings and two dead centers with machine oil. Grind dry.

**Time:** Study drawing and schedule in advance, 5 min.—Oil machine and true wheel, 7 min.—Grind fit with machine "set up," 15 min.—Clean grinder, 3 min.—Total, 30 min. ("Set up" machine to grind straight, 10 min. extra.)

## SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS

## I. Preparatory Adjustments

True wheel and centers, p. 709. Set zero lines on swivel table to grind approximately straight. See p. 712. Loosen nut 9, Fig. 13, and move grinding wheel back with hand cross-feed wheel 8 to allow space to mount work. Mount shaft *B* on centers with copper under set screw of grinding dog *C*. Start grinding wheel, work and feed, 1, 2, 3, and adjust dogs 6, 7 to obtain length of stroke of part *D* and avoid wheel touching shoulder of work or footstock.

II. Grind Trial Diameter (12), Fig. 14. (Grind out tool marks only.) Move grinding wheel to cut revolving work lightly with coarse hand cross-feed wheel 8. Tighten nut 9 (this locks coarse cross feed), and use fine cross-feed

thumb screw 10. Graduations on cross feed reduce work 1/1000" in diameter. Take two, three, or four trial cuts ( $\frac{1}{1000}$ " each), to grind out tool marks, feeding at footstock end only, and allow wheel to pass over work several times until cutting nearly dies out, then stop table and work with grinding wheel at footstock end with shippers 3, 2.

III. Correct Straightness. Measure work at both ends with 2" micrometer and, if not straight, move swivel table (see p. 712). Take one or two cuts with fine cross feed. Measure and repeat until machine grinds straight. If there is danger thereby of grinding shaft too small, use trial piece same length.

IV. Find Amount Oversize. Measure work with 2" microm-

eter. Subtract rough diameter of work  $1.0025'' + .002''$  for finishing from reading of micrometer. For example, reading of micrometer may be  $1.012''$ , then  $1.012'' - 1.0045'' = .0075''$  for rough grinding.

**V. Rough Grind (12), .002'' Large**, as follows: Use  $\frac{1}{1000}''$  cuts with thumb screw 10 at footstock end only, as follows: Take 12 cuts and measure ( $1.0060''$ ); take 3 cuts and measure ( $1.0045''$ ).

**VI. Finish Grind (12), Fig. 14.** Use  $\frac{1}{1000}''$  cuts and feed at footstock end only, as follows: Take 5 cuts and measure ( $1.00325''$ ); take one cut and measure, and repeat until work measures  $1.0025''$ . Limit  $1.0025''$  to  $1.0020''$ .

*Attention.* — This shaft is to be forced into 1" hole. Hole limit  $1.000'' +$  or  $-.00025''$ . See Forcing Fits, p. 217. Clean machine with brush and waste.

**46. To grind a shoulder, Fig. 15.** — Spindle, crucible steel. Grinding wheel (plain)  $12'' \times \frac{1}{2}''$ , No. 60, Grade K, vitrified.

Speed of wheel, 5000 F.P.M. Speed of work, 50 F.P.M.

Feed,  $\frac{1}{8}$  width of wheel.

True wheel and centers. Set machine to grind straight.

Mount spindle blank *A*, recessed as at *B* for side clearance, on centers. Control depth of cut

by long feed, and feed by cross feed. If shoulder is large use special wheel mounted on end of wheel spindle *C* and set swivel  $\frac{1}{4}^\circ$  from  $90^\circ$  to give clearance.

**47. Plain grinding machine for commercial grinding, Fig. 16.** — The essential parts of this machine are similar to those of a universal grinding machine except that the headstock and wheel slide do not swivel, and the swivel table forms a water guard. It is designed for straight and taper outside work only. It is made strong and rigid to grind work rapidly.

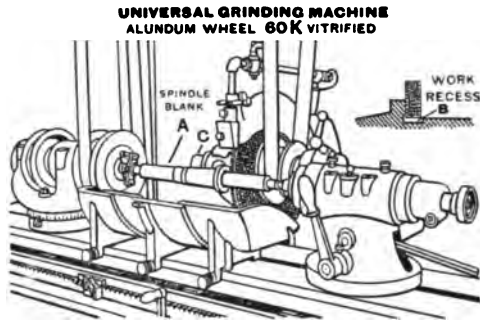


FIG. 15. — GRINDING A SHOULDER.



Some plain grinding machines have a traveling grinding wheel instead of a traveling table.

**48. To grind cast-iron roll, A, Fig. 16.**

Roll blank, cast iron. Rough turned .010" to .020" large.

Alundum grinding wheel (plain) 20" × 2", No. 24 Combination, Grade K, vitrified.

Speed of wheel, 5000 F.P.M. Speed of work, 50 F.P.M.

Feed,  $\frac{1}{4}$  width of wheel.

True wheel and centers. Set machine to grind straight.

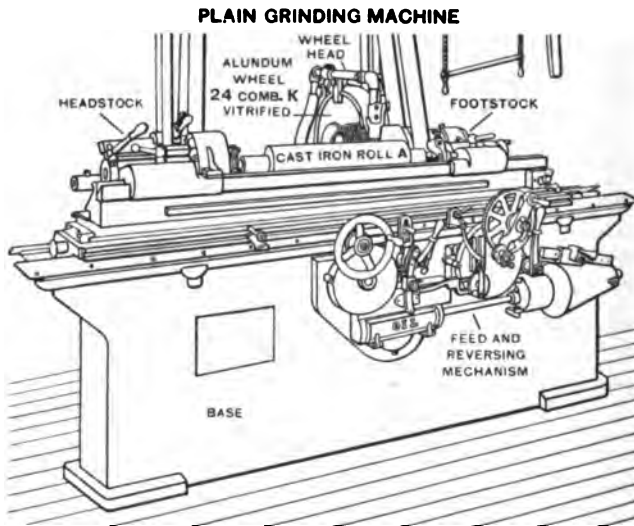


FIG. 16. — GRINDING A CAST-IRON ROLL.

Set automatic feed to feed at both ends of stroke and to grind .002" large, then use pinch feed to finish.

Mount roll A on dead centers.

Place universal back rests 6 to 10 diameters apart and grind to required diameter with water.

**49. To grind slender shaft, A, Fig. 17.**

Shaft blank, machine steel smooth turned .012" large.

Alundum grinding wheel (plain) 12" ×  $\frac{1}{4}$ ", No. 60, Grade L, vitrified.

Speed of wheel, 6500 F.P.M. Speed of work, 90 F.P.M.

Feed,  $\frac{1}{4}$  width of wheel.

True wheel and centers. Set machine to grind straight.

Set automatic feed to feed at both ends of stroke and to grind .002" large, then use pinch feed to finish.

Mount shaft A on dead centers. Place three universal back rests B against shaft, 6 to 10 diameters apart, see Fig. 17, and grind to required diameter.

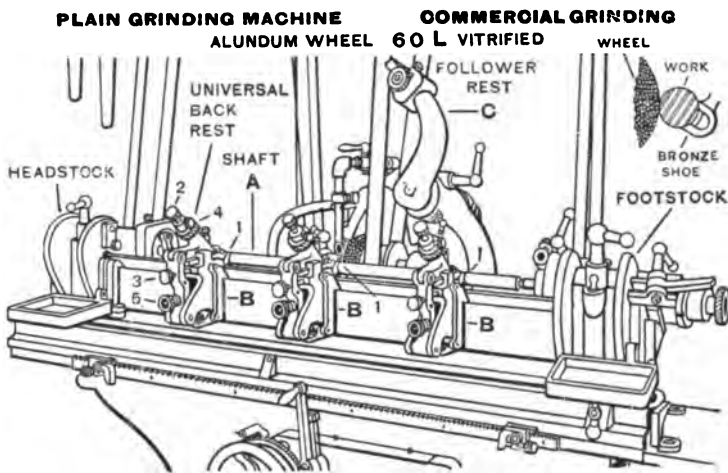


FIG. 17. — GRINDING A SLENDER SHAFT.

50. Back rests, plain and universal, are fixtures used to reduce vibration and permit a greater depth of cut on straight and taper work both large and small.

The plain rest has a single shoe of wood or soft metal and is used for small, short work.

The universal rests B, B, B can be delicately adjusted. Select bronze shoes 1, 1, 1, (see detail) the size of finished work, move screws 2 to maintain contact of shoe upon work while grinding trial piece, and adjust stop screw 3 to preserve diameter when finished.

Adjust screws 4 and 5 to regulate pressure of springs upon shoes and work.

Duplicate pieces are ground without disturbing adjustments except slightly for wear of shoe 2 and diameter 3.

Followler rest *C* is used on slender work that has been rough ground .001" large. It cannot be used on taper work. Adjust with wheel and work in motion.

**51. Automatic magnetic sizing grinder, Fig. 18.**

The mechanical automatic feeding mechanism is electrically controlled and duplicates straight and taper work regardless of wear of grinding wheel.

A coarse feed for roughing automatically switches to a fine feed for finishing, and when work is finished to size the feed automatically stops.

**52. To rough and finish grind spindles in an automatic magnetic sizing grinder, Fig. 18. Duplicate work.**

Spindle blank, machine steel, rough turned 0.020" large.

Corundum grinding wheel (plain) 18" × 1½", No. 40, Grade M, vitrified.

Speed of wheel, 5000 F.P.M. Speed of work, 50 F.P.M.

Feed, ¼ width of wheel.

True wheel and centers. Set machine to grind straight.

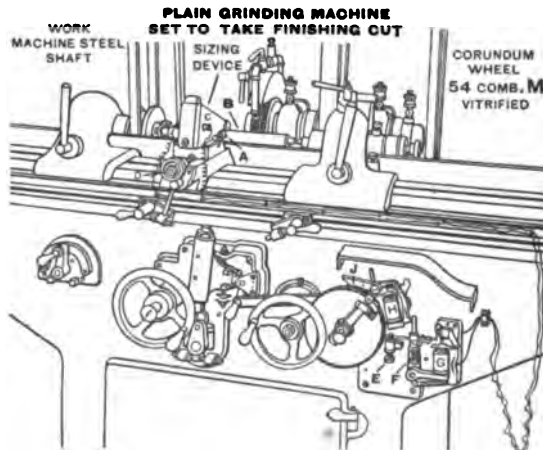


FIG. 18. — AUTOMATIC SIZING DEVICE FOR GRINDING DUPLICATE WORK.

To set automatic sizing device, rough and finish grind one piece to required size with automatic mechanical feed, and use this as a master piece to set sizing device. Place diamond-point bearer *A*, on master piece *B* and adjust arm *C* by screw *D* to make an electrical contact. Then mount blank for next piece on centers. Adjust coarse feed for roughing by screw *E* to feed .001" at each end of stroke, and adjust screw *F* to have magnet *G* throw out the coarse and throw in the fine feed one tooth (one-eighth thousandth) when piece is within .002" of size.

Magnet *H* throws out latch *J* and stops feed when piece is ground to correct diameter.

*Attention.* — The coarse and fine feeds and the amount allowed for finishing may be varied for different classes of work. Dry batteries or a plug in a lamp socket of a direct-current circuit will operate device.

**53. To grind a straight and taper bearing on a spindle, Fig. 19.**

Spindle blank, crucible steel unannealed. Rough turned .010" to .020" large.

Corundum grinding wheel (plain) 12" × 1", No. 54, Grade M, vitrified.

Speed of wheel, 5000 F.P.M. Speed of work, 50 F.P.M.

Feed,  $\frac{1}{8}$  width of wheel.

True wheel and centers.

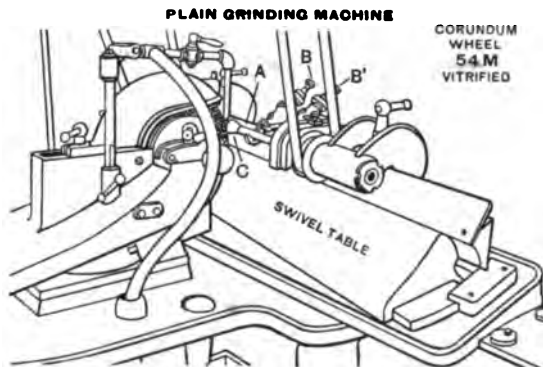


FIG. 19. — GRINDING A TAPER SPINDLE.

Set automatic feed to feed .001" at both ends of stroke and to grind .002" large, then use pinch feed to finish.

Mount spindle *A* on dead centers.

Place two universal back rests *B* and *B'* against straight portions of work. After straight portions are ground, set swivel table to grind taper bearing *C*. To obtain correct taper, take light cuts, try taper in box and adjust table until taper fits. Use Prussian blue for marking in taper hole.

**54. To grind taper collet, *A*, Fig. 20.**

Collet blank, machine steel. Rough turned .010" to .020" large and recess at *B*.

Corundum grinding wheel (plain) 12" ×  $\frac{1}{4}$ ", No. 54 Combination, Grade M, vitrified.

Speed of wheel, 5000 F.P.M. Speed of work, 50 F.P.M.

Feed,  $\frac{1}{4}$  width of wheel.

True wheel and centers.

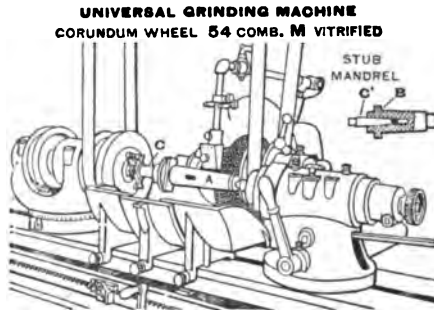


FIG. 20. — GRINDING A TAPER COLLET.

Set automatic feed to feed at both ends of stroke and to grind to .002" large, then use pinch feed to finish.

Place stub mandrel *C*, *C'* in taper hole of collet *A*, mount on centers.

Set swivel table to grind taper. To obtain correct taper, take light cuts, try taper in gage or spindle hole and adjust table until taper fits. Use Prussian blue for marking in hole.

## INTERNAL GRINDING

**55.** Internal grinding is the process of grinding straight or taper holes smooth and true, in gears, milling cutters, gages, spindles, cylinders, machine parts, etc., hardened, case-hardened or unhardened. Special internal grinding machines, and internal grinding attachments are used for universal and cutter grinding machines. Softer wheels are used than for external grinding as the contact is greater. Fig. 21 shows relation of work and wheel.

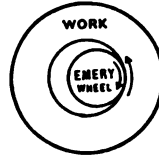


FIG. 21. — DIRECTION OF ROTATION OF WORK AND WHEEL FOR INTERNAL GRINDING.

Vitrified grinding wheels for internal grinding range from  $\frac{1}{4}$ " to  $2\frac{1}{2}$ " in diameter, and from  $\frac{1}{4}$ " to  $\frac{3}{8}$ " face. They are made from Nos. 120, 90, 80, 70 and 60 of the different abrasives in grades *J*, *K*,  $\frac{1}{2}$ ,  $\frac{1}{4}$  and 1. Elastic wheels are used for brass.

Allowances for internal grinding should be much less than for external grinding as the operation is much slower on account of the small wheel and lack of rigidity.

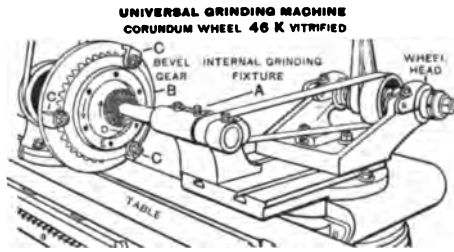


FIG. 22. — GRINDING HOLE IN AUTOMOBILE GEAR.

**56.** To set machine to grind straight hole, select shaft about  $1\frac{1}{4}$ " diameter and longer than hole to be ground and mount in chuck. Grind shaft and adjust swivel head until machine grinds perfectly straight, then arrange machine for internal grinding.

**57.** To grind hole in case-hardened automobile bevel gear, Fig. 22.

**Specifications:** Gear, case-hardened. Hole  $0.010''$  small.

**Machine and tools:** Universal grinding machine, grinding wheel (plain)  $2'' \times \frac{3}{8}''$ , No. 46, Grade *K*, vitrified. Plug gage.

Speed of wheel, 5000 F.P.M. Speed of work, 50 F.P.M.

**Feed:** Set automatic cross feed to feed  $.001''$  at one end of stroke only and to grind  $.002''$  small; then use pinch feed to finish or, after first cut, lock cross feed and use pinch feed for both roughing and finishing.

**True wheel.** Set machine to grind straight.

Arrange machine for internal grinding, clamp fixture *A* to wheel stand. Fasten gear *B* to face plate by clamps *C* and true up gear by indicator and soft hammer. Rough and finish grind hole *D* and face *E* before removing work from face plate. Test hole with plug gage or inside micrometer.

**58. To grind hole in milling cutter, Fig. 23.**

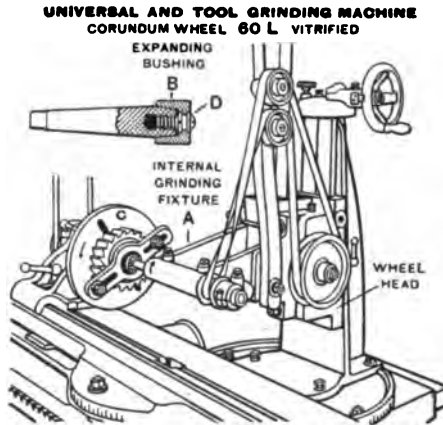


FIG. 23. — GRINDING HOLE IN MILLING CUTTER.

**Specifications:** Cutter hardened. Hole  $.008''$  small.

**Machine and tools:** Universal and tool grinding machine, grinding wheel (plain)  $\frac{3}{4}'' \times \frac{1}{4}''$ , No. 60, Grade *L*, vitrified. Plug gage.

Speed of wheel, 5000 F.P.M. Speed of work, 50 F.P.M.

Feed, power long., automatic or hand cross feed.

True wheel. Set machine to grind straight.

Arrange cutter-grinding machine for internal grinding. Set grinding wheel head height of centers by gage, and clamp fixture *A* to wheel head. Insert special chuck with expanding bushing *B* in spindle.

To set cutter true, clamp cutter *C* lightly to face plate, expand bushing with screw *D*, then clamp cutter firmly, loosen and remove bushing.

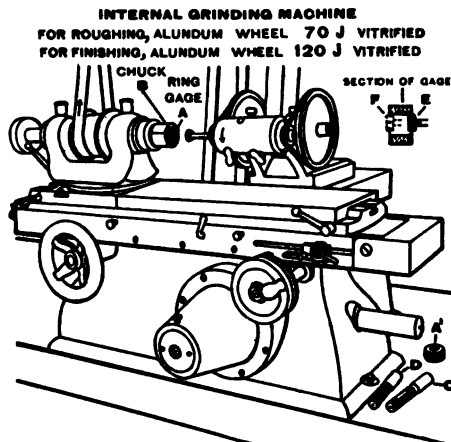


FIG. 24. — GRINDING STANDARD RING GAGE.

59. Special internal grinder, Fig. 24, is used for grinding holes as small as  $\frac{1}{16}$ " in diameter with a range of speed from 10,000 to 100,000 R.P.M.

Small holes are ground with a steel plug charged with diamond dust or powdered bortz.

To prevent the grinding wheel from following the curve of the hole caused by the hole being smaller at the middle than at the ends due to shrinkage in hardening, the table feed is controlled by a mechanism which retards and accelerates. It is progressively slower from near end to middle of gage and progressively faster from middle to far end, and inversely.



**60. To grind 1" standard ring gage, Fig. 24.**

**Specifications:** Carbon steel gage blank, hardened. Hole .005" to .008" small.

**Machine and tools:** Internal grinding machine, grinding wheel  $\frac{5}{8}'' \times \frac{1}{4}''$ , No. 70, Grade *J*, vitrified. For very fine finishing, use No. 120, Grade *J*, vitrified.

Speed of wheel, 5000 F.P.M. (30,000 rev.). Speed of work, 65 F.P.M. (250 rev.).

Feed, automatic.

True wheel. Set machine to grind straight.

Mount gage *A* in special draw in chuck *B*. Adjust to retard feed in center of gage. Grind and test with limit gages *C*, *D*. Allow .0004" for lapping.

*Attention.* — Adjust stroke to reverse wheel, as at *E* and *F* to avoid grinding ends of hole tapering.

**61. To grind taper hole in spindle, Fig. 25.**

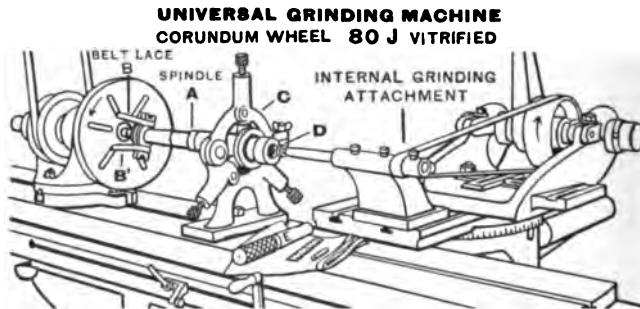


FIG. 25. — GRINDING TAPER HOLE IN SPINDLE.

**Specifications:** Crucible steel spindle blank. Taper hole .010" small.

**Machine and tools:** Universal grinding machine, grinding wheel (plain)  $\frac{5}{8}'' \times \frac{3}{8}''$  No. 80, Grade *J*, vitrified.

Speed of the wheel, 5000 F.P.M. Speed of work, 50 F.P.M.

Feed, automatic.

True wheel. Set machine to grind straight.

Depth of cut is obtained by hand cross feed.

Mount one end of spindle *A* on dead center with dog fastened to face plate by belt lacing *BB'* and the other end in steady rest *C* with a strip of cloth under jaws. Set swivel table to grind taper. To obtain correct taper take light cuts with grinding wheel *D*, try gage *E* in taper, and adjust table until taper fits. Use Prussian blue for marking.

*Attention.* — Set swivel table for slight tapers, and grinding wheel slide for steep tapers and large angles. Hold short work in a chuck.

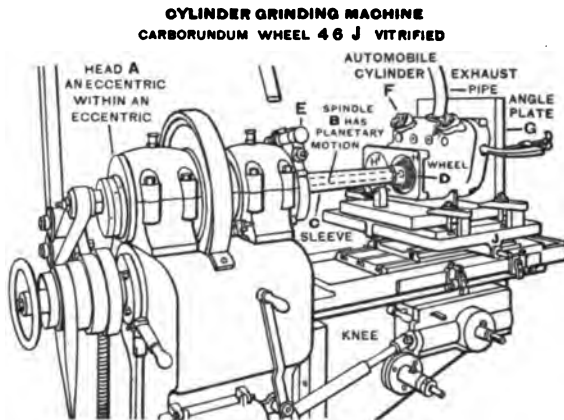


FIG. 26. — GRINDING AUTOMOBILE ENGINE CYLINDER.

### 62. To grind automobile cylinder, Fig. 26.

Use cylinder grinding machine to grind round, straight and smooth bores in gas-engine cylinders and other work held stationary, wet or dry.

Eccentric head *A*, is an eccentric within an eccentric and gives spindle *B*, which runs in eccentric extension sleeve *C* and wheel *D*, a planetary motion and also provides a feed by worm screw *E* for feeding wheel to its cut and to grind to correct diameter.

**Specifications:** Engine casting. Bore 0.010" small.

**Machine and tools:** Cylinder grinding machine, grinding wheel (plain),  $3\frac{1}{2}'' \times \frac{3}{4}''$  (offset), No. 46, Grade *J*, vitrified. Inside micrometer gage.

Speed of wheel, 5000 F.P.M. Speed of work, 50 F.P.M.

True wheel.

Set and clamp rough-bored automobile cylinder *F* to angle plate *G*. Aline bore of cylinder *H* with spindle and grind, then move cross slide *J* and aline bore of cylinder *H'* and grind. Measure with inside micrometer or gage.

# ADVANCED MACHINE WORK

## SECTION 8

### SURFACE GRINDING CUTTER GRINDING

**Surface Grinding. Surface Grinding Machines. Problems in Surface Grinding. Cutter Grinding. Adjusting Tooth Rest and Wheel for Obtaining Clearance. Problems in Cutter Grinding.**

#### SURFACE GRINDING

1. **Surface grinding machines** are used to grind accurately flat surfaces of rough-planed or milled work hardened, case-hardened or unhardened. See Grinding Wheels, pp. 704-710.

High-power vertical manufacturing surface grinders are used to grind castings and drop forgings from the rough, rapidly and accurately. Surface grinding is also used where accuracy is not required and takes the place of filing and polishing, saves time, files and emery cloth. The work is either clamped to table, held in chuck or fixture, or held by magnetic chuck.

#### SURFACE GRINDING MACHINES

2. **Surface grinding machine described, Fig. 1.**

#### SCHEDULE OF PARTS

<i>A</i> — Base fitted with locker.	<i>G</i> — Grinding wheel head.
<i>B</i> — Table.	<i>H</i> — Handle to elevate wheel head <i>G</i> .
<i>C</i> — Hand long-feed handle.	<i>J</i> — Exhaust pipe to carry away dust.
<i>D</i> — Hand cross-feed handle.	<i>K</i> — Magnetic chuck, <i>L</i> , switch for turning electric current on or off.
<i>E</i> — Automatic feed adjustment.	
<i>F</i> and <i>F'</i> — Reversing table dogs.	

## PROBLEMS IN SURFACE GRINDING

## 3. To grind thin machine parts, Multiple grinding, Fig. 1.

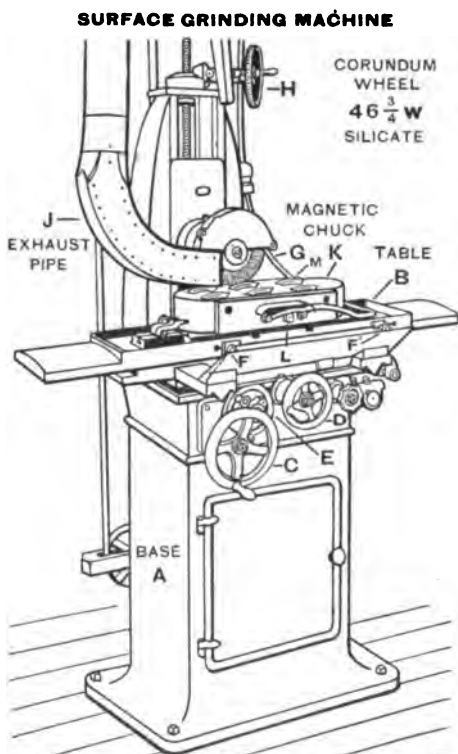


FIG. 1.—GRINDING THIN WORK HELD BY MAGNETIC CHUCK ON SURFACE GRINDING MACHINE.

**Specifications:** Material, carbon steel rough planed 0.020" large and hardened.

**Machine and tools:** Surface grinding machine, grinding wheel (plain) 9"  $\times$   $\frac{5}{8}$ ", No. 46, Grade  $\frac{3}{4}$  W, silicate.

Speed of wheel, 5000 F.P.M. Speed of work, 20 F.P.M.

Feed, hand or automatic.

True wheel.

Mount work *M* (six pieces at once), on magnetic chuck.

Finish grind one side, reverse and light grind. Remove work and measure with micrometer, replace and grind to size.

*Attention.* — Some work is rough ground

on both sides, to relieve strains before finishing.

**4. Magnetized master blocks.**—Steel blocks hardened, ground and lapped square or at any desired angle and magnetized, are used to hold work on magnetic chucks to reproduce different angles accurately. Work may be held directly on block, or more firmly by placing the work between two blocks, Fig. 2, so that the magnetic current will pass through all three and form a complete circuit. See Magnetic Chucks, pp. 623-625.

5. To grind work square held with magnetized master blocks, Figs. 2, 3.

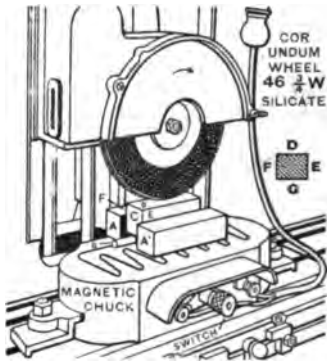


FIG. 2.—SQUARING SIDE OF WORK ON MAGNETIC CHUCK, USING MAGNETIZED MASTER BLOCKS.

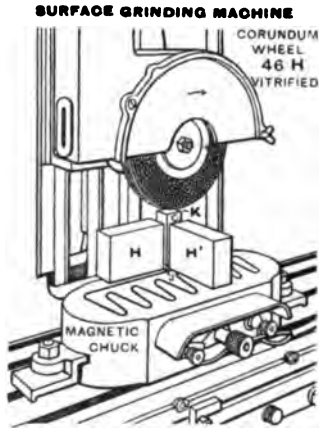


FIG. 3.—SQUARING END OF WORK ON MAGNETIC CHUCK, USING MAGNETIZED MASTER BLOCKS.

**Specifications:** Material, carbon steel planed 0.010" large and hardened.

**Machine and tools:** Surface grinding machine, grinding wheel (plain) 9"  $\times$   $\frac{3}{8}$ ", No. 46, Grade  $\frac{1}{2}$  W, silicate.

Speed of wheel, 5000 F.P.M. Speed of work, 20 F.P.M.

Feed, hand or automatic.

True wheel.

#### SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS

I. Place master blocks A, A', on magnetic chuck, Fig. 2, with brass wire B (non-magnetic) between as packing block. Place work C between packing blocks, turn current on chuck to hold work and grind surface D.

II. Place surface D against A and grind E.

III. Place surface D against A and grind F.

IV. Place surface E against A and grind G.

V. To square ends place master blocks H, H', on magnetic chuck, Fig. 3, with work C on end separated from table by piece of brass J, and grind end K, reverse block and grind opposite end.

## 6. To grind angular work, Fig. 4.

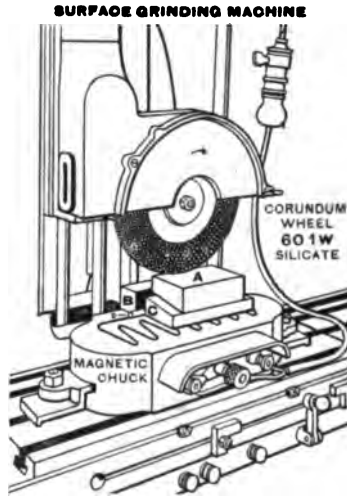


FIG. 4.—GRINDING ANGULAR WORK ON MAGNETIC CHUCK, USING MAGNETIZED MASTER BLOCKS.

**Specifications:** Material, carbon steel rough planed 0.010" large and hardened.

**Machine and tools:** Surface grinding machine, grinding wheel (plain) 9"  $\times$   $\frac{5}{8}$ ", No. 60, Grade 1 W, silicate.

Speed of wheel, 5000 F.P.M.  
Speed of work, 20 F.P.M.

Feed, hand or automatic.

True wheel.

Place square master block B and angular master block C on magnetic chuck with brass wire D between. Place work A on angular block and grind top surface.

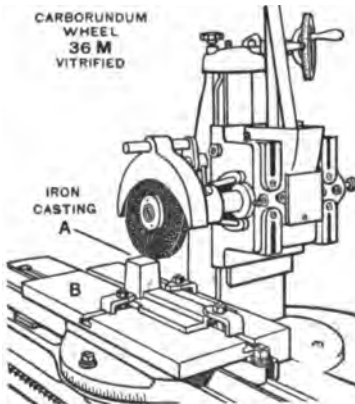


FIG. 5.—SURFACE GRINDING WITH CUTTER GRINDING MACHINE.

**7. To grind surface of casting, Fig. 5.**

**Specifications:** Iron casting rough planed.

**Machine and tools:** Cutter grinder, clamps, crystolon or carborundum wheel (disk) 6"  $\times$   $\frac{3}{8}$ ", No. 36, Grade *M*, vitrified.

Speed of wheel, 5000 F.P.M. Speed of work, 50 F.P.M.

Feed, hand or automatic.

True wheel.

Clamp casting *A* to table plate *B*, adjust revolving wheel to touch work lightly and grind.

**8. Surface grinding with planer type surface grinding machine, Fig. 6.**

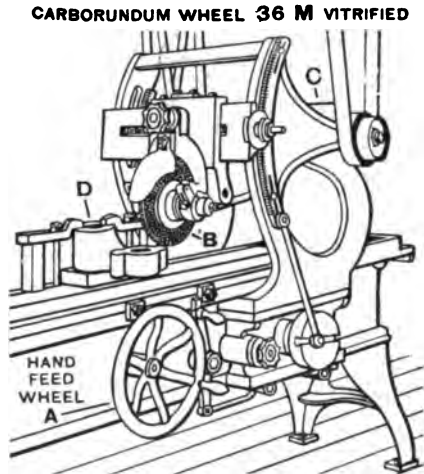


FIG. 6. — SURFACE GRINDING MACHINE. PLANER TYPE.

**Specifications:** Material, iron casting planed 0.010" large, to be ground on both sides to produce a good finish.

**Machine and tools:** Surface grinding machine, planer type, grinding wheel (plain) 9"  $\times$   $\frac{5}{8}$ ", No. 36, Grade *M*, vitrified.

Speed of wheel, 5000 F.P.M. Speed of work, 20 F.P.M.

Feed, hand or automatic.

True wheel.

This machine is similar to planer with the addition of hand



long. feed wheel *A*. Grinding wheel *B* is driven from drum *C*. Work *D* is clamped to table.

**9. Surface grinding with vertical spindle surface grinding machine, Fig. 7.**

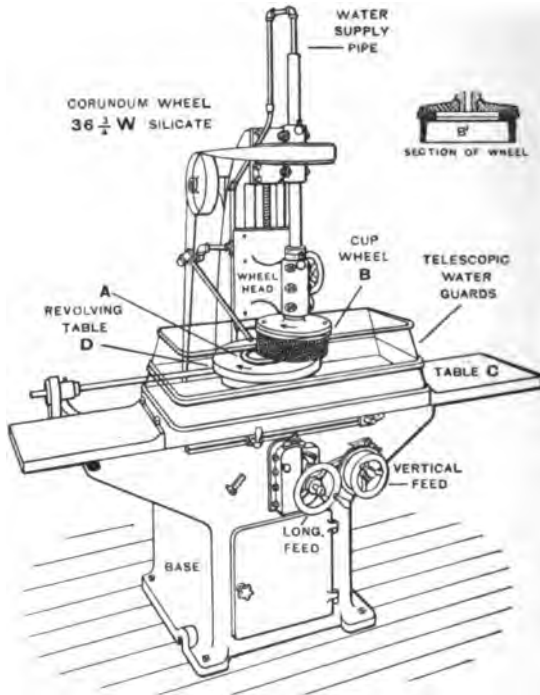


FIG. 7. — VERTICAL SPINDLE SURFACE GRINDING MACHINE.

**Specifications:** Iron casting in the rough  $\frac{1}{2}$ " to  $\frac{1}{8}$ " large.

**Machine and tools:** Surface grinding machine, grinding wheel (cup)  $12'' \times 3\frac{1}{2}''$ , No. 36, Grade  $\frac{3}{4} W$ , silicate.

Speed of wheel, 5000 F.P.M. Speed of work, 20 F.P.M.

Feed, hand or automatic.

True wheel.

This is a type of high-power vertical grinding machine used

for grinding castings and forgings from the rough, as iron-casting ring *A*, with cup wheel *B*. The grinding wheel has large contact, it is used with a coarse feed and stream of water to grind work rapidly. Work may be held on regular table *C* by clamps or magnetic chuck. Circular work is held by frictional contact only; on revolving table *D*, a plug keeps ring from sliding from place. For large work, revolving table or chuck *D* revolves and the table travels also.

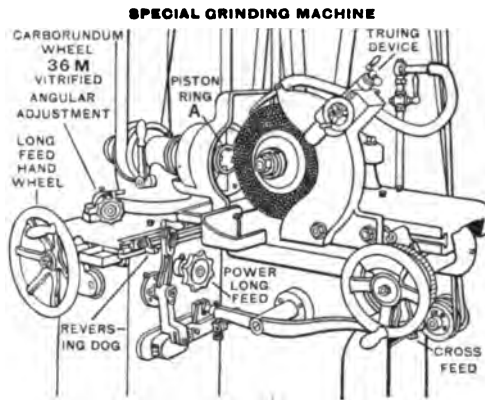


FIG. 8. — GRINDING PISTON RING.

**10. To grind piston ring, Fig. 8.**

**Specifications:** Material, cast-iron piston ring, turned and squared 0.010" large.

**Machine and tools:** Special grinding machine, grinding wheel (plain) 9" ×  $\frac{3}{8}$ ", No. 36, Grade *M*, vitrified.

Speed of wheel, 5000 F.P.M. Speed of work, 100 F.P.M.

Feed, hand or automatic.

True wheel. Set machine to grind straight.

Mount ring *A* on magnetic rotary chuck and grind. Remove work and measure with micrometer. With a fine feed a smooth finish may be obtained.

## CUTTER GRINDING

11. Cutter grinding machines are used to grind clearances on cutters, reamers and similar work. They are also used for light cylindrical and surface grinding and are a necessary supplement to milling machines.

12. Cutter grinding machine described, Fig. 9.

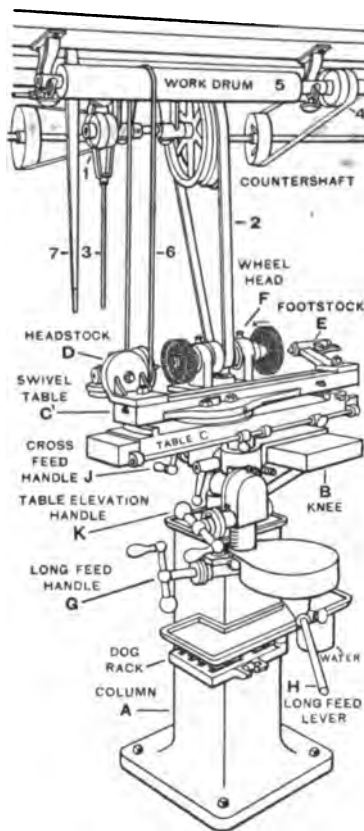


FIG. 9. — UNIVERSAL CUTTER AND TOOL GRINDER.

## SCHEDULE OF PARTS

- A — Column.  
 B — Knee, can be swiveled completely around column and adjusted up or down.  
 C — Swivel table.  
 D — Universal headstock, has vertical and horizontal adjustment on head graduated in degrees.  
 E — Footstock has a compensating center to allow for expansion of work during grinding.  
 F — Grinding wheel head.  
 G — Long feed handle.  
 H — Long feed lever.  
 J — Cross-feed handle.  
 K — Table-elevation handle.

*Countershaft.*

1. Tight and loose pulley for driving grinding wheel mechanism.
2. Belt to drive grinding wheel.
3. Shipper to start and stop grinding wheel.
4. Tight and loose pulley mechanism for work.
5. Work drum.
6. Belt to drive work.
7. Shipper to start and stop work.

**13. To grind centers, Fig. 10.** — Adjust vertically to bring work centers same height as wheel spindle. Belt machine to revolve center. Remove live center, clean hole with waste, insert center. Swivel table to  $30^\circ$ . Use power feed and grind. Test with  $60^\circ$  center gage.

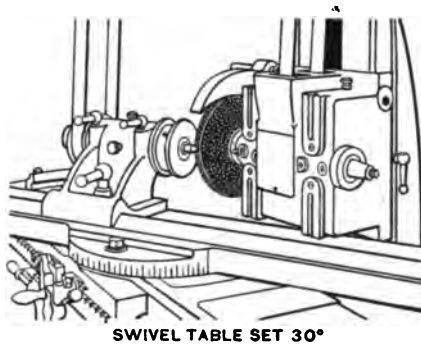


FIG. 10. — GRINDING CENTER WITH CUTTER GRINDING MACHINE.

**14. To grind straight.** — Setting to zero lines at scale end is sufficiently accurate for ordinary cutter grinding, but for reamer grinding and to obtain accuracy, grind trial piece on centers and adjust until desired accuracy is obtained. See Setting Swivel Table for Straight Grinding, p. 712.

**15. Grinding wheels** for cutters should not be finer than 90 or coarser than 46, and of soft or medium grades *I, J* or *K*. Periphery speed of wheel should be about 5000 feet per minute.

**16. Depth of cut and feed.** — Take light cuts from  $.002''$  to  $.004''$  and move cutter rapidly across face of wheel, if necessary go around cutter two or three times rather than take a heavy cut which would draw the temper.

ADJUSTING TOOTH REST AND WHEEL FOR OBTAINING  
CLEARANCE

17. Center height gage. — To set center of wheel spindle at

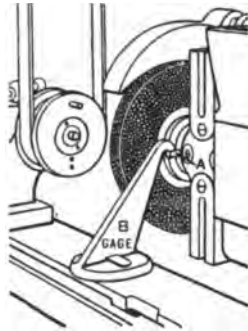


FIG. 11. — SETTING GRINDING WHEEL HEIGHT OF CENTERS.

height of work centers, raise wheel head or lower table until centering lug *A*, Fig. 11, is same height as center height gage *B*.

Tooth rest *A*, Figs. 12, 13, supports tooth when grinding

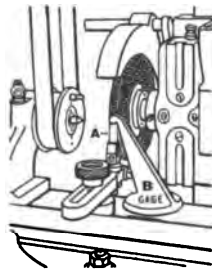


FIG. 12. — SETTING TOOTH REST HEIGHT OF CENTER REST FASTENED TO TABLE.

clearances on cutters and reamers, and is set at height of work centers by center height gage *B*; Figs. 12, 13.

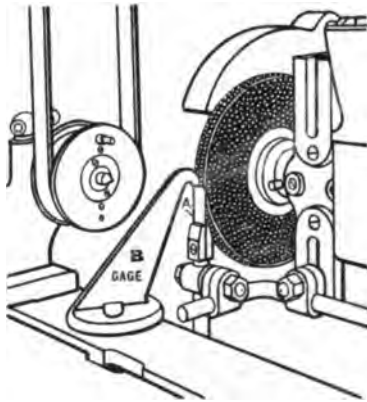


FIG. 13.—SETTING TOOTH REST HEIGHT OF CENTERS. REST FASTENED TO WHEEL HEAD.

18. Cutter and reamer clearances. — Milling cutters under 3" in diameter are given a tooth clearance of from 6° to 7°; those 3" and over, 4° to 5°, see Figs. 14, 15.

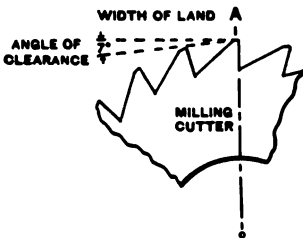


FIG. 14.—ANGLE OF TEETH AND WIDTH OF LAND OF MILLING CUTTER.

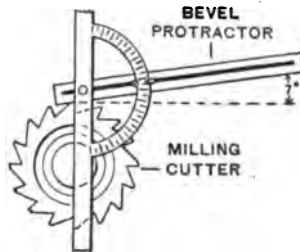


FIG. 15.—MEASURING CLEARANCE OF TEETH OF MILLING CUTTER.

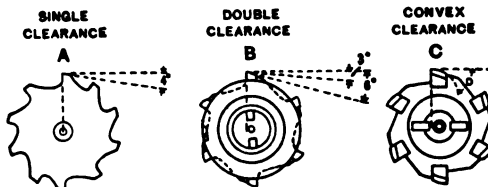


FIG. 16.—REAMER CLEARANCE.

Reamers are given  $4^\circ$  clearance, as at *A*, Fig. 16.

Reamers with thick teeth are given a double clearance; the first about  $3^\circ$  and the second  $6^\circ$ , as at *B*, to remove stock and leave a narrow land back of cutting edge. Some makers give reamers, *C*, a convex clearance, as at *D*.

**19. Disk and Cup wheels.** — Cutters and reamers are ground by two methods either the periphery of disk wheels or the side faces of cup wheels.

Disk Wheels give a slightly concave clearance, while cup wheels give a straight line clearance. The tendency seems to favor the latter method for wide lands.

**20. Direction to revolve wheel.** — Fig. 17, shows two methods (down and up) of grinding cutters and reamers.

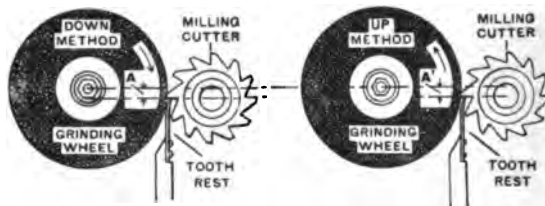


FIG. 17. — DISK WHEEL. RELATION OF TOOTH REST, MILLING CUTTER AND WHEEL TO GRIND TOOTH CLEARANCE.

There is a difference of opinion as to which method produces the keener cutting edge. The "down" method is safer as the tooth cannot be lifted by action of wheel.

**21. To obtain clearances on cutter and reamer teeth when grinding with disk wheels, Fig. 17.** — Set tooth rest at height of work centers with center height gage and center of wheel spindle (dial at zero) in same plane. Then raise wheel (or lower table on some grinders) amount for clearance, as at *A*, *A'* which varies with angle of clearance and diameter of wheel and is calculated by the following formula:

**22. To calculate elevation for Disk Wheels:**

*Formula* = Constant for  $1^\circ$  clearance (.0088")  $\times$  clearance angle  $\times$  diameter of grinding wheel.

*Example.* — To find elevation of wheel center for  $7^\circ$  clearance angle, diameter of grinding wheel 6".

*Solution.* —  $.0088'' \times 7 \times 6 = .3696''$  or  $\frac{3}{8}''$ ; amount to elevate wheel or to lower table.

*Example.* — To find elevation of emery wheel center for  $4^\circ$  clearance angle, diameter of grinding wheel 7".

*Solution.* —  $.0088'' \times 4 \times 7 = .2464''$  or  $\frac{1}{4}''$ ; amount to elevate wheel or to lower table.

*Attention.* — The tooth rest may be lowered to obtain clearance instead of raising wheel or lowering table. Use formula as trial setting only. Test with bevel protractor, Fig. 15, and change elevation if necessary.

**23. To obtain clearances on cutter and reamer teeth when grinding with Cup Wheels, Fig. 18.** — Set wheel (or table) dial at zero. Fasten tooth rest to wheel head (stationary), Fig. 13, and adjust to center height gage. Then lower wheel head (or raise table) amount for clearance, as at A or A' which varies with angle of clearance and diameter of cutter or reamer.

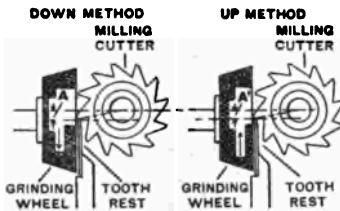


FIG. 18. — CUP WHEEL. RELATION OF TOOTH REST, MILLING CUTTER AND WHEEL TO GRIND TOOTH CLEARANCE.

**24. To calculate distance to lower tooth rest for Cup Wheels.**

*Formula* = Constant for  $1^\circ$  clearance ( $.0088''$ )  $\times$  clearance angle  $\times$  diameter of cutter or reamer.

*Example.* — 1" hand reamer has angle clearance of  $4^\circ$ . Find amount to lower tooth rest.

*Solution.* —  $.0088'' \times 4 \times 1 = .0352''$  or  $\frac{1}{33}'' +$ .

*Example.* — 1" hand reamer has two clearance angles on each land, see p. 811 1st of  $3^\circ$ , 2d of  $6^\circ$ . Find amount to lower tooth rest.

*Solution for  $3^\circ$ .* —  $.0088'' \times 3 \times 1 = .0264''$  or  $\frac{1}{33}'' -$ .

*Solution for  $6^\circ$ .* —  $.0088'' \times 6 \times 1 = .0528''$  or  $\frac{3}{4}'' +$ .



**25. Indexing cutters and reamers.**— To grind the teeth so that each tooth will be a counterpart of the others, the cutter or reamer is indexed from the teeth with the tooth rest. After the tooth rest and cutter are properly adjusted, a tooth is pressed lightly on tooth rest by hand and ground. To grind next tooth, first index by revolving cutter backward against spring tooth rest, then press the tooth to be ground lightly on the tooth rest and grind. Repeat process until all the teeth are ground.

#### PROBLEMS IN CUTTER GRINDING

**26. To grind clearance on teeth of plain milling cutter,** Fig. 19.

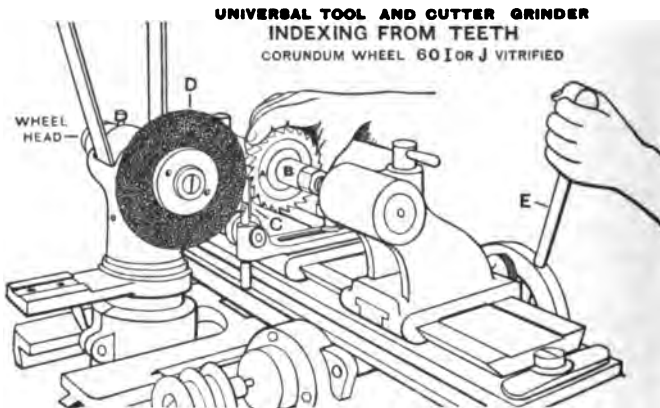


FIG. 19. — GRINDING PLAIN MILLING CUTTER.

**Specifications:** Plain milling cutter  $2\frac{1}{2}'' \times \frac{1}{2}''$ .

**Machine and tools:** Universal tool and cutter grinder, head and footstock, tooth rest and holder, grinding wheel (disk)  $7'' \times \frac{1}{2}''$ , No. 60, Grade *I* or *J*, vitrified. Bevel protractor. Speed of wheel, 5000 F. P.M. Hand feed (lever), 1'' mandrel. Grind dry.

**Time:** 3 min. (once around) with machine "set up."

## SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS

Oil machine.

True wheel. Set machine to grind straight.

I. Hold cutter. Place cutter *A* on plain mandrel *B*, or gang mandrel.

II. Set tooth rest. Clamp tooth-rest holder to table and set tooth rest *C* at height of centers, as in Figs. 11, 12, with center height gage or surface gage, and elevate center of wheel *D*  $\frac{1}{8}$ " above centers for a 7" wheel and a 7° clearance.

III. Grind clearance. Mount work on centers. Start grinding wheel. Press cutter lightly on tooth rest. Move cutter to touch revolving grinding wheel by hand cross-feed wheel and take a cut

of from .002" to .004". With hand long feed *E*, move cutter forward and backward quickly, to grind clearance.

IV. Test angle of clearance.

With bevel protractor, test angle of clearance, as in Fig. 15; if necessary, change height of wheel to get desired clearance.

V. Index. Index cutter to next tooth by revolving it backward against spring tooth rest, then press the tooth to be ground lightly on the tooth rest and grind.

Repeat until all teeth are ground. Take cuts of from .002" to .004" each, and go around at least twice. Clean machine with brush and waste.

*Warning.* — Take several light cuts in preference to one heavy cut that may draw the temper.

*Information.* — There is no standard width of land for the teeth of milling cutters, but cutters not over 3" in diameter are usually milled to give a land of about  $\frac{1}{32}$ " in width, and ground to give a land of about  $\frac{3}{8}$ ".

*Attention.* — Plain cutters that are made in large lots, or

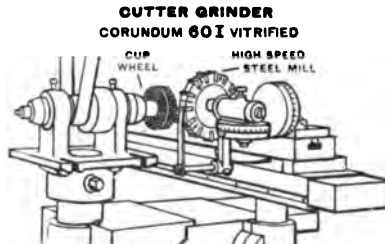


FIG. 20. — GRINDING INSERTED TOOTH MILLING CUTTER.

when used in gang milling, are mounted on a mandrel and rotary-ground to diameter before grinding clearance.

**27. To grind inserted tooth milling cutter, Fig. 20.**

**Specifications:** 8" inserted tooth milling cutter.

**Machine and tools:** Cutter grinder, universal head, tooth rest and holder, grinding wheel (cup) 5", No. 60, Grade I, vitrified.

Speed of wheel, 5000 F.P.M. Hand feed.

True wheel. Set machine to grind straight.

For method of grinding clearance, see p. 814.

**28. To grind radial teeth of side milling cutter, Fig. 21.**

UNIVERSAL TOOL AND CUTTER GRINDING MACHINE  
ALUNDUM WHEEL 60 K VITRIFIED

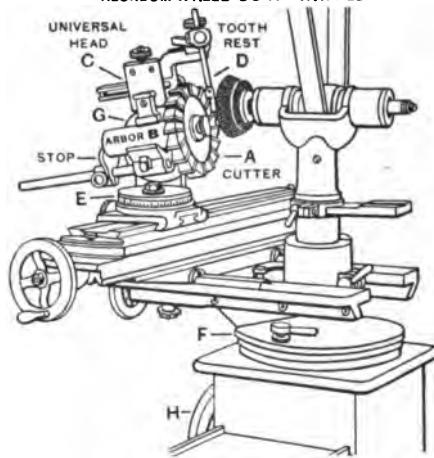


FIG. 21. — GRINDING RADIAL TEETH OF SIDE MILLING CUTTER.

**Specifications:** 3½" side milling cutter.

**Machine and tools:** Universal tool and cutter grinding machine, universal head, tooth rest and holder, grinding wheel (bevel cup) 6" × ½", No. 60, Grade K, vitrified. Bevel protractor.

Speed of wheel, 5000 F.P.M. Hand feed.

True wheel.

Place cutter *A* on arbor *B* and mount in holder in universal head *C* which has both vertical and horizontal adjustments. Adjust tooth rest *D* at same height as center of cutter. Set horizontal swivel *E* about  $\frac{1}{2}^\circ$  away from  $90^\circ$ , knee *F* at  $90^\circ$  and vertical swivel *G*  $4^\circ$  from  $90^\circ$  to give required clearance. Raise wheel by hand wheel *H* to clear tooth below one being ground and move knee  $\frac{1}{2}^\circ$  from  $90^\circ$  to give wheel clearance. Arrange table dogs and grind teeth.

*Attention.* — Grind from  $2^\circ$  to  $4^\circ$  clearance on teeth of side and end mills, and from .001" to .002" concave by setting swivel head  $\frac{1}{2}^\circ$  away from  $90^\circ$ .

*Information.* — When the "lands" of radial teeth become

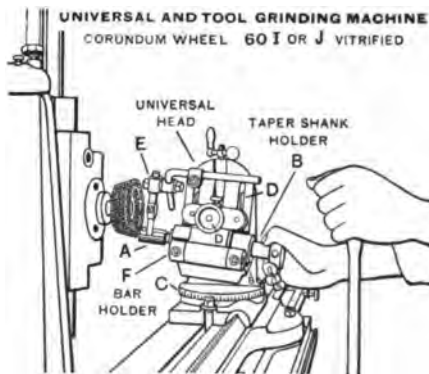


FIG. 22. — GRINDING END MILL.

very wide from frequent grinding, the teeth may be "stocked" or ground by raising the swivel head about  $30^\circ$  and grinding the teeth to a larger angle leaving narrow "lands" to be ground to a smaller angle for clearance.

29. To grind end mill, Fig. 22.

Specifications: 1" end mill.

**Machine and tools:** Universal and tool-grinding machine, universal head, taper shank holder, tooth rest and holder, grinding wheel (bevel cup)  $4'' \times \frac{1}{2}''$ , No. 60, Grade *I* or *J*, vitrified.

Speed of wheel, 5000 F.P.M. Hand feed.

True wheel.

Place shank of mill *A* in taper shank holder *B* and mount in universal head. Set horizontal swivel *C* about  $\frac{1}{2}^\circ$  away from  $90^\circ$ . Set vertical swivel *D* at  $3^\circ$  for clearance. Adjust tooth rest *E* to height of mill center, raise wheel to clear tooth below one being ground and set it  $\frac{1}{4}^\circ$  from  $90^\circ$  for wheel clearance. Arrange table dogs and grind teeth with lever feed.

30. To grind angular cutter, Fig. 23.

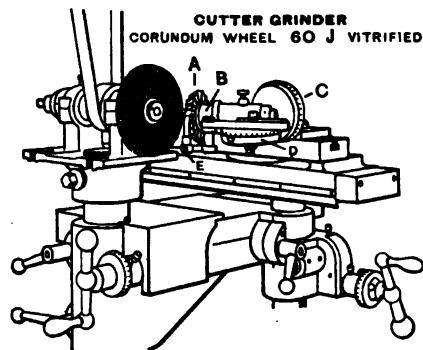


FIG. 23. — GRINDING ANGULAR MILLING CUTTER.

**Specifications:**  $70^\circ$  angular milling cutter.

**Machine and tools:** Cutter grinder, swivel head, tooth rest and holder, grinding wheel (disk)  $6'' \times \frac{1}{2}''$ , No. 60, Grade *J*, vitrified.

Speed of wheel, 5000 F.P.M. Hand feed.

True wheel.

Place cutter *A* on arbor *B* and mount in universal head. Set vertical swivel *C* at  $90^\circ$  and horizontal swivel *D* at  $70^\circ$ . Bolt tooth rest *E* to universal head and set at height of center of cutter. Set cutter below center of wheel spindle for  $6^\circ$  clearance. Set reversing stops and operate machine by lever feed.

*Warning.* — In grinding angular cutters and taper reamers, care should be taken to set the tooth rest the proper height,

for any variation above or below center line of tooth will change angle of cutter or taper of reamer.

*Attention.* — The radial teeth of angular cutters are ground by the same process as the radial teeth of side and end mills, see pp. 816–818.

31. To grind clearance on teeth of spiral milling cutter, Fig. 24.

**Specifications:**  $2\frac{1}{2}'' \times 3''$  spiral milling cutter.

**Machine and tools:** Cutter grinder, head and footstock, split tooth rest and holder, grinding wheel (disk)  $7'' \times \frac{1}{2}''$ , No. 60, Grade I, vitrified. Bevel protractor.

Speed of wheel, 5000 F.P.M. Grind dry.

**Time:** 4 min. (once around), with machine "set up."

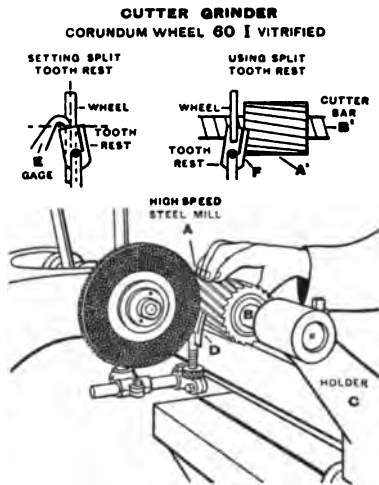


FIG. 24. — GRINDING SPIRAL MILLING CUTTER. INDEXING FROM TEETH.

### SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS

Oil machine.	$\frac{1}{8}''$ below centers for 6" wheel and 6° clearance.
True wheel. Set machine to grind straight. Set center of wheel at height of centers.	
I. Hold cutter. Place cutter A on cutter bar B which is mounted in holder C shown in detail at A', B'.	III. Grind clearance. Start grinding wheel and press mill A firmly against tooth rest F. Move cutter to touch revolving wheel lightly, by hand cross-feed wheel and with other hand, move cutter across face of wheel with a spiral motion, taking care to keep cutter teeth always against tooth rest. Move cutter back still pressing on tooth rest, and index to grind next tooth.
II. Set tooth rest. Clamp tooth-rest holder to wheel head and set tooth rest D at the same angle as spiral of mill and at height of centers, with center height gage E directly opposite the middle of wheel, so that flexible part F will clear the wheel when indexing cutter, then lower center of wheel	Clean machine with brush and waste.

32. To grind hand reamer *A* with Cup Wheel *B*, Fig. 25.

Specifications: 1" solid hand reamer.

Machine and tools: Universal cutter grinder, head and footstock, tooth rest and holder, grinding wheel (cup) 4" diameter, No. 60, Grade *K*, vitrified. Bevel protractor.

Speed of wheel, 5000 F.P.M. Hand feed (lever).

True wheel. Set machine to grind straight.

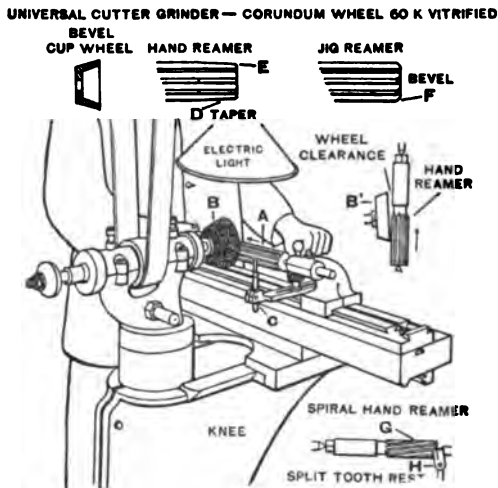


FIG. 25. — GRINDING HAND REAMER WITH CUP WHEEL.

Set knee  $\frac{1}{2}^\circ$  away from center to give wheel *B* clearance, as at *B'*. Set tooth rest *C* at height of centers. Lower tooth rest to give  $4^\circ$  tooth clearance, see p. 813. Mount reamer on centers, adjust and clamp tooth rest.

Grind teeth straight and to required diameter 1.0004". Swivel table to  $1^\circ$  and grind taper *D* on end, a distance equal to diameter of reamer or less. Bevel ends of teeth at *E*. For jig reamers, omit taper but grind bevel on end of teeth, as at *F*.

*Attention.* — To grind the teeth of a spiral hand reamer, as at *G*, holder for split tooth rest *H* is bolted to wheel head. See Fig. 13.

**33. To grind hand reamer *A* with Disk Wheel *B*, Fig. 26.**

**Specifications:** 1" adjustable hand reamer.

**Machine and tools:** Universal grinding machine, head and footstock, tooth rest and holder, grinding wheel (disk) 7"  $\times$   $\frac{1}{2}$ ", No. 60, Grade *I*, vitrified.

Speed of wheel, 5000 F.P.M. Hand feed.

True wheel. Set machine to grind straight.

Set tooth rest *C* at height of centers. Mount reamer on centers, adjust and clamp tooth rest.

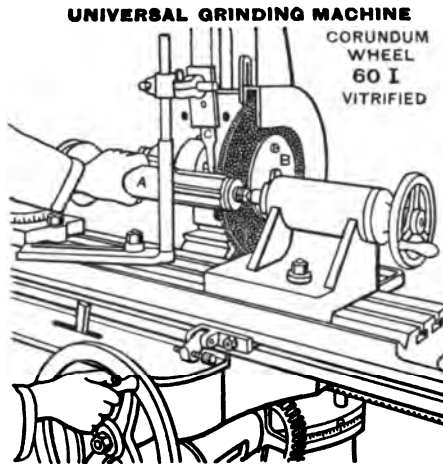


FIG. 26. — GRINDING HAND REAMER.

To obtain clearance, lower centers of wheel spindle below reamer center. Grind teeth straight and to standard diameter by trial cuts, then swivel table 1° and grind end of teeth taper, see *D*, Fig. 25, a distance from end equal to diameter of reamer or less.

**34. To oilstone reamer for clearance and size, Fig. 27. —** Hand reamers are often ground cylindrically true .0001" to .0004" oversize, then ground for clearance almost to edge and stoned to size, as follows: Hold reamer *A* in vise between copper jaws and stone each blade with oilstone *B*, used as in draw filing. Stone heel of tooth first then gradually approach



to cutting edge. Ream hole and test with standard plug gage. Repeat process until hole fits gage.

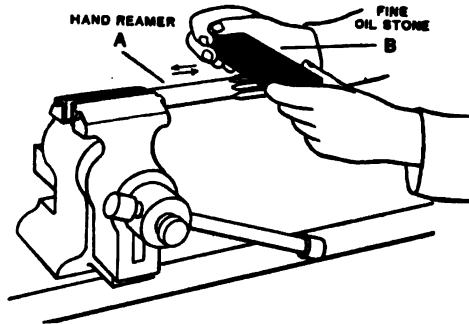


FIG. 27. — STONING REAMER TO SIZE.

35. To grind taper reamer *A*, Fig. 28.

Specifications: No. 3 Morse standard taper reamer.

Machine and tools: Cutter grinding machine, head and footstock, tooth rest and holder, grinding wheel (disk) 6"

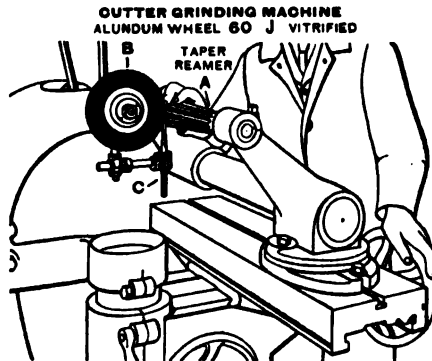


FIG. 28. — GRINDING TAPER REAMER.

$\times \frac{1}{2}$ ", No. 60, Grade *J*, vitrified. No. 3 Morse standard taper ring gage.

Speed of wheel, 5000 F.P.M. Hand feed.

True wheel.

Set center of wheel *B* at height of centers and machine to grind taper. Clamp tooth-rest holder to wheel head and set tooth rest *C* at height of centers. Mount reamer on centers, lower wheel head for clearance. Set dogs to limit stroke, press reamer on tooth rest and grind.

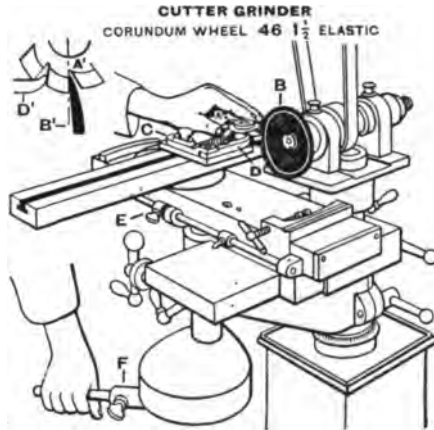


FIG. 29. — GRINDING GEAR CUTTER.

**36. To grind gear cutter (formed cutter), Fig. 29.**

**Specifications:** No. 4, 10 pitch gear cutter.

**Machine and tools:** Cutter grinder, gear cutter grinding attachment, grinding wheel (dish) 6", No. 46, Grade 1½, elastic.

Speed of wheel, 5000 F.P.M. Hand feed.

True wheel.

Grind gear cutter *A*, *A'* with wheel *B*. Fasten gear cutter grinding attachment *C* to table and mount cutter upon it. Set knee at slight angle to axis of wheel spindle to bring edge of wheel in contact only, as at *B'*. Set cutting edge of wheel in same plane with center of cutter with special gage or straight edge, grind teeth radially. Set pawl tooth rest *D* and *D'* against back of tooth and adjust until tooth is radial, then clamp. Adjust stop *E* to limit travel so that wheel will just touch bottom of groove. To grind, press

cutter lightly against tooth rest *D* and operate lever feed *F*. To index to next tooth, move cutter back with lever *F*, revolve cutter away from tooth rest *D*, then again press lightly against tooth rest *D* and grind. Take light cuts and go around twice, if necessary, rather than one heavy cut that may draw the temper.

*Attention.* — The teeth of formed cutters should be ground radially and equidistantly or they will not cut correct form.

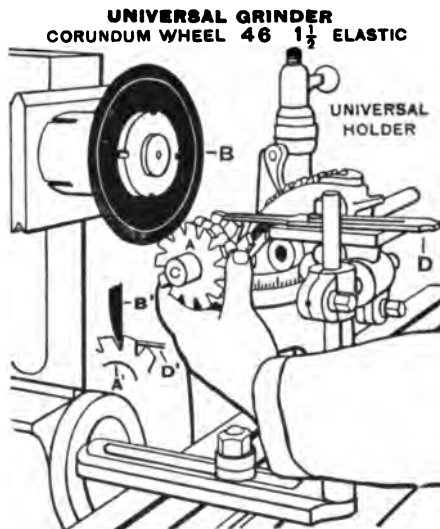


FIG. 30. — GRINDING FORMED CUTTER.

**37. To grind formed cutter, Fig. 30.**

**Specifications:**  $\frac{1}{2}$ " formed concave cutter.

**Machine and tools:** Cutter grinder, universal head, tooth rest and holder, grinding wheel (dish) 6", No. 46, Grade  $1\frac{1}{2}$ , elastic.

Speed of wheel, 5000 F.P.M. Hand feed.

True wheel. Set machine to grind straight.

Mount cutter *A* on centers and wheel *B* on spindle, or mount work on bar *C* and hold in universal head. Clamp tooth rest *D*, *D'* to table and adjust to grind teeth radially.

38. To sharpen tap, Fig. 31.

Specifications:  $\frac{3}{4}$ "  $\times$  10 U. S. S. tap.

Machine and tools: Universal cutter grinder, universal head, tooth rest and holder, grinding wheel (round face), 6"  $\times$   $\frac{1}{2}$ ", No. 80, Grade J, vitrified.

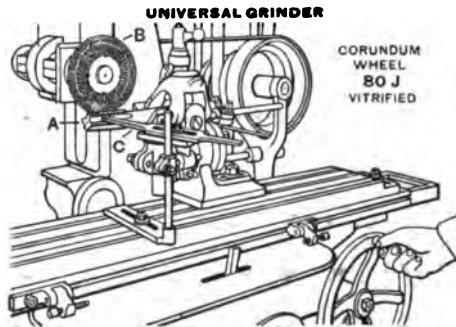


FIG. 31. — SHARPENING TAP.

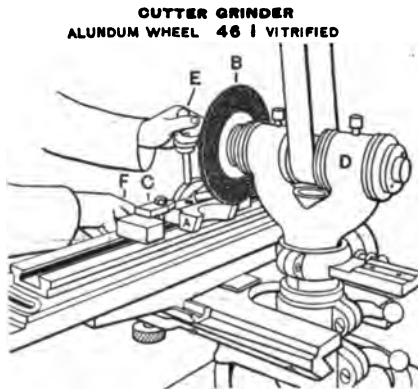


FIG. 32. — GRINDING FLAT CUTTER.

Speed of wheel, 5000 F.P.M. Hand feed.

True wheel. Set machine to grind straight.

Mount tap A in universal head or on centers. Use thin rounded-face wheel B. Clamp tooth rest C to table and adjust so that teeth will be ground radially. Use hand feed.

**39. To grind flat cutter, Fig. 32.**

**Specifications:**  $1\frac{1}{2}$ " radius flat cutter.

**Machine and tools:** Cutter grinder, clamps, grinding wheel (disk)  $6'' \times \frac{1}{2}''$ , No. 46, Grade I, vitrified.

Speed of wheel, 5000 F.P.M. Hand feed.

True wheel.

Fasten cutter firmly to table by clamps *C*. Set wheel head *D* at right angles to table, lower wheel until it just touches work and grind with lever feed *E* and cross feed *F*.



FIG. 33. — GRINDING CONVEX CUTTER.

**40. To grind convex cutter, Fig. 33.**

**Specifications:** Convex cutter.

**Machine and tools:** Cutter grinder, circular attachment, tooth rest and holder, grinding wheel (concave)  $7'' \times \frac{1}{2}''$ , No. 60, Grade K, vitrified.

Speed of wheel, 5000 F.P.M. Hand feed.

True and shape wheel.

Convex cutter *A* is ground with wheel *B* and circular attachment *C* which is for grinding convex and concave

cutters. First true wheel to radius to be ground with carbon point *D* and holder *E* clamped in position at *E'*.

Mount cutter in position and set tooth rest *F* height of center of work. Locate wheel and cutter for clearance and bring center of radius to be ground directly over center of pivoting point of attachment. Grind teeth with light cuts, feed at *G*, and swing handle *H*.

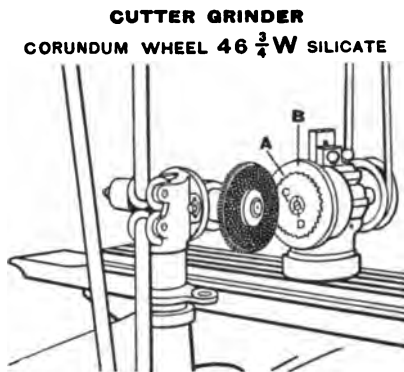


FIG. 34. — GRINDING SIDE OF SLITTING SAW.

**41. To grind sides of slitting saw, Fig. 34.**

**Specifications:**  $6'' \times \frac{1}{8}''$  slitting saw.

**Machine and tools:** Cutter grinder, headstock, expansion bushing, grinding wheel (bevel disk)  $8'' \times \frac{3}{8}''$ , No. 46, Grade  $\frac{3}{4} W$ , silicate. Micrometer.

Speed of wheel, 5000 F.P.M. Speed of work, 50 F.P.M. Automatic feed.

True wheel.

Mount slitting saw *A* on face chuck *B* and hold in place by expansion bushing *C* which is expanded by screw *D*, or use a magnetic rotary chuck. Swivel wheel head  $\frac{1}{2}^\circ$  to grind concave to give saw clearance. Set stops and grind.

*Attention.* — The sides of plain milling cutters are ground by the same process.

**42. To grind caliper gage, Fig. 35.**  
**Specifications: 6" caliper gage.**

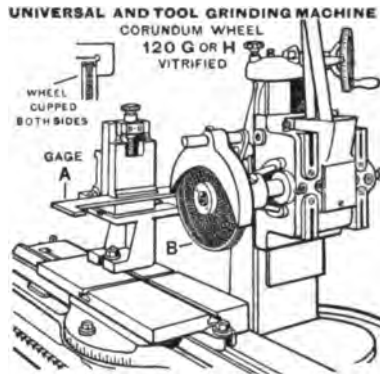


FIG. 35. — GRINDING CALIPER GAGE.

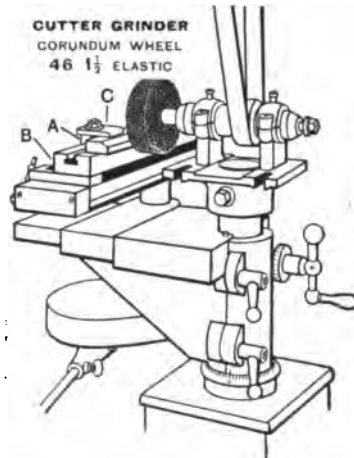


FIG. 36. — GRINDING STRAIGHT EDGE.

**Machines and tools:** Cutter grinder, vise and fixture, grinding wheel (double cup) 7"  $\times$   $\frac{3}{4}$ ", No. 120, Grade *G* or *H*, vitrified. Inside micrometer gage.

Speed of wheel, 5000 F.P.M. Hand feed.

True wheel. Set machine to grind straight.

Grind gage *A*, with double-cup wheel *B*. Set wheel-center height of center of work and grind both ends without moving in vise. A small hole is drilled in corners of gage for wheel clearance.

**43. To grind straight edge, Fig. 36.**

**Specifications:** 12" × 1½" beveled straight edge.

**Machine and tools:** Cutter grinder, clamps, grinding wheel (cup) 6" × ½", No. 46, Grade 1½, elastic.

Speed of wheel, 5000 F.P.M. Speed of work, 50 F.P.M. Hand feed.

True wheel. Set machine to grind straight.

Mount straight edge *A* on table *B* and hold by clamps *C*, swivel knee ½° so that only edge of wheel will come in contact with work. Grind to finish without removing work.

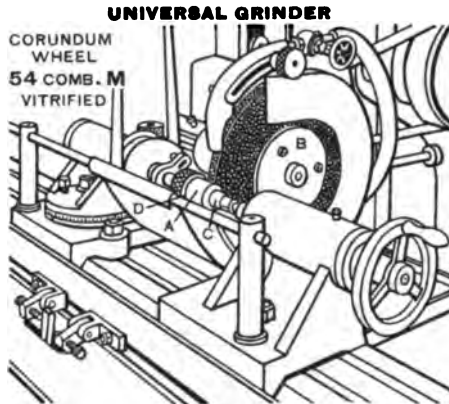


FIG. 37. — GRINDING JIG BUSHING.

**44. To grind jig bushing, Fig. 37.**

**Specifications:** ¾" jig bushing.

**Machine and tools:** Universal grinder, grinding wheel (disk) 10" × ½", No. 54 Comb., Grade *M*, vitrified. Micrometer.



Speed of wheel, 5000 F.P.M. Speed of work, 50 F.P.M.  
Automatic feed.

True wheel. Set machine to grind straight.

Bushing *A* is ground with wheel *B*. Press mandrel *C* into bushing, mount on centers and grind as in plain cylindrical grinding. A groove is cut in bushing at *D* for wheel clearance.

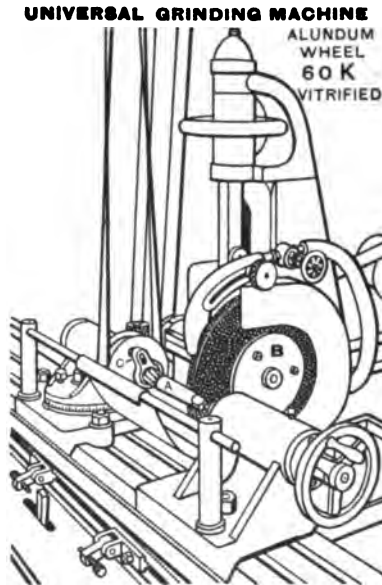


FIG. 38. — GRINDING TAPER SHANK OF END MILL.

45. To grind taper shank of end mill, Fig. 38.

Specifications: 1" end mill, Morse taper No. 2.

Machine and tools: Universal grinding machine, aloxite or alundum wheel (disk) 12"  $\times$   $\frac{1}{2}$ ", No. 60, Grade K, vitrified. Taper gage. Prussian blue.

Speed of wheel, 5000 F.P.M. Speed of work, 50 F.P.M.  
Automatic feed.

True wheel.

Shank of end mill *A* is ground with wheel *B*. Mount on

centers with dog *C*. Set table to required taper and adjust table dogs.

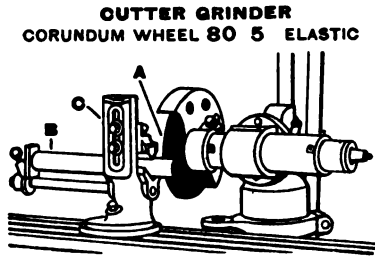


FIG. 39. — CUTTING OFF TUBING.

46. To cut off tubing, Fig. 39.

Specifications: 1" tubing.

Machine and tools: Cutter grinder, special holder, grinding wheel (thin  $\frac{1}{8}$ " ) 7"  $\times$   $\frac{1}{8}$ ", No. 80, Grade 5, elastic.

Speed of wheel, 5000 F.P.M.

True wheel *A*. Set machine to grind straight.

Mount tubing *B* in holder *C*. Start machine and feed by hand.

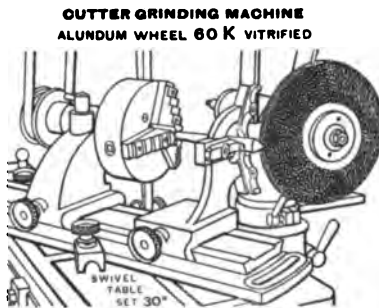


FIG. 40. — GRINDING HARDENED LATHE CENTER.

47. To grind hardened lathe center, Fig. 40.

Specifications: Hardened engine lathe center, Morse taper No. 2. Center gage.

**Machines and tools:** Cutter grinding machine, universal chuck, steady rest, grinding wheel (disk) 10"  $\times$   $\frac{1}{2}$ ", No. 60, Grade K, vitrified.

Speed of wheel, 5000 F.P.M. Speed of work, 50 F.P.M.

True wheel.

Set swivel table at 30°, mount center in universal chuck and steady rest, as shown, and use automatic or hand feed. Test with center gage.

# ADVANCED MACHINE WORK

## SECTION 9

### PLANING

**Planers. Cutting Speeds and Feeds. Cutting Tools. Horizontal, Vertical and Angular Planing. Measuring Work. Holding Work, and Problems in Planing. Fixtures, Vises and Jigs. Shapers.**

#### PLANERS

**1. The planer bears the same relation to plane or flat surfaces that the lathe does to cylindrical surfaces.** — The larger part of planer information and skill consists of setting up the work. The tools and cutting angles are similar to those of lathe tools.

**2. The three general methods of holding work are the mechanical, magnetic and physical.**

*The mechanical method* is holding work by clamps and bolts, fixtures, jigs or shoes, vises or chucks, and applies to the larger part of planer work. See pp. 913-917, 921-933.

*The magnetic method* is holding work by magnetic chucks. See pp. 624, 625.

*The physical method* is holding work by cementing with cement, shellac or resin. See p. 920.

**3. Types of planers.** — There are two leading designs of planers, which are distinguished by their driving mechanisms: The spur-gear type and the spiral-gear type. The size of planers is designated by the size of the work that it will plane.

**4. The spur-gear type planer table** is driven by a spur gear which meshes with a rack on bottom of table, and with a pinion on the driving shaft on the outer end of which are tight and loose pulleys driven by open and crossed belts from countershaft.

5. The spiral-gear type planer table is driven by a spiral gear which meshes with a rack on bottom of table. The spiral-gear shaft is connected to driving shaft by bevel gears. The rest of the mechanism is similar to the spur-gear planer.

6. Planer, spur-gear drive, described, Fig. 1.

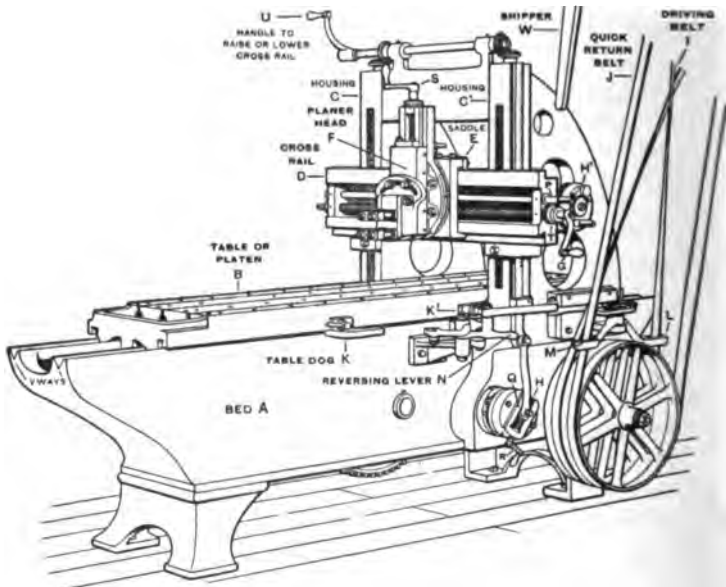


FIG. 1. — PLANER, SPUR-GEAR MECHANISM.

#### SCHEDULE OF PARTS

<i>A</i> — Bed.	<i>E</i> — Saddle moved along cross rail by hand or power.
<i>B</i> — Table operated by rack, gears, belts, slides in scraped <i>V</i> ways of bed, holds work and performs cutting movement.	<i>F</i> — Planer head.
<i>CC'</i> — Housings or posts.	<i>G</i> — Handle to operate horizontal feed screw, gives hand, horizontal or cross feed.
<i>D</i> — Cross rail may be raised or lowered and clamped to housings.	<i>HH'</i> — Power-feed mechanism. Friction feed disk, pawl and ratchet.

*I* — Driving belt (one speed), tight and loose pulley counter-shaft.

*J* — Quick return belt (return speed 3 to 1).

*KK'* — Table dogs, reverse motion of table and are located to give desired length of stroke.

*LM* — Belt shifters.

*N* — Reversing lever to reverse motion of table; operated by hand or dogs *KK'*.

*P* — Vertical and angular feed shaft turned with handle *G*, placed on end.

*Q* — Feed rod pin.

*R* — Feed adjusting handle. To obtain power horizontal feed,

move pin *Q* off center to right or left, depending on whether cut is right or left, and drop pawl *H* in ratchet. The amount of cut depends on distance *Q* is removed off center.

*S* — Hand vertical feed. Some provided with dial to read to thousandths.

*T* — Feed gear. To obtain power vertical and angular feed place gear *T* on shaft *P*, adjust pin *Q* for desired number of teeth fed and drop in pawl *H*. May feed tool downward or upward.

*U* — Handle for raising and lowering cross rail.

*W* — Shipper.

7. Planer head and mechanism for cutting tool, Fig. 2.

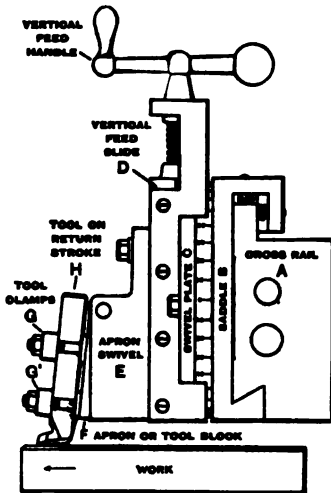


FIG. 2. — PLANER HEAD.

SCHEDULE OF PARTS

- A* — Cross rail.
- B* — Saddle.
- C* — Swivel plate.
- D* — Vertical feed slide.
- E* — Apron swivel or clapper box.
- F* — Apron or tool block, hinged to relieve tool on return stroke.
- GG'* — Tool clamps. (Used on large planers. Tool post used on small planers.)
- H* — Tool.

8. **Large planers** are often equipped with two heads mounted upon the cross rail. Two other heads are mounted upon the housings so that work may be planed upon the top and both sides at the same time. Special designs are made for wide and extra-heavy work. Open side planers are obtainable for planing the ends of beams, frames and edges of steel or iron plates, and for other work that will not pass between the double housings or posts of an ordinary planer. The outer end may be supported upon an eye-beam which is mounted upon rollers running upon an improvised track.

#### CUTTING SPEEDS AND FEEDS

9. **Cutting speed (F.P.M.).** — Ordinary planers are belted to give one cutting speed only. Cast iron may be planed with carbon-steel tools at about 25 feet per minute, steel, wrought iron and bronze, at 17 feet per minute. When both iron and steel have to be planed on the same planer, as is usually the case, a cutting speed of about 20 feet is used. With high-speed tools, these speeds may be increased from 50 per cent to 100 per cent. For brass, composition and softer metals it is customary to use a planer speeded for cast iron. Variable-speed planers are obtainable which give changes of speed from 15 feet to 70 feet per minute. Variable-speed countershafts for a single-speed planer are obtainable.

10. **Feed** is obtained by a feed ratchet and pawl. The amount of feed 1 tooth on ratchet gives varies with the planer.

Cast iron may be rough planed with as deep a cut as the machine will carry. The finishing cut with a broad-nose tool should be light, from .005" to .010" in depth, with a feed nearly equal to the width of tool. Steel, wrought iron and aluminum are rough planed with a diamond-point or roughing tool in about the same manner as cast iron except that a little less depth of cut and a finer feed are used. For finish planing, use tools with narrow cutting edges, fine feed, 1 or 2 teeth, cut .005" to .010" in depth, with or without lubricant. See Table of Lubricants, p. 149.

## CUTTING TOOLS









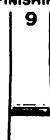















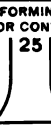
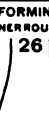
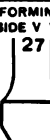


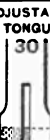


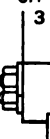



<b>CHART OF FORGED PLANER TOOLS HIGH SPEED OR CARBON STEEL</b>					
<b>RIGHT DIAMOND POINT</b> 1 	<b>RIGHT HALF DIAMOND POINT</b> 2 	<b>LARGE ROUGHING</b> 3 	<b>SMALL LEFT ROUGHING</b> 4 	<b>ROUGHING GROUND FROM BAR</b> 5 	<b>ROUGHING FOR CAST IRON</b> 6 
<b>ROUND NOSE</b> 7 	<b>LARGE ROUND NOSE</b> 8 	<b>LARGE FINISHING</b> 9 	<b>SMALL FINISHING</b> 10 	<b>SHEAR FINISHING</b> 11 	<b>LEFT CUTTING DOWN</b> 12 
<b>LARGE CUTTING DOWN</b> 13 	<b>RIGHT SIDE</b> 14 	<b>CUTTING OFF</b> 15 	<b>BEVEL ROUGHING LEFT BENT</b> 16 	<b>BEVEL FINISHING LEFT BENT</b> 17 	<b>RIGHT SIDE BENT OUTWARD</b> 18 
<b>RIGHT SIDE BENT INWARD</b> 19 	<b>SPRING FINISHING</b> 20 SIDE VIEW 	<b>SHAFT KEY WAY</b> 21 	<b>HUB KEY WAY</b> 22 	<b>TEE SLOTTING LEFT BENT</b> 23 	<b>FORMING FOR CONCAVE</b> 24 
<b>FORMING FOR CONVEX</b> 25 	<b>FORMING CORNER ROUNDING</b> 26 	<b>FORMING INSIDE V WAY</b> 27 	<b>FORMING OUTSIDE V WAY</b> 28 	<b>ADJUSTABLE GROOVE</b> 29 	<b>ADJUSTABLE TONGUE</b> 30 
<b>TOOL HOLDERS FOR VARIOUS FORMS OF HIGH SPEED STEEL CUTTERS</b>					
<b>DIAMOND POINT OR ROUND NOSE</b> 1 	<b>SWIVEL HEAD BEVEL</b> 2 	<b>CUTTING OFF</b> 3 	<b>GANG ROUGHING</b> 4 	<b>COMB. HOLDER LEFT SIDE</b> 5 	<b>SPRING FORMING</b> 6 

FIG. 3.



11. Planer cutting tools.— Chart of planer tools (forged and



FIG. 4.— LEFT DIAMOND-POINT PLANER TOOL.

tool holders and cutters) is shown in Fig. 3. They have the same rake for cutting different metals as lathe tools but less clearance ( $3^{\circ}$  to  $5^{\circ}$ ), Fig. 4, and are made heavier and stiffer.

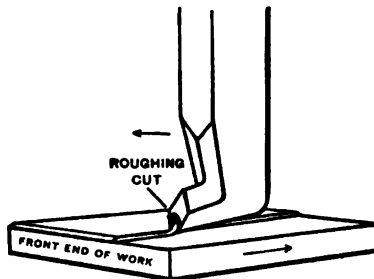


FIG. 5.— ROUGH PLANING CAST IRON WITH LEFT DIAMOND-POINT TOOL.

HORIZONTAL, VERTICAL AND ANGULAR PLANING

12. Left diamond-point tool set to rough plane a horizontal surface on cast iron, Fig. 5.— Set tool perpendicular to table. Feed from 2 to 4 teeth.

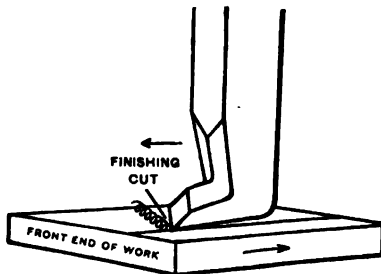


FIG. 6.— FINISHING STEEL OR WROUGHT IRON WITH LEFT DIAMOND-POINT TOOL.

13. Diamond-point tool to finish plane steel or wrought iron, Fig. 6.— Feed 1 or 2 teeth. Cut  $.005''$  to  $.015''$  in depth. With or without lubricant.

14. Round-nose tool set to rough plane a horizontal surface on cast iron or brass, Fig. 7. — Set tool perpendicular to table. Feed from 2 to 4 teeth.

15. Small square-nose tool to finish plane cast iron or brass, Fig. 8. — Feed from 4 to 8 teeth. Cut .005" to .015" in depth.

*For a coarse feed,* set cutting edge parallel to table, or line of feed.

*For a fine feed,* round bottom face slightly by grinding and oilstoning, and set corner *A* slightly lower than corner *B* to drag and give smoother cut. The feed must be less than the width of the cut.

16. Spring tool to finish plane cast iron, Fig. 9. — Set tool the same as in Fig. 8. Feed from 8 to 12 teeth ( $\frac{3}{8}$ " to  $\frac{1}{2}$ " wide). Cut about .003" in depth.

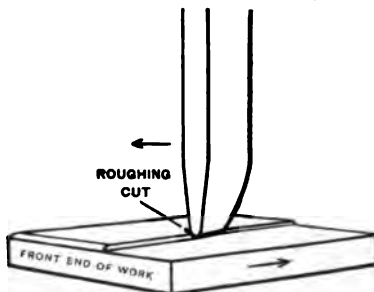


FIG. 7. — ROUGH PLANING CAST IRON WITH ROUND-NOSE TOOL.

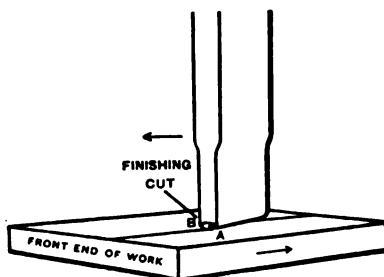


FIG. 8. — FINISHING CAST IRON WITH SQUARE-NOSE TOOL.

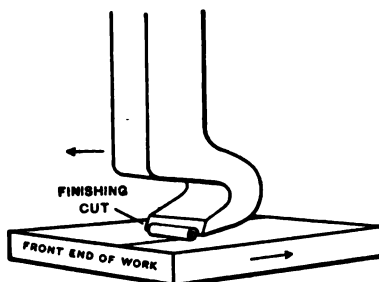


FIG. 9. — FINISHING CAST IRON WITH SPRING TOOL.

17. Fine versus coarse feed for finishing cut. — If a surface is to be filed, scraped or fitted, finish nearly to size with a light cut and fine feed. When true surfaces only are required, use light cut and coarse feed.

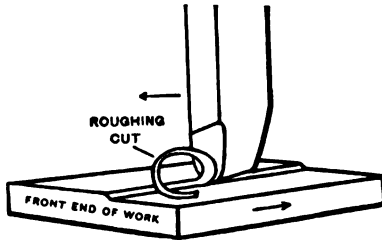


FIG. 10. — ROUGH PLANING STEEL OR WROUGHT IRON WITH ROUGHING TOOL.

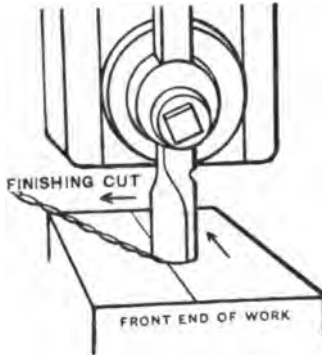


FIG. 11. — SHEAR TOOL FINISHING STEEL OR WROUGHT IRON.

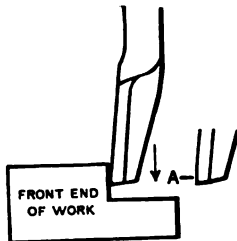


FIG. 12. — FINISHING VERTICAL SURFACE WITH SIDE TOOL.

18. Roughing tool to rough plane steel or wrought iron, Fig. 10. — Dry or with oil. Feed 1 to 3 teeth.

19. Shear tool to finish plane steel or wrought iron, Fig. 11. — It is forged with a twisted blade. The edge is ground and oilstoned to an arc of a 3" circle with clearance. Used with lard oil or soda water. Feed 1 tooth. Cut .003" in depth. See Helical Milling Cutter, pp. 1047, 1048.

20. Side tool to finish plane vertical or angular surfaces, Fig. 12. — Bevel point A to produce a smooth surface. Feed downward by power or hand.

21. Holders and cutters (high-speed steel), Figs. 13, 14, 15. — Used for horizontal, vertical and angular planing.



FIG. 13. — HORIZONTAL PLANING. TOOL HOLDER AND HIGH-SPEED STEEL CUTTER.



FIG. 14. — VERTICAL PLANING.



FIG. 15. — ANGULAR PLANING.

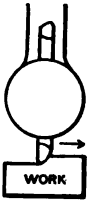


FIG. 16. — HORIZONTAL PLANING. SPECIAL TOOL HOLDER.

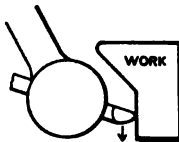


FIG. 17. — VERTICAL PLANING.

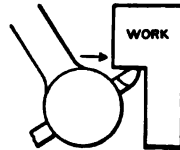


FIG. 18. — UNDER-CUT PLANING.

22. Special holder and cutter (high-speed steel), Figs. 16, 17, 18. — Used for horizontal, vertical, angular and undercut planing.

23. To set planer in alinement. — *Approximate method.* Unclamp bolts back of rail. Lower rail nearly to work, then raise it about 1" above work to take out back lash, leave handle up, and clamp.

*Accurate method.* Test table at both sides with micrometer, as in Fig. 19. If the two readings show a difference, loosen bolts at back of rail, adjust one of the bevel gears on horizontal shaft at top of posts and repeat the whole operation.

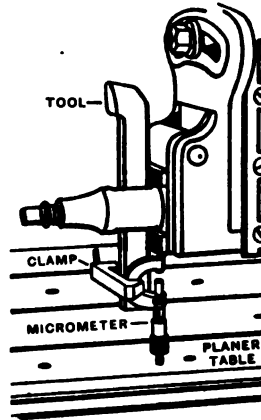


FIG. 19. — SETTING PLANER CROSS RAIL IN ALINEMENT.

Other methods of testing are: To lower cross rail on parallel, or test with surface gage and paper, or test with tool held in tool post and paper.

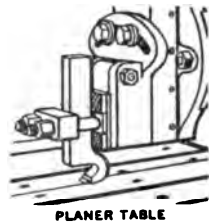


FIG. 20. — REDRESSING PLANER TABLE WITH SPRING FINISHING TOOL.

24. Redress planer or shaper table with a spring tool, Fig. 20, with a light cut,  $.003''$  to  $.005''$  in depth, and a very coarse feed, when it has become bruised and uneven from careless handling of work, fixtures, hammering or wear.

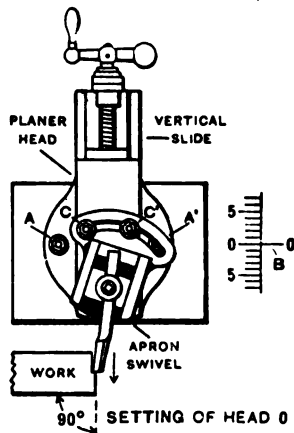


FIG. 21. — HEAD AND APRON SWIVEL SET FOR VERTICAL PLANING.

25. To set planer head and apron swivel to plane vertical surface, Fig. 21. — Release bolts  $A$ ,  $A'$  and adjust head until zero lines coincide, as at  $B$ , then clamp. Release bolts  $C$ ,  $C'$  and swing apron swivel away from surface to be planed in

order that tool, as it lifts on the backward stroke, will move away from the vertical face of work. Work should never be planed vertically if it can be held and planed horizontally.

26. To set planer head and apron swivel for angular planing, Figs. 22, 23.—Release bolts and swing head to

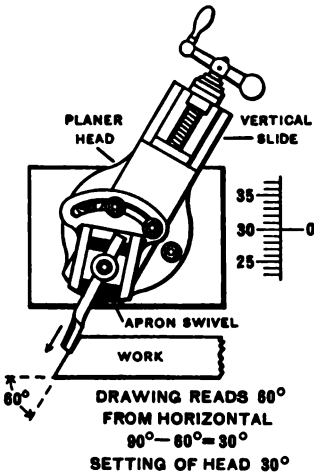


FIG. 22.—HEAD AND APRON SWIVEL SET FOR ANGULAR PLANING.

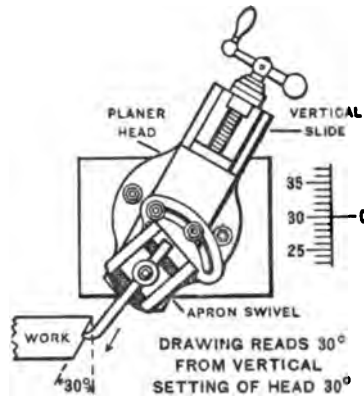


FIG. 23.—HEAD AND APRON SWIVEL SET FOR INSIDE BEVEL PLANING.

required angle and clamp; then swing apron swivel away from surface to be planed and clamp.

27. Planer head graduated to read from vertical.—On most American planers and shapers if drawing reads an angle of 60° from horizontal, the head is set to read 30°, as in Fig. 22. If drawing reads 30° from vertical, the head is set to read 30°, as in Fig. 23.

28. Planer head graduated to read from horizontal.—On planers and shapers where the zero line and 90° graduation coincide, when the slide is vertical, reverse above rule.

## MEASURING WORK

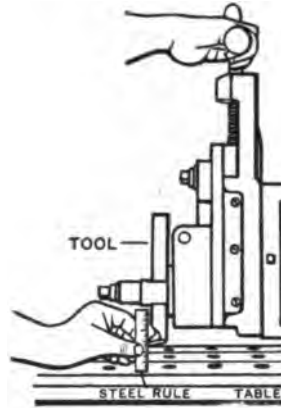


FIG. 24. — STEEL RULE TO SET PLANER TOOL.

29. Use steel rule to set planer tool, Fig. 24, to give results that will compare with those obtained with spring calipers in lathe work.



FIG. 25. — GAGE BLOCK TO SET PLANER TOOL.

30. Use gage block to set planer tool, Fig. 25, to give results that will compare with those obtained with microm-

eter in lathe work. To set tool, feed it down until the block will slide between the table and tool point, touching tool lightly. To plane a piece .001" thicker than the gage, .001" tissue paper is placed between gage and tool. Tissue paper of suitable thickness is often used with gage when there is danger of tool pulling into the work by springing or by looseness in head. See pp. 928, 929.

Set of gage blocks for use on planer work is shown in Fig. 26.



FIG. 26. — GAGE BLOCKS.

#### HOLDING WORK, AND PROBLEMS IN PLANING

31. Planer parallels are often necessary to level work. They are made of cast iron in pairs of equal width, thickness and length, Fig. 27.

32. Iron clamps for planers and shapers are used in a great variety of shapes also with bolts, blocking and leveling jacks for clamping work to fixture or to table. See Figs. 28, 33.



FIG. 27. — PLANER PARALLELS.

33. Step blocking and leveling jacks are convenient for blocking up the end of a clamp or to level work. See Fig. 28, also Figs. 39, 41.

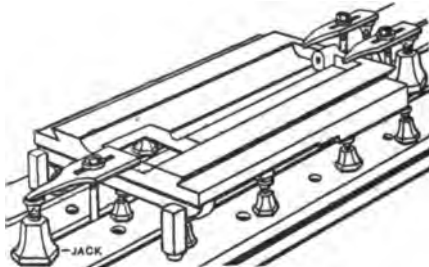
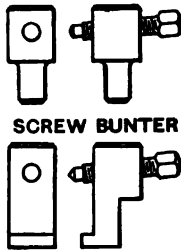


FIG. 28. — LEVELING WORK WITH PLANER JACKS.



34. Planer bolts of different lengths with square and Tee-shaped heads, long threads and a variety of washers, are necessary. Studs and Tee nuts are a good substitute for bolts.

35. Screw pins and screw bunters, Fig. 29, are used in various ways to fasten planer work to table. The circular portion of the screw pin fits the hole in the table and the



SCREW BUNTER

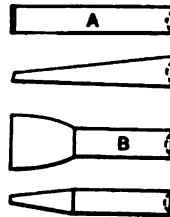


FIG. 29. — SCREW PIN AND SCREW BUNTER.

FIG. 30. — FINGERS OR TOE DOGS.

squared portion is drilled and tapped, preferably at an angle of from 5° to 10°, to receive a set screw. The screw bunter fits the Tee slot.

36. Fingers or toe dogs, Fig. 30, are used with screw pins or bunters to fasten thin work to planer table.



FIG. 31. — METHODS OF CLAMPING WORK. GOOD AND BAD. DIFFERENT KINDS OF PLANER BOLTS.

37. Good and bad methods of clamping or strapping work to table, Fig. 31. — Always place blocking A farther away from bolt B than work C, so that the most pressure will come on work.

38. Holding rectangular or oblong work by bedding on table with a tongue or rib fixture, A, bunters B, fingers C and

thrust pin *D*, Fig. 32. — The tongue fixture is clamped in the long Tee slot in table. To be sure that work is properly

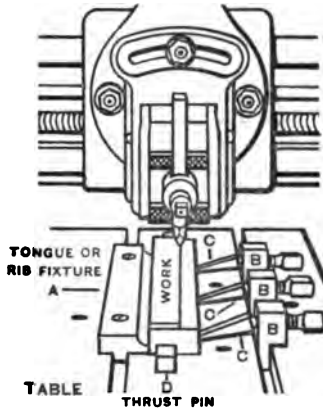


FIG. 32. — PLANING WORK BEDDED TO TABLE.

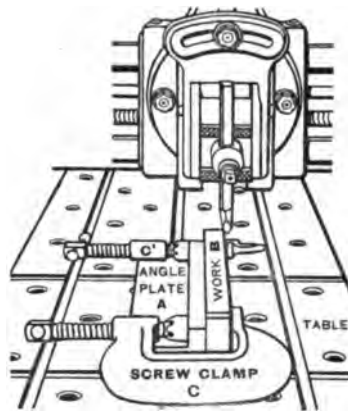


FIG. 33. — PLANING WORK CLAMPED TO ANGLE PLATE.

bedded to table gently pound it to seat with lead hammer during and after tightening screws. Tightening screws too hard will lift the work. When taking heavy roughing cuts,

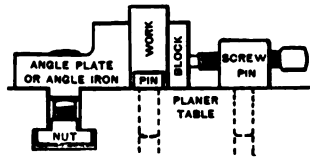


FIG. 34. — SCREW PIN FOR CLAMPING WORK AGAINST ANGLE PLATE.

apron swivel should be swung a little away from the direction of feed so that tool will not bear excessively on return stroke.

39. Angle plate (angle iron), *A*, Fig. 33, has planed surfaces at right angles ( $90^\circ$ ). To plane edges, hold work *B* by clamps *C*, *C'*, or by block and screw pins, Fig. 34.

40. Tee fixture for holding work at right angle, *A*, Fig. 35, clamped to table by bolts *B*, *B'*. Its front face is at right

angle to edge of table. The work *C* is held by clamps *D* and *E*. The vertical face *F* is planed with cutting-down tool *G*. Use fine feed.

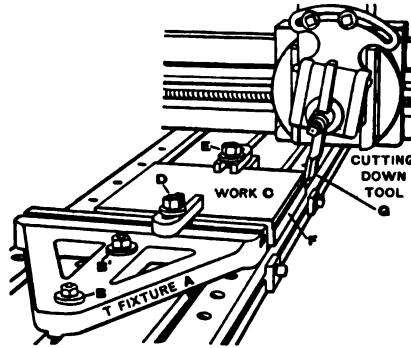


FIG. 35.—PLANING WORK AT A RIGHT ANGLE HELD BY TEE FIXTURE

41. **Adjustable tongue fixture.** — In Fig. 36 is a tongue fixture in two parts, *A* and *A'*, for holding thin work of any length. Work is held against stop *B* and fastened by screw stops *C*, *C'* and wedges *D*, *D'*.

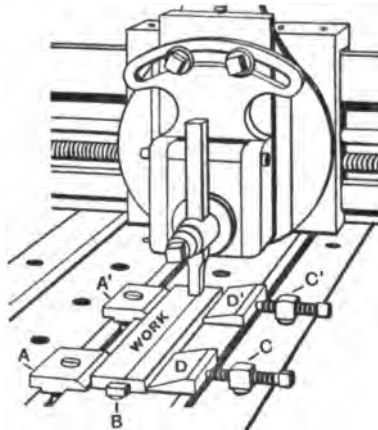


FIG. 36.—TO HOLD THIN WORK OF ANY LENGTH.

42. **Beveling thin work.** — Any thin work, as gib *A*, may be beveled with a bent side tool *B*, as in Fig. 37.

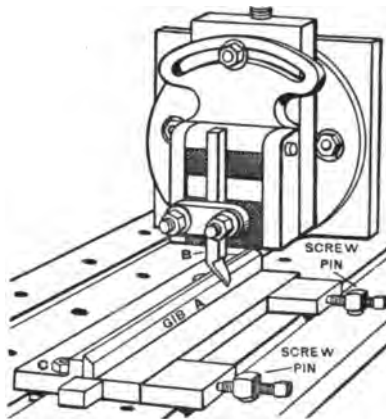


FIG. 37. — PLANING BEVEL WITH BENT SIDE TOOL.

**43. To plane taper parallels or wedges, a taper shoe is supplied which is adjusted to give any desired taper in inches per foot.**

**Feed at beginning or end of cut.** — The feed movement of the tool should be arranged to take place at the beginning or at the end of the cut, but not during the cut. For general work either end will do. For accurately finishing broad surfaces it is best to feed just before beginning the cut (although the cutting stroke is longer) as the drag of the tool on the return stroke wears the tool less.

**Direction of feed or cut.** — In horizontal planing the tool may be fed either away from the operator by using a left tool, or toward the operator by using a right tool. The general practice is to feed away from the operator, as in Figs. 5, 6, 32, 33. In vertical and angular planing, the tool is fed downward as in Figs. 21, 22, 23.

**Beveling end of castings.** — At end of cut on iron castings, steel castings or brittle alloy castings, the pressure of the tool will break off the metal deeper than the planed surface. To avoid this, file or chip a bevel to depth of cut, as in Figs. 32, 33. Small work may be held and beveled at the vise, and large work, after it is clamped to the planer.

44. To plane rectangular work clamped to planer table, Fig. 38.

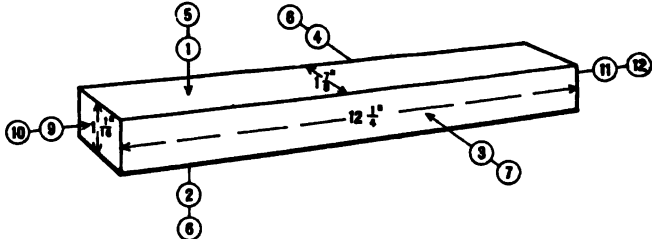


FIG. 38. — SCHEDULE DRAWING.

**Specification:** Material, iron casting  $\frac{1}{8}$ " large, free from visible defects; weight, 7 lbs. 14 oz. Hardness, 23 to 35 (scleroscope).

High-speed steel cutting tools. Speed, 22 to 30 F.P.M.

**Time:** Study drawing and schedule in advance, 10 min. — Oil

planer, 8 min. — "Set up" tongue and angle plate fixtures, 12 min.

— Rough plane surfaces (1), (2), (3), (4), 30 min. — Finish plane

surfaces (5), (6), (7), (8), 22 min. — Set Tee fixture, apron swivel

and stroke for vertical planing, 8 min. — Rough and finish plane ends

(9), (10), (11), (12), 22 min. — Clean planer, 8 min. — Total, 2 h.

SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS, MACHINES, FIXTURES AND TOOLS

OPERATIONS.	MACHINES, FIXTURES, SPEEDS, FEEDS.	TOOLS.
<p>Snag casting. Clean planer table. Set planer in alignment. See p. 909.</p> <p>Oil bearings. See p. 920.</p> <p>Horizontal planing.</p> <p>To table and fixture, clamp work. See p. 914.</p> <p>Adjust table dogs to length of stroke.</p> <p>Rough plane (Bevel end.) (1), one cut <math>\frac{1}{8}</math>" deep. See p. 917.</p>	<p>Machinist's vise.</p> <p>Planer, 18" to 24" cutting speed 25 F.P.M. With a high-speed planer this may be increased from 25% to 100%.</p> <p>.....</p> <p>Tongue fixture, bunters or screw pins, fingers.</p> <p>.....</p> <p>Feed 3 teeth or <math>\frac{1}{32}</math>".</p>	<p>Hammer, cold chisel, 10" or 12" worn bastard file.</p> <p>Brush, waste.</p> <p>.....</p> <p>Machine oil.</p> <p>.....</p> <p>Lead hammer, planer wrench.</p> <p>.....</p> <p>Planer wrench.</p> <p>.....</p> <p>10" or 12" bastard file, diamond-point tool, or holder and cutter 15° rake, rule.</p>

Rough plane (Bevel end.) (2), one cut. Set tool $1\frac{1}{8}$ " + $\frac{1}{4}$ " from table.	.....	.....
To angle plate and table, clamp work. See p. 915.	Angle plate, screw pins and blocking or clamps.	.....
Rough plane (Bevel end.) (3), with (1) against angle plate, one cut $\frac{1}{8}$ " deep.	.....	.....
Rough plane (Bevel end.) (4), with (1) against angle plate, one cut. Set tool $1\frac{1}{2}$ " + $\frac{1}{4}$ " from table.	.....	.....
To table and fixture, clamp work.	Tongue fixture, bun- tlers or screw pins, fingers.	.....
Finish plane (File burr off edges.) (5), one cut $1\frac{1}{8}$ " deep, estimated.	Feed 6 teeth or $\frac{1}{8}$ ".	8" or 10" hand- smooth file, square-nose finish- ing tool, oil-stone. Rule or gage block.
Finish plane (6), one cut. Set tool $1\frac{1}{8}$ " from table.	.....	.....
To angle plate and table, clamp work.	Angle plate, screw pins and blocking or clamps.	.....
Finish plane (7), with (5) against angle plate, one cut $1\frac{1}{8}$ " deep, estimated.	Feed 6 teeth or $\frac{1}{8}$ ".	.....
Finish plane (8), with (5) against angle plate, one cut. Set tool $1\frac{1}{8}$ " from table. (File burr off edges.) Vertical planing.	.....	Rule or gage block.
To Tee fixture and table, clamp work.	Tee fixture, clamps, bolts, blocks, swing apron swivel. See Fig. 35.	.....
Adjust table dogs to length of stroke.	.....	.....
Rough plane (Bevel end.) (9), with (3) against Tee fixture, one cut $\frac{1}{8}$ " deep.	Feed 2 teeth, or $\frac{1}{8}$ ".	Holder and cutter 15° rake, or cut- ting down tool.
Finish plane (10), one cut $\frac{1}{8}$ " deep. Reverse work.	Feed 1 tooth or $\frac{1}{8}$ ".	Side tool with point beveled.
Rough plane (Bevel end.) (11), with (3) against Tee fixture, one cut. Set tool $12\frac{1}{4}$ " + $1\frac{1}{8}$ " from (10).	.....	Long rule.
Finish plane (12), one cut. Set tool $12\frac{1}{4}$ " from (10). (File burr off edges.)	.....	.....

*Attention.* — It is good practice to file the burr off the edges slightly with a hand-smooth file after planing each surface.

**45. Oiling.** — Oil every bearing of a planer once a day, and the V ways, loose pulleys, friction disk and sliding parts more often. The V ways are the most important and must be kept clean and well oiled.

**46. Cleaning.** — The chips should always be brushed toward side of table to avoid brushing them into the V ways which would be disastrous.

**Warning.** — Before starting a planer, see that the table dogs are fastened firmly and nothing is clamped to the table that will strike the housings or cross rail. Also that all wrenches, bolts, clamps and other pieces that are not fastened to the table are removed.

**47. Holding very thin work by gluing or cementing.** — Work too thin to be held by any mechanical means may be secured to resist the pressure of a light cut by gluing or cementing it to the planer table. Clean edges of work and table around work with gasoline or benzine and emery cloth. Apply melted shellac or rosin around the edges.

**48. Spring of planer work** is caused by severe and uneven clamping, also poor or unsuitable fixtures, bad blocking and shimming or wedging.

Another cause of springing is the removal of the outer surface of castings and forgings which relieves the internal strains. This is largely overcome by rough planing all surfaces to be finished before finishing any surface, then slightly relieving the pressure of the clamps and other holding devices for the finishing cuts.

Cold-rolled stock is liable to spring badly unless an equal amount of stock is planed off each surface. A casting or a piece that has been rough planed may be nominally flat, but to obtain very accurate results, select the straightest side. Rest this side on the table and, if necessary, place under corners or middle, strips of tissue paper to compensate for spring or distortion. Finish surface, then turn work over and finish side first selected. The edges of the work should be finished in same order. Take a light finishing cut about .003".

49. To align work on table with surface gage, use pieces of tin, brass or paper as shims and place under work directly under clamps. A triangular casting should have at least three bearing points and an oblong or square casting, four.

At *A*, Fig. 39, surface gage *B* is used to test the work as at *C*, *D*, *E* and *F*. Pinch bar *G* is used to lift casting to in-

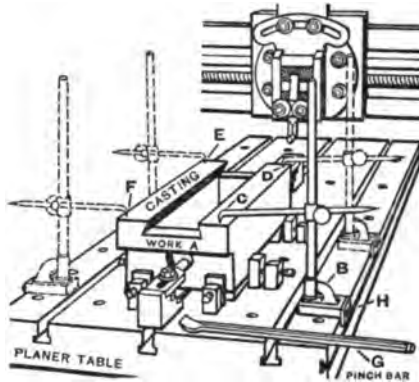


FIG. 39. — LEVELING AND ALINING WORK WITH SURFACE GAGE.

sert shims. To align the work with the edges of the table, move guide *H* along edge and use straight point of scriber to test work. Screw pins and blocks clamp casting, and assist in alining.

50. To align work in absence of surface gage, feed tool down at one end, insert paper between tool and work and adjust until tool pinches paper. Repeat on opposite end of work and at various points on top and sides.

#### FIXTURES, VISES AND JIGS

51. Planer jacks for leveling work are used to hold work that has ribs on its lower side, as casting *A*, Fig. 28.

52. To set tools for duplicate work with special gage or pattern, Fig. 40. — Bed work *A* to table and clamp to angle plate *B* by clamps *C* and *D*. To plane wide groove *E* accurately, use special gage *F* bolted to table and angle plate.



The top of gage is exact pattern of work, minus  $.001''$ . For roughing, set tool *G* to cut  $.005''$  large by a thickness gage; and for finishing, to cut  $.001''$  large by tissue paper. See pp. 912, 913.

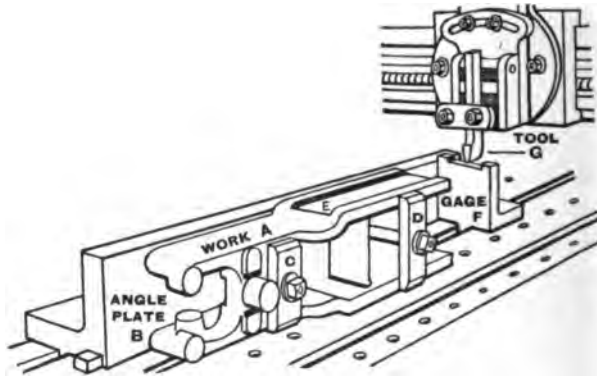


FIG. 40. — SPECIAL GAGE OR PATTERN FOR SETTING PLANER TOOL TO DUPLICATE WORK.

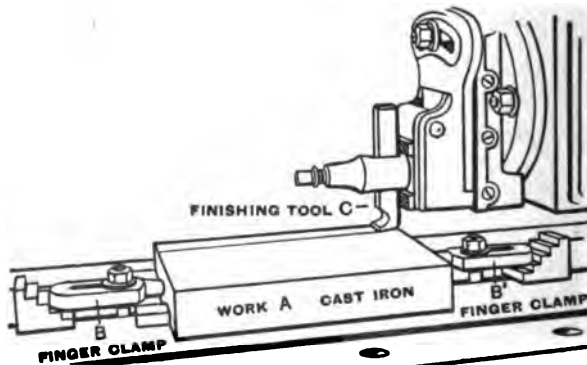


FIG. 41. — HOLDING WORK WITH FINGER CLAMPS.

53. To hold work with finger clamps, Fig. 41, drill holes in ends of work *A* to receive finger ends of clamps *B*, *B'*. To finish work, which is cast iron, use finishing tool *C* with a coarse feed.

54. Special planer clamps *A, A'*, Fig. 42, are used for clamping work *B* to table.

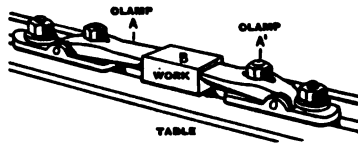


FIG. 42. — PLANER CLAMPS FOR HOLDING WORK. SPECIAL.

55. Planer jig or shoe to hold a number of pieces to be planed at once, *A*, Fig. 43. — The work consists of 6 castings, *BB*, etc., held with pinch pieces *C* and *D* and packing block *E*, adjusted by screws *FF*, etc.

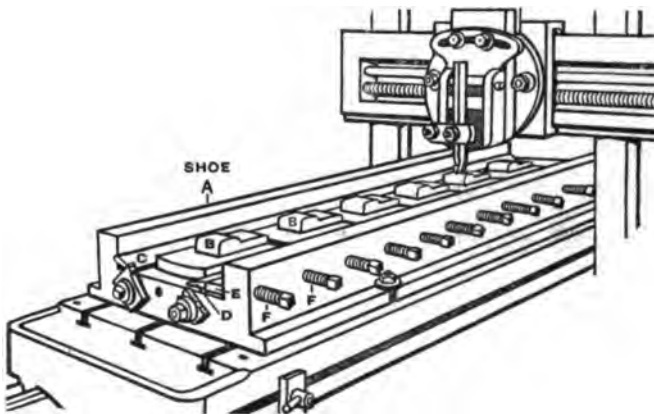


FIG. 43. — PLANER JIG OR SHOE FOR HOLDING WORK.

56. To plane Tee slot, Fig. 44. — First plane slot *A*, then bottom portion *B, C* with bent tools, one to a right angle, and other to a left. Any tool taking an under cut cannot be allowed to remain in slot during backward stroke.

57. Tool lifter *D*, Fig. 44, consists of metal plate with two lugs that receive pointed screws which engage large center punch marks or countersinks in the tool. During the cutting stroke, the lifter will drag, as at *E*, and lift on return, as at *E'*.

Some use a piece of leather in place of the tool lifter, to fasten apron so it cannot swing by wedge or brace between tool and apron swivel; and to lift tool by hand at end of each cut.

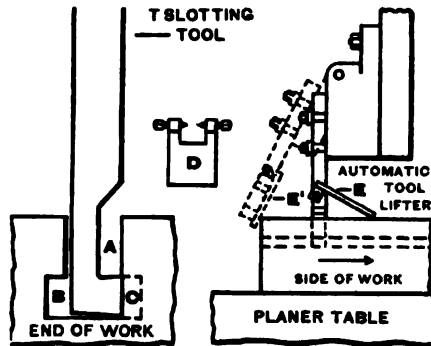


FIG. 44. — TEE SLOT PLANING.

Special planer tools and side heads for undercutting are obtainable.

58. To plane keyway in shaft *A*, Fig. 45, drill hole *B* in which to terminate cut as the tool must pass out of cut each

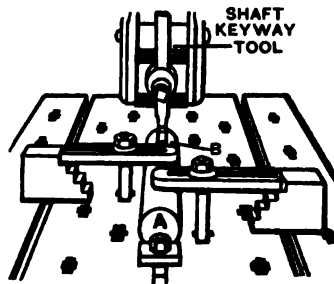


FIG. 45. — PLANING KEYWAY IN SHAFT.

time. Set tool central with square and rule. Use fine hand feed and oil.

The depth of keyway is measured at side.

59. To clamp shaft to cut keyway its whole length, hold as in Fig. 46. A special planer tool holder fitted with a keyway cutter is used as a spring tool.

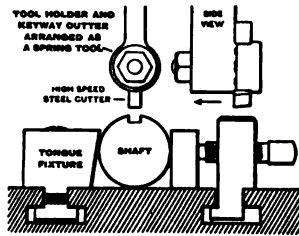


FIG. 46. — HOLDING LONG SHAFT TO PLANE KEYWAY WHOLE LENGTH.

60. To plane keyway in hub. — Use a tool holder and cutter or forged tool. Keyways may be cut by keyseating machine or by hand with chisel and file.

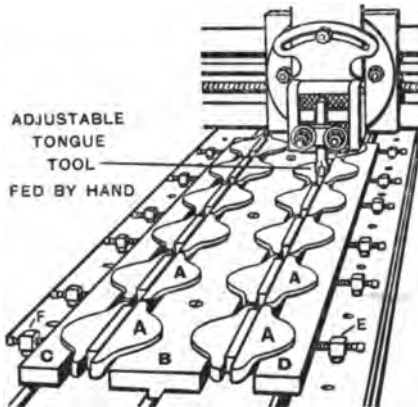
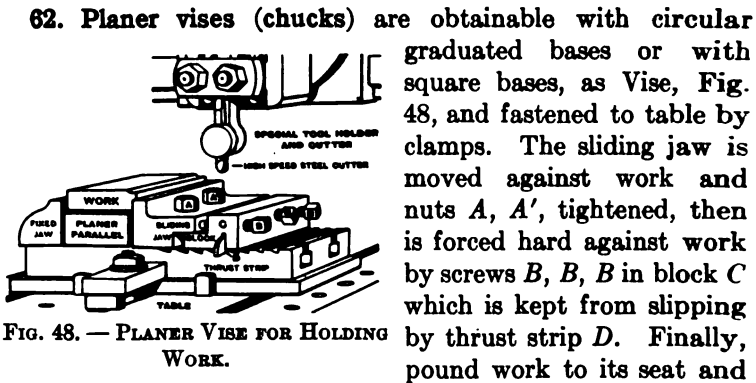
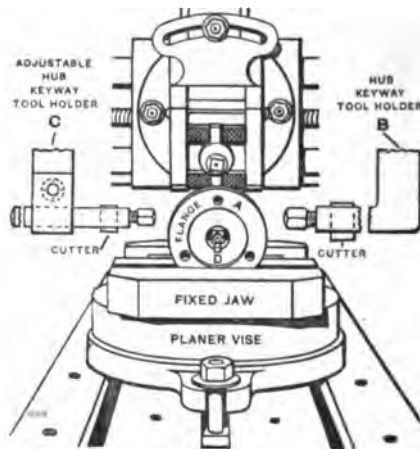


FIG. 47. — STRING FIXTURES FOR HOLDING VISE BASE PLATES.

61. String fixtures to hold several pieces A, A, etc., Fig. 47, to be planed at once, are economical and mechanical. Fixture B is clamped to table by screws. Work is clamped by rails C and D and screw pins E and F.



63. To plane keyway in flange, Fig. 49.



**Specifications:** Material, cast-iron flange, turned, polished and drilled. Flange has 1" hole. Plane keyway  $\frac{1}{4}$ " wide,  $\frac{3}{32}$ " deep.

**Machine and tools:** Planer vise, hub keyway tool holder and  $\frac{1}{4}$ " cutter, rule, planer parallel. Plane dry.

**Time:** Study drawing and schedule in advance, 3 min. — Oil planer, 5 min. — "Set up" machine, 4 min. — Cut keyway, 8 min. — Clean machine, 2 min. — Total, 22 min.

SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS, MACHINES AND TOOLS

**I. Clean planer and vise and oil bearings.**

**II. Set vise.** Fasten planer vise to table with jaws at right angle to line of travel and fixed jaw in front, as in Fig 49.

**III. Clamp work.** Clamp flange *A* lightly in center of vise as shown, with parallel underneath. Adjust flange until two holes are approximately parallel to fixed jaw by measurement, then clamp firmly with vise screws.

**IV. Adjust cross rail.** Raise or lower cross rail until work will pass under.

**V. Set tool.** Fasten hub keyway tool holder *B* in tool post so that tool post will not strike flange, and with face of cutter parallel to table or vise.

**VI. Adjust length of stroke.** Move saddle on cross rail to one side of flange, and adjust table dogs for length of stroke. Set feed rod clamp at dead center.

**VII. Set cutter to plane keyway central.** Move saddle back and set cutter central by placing a block against the side of hub and measuring to side of cutter with rule. Adjust until measurement is the same on both sides from block to cutter.

**VIII. Plane keyway.** Pull belt by hand to see if adjustments are right. Start machine, feed cutter down by fine hand vertical feed (.003" to .004" cuts) until keyway *D* is  $\frac{3}{8}$ " deep, measuring at side of keyway.

**64. To plane taper keyway in hub, Fig. 50. — Use taper parallels and clamp gear to these parallels.**

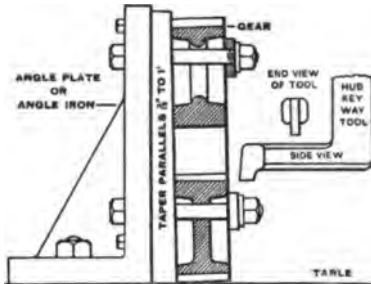


FIG. 50. — PLANING TAPER KEYWAY IN HUB OF GEAR.

**65. To plane lathe bed.** — To obtain the most accurate results from large castings, the parts to be finished by planing should be rough planed and laid aside for a number of

weeks to season to relieve internal strains. (Lathe beds are sometimes roughed out by gang mills, then finished by planing.) First finish bottom of the lathe bed *A*, then clamp, as in Fig. 51, and plane the top and V ways. Use templets of sheet steel, *B* and *C*, and test the inner and outer V's, as follows:

Plane one face on the same side of both inner V's to templet *B*. Tissue paper should be inserted between templet and

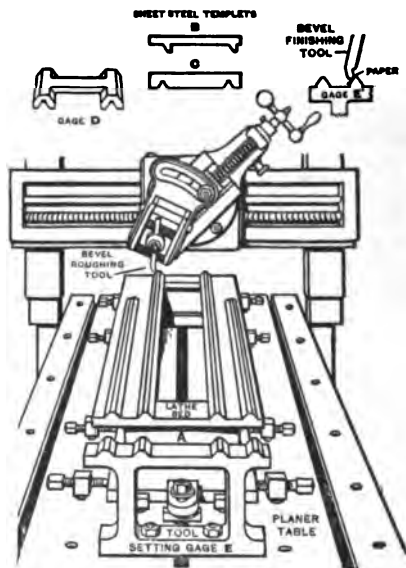


FIG. 51. — PLANING LATHE BED.

face of *V* at top and bottom to test the angle, so that angle of head may be corrected, if need be. Then plane second faces of the inner V's and test with the same templet. When finished both V's are tested with templet *C*.

Plane off apex of each V  $\frac{1}{8}$ ". The same method and type of templets are used for the outer V's. For the final test, use gage *D*. A tool setting gage, *E*, may be used to set tool. For each of the finishing cuts, the tool is adjusted until it

pinches a piece of paper placed between the gage and tool, as at *E'*. The paper should be of sufficient thickness to allow for scraping and fitting. The horizontal parts and edges of the bed may also be planed to gage.

**66. To plane head and footstock of lathe (two methods),** Fig. 52. — For large lathes, the V grooves are planed and fitted to the V ways on the bed before the holes in headstock and footstock are bored. The headstock and footstock are then clamped to bed and bored with a special boring bar. For small lathes, use the reverse method. First bore holes in headstock *A* and footstock *B* and fit boxes in headstock. Next mount on a double arbor or mandrel *C* to hold them in alinement, clamp in three accurately V-grooved blocks *D, D, D*, which fit Tee slot and are bolted to table. Use braces *E* to steady the whole.

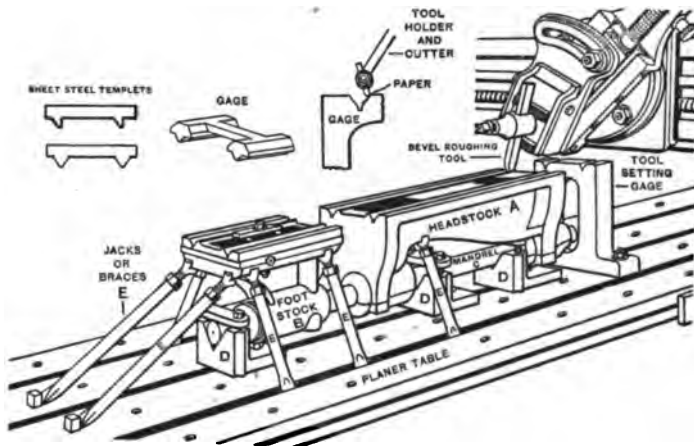


FIG. 52. — PLANING LATHE HEAD AND FOOTSTOCK.

To finish, clamp both lightly to avoid springing. First cut groove to the desired depth with a cutting-off tool in the center of each V groove, then plane the faces in the same order as the V's on the lathe bed, and test with the internal templates or gages.



## SHAPERS

67. **Shapers** are particularly suitable for short work that can be held in a vise. The size is designated by size of work it will plane. A 14" shaper will plane work 14" × 14" × 14".

Two types of shapers of leading designs are Geared Shapers and Crank Shapers.

68. The **geared-shaper** ram is driven by a spur gear meshing with a rack fastened to bottom of ram similar to a spur-gear planer. Suitable gearing, shafts, pulleys, belts, and countershaft, complete the driving mechanism for moving ram forward and backward.

69. The **crank-shaper** ram is driven by a direct or indirect crank movement which gives a quick return. Suitable gears, shafts, a stepped cone pulley and belt from countershaft, complete the driving mechanism for moving the ram forward and backward.

70. **Feed mechanisms** of various shapers consist of a feed disk and connections for obtaining one or more teeth of feed, measured with a pawl and ratchet in advance of each cutting stroke. See 902.

71. **Length of stroke** of shaper is positive and can be more readily set to terminate cuts close to a shoulder than that of a planer.

72. **Shaper geared**, described, Fig. 53.

## SCHEDULE OF PARTS

<i>A</i> — Pillar or column.	<i>E</i> — Saddle.
<i>B</i> — Ram, slides in plane scraped bearings.	<i>F</i> — Table which supports work and vise.
<i>C</i> — Shaper head bolted to ram. Mechanism similar to planer head. See p. 903.	<i>G</i> — Handle to operate horizontal feed screw and give cross feed.
<i>D</i> — Cross rail which may be raised and lowered on pillar by handle on opposite side.	<i>HH'</i> — Feed mechanism: Feed disk, pawl and ratchet. For power feed.

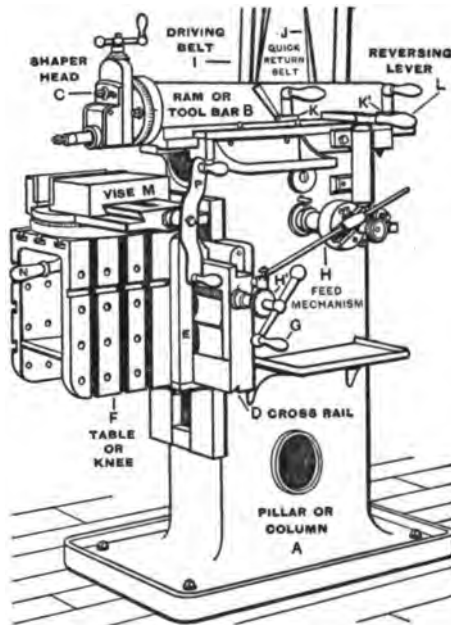


FIG. 53. — SHAPER, GEAR MECHANISM.

*I* — Driving belt for cutting stroke of ram (two speeds) from tight and loose pulley countershaft.

*J* — Belt from large pulley on countershaft gives a return speed about 3 to 1.

*KK'* — Movable dogs reverse motion of ram and may be located to give desired length of stroke.

*L* — Reversing lever operating friction clutch which reverses ram and may be operated by hand or dogs *KK'*.

*M* — Vise.

*N* — Lever to clamp vise to table.

*P* — Handle to clamp work to vise.

**73. Traveling head shaper or traverse shaper** has a box-shaped bed supported by pillars at the ends and two tables on its side. The ram is mounted in a saddle which travels along the bed at a right angle to stroke of ram by hand or

power feed. It is designed for long work beyond the work of a pillar shaper. Small work may be clamped to table or held in vise, and large work on both tables, and further supported, if need be, by jacks and blocking resting on the floor.

**74. Draw-cut shaper used for heavy work.** The apron and tool are reversed. The tool cuts on the return stroke.

**75. Swivel shaper vise (or chuck), Fig. 54.** — To set vise jaws at right angle to cutting stroke, remove taper pin, un-

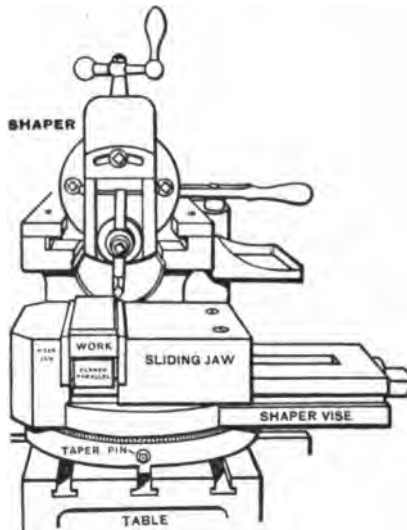


FIG. 54. — PLANING WORK HELD IN SHAPER VISE.

clamp, swing vise and insert pin. As the base is graduated into degrees of a circle, the jaws may be located and clamped at any desired angle.

*Attention.* — To obtain very accurate results, a thin backing strip or a rod of small diameter is inserted between the sliding jaw of vise and work to insure even pressure on the fixed jaw, so that the second cut will be exactly at right angles to the first.

The pressure of the vise jaws has a tendency to lift the

work, and for finishing fine work strips of tissue paper may be inserted at each end between the planer parallel and work and the work lightly pounded to its seat with lead hammer until it pinches the paper.

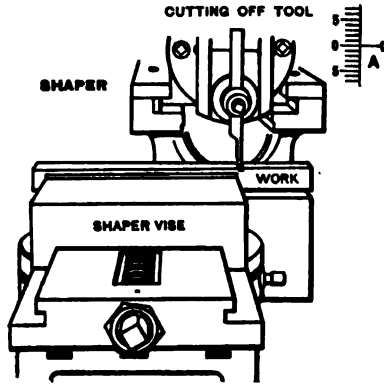


FIG. 55.—TO CUT OFF WORK HELD IN VISE.

76. Cutting-off work held in a vise, Fig. 55.— Use cutting-off tool, the head as at A and apron swivel vertical. For deep cuts the apron must be clamped or the tool lifted out of groove on return stroke.

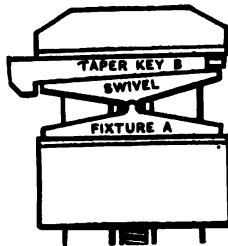


FIG. 56.—TAPER KEY HELD IN VISE WITH SWIVEL FIXTURE.

77. To plane taper work in a vise.— Use swivel fixture A, Fig. 56. Place it between the sliding jaw and taper key B. By matching the tapers, two taper keys may be held and planed without the fixture.

78. To plane rectangular work held in shaper vise, Fig. 57.

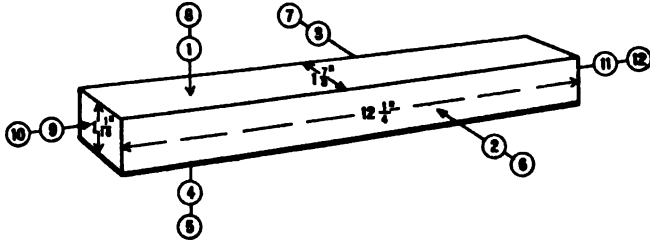


FIG. 57. — SCHEDULE DRAWING.

**Specifications:** Material, iron casting  $\frac{1}{4}$ " large, free from visible defects; weight, 7 lbs. 14 oz. Hardness, 23 to 35 (scleroscope).

High-speed steel cutting tools. Speed, 30 to 60 F.P.M.

**Time:** Study drawing and schedule in advance, 5 min. — Oil shaper, 3 min. — "Set up" machine, 13 min. — Plane rough surfaces (1), (2), (3), (4), 21 min. — Finish plane surfaces (5), (6), (7), (8), 11 min. — Set vise, apron swivel and stroke for vertical planing, 7 min. — Rough and finish plane ends (9), (10), (11), (12), 13 min. — Clean shaper, 5 min. — Total, 1 h. 18 min.

SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS, MACHINES, FIXTURES AND TOOLS

OPERATIONS.	MACHINES, FIXTURES, SPEEDS, FEEDS.	TOOLS.
<b>Snag casting.</b>	Machinist's vise.	Hammer, cold chisel, 10" or 12" worn-bastard file.
Clean shaper and vise.	14" shaper and shaper vise, cutting speed 50 F.P.M.	Brush, waste.
<b>Oil bearings.</b>	.....	Machine oil.
Horizontal planing. In vise, clamp work, see Fig. 54, with planer parallel underneath. Adjust dogs on ram to length of stroke.	Shaper vise, planer parallel.	Lead hammer, shaper wrench.
Rough plane (Bevel end.) (1), one cut $\frac{1}{16}$ " deep. See p. 917.	Feed 2 teeth or $\frac{1}{16}$ ".	10" or 12" bastard file, holder and cutter or diamond-point tool 15° rake, 3" rule.

<p>In vise clamp work with planer parallel underneath.</p>		
<p>Rough plane (Bevel end.) (2), with (1) against fixed jaw, one cut <math>\frac{1}{8}</math>" deep.</p>		
<p>In vise clamp work with planer parallel underneath.</p>		
<p>Rough plane (Bevel end.) (3), with (1) against fixed jaw, one cut. Set tool <math>1\frac{1}{8}</math>" + <math>\frac{1}{4}</math>" from parallel underneath.</p>		
<p>In vise clamp work with planer parallel underneath.</p>		
<p>Rough plane (Bevel end.) (4), with (2) against fixed jaw, one cut. Set tool <math>1\frac{1}{8}</math>" + <math>\frac{1}{4}</math>" from parallel underneath.</p>		
<p>In vise clamp work with planer parallel underneath.</p>		
<p>Finish plane (5), (6), (7), (8), in given order. For (5), (6), set tool to take cut <math>1\frac{1}{8}</math>", estimated; for (7), (8), set tool to dimensions by rule or gage block. (File burr off edges). Set vise at right angles to present position, reclamp. See Fig. 55.</p>	<p>Feed 4 teeth or <math>\frac{1}{8}</math>".</p>	<p>8" or 10" hand-smooth file, square-nose finishing tool, rule or gage block.</p>
<p>Vertical planing.</p>		
<p>In vise clamp work with planer parallel underneath. Adjust dogs on ram to length of stroke.</p>	<p>Swing apron swivel. See Fig. 21.</p>	
<p>Rough plane (Bevel end.) (9), with (2) against fixed jaw, one cut <math>\frac{1}{8}</math>" deep.</p>	<p>Hand feed, or if equipped with power feed, use 2 teeth or <math>\frac{1}{8}</math>".</p>	<p>Holder and cutter 15° rake, or cutting down tool.</p>
<p>Finish plane (10), one cut <math>1\frac{1}{8}</math>" deep.</p>	<p>Hand feed or power feed, 1 tooth or <math>\frac{1}{4}</math>".</p>	<p>Holder and cutter 15° rake, or side tool with point beveled.</p>
<p>Reverse work.</p>		
<p>Rough plane (11), with (2) against fixed jaw, one cut. Set tool <math>12\frac{1}{4}</math>" + <math>1\frac{1}{8}</math>" from (10).</p>	<p>.....</p>	<p>Long rule and short rule.</p>
<p>Finish plane (12), one cut. Set tool <math>12\frac{1}{4}</math>" from (10). (File burr off edges.)</p>		
<p>Stamp name on broad surface.</p>	<p>Vise, copper jaws.</p>	<p><math>\frac{1}{8}</math>" steel letters, hammer.</p>

## 79. Slide rule for timing planer work.

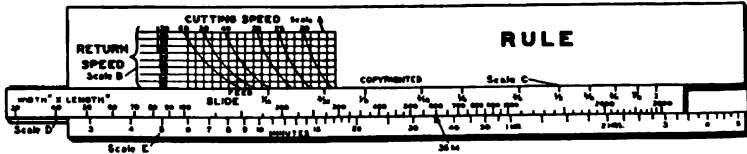


FIG. 58. — SLIDE RULE SET FOR CUTTING SPEED OF 30 F.P.M., RETURN SPEED 90 F.P.M., FEED  $\frac{1}{8}$ ".

The slide rule, Fig. 58, is used for calculating the time required to plane work at different cutting speeds, return speeds and feeds. It consists of a rule and slide with five scales. Scale *A* is the cutting speed, scale *B* is the return speed, scale *C* is the feed, scale *D* the area to be planed, and scale *E* the time required to do the planing.

To use the slide, first find the number of square inches to be planed; second, find the cutting and return speeds of the planer; third, decide on the feed to be used; fourth, locate the point of intersection of the cutting speed curve on scale *A* with the horizontal return speed line on scale *B*; fifth, move the slide until the feed figure on scale *C* is directly under this intersection; sixth, locate on scale *D* the number corresponding to the area of work to be planed and directly below on scale *E* will be found the time it will take to do the planing.

*Example.* — To plane a bench leveling plate 20 inches by 30 inches long.

Width × Length	20" × 30" = 600 square inches
Cutting speed	30 feet per minute
Return speed	90 feet per minute
Amount of feed	$\frac{1}{8}$ "

Move the slide until the  $\frac{1}{8}$ " on scale *C* comes directly under the intersection of 30 foot cutting speed on curve from scale *A*, and the 90 foot return speed line from scale *B*. Directly below the 600 on scale *D* will be found on scale *E*, the time required 36 minutes.

*Attention.* — In calculating the area to be planed, the over-travel of tool at front end of work, and tool clearance at back end, should be added to the length.

# ADVANCED MACHINE WORK

## SECTION 10

### MILLING

**Introduction. Milling Machines. Milling Cutters. Speeds and Feeds. Measuring Work. Plain Milling. Jigs and Fixtures. Index Milling. Calculating Diameter of Blank to Mill Square or Hexagonal. Milling on Centers. Grooving Taps. Fluting Reamers. Milling Teeth of Milling Cutters. Circular Milling. Vertical Milling. Profiling. Rake Tooth Milling Cutters.**

#### INTRODUCTION

**1. Milling** is a process of machining parts to dimensions, to regular and irregular shapes, to cut gears, to groove taps, reamers, drills, etc., with rotary cutters. Its greatest value is its power of duplication to produce interchangeable machine parts.

#### MILLING MACHINES

**2. Milling machines** may be classed as follows:

**I. The column and knee type**, Fig. 1, made both plain and universal, and used for general work.

**II. The planer type**, Fig. 26, for the heaviest gang and slab milling.

**III. The manufacturing type**, Fig. 29, for light plain milling.

**IV. Vertical milling machines** make use of the rapid end mill principle of cutting and are used for face milling, die sinking, routing, etc., see Fig. 64.

**V. Profiling machines** make use of the templet principle of milling irregular shapes, see Fig. 69.

**VI. Special milling machines:** Gear-cutting machines, bolt heading machines, thread milling machines, etc.

**Speed changes** are obtained by cone headstock (cone drive) or gear headstock (constant speed drive).

**3. A plain milling machine**, Fig. 27 (column and knee type), is used for various kinds of plain milling, as surface or face



milling, keyways, slotting, etc., and with the addition of index centers, is used for index milling. See also, Fig. 28.

The table is provided with two movements—longitudinal, controlled by hand and power feeds; and transverse, by hand

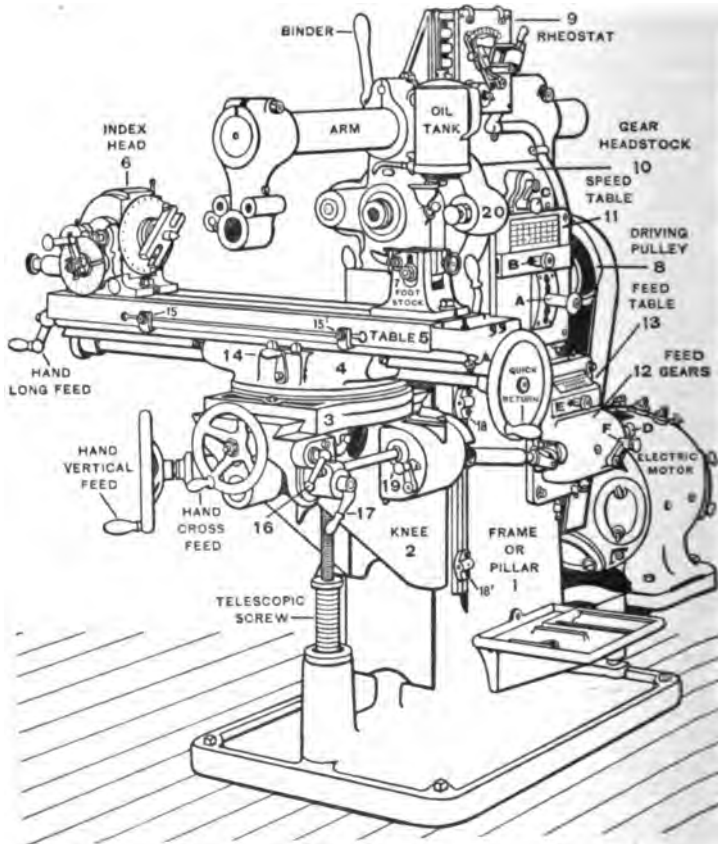


FIG. 1. — UNIVERSAL MILLING MACHINE.

feed and on some machines by power long feed. The knee is adjustable on the column and may be set at different heights to suit the work, and may be fed upward to take vertical cuts by hand and on some machines by power.

4. A universal milling machine, Fig. 1 (column and knee type), with swivel table for spiral operations, is adapted to a great variety of work. It is used for all kinds of index, spiral and light plain milling and within its capacity can do the work of all the other classes of milling machines, planers and shapers, both regular and special.

5. Universal milling machine described, Fig. 1.

### SCHEDULE OF PARTS

MOTOR DRIVE CONSTANT BELT SPEED GEAR HEADSTOCK  
GEAR FEED

1. Frame.	under speed table, then raise lever <i>A</i> to engage proper gears and latch it. Lever <i>C</i> gives fast or slow motion. Throw back gears in and out as in lathe.
2. Knee gibbed to frame.	12. Mounted system of feed gears similar to the headstock, driven by a chain.
3. Clamp bed.	13. Feed table gives position of three levers <i>D</i> , <i>E</i> , <i>F</i> , to obtain 12 feeds. To obtain a given feed, unlatch lever <i>D</i> and raise it. Move lever <i>E</i> to required column under feed table 13, then lower lever <i>D</i> to engage gears and latch. Lever <i>F</i> gives fast and slow motion.
4. Saddle pivots in clamp bed, is graduated in degrees.	14. Power long. feed lever.
5. Table gibbed to saddle, can be swiveled to any desired angle for milling spirals.	15, 15'. Table dogs to stop power long. feed.
6. Index, spiral or dividing head (detachable) with mechanism for rapid, plain and differential indexing. Also connected by gears to feed screw to give rotary motion to mill work spirally.	16. Power cross feed lever.
7. Footstock (detachable).	17. Power vertical feed lever.
8. Driving pulley driven by motor or belt from countershaft.	18, 18'. Vertical feed dogs.
9. Rheostat, starting device for motor.	19. Lever to start, stop or reverse all feeds.
10. Gear headstock consists of spindle, back gears and mounted system of gearing, giving 16 spindle speeds, ranging in geometric progression from 15 to 376 revolutions per min.	20. Knob to release spindle when desired to rotate it by hand. Dials on long. or horizontal, cross and vertical feeds are graduated in thousandths.
11. Speed table gives spindle speeds, and position of the three levers <i>A</i> , <i>B</i> , <i>C</i> , to obtain them. To obtain a given speed, unlatch lever <i>A</i> and lower it. Move index lever <i>B</i> to required column	

6. Milling-machine arbor *A*, Fig. 2, which is used for light work, is held in place by a tang and is removed with a rod. The cutter may be secured on arbor by wire key, collars and

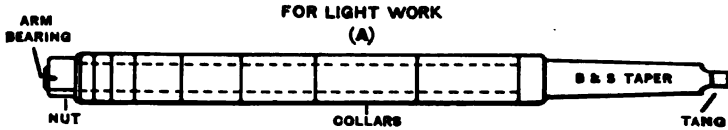


FIG. 2. — MILLING-MACHINE ARBOR FOR CUTTERS WITH PLAIN HOLES — LIGHT WORK.

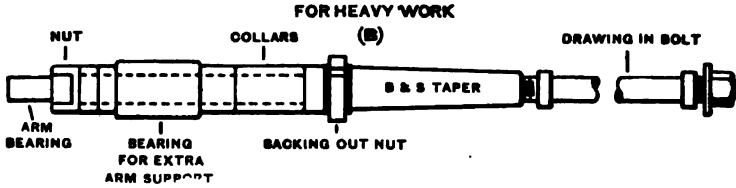


FIG. 3. — MILLING-MACHINE ARBOR FOR CUTTERS WITH PLAIN HOLES — HEAVY WORK.

nut, or the key may be omitted for light work. Arbor *B*, Fig. 3, is used for heavy work. It is held by drawing-in bolt, and backed out by nut.



FIG. 4. — SHELL-MILL ARBOR.

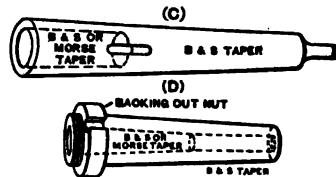


FIG. 5. — MILLING-MACHINE COLLETS FOR MILLS WITH TAPER SHANKS.

7. Shell-mill arbor, Fig. 4, is used to hold shell mills.

8. Milling-machine collets (*C*), (*D*), Fig. 5, are used to hold taper arbors and shanks, such as end mills.

## MILLING CUTTERS

9. **Milling cutters** (classified in four types, see Chart, Fig. 10,) are made of carbon and high-speed steel, hardened, tempered and ground. Large mills are made with cast-iron or machine-steel body and high-speed steel inserted teeth. Large mills are often nicked to break chips and reduce friction.

10. **Face or plain milling cutter**, Fig. 6, cuts surface *parallel* to its axis. Cutters over  $\frac{3}{4}$ " in width have helical teeth; less than  $\frac{3}{4}$ ", have straight teeth. They are used for keyways, slots, cutting-off stock and similar work. Grind clearance on teeth  $6^\circ$  to  $7^\circ$  for cutters under 3" in diameter, and  $4^\circ$  to  $5^\circ$  for those over 4". Excessive clearance will cause vibration. See Coarse Tooth, Rake Tooth, and Helical Tooth Milling Cutters, pp. 1047, 1048.

11. **Side or radial mills (shell-end mill)**, Fig. 7, cut surfaces *perpendicular* to axis. Grind clearance  $2^\circ$  to  $4^\circ$  and .001" to .002" hollow, or lower near center. Excessive clearance will cause vibration.

12. **Angular cutters**, Fig. 8, cut surfaces *inclined* to axis, as  $45^\circ$ ,  $50^\circ$ ,  $60^\circ$ ,  $70^\circ$  and  $80^\circ$ . Double-angle cutters have angles, as  $40^\circ$  and  $12^\circ$ ,  $48^\circ$  and  $12^\circ$ , etc. Grind clearance same as face and side cutters.

13. **Formed milling cutter**,

Fig. 9, cuts surfaces of *curved* or *irregular outline*. It is so relieved that clearance does not have to be considered. The

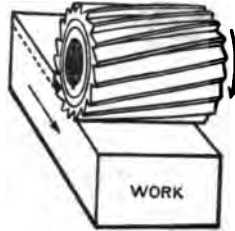


FIG. 6.—FACE MILLING CUTTER.

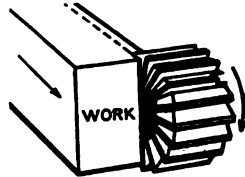


FIG. 7.—SHELL-END OR SIDE MILL.

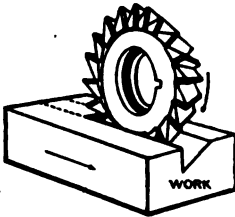


FIG. 8.—ANGULAR MILLING CUTTER.

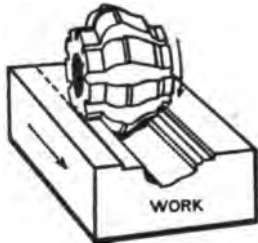


FIG. 9.—FORMED MILLING CUTTER.

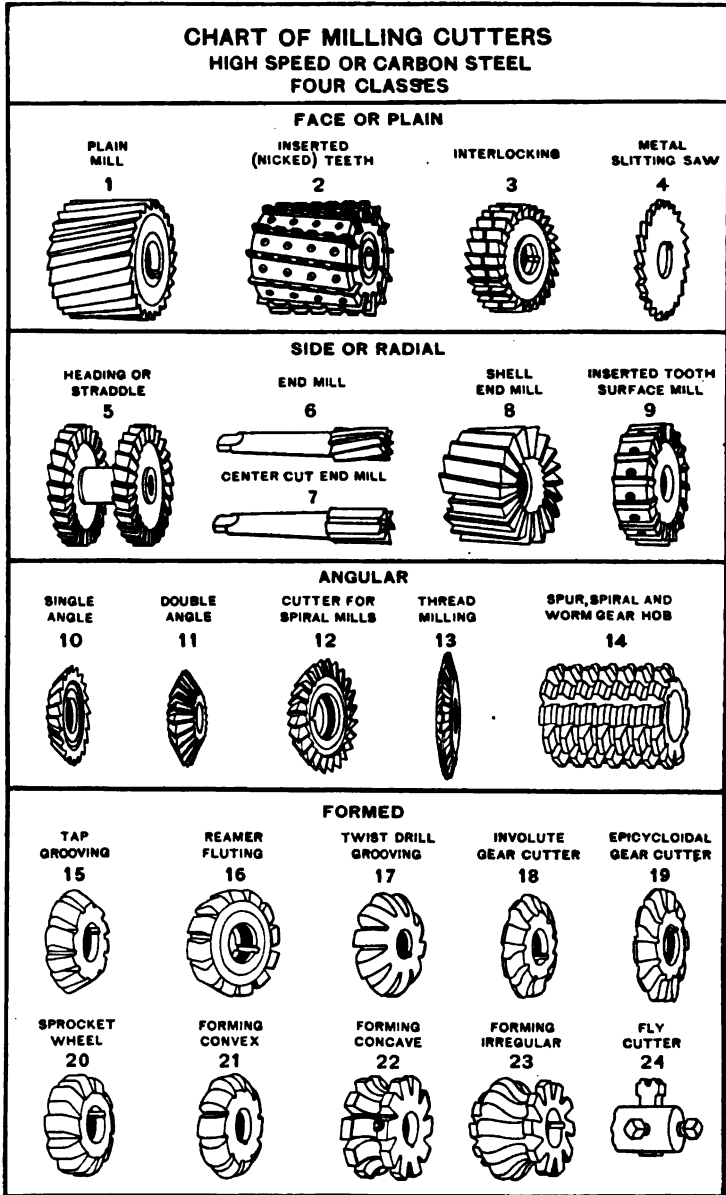


FIG. 10.

teeth must be ground radially and equidistantly or it will not mill its correct form.

14. **Form milling cutters** are made and sharpened by grinding the top of the teeth the same as ordinary cutters, but are largely superseded by formed cutters.

15. **Fly cutter**, as shown in Chart, Fig. 10, No. 24, is an *improvised cutter* that can be made to any desired form for any experimental operation, as plain, angular, or formed milling, also to cut the teeth of gears, as in Fig. 11. It is filed to shape with clearance back of cutting edge, then hardened, tempered and the face ground. It is securely held in the fly cutter arbor. As there is only one cutting edge, the feed must be very fine.

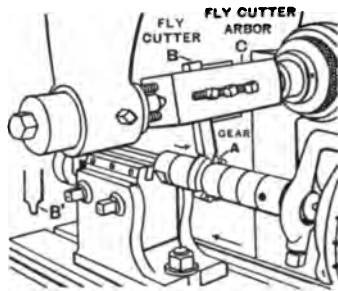


FIG. 11.—CUTTING GEAR TEETH WITH FLY CUTTER.

16. A **cotter mill** is often used to mill slots. See C, Fig. 42.

17. **Right and left cutters.** —

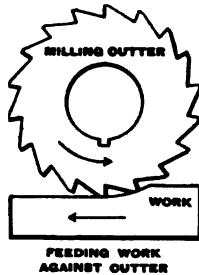
Ordinary milling cutters can be operated both right and left, according to which side is placed on arbor first. Irregularly formed cutters are obtainable, right or left, to suit different milling machines. The cutting movement of a right cutter is the same as that of a regular twist drill.

18. **The correct and incorrect direction of rotation** for horizontal feed is shown in Figs. 12, 13. — To mill work by raising knee, that is vertical feed, work should be on side of mill moving downward to avoid tendency of mill to lift work. For a very thin cutter, set gib screws hard, or use a counterweight to hold table back because back lash will cause teeth to catch and break.

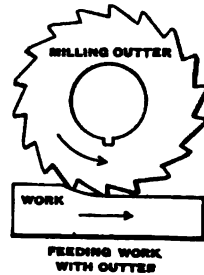
19. **Opposite cutting movements of different machines.** — Before placing a cutter on a milling-machine arbor, ascertain the position of headstock on the table, whether right or left, which differs on different makes of milling machines. See Figs. 40, 57. Also the direction of cutting movement and direction of rotation of cutter teeth.

**20. Selection and mounting of cutters depends on nature**

of work, construction of machine and available cutters. Use cutters as small as work will permit as they have a shorter cut and require less power. End mills or side mills are the fastest cutters as they have more teeth in contact at once. For some operations, as cutting gears, a certain type of formed cutter must be used.



**FIG. 12. — CORRECT CUTTING MOVEMENT. FOR HORIZONTAL FEED.**



**FIG. 13. — INCORRECT CUTTING MOVEMENT. FOR HORIZONTAL FEED.**

Before mounting a cutter, start machine and note direction of rotation.

*Attention.* — When setting up machine, all parts that are fitted or clamped together must be wiped clean. Vise, fixtures and work must be held securely.

#### SPEEDS AND FEEDS

**21. Cutting speeds for milling cutters depend on the hardness of the material, depth of cut and stability of the machine, therefore only approximate speeds are suggested.**

**Carbon steel cutters:** Cast iron, 40 F.P.M.; machine steel, 40 F.P.M.; annealed carbon steel, 30 F.P.M.; brass or composition, 80 F.P.M.

**High-speed steel cutters:** Cast iron, 80 F.P.M.; machine steel, 80 F.P.M.; annealed carbon steel, 60 F.P.M.; brass or composition, 160 F.P.M.

For great accuracy, rough oversize and finish with a light cut, high speed and fine feed. A cutter may be safely rotated the same number of revolutions as lathe work equal in diameter to cutter. A slitting saw will stand twice the cutting speed of a large plane mill.

**22. Feed for milling cutters** is from .002" to .250" per cutter revolution and depends on diameter of cutter, kind of material, width and depth of cut, size of work, and whether light or heavy machine is used. Plain mills will stand a coarse feed; angular mills will not. A 3" plain cutter at 40 F.P.M., feed .040" per cutter revolution, will produce a finished surface.

As a large part of milling is done with one cut, the feed should be fine enough to produce a smooth surface. When two cuts are used, it is best to try a low speed and coarse feed for roughing, and a faster speed and finer feed for finishing.

*Warning.*— High speeds, *not coarse feeds*, ruin cutters. Watch action of cutter, belt and feed. Too fast a speed, or a dull cutter will make a squeaking, scraping noise. A dull cutter wears rapidly and produces a rough surface. As soon as a cutter shows dullness, grind it.

**23. Lubricant for milling cutters.** See Table, p. 149.— Cast iron and brass or composition are milled dry. A jet of air to remove chips will admit faster feed and prolong life of cutter. Lard oil is used on tenacious metals, such as steel and wrought iron. A stream of oil under pressure, will wash away chips, prevent clogging and recutting of chips. For ordinary work, drop oil on cutter, as in Fig. 50. While lard oil is best, milling compounds are obtainable which are less expensive, or a soda-water mixture may be made, as follows:  $\frac{1}{4}$  lb. sal soda,  $\frac{1}{2}$  pt. lard oil,  $\frac{1}{2}$  pt. soft soap and water to make 10 qts. Boil one-half hour.

**24. To mill aluminum.**— Speed for high-speed steel milling cutters 110 F.P.M. Feed from .007" to .250" per cutter revolution. The speed and feed for milling aluminum may be from 25 per cent to 50 per cent higher than for brass.

Lubricant: equal parts of lard oil and kerosene, or soap, water and kerosene; or lard oil, 25 per cent, benzine, 75 per cent. Some prefer a compound made as follows: 3 gals. mineral lard oil, 5 lbs. sal soda, and 47 gals. of water.

End mills or, preferably, high-speed steel inserted-tooth face milling cutters, give better results than plain milling



cutters as there is more chip room, and with a proper lubricant, clogging and recutting of the chips, which is the real trouble in milling aluminum, is avoided.

*Example* in milling aluminum. —  $3\frac{1}{2}$ " high-speed steel inserted-tooth face milling cutter, as in Fig. 64: speed, 320 R.P.M.; feed, 4.8" P.M., lubricated abundantly with a mixture, one part aqualene, 20 parts water, will produce a finely finished surface.

*Information.* — All machining operations, as turning, drilling, planing, milling, etc., on other metals, may be applied to aluminum by using a good lubricant. Pure aluminum does not machine as readily as some of the standard aluminum alloys. In general, the cutting speed should be higher and the feed lower than for brass.

**25. To mill copper.** — Speed 80 F.P.M. or a little lower than for brass. Feed .002" to .125" per cutter revolution. Lubricant same as for aluminum, or milk may be used.

**26. Pickling and tumbling castings and forgings.** — The hard scale and sand should be removed from castings before milling by tumbling in barrel or by pickling. Forgings should be pickled as the scale is destructive to cutters. See Pickling, *Principles of Machine Work*.

#### MEASURING WORK

**27. To set cutter by trial to cut required depth.** — Take short cuts and test depth with a rule, or line out work and take short cuts to line.

**28. To set cutter by measurement,** start machine and move work under cutter by hand long feed; then raise knee by vertical feed shaft until work just touches revolving cutter (or take a short trial cut less than required depth and measure work with micrometer). Set dial on vertical feed at zero and move work away from cutter, then raise knee number of thousandths of an inch required. Move table slowly to cut by hand feed to avoid breaking cutter, then throw in power feed. At end of cut, trip feed by hand or automatically by table dog.

29. **The limit in milling.** — For plain milling, as bolt heads, nuts and similar work, a limit of from .002" to .004" is allowable. On fine machine parts, such as gun work, sewing machines, typewriters, electrical and scientific instruments, limits from .0005" to .002" are allowable. For close fits, mill as accurately as possible to save filing.

PLAIN MILLING

30. **Methods of holding work in plain milling** are similar to those for planing or drilling. There are three general methods: Holding in vise, clamping to table, or holding by jig or fixture.

31. **To set milling machine vise on table with jaws parallel to arbor,** see Fig. 14, and at right angle to arbor, see Fig. 15. To set jaws at any other angle, use bevel protractor, or graduated circle at base of swivel vise, Fig. 17.

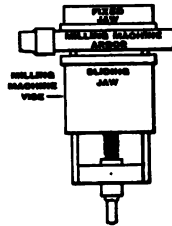


FIG. 14. — SETTING VISE JAWS PARALLEL TO ARBOR.

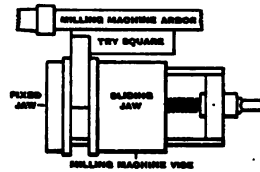


FIG. 15. — SETTING VISE JAWS AT RIGHT ANGLE TO ARBOR.

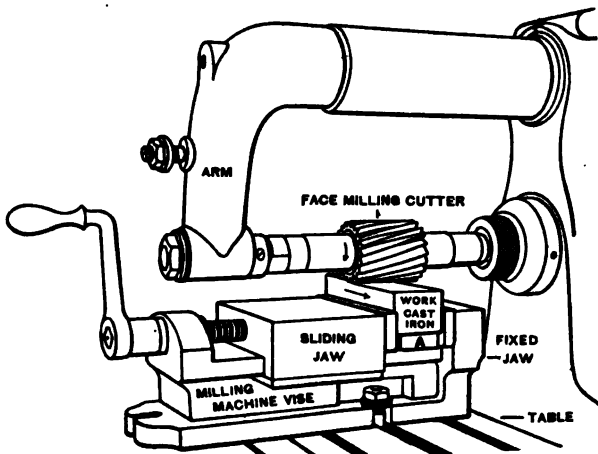


FIG. 16. — FACE MILLING.

32. To face mill work, Fig. 16.— Drive arbor lightly into spindle. Place cutter on arbor, clamp hard and adjust to arm. Bolt vise to table with jaws at right angle to arbor. Place work on planer parallel *A*, and clamp hard. As pressure of jaws will lift work, pound with soft hammer during and after clamping.

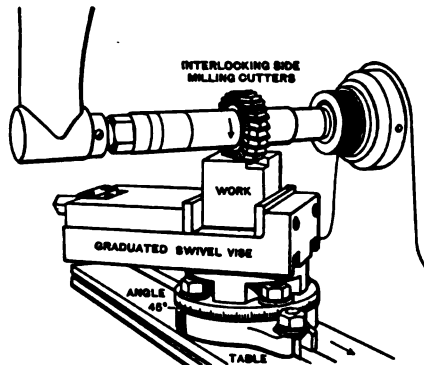


FIG. 17. — MILLING WORK IN SWIVEL VISE SET AT 45°.

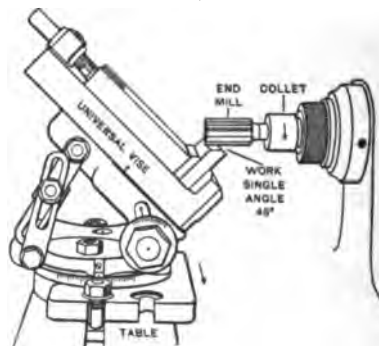


FIG. 18. — UNIVERSAL VISE SET AT 45° VERTICALLY TO SPINDLE.

33. Graduated swivel vise, Fig. 17, is used for milling at an angle as shown. The width of the slot in work is adjusted by inserting thin metal or paper washers between the interlocking side-milling cutters.

34. A universal vise can be swung to almost any position, at a right angle to plane of axis of spindle and 45° vertically, as in Fig. 18, or at an angle of 45° vertically and horizontally, as in Fig. 19.

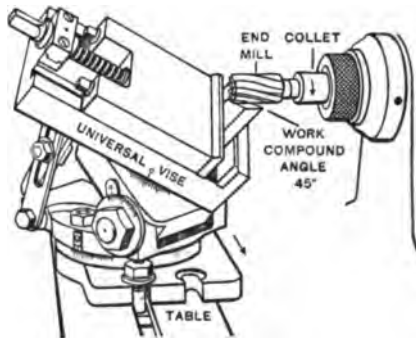


FIG. 19.—SETTING UNIVERSAL VISE AT 45° HORIZONTALLY AND VERTICALLY TO SPINDLE.

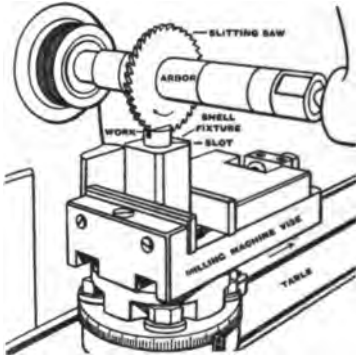


FIG. 20.—MILLING SLOT IN WORK HELD IN SHELL FIXTURE.

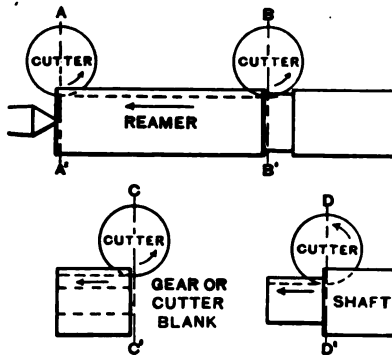


FIG. 21.—BEGINNING AND ENDING CUTS IN GROOVES, FLUTES, KEYWAYS AND SLOTS.

35. Shell fixture, Fig. 20, made square or hexagonal, and used to hold two, four or six-sided work without an index head. For shafts, spindles and screws, the hole is straight. For shanks of mills, drills and arbors, the hole is taper. A

screw secures work in fixture, and a slot permits vise to clamp work.

36. In taking short trial cuts to obtain width of land in grooving taps, fluting reamers, milling teeth of cutters, etc., it is well to know that the milling cutter does not cut its full depth until the axis of the cutter has passed the end of the work as shown at  $AA'$ , Fig. 21. To avoid a curved tooth or land, at end of cut, the feed must be continued by power or hand until the axis of the cutter has passed the end of the work as shown at  $BB'$  and  $CC'$ , Fig. 21. To mill the bottom of a keyway or slot straight to a shoulder, do not stop the feed until the axis of cutter has passed the shoulder as shown at  $DD'$ , Fig. 21.

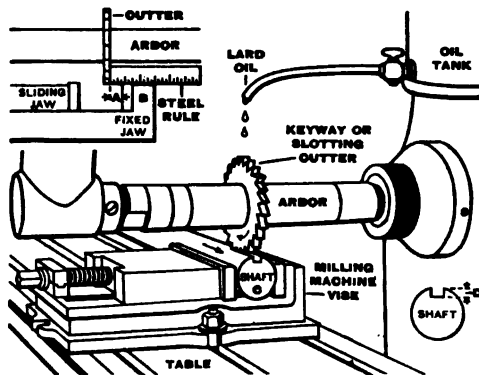


FIG. 22. — MILLING KEYWAY IN SHAFT.

*Information.* — To terminate a cut automatically at end of tooth or land, mount work on centers, raise table until work just clears cutter. Start machine and power feed. Sight axis of cutter and end of tooth or blank and when axis of cutter is nearing end of tooth or blank, clamp table dog. Begin cut as in  $AA'$ , Fig. 21, and mill one groove and terminate cut with table dog. Then adjust dog to correct length of groove.

**37. To mill keyway or slot in shaft. Fig. 22.**

**Specifications:** Material, machine steel shaft cold rolled, turned or ground,  $1\frac{1}{8}$ " diameter. Mill keyway  $\frac{1}{4}$ " wide,  $\frac{3}{8}$ " deep.

**Machines and tools:** Milling machine, milling machine vise, arbor,  $\frac{1}{4}$ " cutter, rule, planer parallel, lead hammer.

Speed, 1st or 2d speed or 60 F.P.M.

Feed, medium power feed, or .010" per cutter revolution.

Lubricant, lard oil.

Time: 10 min. with machine "set up."

---

**SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS, MACHINES AND TOOLS**


---

**I. Clean and oil machine and vise.**

**II. Preparatory adjustments.** Fasten milling machine vise to table with jaws at right angle to arbor. See Fig. 15.

Insert clean arbor in clean spindle and drive lightly with lead hammer. Place cutter on arbor without key, to cut in direction of rotation as shown, and clamp hard. Oil end of arbor and adjust arm to it.

**III. Set cutter central.** Raise table and move cross feed until distance *A*, from cutter to fixed jaw *B*, equals one-half diameter of shaft less one-half width of cutter.

*Example:* shaft =  $1\frac{1}{8}$ ", cutter =  $\frac{1}{4}$ ". One-half diameter of shaft =  $\frac{3}{4}$ ", one-half width of cutter =  $\frac{1}{8}$ ". Thus distance *A* =  $\frac{3}{4}$ " -  $\frac{1}{8}$ " =  $\frac{5}{8}$ ".

Clamp cross feed.

**IV. Clamp shaft in vise.** Lower table. Place shaft *C* on parallel between vise jaws. Clamp hard and drive to seat with lead hammer. Draw line for length of keyway.

**V. Take trial cuts.** Start machine and take a few short trial cuts with hand feed until cutter mills its width.

**VI. Raise table for depth of keyway.** Move work away from cutter. Set vertical dial at zero and raise table required number of thousandths for depth *D* (.094").

Feed work to cutter by hand feed then throw in power feed and mill keyway with one cut. When nearing line, trip power feed by hand, and feed to line by hand feed.

---

**Attention.** — When milling two or more keyways, slots, grooves, etc., it is best to set and adjust table dog to trip feed automatically at desired length of cut.

**Warning.** — To avoid injury, keep clothing and fingers away from revolving cutters.

38. Metal slitting saw *A*, Fig. 23, is used to slit lathe footstock *B*, held by fixture *C*. Also to cut off pieces of work as in Fig. 24.

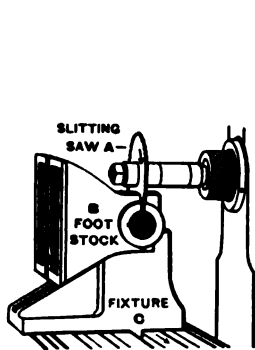


FIG. 23. — SLITTING LATHE FOOTSTOCK.

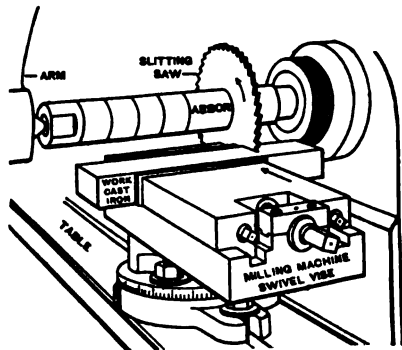


FIG. 24. — CUTTING OFF PIECES.

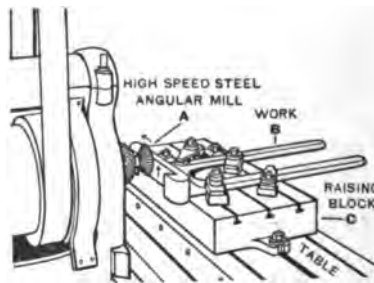


FIG. 25. — MILLING DOVETAIL. PLAIN MILLING MACHINE.

39. To mill dovetail, Fig. 25, use angular shell mill *A*, mounted on end of short arbor with hand vertical feed. If necessary, raising block *C* may be used to elevate work *B*.

40. Planer-type milling machine, Fig. 26, with elevating spindle, is designed for heavy, wide and long cuts. They are made with one or two horizontal heads and in addition one or two vertical heads. The work is held by bolts, clamps and

screw pins, and should butt against pins or angle plate to prevent slipping.

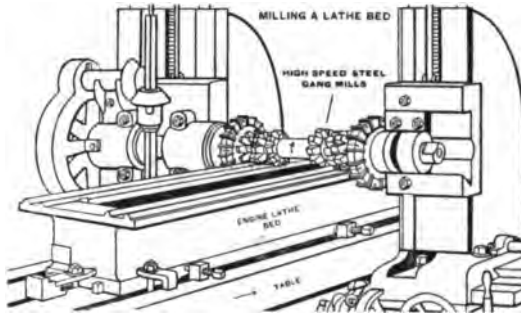


FIG. 26. — PLANER-TYPE MILLING MACHINE.

41. Gang mills are made by combining a number of mills of desired shape, as in Fig. 27, and enables work to be finished in one operation.

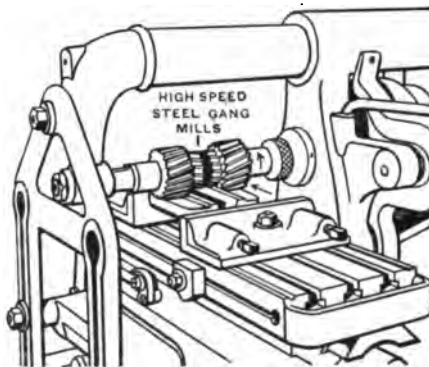


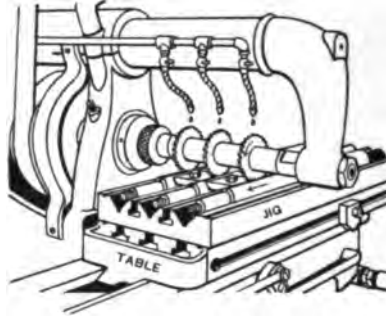
FIG. 27. — GANG MILLS. MILLING A CAP.

#### JIGS AND FIXTURES

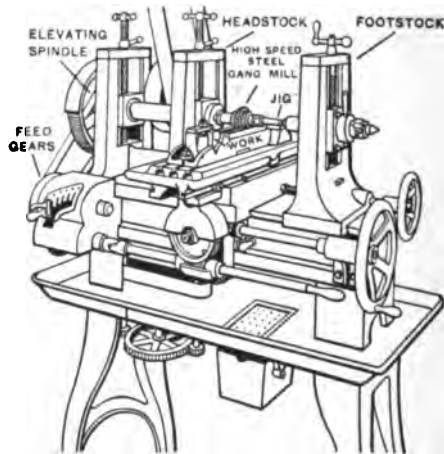
42. Milling jigs and fixtures are used where a number of duplicate parts have to be milled. See Figs. 28, 29, 30.



**43. Multiple milling.**— Use milling fixture, Fig. 28, for rapid production of keyways. It is bolted to table and has



**FIG. 28. — MULTIPLE MILLING. MILLING KEYWAYS IN THREE SHAFTS AT ONE TIME.**

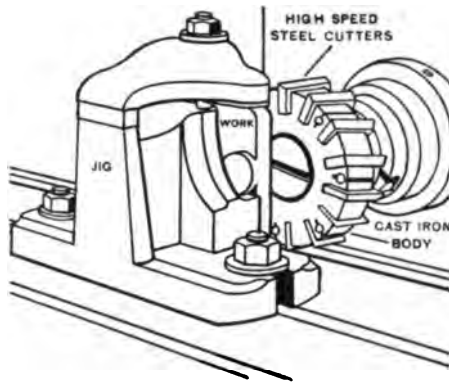


**FIG. 29. — COMMERCIAL MILLING. MANUFACTURING MILLING MACHINE.**

three V-grooves into which three shafts are clamped, and three keyways milled at a time.

**44. Manufacturing type of milling machine, Fig. 29, adapted to accurate duplicate work which can be held in a vise or jig, and is largely used in gun, sewing machine, typewriter, and shoe machinery work.**

**45. A jig for milling duplicate machine parts, Fig. 30.— The mill has inserted high-speed steel cutters, held in place by taper pins.**



**FIG. 30. — MILLING DUPLICATE WORK. INSERTED TOOTH MILL.**

### INDEX MILLING

**46. Indexing** is to divide work into any number of parts. There are three methods: Rapid, plain and differential.

**47. Rapid indexing** is done by an index plate or disk fastened to the index head spindle which may have 24, 30 or 36 notches or holes to index work into any number of divisions that will divide these numbers evenly. It is preferred for work that requires only a small number of divisions, as bolt heads, nuts, grooving taps, etc.

**48. Holding work for index milling** is similar to holding work in an engine lathe. There are three general methods: Mounting on centers, on mandrel, or by securing in a chuck.

49. To mill bolt head and nut hexagonal with heading mills, bolt head milling machine. Fig. 31.

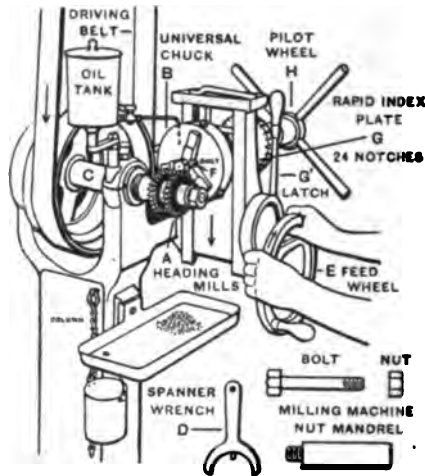


FIG. 31. — MILLING BOLT HEAD AND NUT HEXAGONAL.

**Specifications:**  $\frac{1}{2}$ " bolt turned and threaded, with  $\frac{7}{8}$ " hexagonal head and nut to be milled to  $1\frac{3}{8}$ ".

**Machines and tools:** Bolt head milling machine, arbor, index head and universal chuck, two high-speed steel heading mills,  $1\frac{3}{8}$ " spacing collar, milling-machine nut mandrel, 1" micrometer.

Speed, 60 F.P.M., or 1st or 2d speed.

Feed, medium power feed, or .007" per cutter revolution.

Lubricant, lard oil.

Time: for nut 4 min., bolt 5 min. with machine "set up."

#### SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS, MACHINES AND TOOLS

I. Clean and oil machine and index head.

II. Preparatory adjustments. Place mills A, on arbor without key, to cut in direction of rotation as shown, with  $1\frac{3}{8}$ " spacing collar between them and clamp hard. Move index head until

chuck jaws are  $\frac{1}{4}$ " from mills and clamp with thumb screws on slide. Place latch G' in notch in index plate G.

III. Aline mills with chuck. Aline mills A with chuck B, by a nut mandrel (equal in diameter to space between mills) held in chuck.

Move spindle *C* endways by adjusting nuts on front box with spanner *D*, until mandrel moved by wheel *E*, will pass between mills.

**IV. Test spacing of mills.** Test spacing of mills by milling a trial piece, as a piece of shaft clamped in chuck. Mill two sides and measure with micrometer, reading should be .8125" to .8155". If measurement is not within the limit, adjustments may be made, as follows: To mill larger, place washers of thin metal or paper of the desired thickness between mills and spacing collar. To mill smaller, square off sides of spacing collar.

**V. Mill nut hexagonal.** Screw

nut hard on a milling-machine nut mandrel held between copper jaws in a vise. Place mandrel in chuck *B*, with nut  $\frac{1}{4}$ " from the jaws and two sides of nut parallel to mills, and clamp hard. Start machine and feed nut downward slowly between mills by hand wheel *E*. Mill two sides, one cut. Move work upward until clear of mills. Withdraw latch *G'*, index work four notches on index plate *G* by revolving with pilot wheel *H*. Mill remaining sides by the same method.

**VI. Mill bolt head hexagonal.** Clamp bolt by its body very hard in chuck in the same position as the nut, and mill with the same setting and by same process.

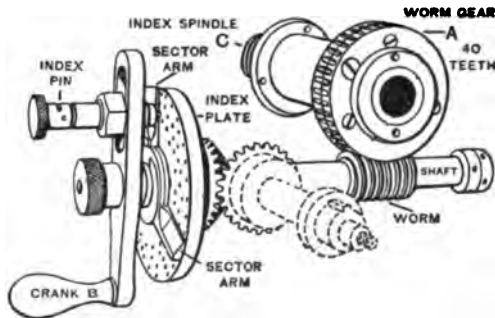
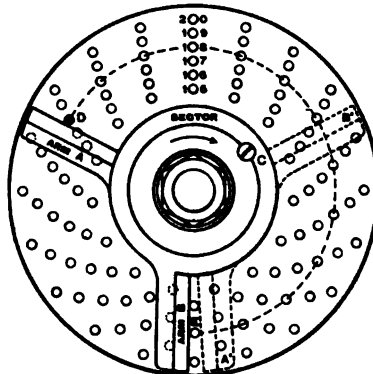


FIG. 32. — INDEXING MECHANISM.

**50. Index head and footstock, Nos. 6, 7, Fig. 1,** are used on plain or universal milling machines to do all kinds of index milling (see Spiral Milling). The index head spindle, Fig. 1, can be clamped at any angle with table, from 5° below horizontal to 10° beyond vertical. The footstock center, Fig. 1, can be adjusted at any angle in vertical plane.

**51. Index mechanism, plain indexing.** — To determine number of turns or any part of a turn to revolve crank for each division, divide 40 by number of divisions of work. Worm gear *A*, Fig. 32, has 40 teeth, and 40 turns of crank *B* will rotate spindle *C* one revolution. Where 40 divides without a remainder, adjust index crank pin to fit any hole in circle, and turn crank twice for twenty divisions, four times for ten divisions, five times for eight divisions, etc.

**52. Use of index plate for obtaining fractional part of revolution of crank.** The index plate contains concentric rows of equidistant holes, as in Fig. 33. The three index plates supplied with head have different numbers of holes.



EXAMPLE 15 DIVISIONS  
18 HOLE CIRCLE — 5 TURNS — 12 HOLES (SPACES)

FIG. 33. — INDEX PLATE.

**53. The sector, Fig. 33,** consists of two radial arms *A*, *B*, that span required number of holes, and are clamped by screw *C*. This saves counting the holes after first time, and eliminates liability of error.

*Example 1.* — To divide work into 15 divisions.

*Solution.* —  $40 \div 15 = 2\frac{2}{3}$ , number of turns to move handle.

Select index plate with hole circle divisible by 3, as in Fig. 33 (18-hole circle), adjust crank to allow pin *D* to drop into a hole in this circle, move arm *A* against it. Re-

lease screw *C* and move arm *B* until it spans 12 spaces, 13 holes =  $\frac{2}{3}$  of 18. Clamp screw *C*. Take first cut, withdraw index pin and secure with slight turn. Rotate crank 2 turns and 12 spaces, and drop crank pin in hole *E*. Then with finger, draw arm *A* around until it is against index pin, when sector arms will be in position shown by dotted arms *A'*, *B'*. Take second cut.

*Example 2.* — To divide work into 48 divisions.

*Solution.* —  $\frac{1}{3} \times 16 = \frac{16}{3}$ .

Select plate with a 24-hole circle, set sector arms to span 21 holes, or 20 spaces, and move index pin that amount for each division, or use an 18-hole circle and 16 holes.

**54.** Graduated sector permits arm to be set to span any number of holes without counting by data given in table.

**55.** Adjustable crank allows index pin to drop into nearest hole to start cut readily at a desired point on work.

*Warning.* — There must be one more hole between sector arms than number obtained by calculation, or given on index table for holes in indexing mean spaces.

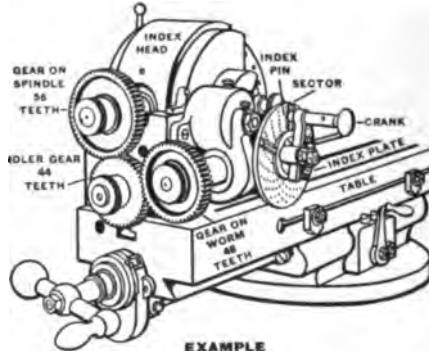
**56.** The index table supplied with machine gives data for plain and differential indexing.

**57.** Differential indexing is used to index prime, fractional and other numbers not obtainable by plain indexing.

**58.** Differential principle, Figs. 34, 35. — The index spindle is geared to index plate with gears supplied for spiral milling. Indexing is done on rotating index plate with mechanism arranged for plain indexing. With gears at a ratio of 1 to 1 and one idler to rotate index plate in direction of index crank, one division will be subtracted from regular indexing. With two idlers to rotate index plate opposite to index crank, one division will be added.

**59.** To obtain ratio of gearing, select a number near desired number of divisions, which can be indexed by plain method. The difference between these two numbers will represent gear for spindle. Divide selected number by 40 and quotient will represent gear for worm. Multiply each by a constant to give available gears. If selected number is larger than desired

number, gearing must rotate plate with crank; if smaller, opposite to crank.



EXAMPLE  
ARRANGED FOR PLAIN INDEXING 240 DIVISIONS  
18 HOLE CIRCLE, 3 HOLES  
DECREASED BY SIMPLE GEARING TO 233 DIVISIONS  
(NO. OF SECTOR GRADUATION 32)

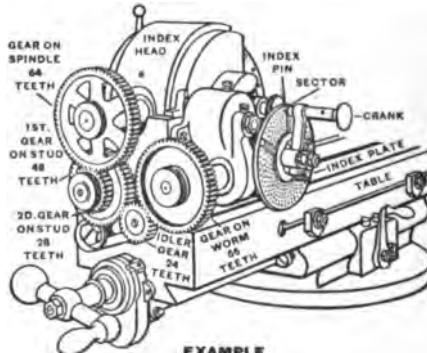
FIG. 34. — DIFFERENTIAL INDEXING WITH SIMPLE GEARING.

*Example 1.* — Simple gearing, Fig. 34. Desired number of divisions 233, selected number 240.

*Solution.* —  $240 - 233 = 7$ .  $7 \times 8 = 56$  gear on spindle.

$240 \div 40 = 6$ .  $6 \times 8 = 48$  gear on worm.

One idler about 44. See To Calculate Simple Gearing, p. 327.



EXAMPLE  
ARRANGED FOR PLAIN INDEXING 246 DIVISIONS.  
49 HOLE CIRCLE, 3 HOLES  
INCREASED BY COMPOUND GEARING TO 257 DIVISIONS.  
(NO. OF SECTOR GRADUATION 30)

FIG. 35. — DIFFERENTIAL INDEXING WITH COMPOUND GEARING.

*Example 2.* — *Compound gearing*, Fig. 35. Desired number of divisions 257, selected number 245.

*Solution.* —  $257 - 245 = 12.$       $\frac{12 \times 8}{6\frac{1}{8} \times 8} = \frac{96}{49}$   
 $245 \div 40 = 6\frac{1}{8}.$

*Factoring.* —  $\frac{96}{49} = \frac{16 \times 6}{7 \times 7} = \frac{64 \times 48}{28 \times 56}$ .

Gear on spindle, 64. First gear on stud, 48.

Second gear on stud, 28. Gear on worm, 56.

One idler of about 24. See To Calculate Compound Gearing, p. 333.

CALCULATING DIAMETER OF BLANK TO MILL SQUARE OR HEXAGONAL

60. Diameter to turn work to mill or file square is the product of diameter across the flats multiplied by 1.414.

*Example.* — Fig. 36. What diameter must a piece be to mill square  $1\frac{1}{4}$ " across the flats?

*Solution.* —  $1.250" \times 1.414 = 1.767"$  or  $1\frac{3}{4}"$  diameter of blank.

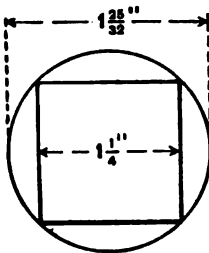


FIG. 36. — DIAGRAM TO TURN CYLINDER TO MILL SQUARE.

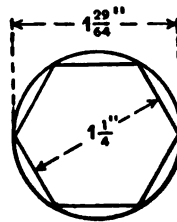


FIG. 37. — DIAGRAM TO TURN CYLINDER TO MILL HEXAGONAL.

61. Diameter to turn work to mill or file hexagonal is the product of the diameter across the flats multiplied by 1.155.



*Example.* — Fig. 37. What diameter must a piece be to mill hexagonal  $1\frac{1}{4}$ " across the flats?

*Solution.* —  $1.250" \times 1.155 = 1.444"$  or  $1\frac{1}{4}$ " diameter of blank.

**62. To mill bolt head hexagonal with heading mills, universal or plain milling machine. Fig. 38.**

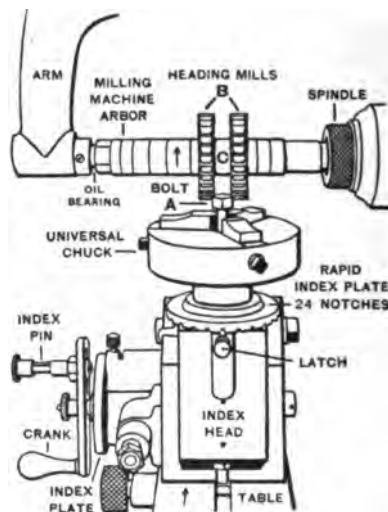


FIG. 38. — MILLING HEXAGONAL BOLT HEAD OR NUT WITH HEADING MILLS.

**Specifications:**  $\frac{1}{2}$ " bolt turned and threaded, with  $\frac{1}{2}$ " hexagonal head and nut to be milled to  $1\frac{1}{8}$ ".

**Machines and tools:** Universal or plain milling machine, arbor, index head and universal chuck, two high-speed steel heading mills, and  $1\frac{1}{8}$ " spacing-collar, milling-machine nut mandrel.

Speed, 60 F.P.M., or 1st or 2d speed.

Feed, medium power feed, or .010" per cutter revolution.

Lubricant, lard oil.

Time: for nut 4 min., bolt 5 min. with machine "set up."

## SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS, MACHINES AND TOOLS

**I. Clean and oil machine including index head.**

**II. Preparatory adjustments.** Place clean arbor in clean hole in spindle and drive lightly with lead hammer. Place mills *B* on arbor without key, to cut in direction of rotation as shown, with  $\frac{1}{8}$ " spacing collar *C* between them, and clamp hard. Oil end of arbor, adjust and clamp arm. Fasten index head on clean table. Set index spindle and chuck vertical, as shown. Raise table to bring chuck jaws about  $\frac{1}{4}$ " below mills.

**III. Arrange index mechanism.** For rapid indexing, place latch in notch in index plate with index pin out. For plain indexing, place index pin in hole in 39-hole circle in index plate with latch out.

**IV. Aline mills with chuck by nut mandrel, as in p. 1020.**

**V. Mill nut hexagonal.** Screw nut hard on milling-machine nut mandrel held between copper jaws in vise, place mandrel in chuck with nut  $\frac{1}{4}$ " above jaws and two sides of nut parallel to mills, and clamp hard. Start machine, feed by hand and mill only enough to take measurement. Move table back until nut clears mill. Measure across flats with 1" micrometer. Reading should be from .8125" to .8155". If reading is not within limit, make corrections. See p. 1021, IV. Index a sixth of a revolution each time and mill remaining sides. Use power feed and adjust table dog to trip feed automatically; or trip feed by hand at end of cut.

**VI. Mill bolt head hexagonal.** Clamp bolt by body in chuck very hard, in same position as nut and mill same as nut.

*Attention.* — To use rapid indexing, see p. 1019, revolve index head spindle four notches in 24-notch plate after each cut.

To use plain indexing, see pp. 1021–1023, adjust index crank pin to fit a 39-hole circle; adjust sector to span 26 spaces or 27 holes in 39-hole circle. After each cut, revolve crank six turns and 26 spaces.

*Information.* — To center chuck accurately with heading mills, move cross feed "out" then "in" to remove back lash. Mill one side of trial piece held in chuck with inside of outer mill, index twenty turns and mill opposite side. Measure with micrometer, then set dial at zero and move cross feed inward one-half the difference between size of trial piece and space between cutters. Example. Size of trial piece  $\frac{1}{8}$ ", space between cutters  $\frac{1}{8}$ ";  $\frac{1}{8}$ " -  $\frac{1}{8}$ " =  $\frac{1}{8}$ ";  $\frac{1}{8}$ "  $\div$  2 =  $\frac{1}{16}$ " or .0625" distance to move cross feed inward.

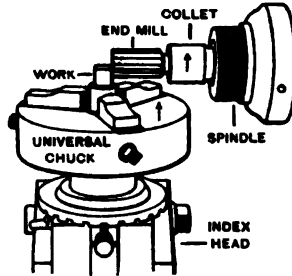
**63. To mill square head with end mill. Fig. 39.**

FIG. 39. — MILLING SQUARE HEAD WITH END MILL.

**Specifications:** 1" reamer blank, mill head on shank  $\frac{1}{4}$ " square and  $\frac{1}{8}$ " long.

**Machines and tools:** Universal or plain milling machine, bolt-heading machine, collet, index head and universal chuck,  $1\frac{1}{8}$ " high-speed steel end mill, 1" micrometer, lead hammer.

Speed, 60 F.P.M., or 3d speed.

Feed, medium power, or .010" per cutter revolution.

Lubricant, lard oil.

Time: 15 min. with machine "set up."

#### SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS, MACHINES AND TOOLS

**I. Clean and oil machine including index head.**

**II. Preparatory adjustments.** Clean shank of end mill and place in clean hole in collet, and place clean collet in clean hole in spindle and drive lightly with lead hammer.

Fasten index head on clean table. Set index spindle and chuck vertical as shown. Raise table to bring chuck jaws about  $\frac{1}{2}$ " below end mill.

**III. Arrange for indexing, rapid or plain.**

**IV. To mill square head.** Place 1" reamer or tap blank in chuck

with end of shank  $\frac{1}{4}$ " above jaws and clamp hard.

Start machine, move work inward to take cut about  $\frac{1}{4}$ " deep and down to line for length of square head. Feed by hand against up-cutting side of end mill as shown by arrows, and mill one side.

Move table back until work clears mill, revolve work one-half revolution and mill opposite side.

Stop machine, move table back and measure work with micrometer, and from reading of micrometer subtract the finish size and divide the remainder by two,

which will give the amount to move work inward to obtain correct measurement. Example: Trial cut may measure  $.750''$ , finish measurement is  $.625''$  ( $.750'' - .625'' = .125''$ ,  $.125'' \div 2 = .0625''$ , the amount to move work inward).

Set cross-feed dial at zero and

move work inward  $.0625''$ . Mill side, index and mill opposite side, measure and make correction, if necessary. Mill remaining sides with one cut each.

*Attention.*—File slight bevels on edges of squared end to remove burr.

## MILLING ON CENTERS

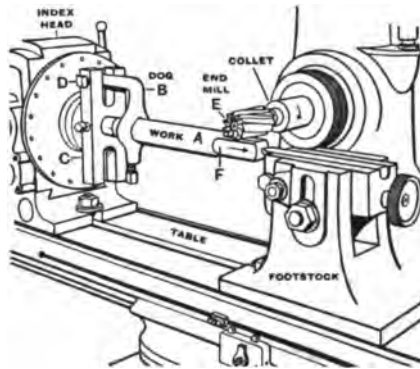


FIG. 40.—MILLING END OF SHAFT SQUARE LEAVING CURVED SHOULDER.

**64. To mill end of shaft square with curved shoulder,** Fig. 40.—Set index head at zero, clamp and set footstock spindle in alinement. Mount work *A* on centers, clamp dog *B* to face plate *C* with screw *D*. Arrange for indexing, mount end mill *E* in collet and set dog to trip feed at *F*. Take trial cuts on opposite sides and measure with micrometer. Set vertical feed dial at zero, move work away from mill and elevate work by vertical feed shaft one-half its oversize. Mill sides in order with one cut each.

**65. Steady rest to support slender work, A, Fig. 41.**—To mill the grooves in rose reamer, use convex cutter *B* and a special angular cutter for teeth at end.

**66. To flute or groove small reamers, taps, drills, etc.,** hold work in chuck and support outer end by steady rest with a V-grooved head elevating screw.

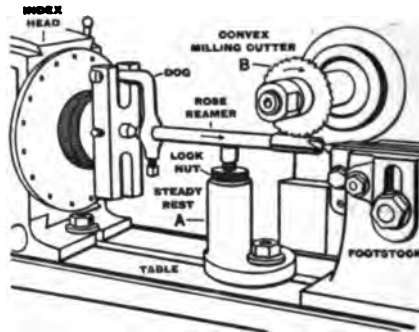


FIG. 41.—SUPPORTING SLENDER WORK, FLUTING ROSE REAMER, WITH STEADY REST.

67. To mill a number of nuts at once, string on a gang mandrel and clamp between shoulder and nut. Mount mandrel on centers and mill nuts similarly to milling square end of a shaft as in Fig. 40. Use end, plain, or heading mills.

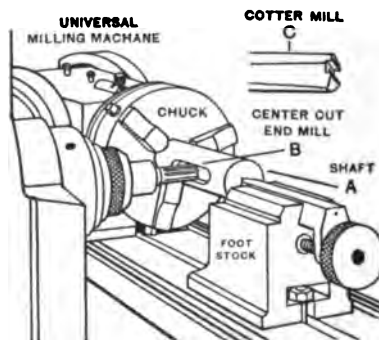


FIG. 42.—MILLING KEYWAY IN SHAFT WITH CENTER-CUT END MILL OR COTTER MILL.

68. To mill keyway or slot in shaft with center-cut end mill, Fig. 42.—Aline index centers and cone spindle by zero lines on knee and column. Mount one end of shaft A in

chuck and the other end on footstock center. Mill keyway with center-cut end mill *B*. If cotter mill *C* is used, drill a hole in shaft in which to start mill.

## GROOVING TAPS

**69. To groove or flute taps, reamers, cutters, etc.** — Taps, reamers, cutters, etc., are grooved or fluted by milling, to provide cutting edges and places to receive and discharge chips. There are no standards for depth of groove, width of land, or number of grooves.

**70. Taps, number of grooves, rake of teeth.** Figs. 43, 44. — Four grooves are given taps up to 3" in diameter, and five or more for larger diameters. Hobs for tapping threading dies are usually given from six to eight grooves.



FIG. 43. — TAP GROOVED WITH SPECIAL DOUBLE-ANGLE TAP CUTTER, RADIAL TEETH.

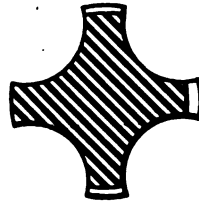


FIG. 44. — COMMERCIAL TAP GROOVED WITH CONVEX CUTTER.

For tapping all kinds of metal, the two forms of grooves in Figs. 43, 44 are largely used, and each cutter is suitable for several diameters of taps. The teeth of special taps for brass are often given a negative rake (to prevent chattering) by the shape of the grooves, or by grinding the face of the teeth.

To give parallel lands on plug or bottoming taps, set index centers in alinement; but on taper taps, lower index head slightly to give parallel or slightly taper lands.

71. To groove a tap. Direct method. Double-angle formed tap cutter. — Figs. 45, 46.

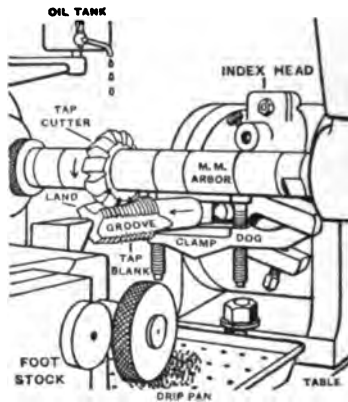


FIG. 45. — GROOVING TAP.

**Specifications:**  $\frac{1}{4}$ "  $\times$  10 U.S.S. taper tap blank threaded, and with end of shank milled square. Four grooves.

**Machines and tools:** Universal or plain milling machine, arbor, index head and centers, No. 5 high-speed steel double-angle tap cutter, clamp dog or special driver.

Speed, 60 F.P.M., or 1st or 2d speed.

Feed, medium power feed, or .007" per cutter revolution.

Lubricant, lard oil.

Time: 32 min. with machine "set up."

#### SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS, MACHINES AND TOOLS

**I. Clean and oil machine and index head.**

**II. Preparatory adjustments.** Insert clean arbor in clean hole in spindle. Drive arbor lightly with lead hammer. Place cutter on arbor without key and clamp hard. Oil end of arbor and adjust arm to bearing. Fasten index head and footstock on clean table. Set centers in horizontal align-

ment, then lower index head one-third degree to give slightly taper lands.

**III. Arrange for indexing, rapid or plain.**

**IV. Mount tap blank on centers.** Fasten clamp dog or special driver on tap, oil dead center and mount on centers. Clamp tail of dog in face plate to avoid backlash. With index latch in

notch or index pin in hole, lightly drive face plate or driver with lead hammer until side of square end of tap is perpendicular to table, testing with square resting on table. Start machine and power feed and adjust table dog to stop feed automatically when center of cutter has passed last thread on tap, see p. 1014.

V. To obtain depth of setting. Raise knee until highest part of tap blank touches largest diameter of revolving cutter.

A piece of white paper held between revolving cutter and tap blank will indicate touch. Then set vertical feed dial at zero.

VI. To obtain side setting. Move cross feed until outside of tap and outside of cutter are in same vertical plane, testing by square resting on table. Then set cross-feed dial at zero.

VII. Move both feeds required amount. With long-feed handle, move tap away from cutter and with cross-feed handle move tap

outward .150," see A, Fig. 46. Then with vertical feed raise tap .175," see B, Fig. 46. Use rapid method of indexing and mill four grooves, one cut for each groove.

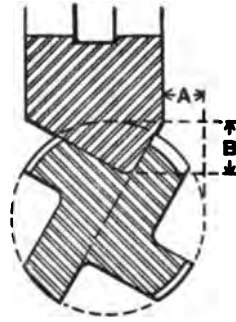


FIG. 46. — DIAGRAM FOR SETTING DOUBLE-ANGLE TAP CUTTER.

*Attention.* — Data may be obtained for grooving taps of all diameters by the direct method by taking experimental cuts on trial blanks.

72. To groove tap, trial method. — Set cutter approximately central to footstock center. Use trial blank and take short light cut. Then index quarter turn and take similar cut and measure land. Raise knee a small amount and repeat until land is proper width. Remove trial blank. Move cross feed and with rule set small angle of cutter in alinement with center, as in Fig. 47, that is radial or slightly ahead of radial, if desired.

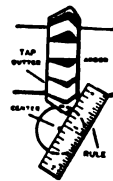


FIG. 47. — SETTING DOUBLE-ANGLE CUTTERS TO MILL RADIAL TEETH.



## FLUTING REAMERS

**73. Fluting reamers.**— For reaming all kinds of metal, use the form of flute in Fig. 48, which gives radial cutting edges. Each cutter may be used for several diameters.

The cutting edges of brass reamers are often made to recede from a radial line giving a negative rake from  $5^\circ$  to  $10^\circ$ , Fig. 49.



FIG. 48. — FORM OF FLUTE IN REAMER FOR GENERAL WORK. TEETH RADIAL. IRREGULARLY SPACED.



FIG. 49. — FORM OF FLUTE IN REAMER FOR BRASS. TEETH WITH NEGATIVE RAKE, IRREGULARLY SPACED.

Space the reamer irregularly to avoid chattering, with an even number of teeth and with opposite cutting edges in the same diameter so that it can be measured with micrometer. The irregularity,  $1^\circ$  to  $4^\circ$  from equal spacing, is obtained by subtracting or adding a predetermined number of holes to or from the regular indexing for each pair of flutes diametrically opposite.

**74. Principle of indexing and fluting a 1" hand reamer to avoid chattering.**— The teeth are spaced two holes in the 20-hole circle progressively wider, and to obtain lands of uniform width the flutes are milled  $.007''$  progressively deeper from 1 to 5 and from  $1'$  to  $5'$ .

**75. To flute hand reamer, Fig. 50.**

**Specifications:** 1" hand reamer blank with end of shank milled square. Ten flutes. See Fig. 48.

**Machines and tools:** Universal or plain milling machine, arbor, index head and centers, high-speed steel special formed reamer cutter, clamp dog or special driver.

Speed, 60 F.P.M., 1st or 2d speed.

Feed, medium power feed, or .007" per cutter revolution.

Lubricant, lard oil.

Time: 50 min. with machine "set up".

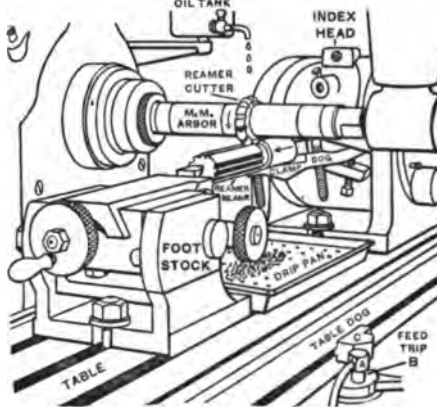


FIG. 50. — FLUTING HAND REAMER.

**SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS, MACHINES AND TOOLS**

**I. Clean and oil machine and index head.**

**II. Preparatory adjustments.** Insert clean arbor in clean spindle. Drive arbor lightly with lead hammer. Place cutter on arbor without key and clamp hard.

Oil end of arbor and adjust arm to bearing. Fasten index head and footstock on clean table. Set centers in horizontal alignment.

**III. Arrange for plain indexing** 10 teeth with a 20 hole circle.

**IV. Mount reamer blank or trial blank on centers.** Fasten clamp dog or special driver on square end of reamer blank, oil dead center and mount reamer blank (or trial blank) on centers,

see Fig. 50. To avoid backlash, clamp tail of dog in face plate with set screw.

Start machine and power feed and adjust table dog to stop the feed automatically when the center of the cutter has reached the corner of the blank. See p. 1014.

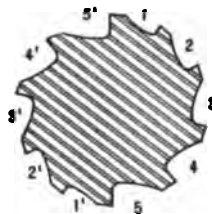


FIG. 51. — DIAGRAM OF REAMER SHOWING PRINCIPLE OF IRREGULAR SPACING.

V. To obtain width of land with trial blank. It is safer to obtain width of land and setting of cutter with a trial blank the same diameter as reamer blank. Set cutter approximately central with footstock center, and mill two flutes to give desired width of land as follows:

Raise table and take a light short cut in 1, Fig. 51. Move work clear of cutter, then index three turns and eighteen holes. Raise .007" and take a cut in 2. Repeat cuts in 1 and 2 until land is  $\frac{1}{8}$ " wide, keeping flute 2, .007" deeper than 1.

VI. Set cutter radial. Remove trial blank. Move cross feed and with rule, set angle of cutter in alinement with center (that is radial), see Fig. 47, or set cutter ahead of radial, if it is desired to have face of teeth ahead of radial.

Or set cutter to give a negative tooth if it is desired to have teeth with negative rake for brass.

VII. Mill flutes. Mount reamer blank on centers, and mill flutes as follows: Begin at 1 with cutter set at depth of 1, with vertical dial set at zero and mill flute 1. Index twenty turns and mill flute 1'. Raise to .007", index three turns and eighteen holes and mill flute 2.'

Index twenty turns and mill flute 2. Raise to .014," index four turns and mill flute 3. Index twenty turns and mill flute 3.' Raise to .021," index four turns and two holes and mill flute 4.' Index twenty turns and mill flute 4. Raise to .028," index four turns and four holes and mill flute 5.

Index twenty turns and mill flute 5'.

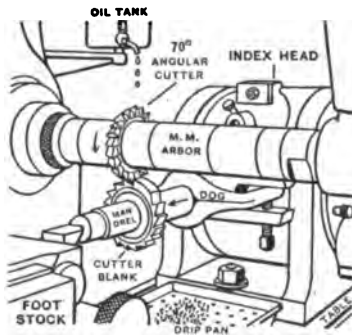


FIG. 52. — MILLING TEETH OF PLAIN MILLING CUTTER.

76. Electric alarm to call operator when feed stops and terminates cut, may be arranged, as at A, B, Fig. 50. Metal cap A, insulated with fiber or vulcanite, is placed on feed trip B. One wire is attached to cap and runs to battery in column. The other wire connects machine, bell and battery. When table dog C, strikes cap A, the bell rings.

#### MILLING TEETH OF MILLING CUTTER

77. To mill teeth of plain milling cutter, Fig. 52.

**Specifications:**  $2\frac{1}{2}'' \times \frac{1}{2}''$  plain milling cutter blank, carbon or high-speed steel turned and squared, 18 teeth, width of land  $\frac{3}{16}''$ . See pp. 1224, 1225.

**Machines and tools:** Universal or plain milling machine, arbor,  $70^\circ$  angular high-speed steel cutter, index head and centers, mandrel, dog or special driver.

Speed, 60 F.P.M., or 1st or 2d speed.

Feed, medium power feed, or .007" per cutter revolution.

Lubricant, lard oil.

Time: 30 min. with machine "set up."

### SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS, MACHINES AND TOOLS

**I. Clean and oil machine and index head.**

**II. Preparatory adjustments.** Insert clean arbor in clean hole in spindle. Drive arbor lightly with lead hammer. Place cutter on arbor without key and clamp hard. Oil end of arbor and adjust arm to bearing.

Fasten index head and foot-stock on clean table. Set centers in horizontal alinement.

**III. Arrange plain indexing for 18 teeth.**

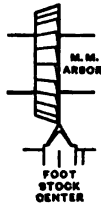


FIG. 53.—ALINING CENTER TO ANGULAR CUTTER TO OBTAIN RADIAL TEETH.

**IV. Aline cutter and center.** Set cutter radial, as shown in Fig. 53.

**V. Mount work on centers.** Force mandrel into cutter blank (or use gang mandrel), fasten dog on mandrel, oil dead center and mount on centers. To avoid backlash, clamp tail of dog in face plate with set screw. Start machine and power feed, and adjust table dog to stop feed automatically when center of cutter has passed the corner of blank.

**VI. Obtain width of land by trial cuts in two grooves.** Raise table and take a light trial cut less than required depth with power feed. Index cutter blank forward for the next tooth and take similar cut. Then raise table and take trial cuts in second groove until desired width of land ( $\frac{3}{16}''$ ) is obtained.

**VII. Mill teeth.** Index and mill all teeth with one cut each.

**78. To mill teeth of angular cutter, Fig. 54.**—Mount angular cutter *A*, on milling machine arbor *B*. Mount angular cutter blank *C*, on stub arbor *D*, which fits the index

head spindle. Raise index head spindle to approximate angle and take trial cuts and adjust angle to obtain parallel lands. Then raise table to obtain desired width of land.

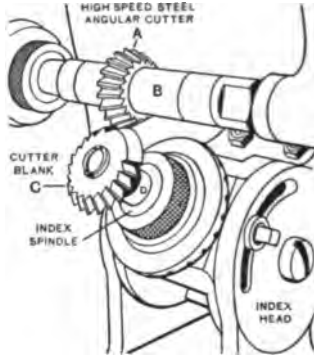


FIG. 54. — MILLING TEETH IN AN ANGULAR CUTTER.

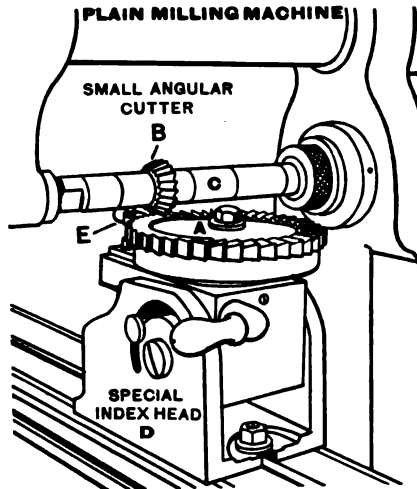


FIG. 55. — MILLING RADIAL TEETH OF SIDE MILLING CUTTER. INDEXING FROM TEETH.

79. To mill radial teeth in side milling cutter, Fig. 55. — Mill face teeth of the side milling cutter A, in the same manner as a plain mill, with small angular cutter B, on arbor C.

Set special index head *D* vertically, then adjust to give teeth with parallel lands. Index the cutter by the face teeth with latch at *E*.

80. To level or set taper work with surface gage, as the taper tap or reamer blank *A*, Fig. 56, mount on centers and test with surface gage *B*. Cut deeper at one end, as shown by dotted line *CD*, so that lands will be parallel or nearly so. Adjust scriber to touch work at *E*, and insert metal piece equal in thickness to difference in depth of cut at *F*. Adjust work by raising dead center or lowering index head.

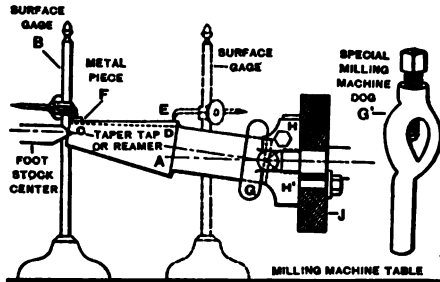


FIG. 56. — LEVELING TAPER WORK WITH SURFACE GAGE.

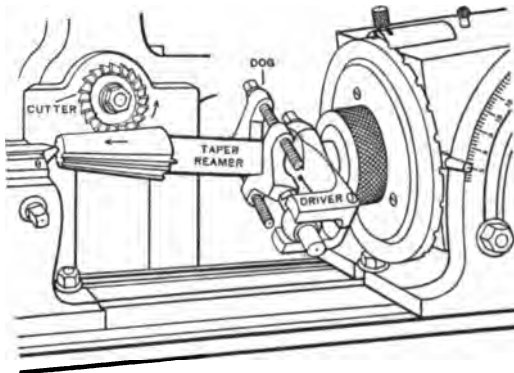


FIG. 57. — MILLING TAPER WORK. SPECIAL MILLING MACHINE DOG AND DRIVER.

81. Special milling machine dogs for taper work. — A regular dog will spring taper work unless the screw confining the tail is released before rotating work.

Figs. 56, 57, show two types of special milling machine dogs which give desired motion and avoid springing work.

To divide taper work exactly, the axis of index head, spindle and axis of dead center must be in alinement. The footstock center on some machines can be adjusted to obtain this alinement. Taper attachments are obtainable provided with index centers arranged so that axes of centers are always in alinement.

82. To graduate with a milling machine. — In the absence of a dividing engine and diamond cutter, or a sharp-edge wheel which will make a smooth line by pressure, use an index head and cutter as in Fig. 58 to graduate dials, disks and similar work. Block the spindle and feed work to cutter by hand. Rules and scales may be clamped to table and graduated in this manner.

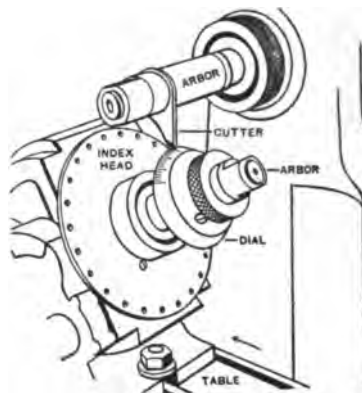


FIG. 58. — GRADUATING A DIAL.

#### CIRCULAR MILLING

83. Circular milling. — To mill end of rectangular piece with end mill, Fig. 59, secure work on nut mandrel and hold in chuck. Feed work to cut by rotating crank. To mill a portion of the circumference of a piece, as in Fig. 60, use raising block, set index head at right angles to table and feed work to cut by crank. In Fig. 61 is shown how a cam cutting attachment may be used to mill a bevel gear blank.

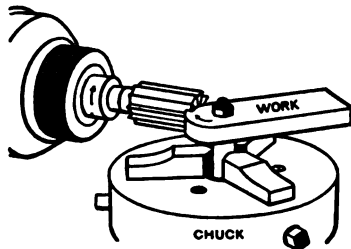


FIG. 59. — MILLING END OF WORK CIRCULAR.

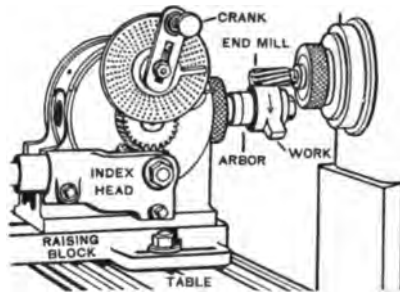


FIG. 60. — MILLING CIRCUMFERENCE OF WORK.

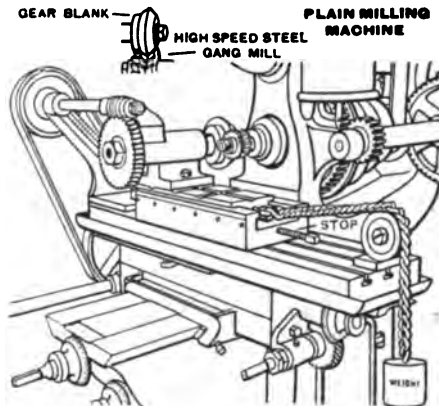


FIG. 61. — CIRCULAR MILLING.



84. Tee slots are milled more rapidly than planed. To mill Tee slots, in circular table, Fig. 62, first mill portion *A* with an end mill and then portion *BB'* with a Tee-slot cutter.

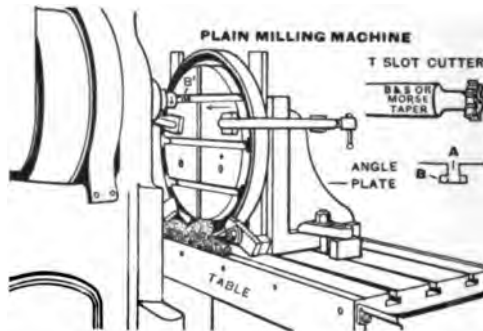


FIG. 62. — MILLING TEE SLOTS IN A CIRCULAR TABLE.

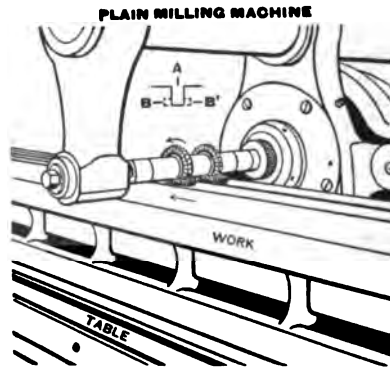


FIG. 63. — MULTIPLE MILLING. MILLING TWO SLOTS AT ONE OPERATION.

To mill Tee slots in heavy work such as milling-machine table, Fig. 63, first mill portion *A* with a side-milling cutter, then mill portion *BB'* with a Tee-slot cutter. Use a vertical attachment, or clamp work flat on table and mill.

## VERTICAL MILLING

85. A vertical milling machine has advantages over the horizontal particularly on work that can be milled with end mills. Fig. 64, shows an inserted rake-tooth face mill *A*,

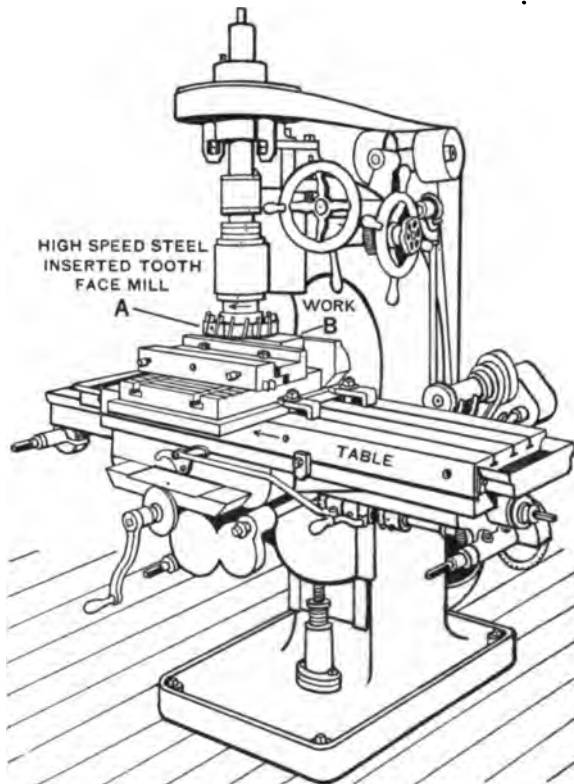


FIG. 64. — VERTICAL MILLING MACHINE. FACE MILLING.

milling a plain surface on work *B* in a vertical milling machine. The work is held in a vise.

86. Vertical and circular milling attachments. — Circles, circular slots and segments of circles may be milled by converting a horizontal milling machine into a vertical milling

machine by vertical attachment as in Fig. 65. The work is held and operated by fixture and circular milling attachment. Vertical spindle *A* operates end mill *B* to mill a segment of a

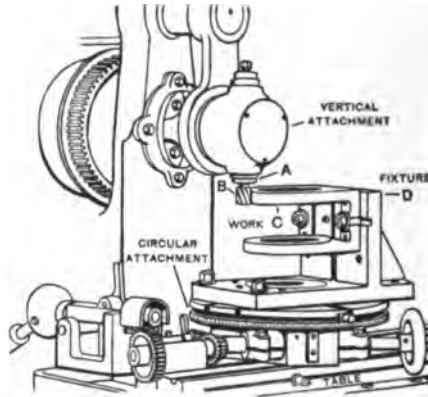


FIG. 65. — MILLING MACHINE WITH VERTICAL AND CIRCULAR ATTACHMENTS.

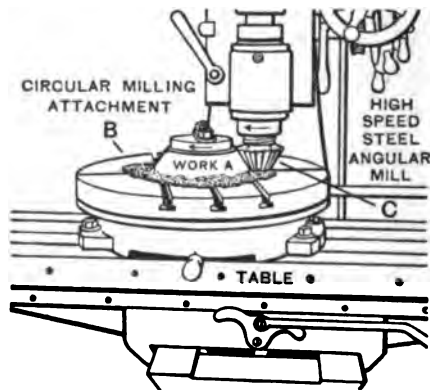


FIG. 66. — BEVEL CIRCULAR MILLING WITH VERTICAL MILLING MACHINE.

circle on work *C*, held by fixture *D* bolted to circular attachment. The feed is obtained by rotating circular table by hand or power.

**87. Bevel circular milling.**—To mill work *A*, Fig. 66, (rotary cone of a circular attachment) bolt to table of circular attachment *B* and mill bevel with angular mill *C*.

**88. Milling an inside boss, Fig. 67.**—Hold swinging arm *A* (casting) in vise. Mill edge *B*, set stop *C* and feed mill down

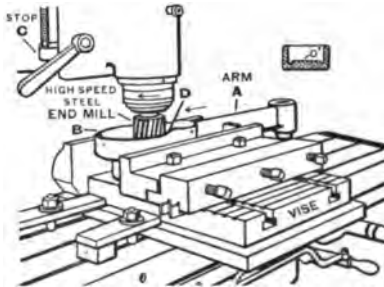


FIG. 67. — MILLING AN INSIDE BOSS. VERTICAL MILLING MACHINE.

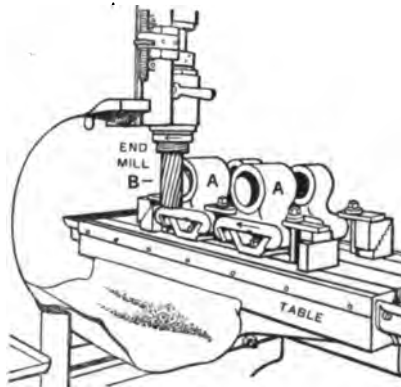


FIG. 68. — MILLING ENDS OF SLIDING HEADS WITH A VERTICAL MILLING MACHINE.

until stop strikes, then mill inside boss *DD'*, operating both cross and long. table feed by hand.

**89. Milling ends of sliding heads, Fig. 68.**—Two sliding head castings *A, A* are bolted to fixture clamped to table and the ends of boxes are milled with side of end mill *B* with power feed.

## PROFILING

90. Profiling machines, Fig. 69.—Mill work to irregular shapes by means of profiling forms.

In Fig. 69 work *A* is clamped to fixture *B* and face *C* is milled with cutter *D* while form pin *E* is kept in contact with profiling form *F* by moving table *G* with long- and cross-feed handles together by hand. See plan at *A'*, *C'*, *D'*, *E'* and *F'*.

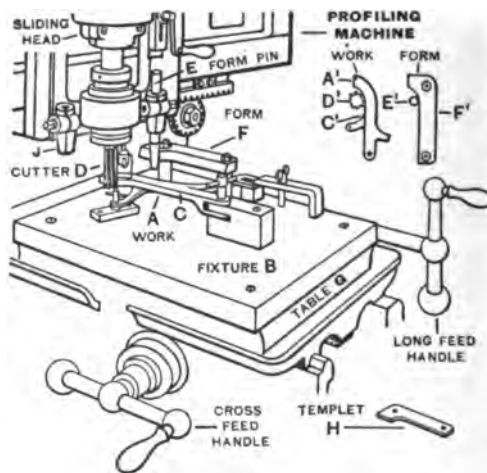


FIG. 69. — PROFILING. MILLING IRREGULAR SHAPES.

91. To make profiling form, Fig. 69. — Templet *H* is made and clamped in position of work *A*, and the form blank in its position *F* on fixture. Straight form pin *E* is fastened in block *J* and held in contact with templet, and a taper cutter in spindle generates form *F*. The taper form and taper pin allow for reduction in diameter of cutter by grinding, by raising pin to allow cutter to resume its previous relation to work.

### Rake Tooth Milling Cutters

92. Coarse tooth milling cutters give wide space between the teeth for chips, and are adapted to the heavier classes of milling.

93. Rake tooth spiral milling cutter with coarse teeth.— Fig. 70 shows an improved spiral milling cutter *A*. The teeth are under-cut giving about  $10^\circ$  rake, as at *B*, and also spiral

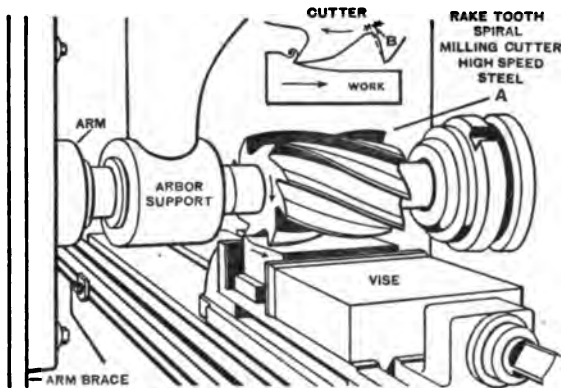


FIG. 70.—RAKE TOOTH SPIRAL MILLING CUTTER MILLING STEEL HEAVY WORK.

giving an effective shearing angle. Each tooth has a true cutting action like a lathe tool.

94. Helical tooth milling cutter *A*, Fig. 71, is a shear type of cutter made with two or three teeth in the form of a screw thread, either singly or interlocking right and left cutters, as at *B*.

The teeth are ground on the front and on the top and have a rake of  $8^\circ$  to  $15^\circ$  and a clearance of  $5^\circ$  to  $7^\circ$ . When milling steel it removes a gimlet-shaped chip in the direction of the axis of the cutter, consumes less power than the ordinary cutter, does not spring the arbor and largely eliminates chattering.

It is adapted to mill broad steel surfaces accurately, smoothly,

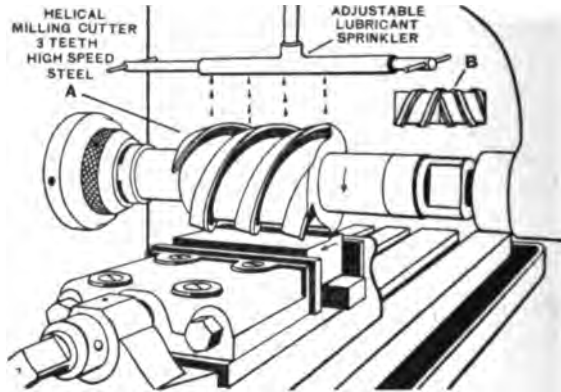


FIG. 71. — MILLING STEEL.

and rapidly, and is particularly useful for milling thin castings that are likely to chatter. See Shear Planer Tool, p. 908.

# ADVANCED MACHINE WORK

## SECTION 11

### GEAR CUTTING

Spur Gearing. Preparing Spur Gear Blanks. Cutting Spur Gear. Bevel Gearing. Cutting Bevel Gear. Worm Gearing. Making Worm. Preparing Worm Gear Blanks. Gashing Worm Gear. Hobbing Worm Gear. Spiral Gearing. Cutting Spiral Gear. Bevel Protractor. Compound Rest.

#### SPUR GEARING

1. Spur gears are used for transmitting positive and uniform rotary motion from one shaft to another shaft that is parallel to the first.

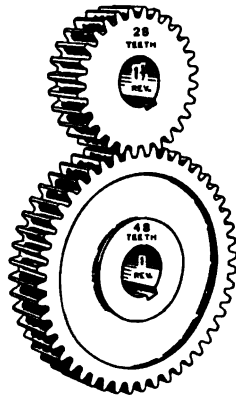


FIG. 1. — PAIR OF INVOLUTE SPUR GEARS. GEAR AND PINION.  
RATIO  $1\frac{1}{2}$  TO 1.

2. Systems of gearing. — There are two general systems of gearing in use: The *involute* or single-curve system which is most commonly used, and the *cycloidal* (epicycloidal) or double-curve system.

In Fig. 1 a pair of involute spur gears is shown — gear and pinion.

Fig. 2 is a chart of full-size standard, involute gear teeth, 2 to 48 diametral pitch.



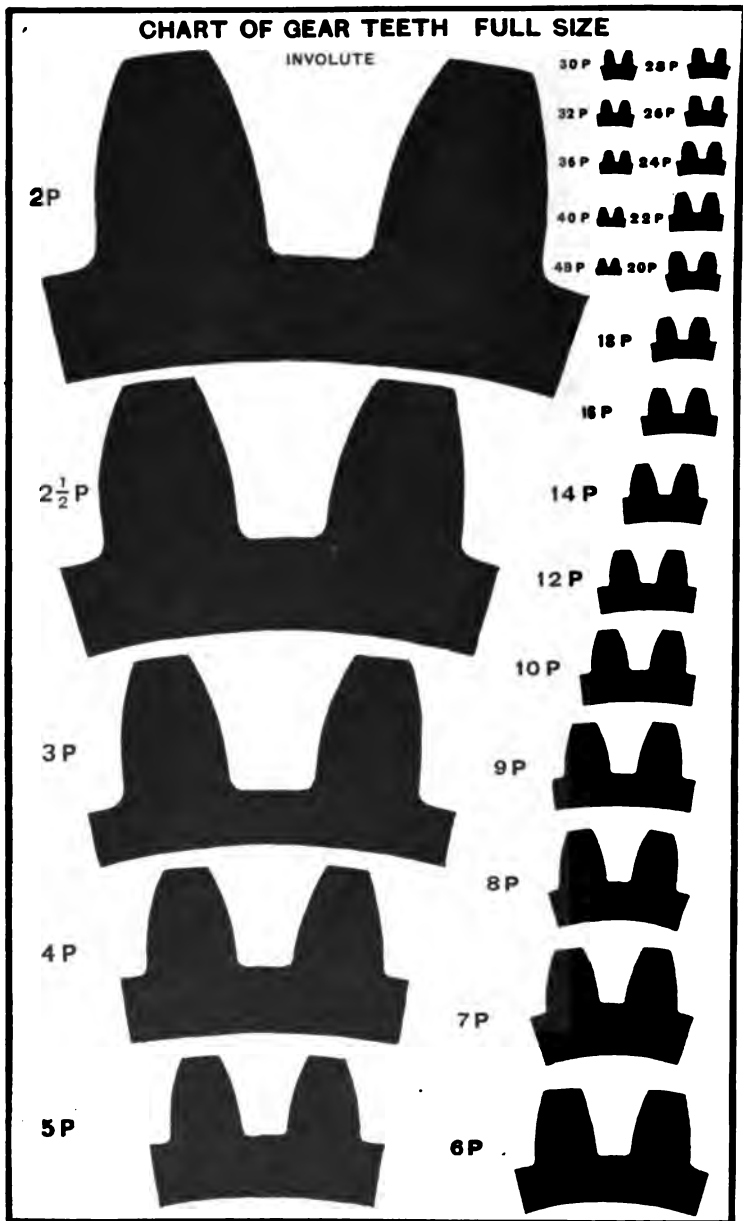


Fig. 2.

Fig. 3 is a diagram of gear teeth and parts.

Spur gears are cut with formed cutters in a milling machine or automatic gear-cutting machine, by hobbing in a gear-hobbing machine or by planing in a gear-shaping machine.

3. Formed gear cutters in standard diametral pitches are obtainable. Cutters made to circular pitch are furnished to order only. One cutter will answer for several numbers of teeth of same pitch without producing any material error.

Any gear will mesh into and run properly with any other gear or rack of the same pitch.

4. Cutters for both systems of gearing.—In the *involute system* 8 cutters are required to cut all gears of any given pitch from a pinion gear of 12 teeth to a rack, and numbered from 1 to 8.

The *cycloidal system* requires 24 cutters lettered from A to X.

INVOLUTE CUTTERS.		CYCLOIDAL CUTTERS.					
No. ON CUTTER.	NUMBER OF TEETH.	LET-TER ON CUT-TER.	NUM-BER OF TEETH	LET-TER ON CUT-TER.	NUMBER OF TEETH.	LET-TER ON CUT-TER.	NUMBER OF TEETH.
1	135 to rack	A	12	I	20	Q	43 to 49
2	55 to 134	B	13	J	21 to 22	R	50 to 59
3	35 to 54	C	14	K	23 to 24	S	60 to 74
4	26 to 34	D	15	L	25 to 26	T	75 to 99
5	21 to 25	E	16	M	27 to 29	U	100 to 149
6	17 to 20	F	17	N	30 to 33	V	150 to 249
7	14 to 16	G	18	O	34 to 37	W	250 or more
8	12 to 13	H	19	P	38 to 42	X	Rack

*Attention.*—Cutters are obtainable for Metric involute gears.

*Information.*—Cycloidal gears must be cut accurately to depth so that pitch lines will coincide. Cycloidal cutters are made with a shoulder which limits depth of tooth.

5. Gear stocking cutters are obtainable for 8 pitch and coarser, and are used to rough out the teeth of gears leaving but a small amount for the finishing cutter. This double process gives greater accuracy and produces a smoother running gear.

6. **Limit in sizing gear blanks.**— In commercial work, spur gear blanks, 1" to 3", may vary .003" from calculated outside diameter; 3" to 6", .004"; and larger than 6", .005". The pitch diameter must be accurate.

7. **Allow for error of blank in depth of teeth.**— Measure blank with micrometer and if under size, deduct one-half the error from setting for depth of tooth.

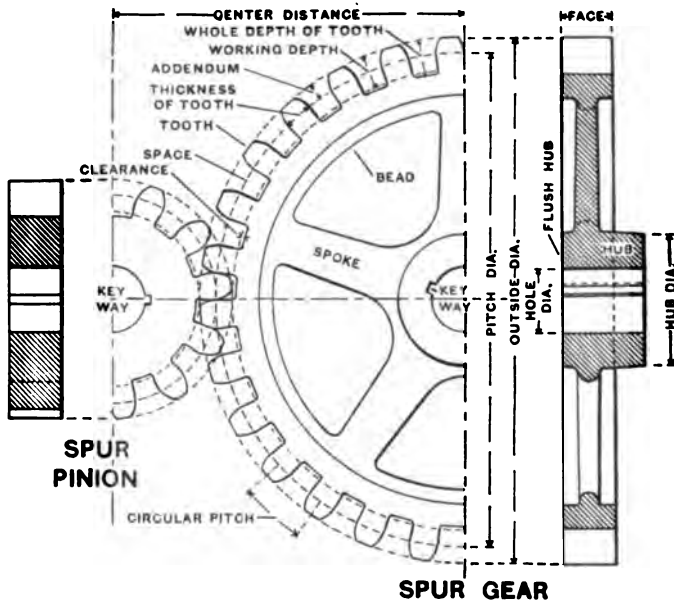


FIG. 3. — DIAGRAM OF GEAR TEETH AND PARTS.

*Example.* — If gear blank, Fig. 6, is .002" undersize, deduct .001" from setting of 0.216".

*Solution.* — .216" - .001" = .215", depth of space or tooth.

8. **Diametral pitch** is the number of teeth to each inch of pitch diameter.

*Formula.* — Diametral pitch =  $\frac{\text{number of teeth}}{\text{pitch diameter (inches)}}$

*Example.* — To find diametral pitch, given number of teeth 28, pitch diameter 2.8".

*Solution.* —  $\frac{28}{2.8} = 10$  diametral pitch.

*Attention.* — The word “diameter” applied to gears means the *pitch* diameter. See Fig. 3.

*Formula.* — Diametral pitch =  $\frac{\text{number of teeth} + 2}{\text{outside diameter}}$

*Example.* — To find diametral pitch, given outside diameter 5", number of teeth 48.

*Solution.* —  $\frac{48 + 2}{5} = 10$ , diametral pitch.

*Formula.* — Diametral pitch =  $\frac{3.1416}{\text{circular pitch}}$ .

*Example.* — To find diametral pitch, given circular pitch and constant 3.1416.

*Solution.* —  $\frac{3.1416}{3.1416} = 10$  diametral pitch.

**9.** Circular pitch is the distance from the center of one tooth to the center of the next tooth measured along the pitch circle.

*Formula.* — Circular pitch =  $\frac{3.1416}{\text{diametral pitch}}$ .

*Example.* — To find circular pitch, given constant 3.1416 and diametral pitch 10.

*Solution.* —  $\frac{3.1416}{10} = .31416$  circular pitch.

**10.** The pitch diameter, Fig. 3, is the diameter of pitch circle.

*Formula.* — Pitch diameter =  $\frac{\text{number of teeth}}{\text{diametral pitch}}$ .

*Example.* — To find pitch diameter, given number of teeth 48, diametral pitch 10.

*Solution.* —  $\frac{48}{10} = 4.8$ , pitch diameter.

*Solution.* —  $\frac{48 + 2}{10} = 5''$ , outside diameter of gear blank.

**11. Number of teeth on gear.**

*Formula.* — Number of teeth = (outside diameter  $\times$  diametral pitch) — 2.

*Example.* — To find number of teeth, given outside diameter 5'', diametral pitch 10.

*Solution.* —  $(5 \times 10) - 2 = 48$ , number of teeth.

*Formula.* — Pitch diameter  $\times$  diametral pitch.

*Example.* — To find number of teeth given pitch diameter 2.8'', diametral pitch 10.

*Solution.* —  $2.8 \times 10 = 28$ , number of teeth.

**12. To find distance between centers of two gears.**

*Formula.* — Distance between centers =

$$\frac{\text{number of teeth one gear} + \text{number of teeth other gear}}{2 \times \text{diametral pitch}}$$

*Example.* — To find the distance between centers of two gears, given the number of teeth in both gears, 48 and 28, and the diametral pitch 10.

*Solution.* —  $\frac{48 + 28}{2 \times 10} = 3.8000''$  center distance.

*Formula.* — Distance between centers =  $\frac{\text{diameter of pitch circle of gear} + \text{diameter of pitch circle of pinion}}{2}$

*Example.* — To find the distance between centers of two gears, given the diameter of the pitch circles of both gear and pinion.

*Solution.* —  $\frac{4.8 + 2.8}{2} = 3.8000''$  center distance.

**13. To find whole depth of milled gear tooth using constant 2.157. —**

*Formula.* — Whole depth of milled gear tooth =

$$\frac{2.157}{\text{diametral pitch}}$$

*Example.* — Find whole depth of tooth in gear of 10 pitch.

*Solution.* —  $\frac{2.157}{10} = .2157''$  or  $.216''$ , depth of space or tooth.

14. To find thickness of tooth at pitch line, Fig. 3, given circular pitch  $.314''$ .

*Formula.* — Thickness of tooth at pitch line =  $\frac{\text{circular pitch}}{2}$

or =  $\frac{1.57}{\text{diametral pitch}}$ .

*Example.* — To find thickness of tooth, given diametral pitch 10.

*Solution.* —  $\frac{1.57}{10} = .157''$ , thickness of tooth.

15. Clearance, see Fig. 3, at bottom of tooth is made equal to  $\frac{1}{16}$  thickness of tooth at pitch line.

The clearance of 10 pitch gear (gear used in Schedule, p. 1108) =  $.0157''$ .

16. Working depth of tooth, see Fig. 3, is equal to the whole depth minus the clearance.

For 10 pitch  $.2157'' - .0157'' = .2000''$ .

17. Addendum, see Fig. 3, is the distance from the pitch circle to outside circle.

*Formula.* — Addendum =  $\frac{1}{\text{diametral pitch}}$ .

*Example.* — To find addendum, given diametral pitch 8.

*Solution.* —  $\frac{1}{8} = .125''$  addendum.

18. To find whole depth of gear-shaper gear tooth. Constant 2.250'. —

*Formula.* — Whole depth of gear-shaper gear tooth =  $\frac{2.250}{\text{diametral pitch}}$ .

*Example.* — Find depth of tooth for 10 pitch gear.

*Solution.* —  $\frac{2.250}{10} = .225''$ , depth of space or tooth.

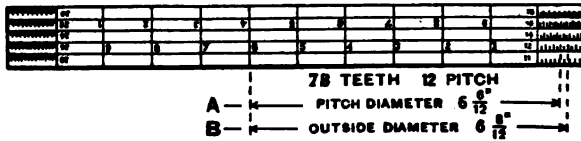


FIG. 4. — GEAR RULE.

19. Gear rule. — Fig. 4 shows a gear rule with graduations for sizing gear blanks of a large variety of pitches.

*Example.* — To set the calipers for a gear blank, 78 teeth, 12 pitch. Divide the number of teeth by the pitch, as  $78 \div 12 = 6\frac{8}{12}$ " which is the pitch diameter; then take 6 of the blank inches and 8 of the 12th graduations which gives  $6\frac{8}{12}$ ", as at A. To this add 2 of the 12ths which gives  $6\frac{12}{12}$ ", as at B, the setting of calipers for outside diameter of blank.

PREPARING SPUR-GEAR BLANK

20. To prepare spur-pinion blank, 10 pitch, 28 teeth, involute. Fig. 5. Also see Specifications, p. 1110.

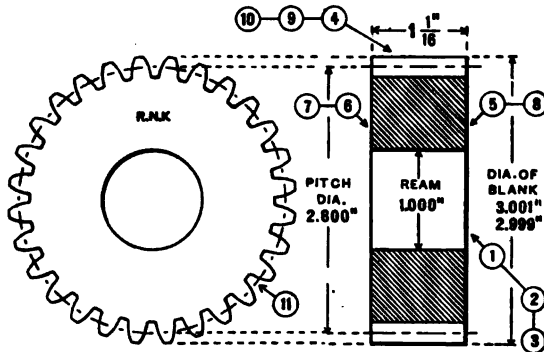


FIG. 5. — SCHEDULE DRAWING.

**Specifications:** Material, iron casting  $\frac{1}{8}$ " large; weight 2 lbs. 8 oz. Hardness, 29 to 31 (scleroscope).

High-speed steel or stellite cutting tools.

Time to prepare 3" gear blank: Study drawing and schedule in advance, 5 min. — Oil lathe, 6 min. — Chuck, 20 min. — Rough turn, 19 min. — Finish turn, 11 min. — File and scrape, 7 min. — Polish, 11 min. — Clean lathe, 5 min. — Total, 1 h. 24 min.

SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS, MACHINES AND TOOLS.

OPERATIONS.	MACHINES, SPEEDS, FEEDS.	TOOLS.
Snag casting. Set dead center in approximate alinement.	Engine lathe, 12" to 16".	
Mount casting in chuck and true up.	3d or 4th speed.	Independent chuck, chalk.
Drill and rough ream hole (1), (2).	2d or 3d speed, or 115 R.P.M. Hand feed.	Drill rest, $\frac{1}{4}$ " flat drill, $\frac{1}{16}$ " flat reamer or $\frac{1}{4}$ " twist drill.
<i>with reaming tool</i> Hand ream hole. Start reamer in lathe, pull belt by hand, finish at reaming stand (3).	Reaming stand.	1" hand reamer, reamer wrench.
Oil mandrel and press into hole. True live center. Set dead center in accurate alinement.	Mandrel press.	1" mandrel.
Rough turn 3" + $\frac{1}{4}$ " (4).	3d speed, or 60 F.P.M.	Center truing tool, center gage.
<i>it cut with tool</i> Rough faces to 1 $\frac{1}{8}$ " + $\frac{1}{4}$ " feed inward, (5), (6).	Engine lathe, 12" to 16", 3d or 4th speed, back gears in or 40 F.P.M. Medium power feed — 80 to 1".	Holder and cutter 15° rake, calipers.
Finish to size, feed outward, (7), (8).	4th speed, back gears in, or 40 F.P.M. Medium power feed — 80 to 1".	Holder and cutter 15° rake, or facing tool, calipers, rule.
Finish turn to 3" + .004", (9).	3d speed or 60 F.P.M. Hand or fine power feed — 140 to 1".	Holder and cutter 15° rake, 3" micrometer or 3" caliper gage.
File to 3" + .0015", (10).	2d or 3d speed or 60 F.P.M. Fine power feed — 140 to 1".	8" or 10" mill-bastard file, file card.
Polish (7), (8). Polish (10) to limit.	3d speed, or 175 F.P.M.	Polishing stick, 60, 90 emery cloth, lard oil.
Stamp name.	Speed lathe, highest speed.	1" steel letters, hammer.
Cut teeth (11). See p. 1110.	Anvil, piece of sheet copper.	

Exception. — Filing, scraping and polishing are usually omitted on large gears and on gears that are not to be exposed.

To prepare 5" gear blank (see Specifications, p. 1110 and Fig. 1) use same schedule as 3" gear blank, pp. 1108, 1109, but use low-speeds given.

Time to prepare a 5" gear blank: Study schedule in advance, 5 min. — Oil lathe, 6 min. — Chuck, 20 min. — Rough turn, 21 min. — Finish turn, 21 min. — File and scrape, 7 min. — Polish, 12 min. — Paint, 3 min. — Clean lathe, 5 min. — Total, 1 h. 40 min.



## CUTTING SPUR GEAR

21. To cut spur pinion and gear. Plain or universal milling machine, Fig. 6.

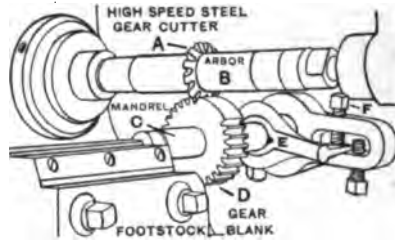


FIG. 6. — CUTTING TEETH IN SPUR PINION.

## SPECIFICATIONS

NAME.	GEAR.	PINION.	NAME.	GEAR.	PINION.
Material . . .	C. iron	C. iron	Depth of space	.216"	.216"
W — Web . . .	Web	Plain	Thickness of tooth at P. L.	.157"	.157"
Style . . . . .	Spur	Spur	Depth of tooth at P. L. . . . .	.100"	.100"
Hole . . . . .	1"	1"	Cutter marked.	3-10 P. 35 to 54 involute.	4-10 P. 26 to 34 T. involute.
O. dia. . . . .	5"	3"	Center distance	3.8"	3.8"
Face . . . . .	1 $\frac{1}{8}$ "	1 $\frac{1}{8}$ "	Keyway . . . . .	$\frac{1}{4}$ " $\times$ $\frac{1}{4}$ "	$\frac{1}{4}$ " $\times$ $\frac{1}{4}$ "
Hub dia. . . . .	2"	.....	.....	.....	.....
Hub proj'n.	Flush	Flush	Speed . . . . .	2d or 3d speed, or 80 F.P.M.	
Teeth . . . . .	48	28	Feed . . . . .	Medium power feed — .014" per cutter revolution	
Pitch . . . . .	10	10	Lubricant . . . . .	Dry	Dry
P. dia. . . . .	4.8"	2.8"			

Time to cut gear and pinion: Study drawing and schedule in advance, 5 min. — Oil machine, 5 min. — "Set up" machine, 25 min. — Cut 5" gear with machine "set up," 48 min. — Cut 3" pinion with machine "set up," 28 min. — Clean machine, 5 min.

## SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS FOR PINION

**I. Clean and oil machine and index head.**

**II. Preparatory adjustments.** Insert clean arbor in clean spindle. Drive arbor lightly with lead hammer.

Place cutter *A* on arbor *B* to cut in direction of rotation and clamp hard. Oil end of arbor and adjust arm to bearing. Fasten index head and footstock on clean table.

Set centers in horizontal alinement. On universal milling machine, set swivel table at zero.

**III. Arrange for plain indexing, 28 teeth.**

**IV. Set gear cutter central (Approximate Method). Raise knee**

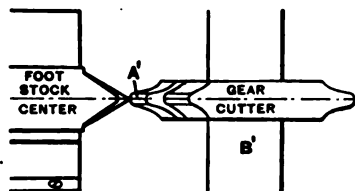


FIG. 7. — SETTING GEAR CUTTER CENTRAL.

and move cross slide until footstock center coincides with center line on cutter *A'* and clamp cross slide, then lower knee to

leave room enough to mount work.

**V. Mount gear blank on centers.** Press mandrel *C* firmly into blank *D*, oil footstock center and mount mandrel on centers securing dog *E* in driver by screw *F*.

**VI. Set machine for depth of teeth.** Start machine. Move table by hand long, feed until blank *D* is under revolving cutter *A*. Hold .001" tissue paper on top of blank and raise knee until revolving cutter cuts paper. Then set vertical dial at zero and move blank back until clear of cutter. Raise knee .216", required depth of space or tooth.

**VII. Mill trial tooth.** Move table by hand long, feed until cutter nearly touches blank, then throw in power feed and mill first space, one cut. Set table dog to trip feed when center of cutter has passed far corner of gear blank. At end of cut, move table back until blank is clear of cutter; index and cut second space to form first tooth. Measure tooth and make corrections, if necessary. See Fig. 14.

**VIII. Mill 28 teeth.** With setting correct, mill teeth all-around blank, one cut each.

*Warning.* — When raising knee to obtain touch, cutter should be revolving, otherwise it may cut too deeply, as cutters do not always run true. It is best to stop the machine before moving the table back, as the revolving cutter may scrape the teeth more or less.

*Attention.* — Gang mandrels are used to cut several gears or pinions at once, see p. 422.

22. To set gear cutter central (Accurate Method). — Fast-running gears are noisy unless teeth are exactly central. Set cutter central, as at *A*', Fig. 7, (this method will do for slow-running gears) and cut space in trial blank. Take dog off mandrel, remount mandrel reversed and free on centers. Move blank toward back of teeth until cutter is in the space. Pull belt to revolve cutter and if it cuts at top on one side of space and at bottom on the other, it is not central and blank should be

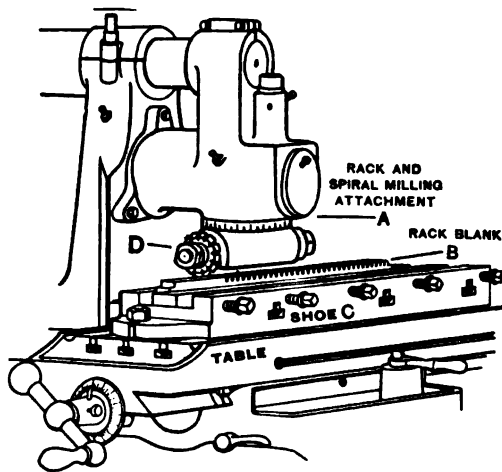


FIG. 8. — CUTTING TEETH IN RACK. PLAIN MILLING MACHINE.

moved slightly away with cross feed from side of cutter that cuts side of space at top. Repeat process at other places on trial blank until cutter passes through a reversed space without cutting and is central.

23. To cut spur gears in an automatic gear-cutting machine. — The information given in Schedule for cutting spur gear in a milling machine is needed when cutting a similar spur gear in an automatic gear-cutting machine and is, practically, used in the same manner.

24. To mill racks. — Use rack-cutting attachment *A*, Fig. 8, plain milling machine. Clamp rack *B* in shoe *C* parallel to

cutter arbor *D*. Set long feed dial at zero, move table 1 pitch for each cut. Short racks may be held in a vise with jaws set parallel to arbor.

## BEVEL GEARING

25. Bevel gears are used to transmit rotary motion from one shaft to another not parallel and usually at right angles, as in Fig. 9. All parts of a bevel-gear tooth are assumed to converge at the apex where center lines of the shafts intersect, except the bottom of the tooth which is parallel to



FIG. 9. — BEVEL GEARING. RATIO 2 TO 1.

the face of the mating gear. See drawing of bevel gears, Fig. 10. The tooth curves and other specifications at the large end of bevel-gear teeth are the same as those used in spur gearing of the same pitch. As the dimensions of the teeth are proportionally smaller toward the inner end, the cutting of an accurate tooth is difficult. To make bevel gears theoretically exact which is a requirement in high-speed gears, they are first gashed, then finished on a templet planing or molding generating machine.

26. Slow-running bevel gears are generally cut with a formed milling cutter in a milling machine as in Fig. 11, or in an automatic spur and bevel-gear cutting machine. These cutters may be used to cut a tooth in two cuts, but this leaves the top at small end too thick, which is corrected by filing. See p. 1119.

27. Bevel- and miter-gear cutters are obtainable for 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 10, 12, 14, 16, 20 and 24 pitch, 8 cutters to each pitch.

They are thin enough to cut bevel gears whose faces are not over one-third the apex distance. The tooth at the inner end is not less than two-thirds the standard thickness and height.

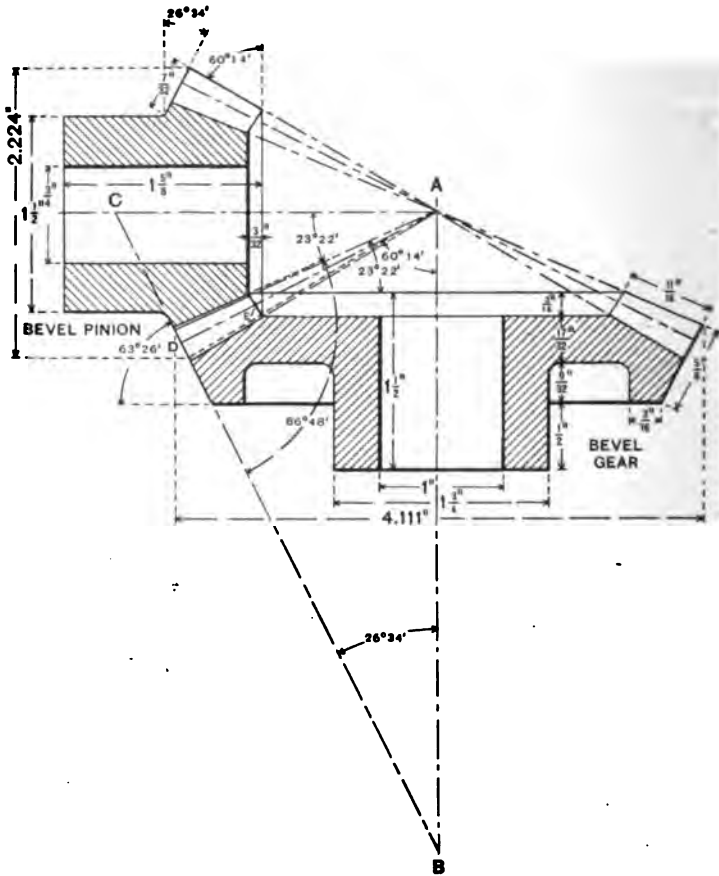


FIG. 10. — DRAWING OF BEVEL GEARS. RATIO 2 TO 1.

*Attention.* — A pair of bevel gears having the same number of teeth, are called *miter* gears and both may be cut with the same cutter.

*Information.* — When ordering cutters for bevel gears, give exact specifications, as pitch, number of teeth in bevel gear and pinion, length of face, and angle of shafts.

**28. Cutting angle for bevel gears.** — By referring to the drawing, Fig. 10, it may be noted that the cutting angle of the gear,  $60^{\circ} 14'$ , measured from the horizontal or axis of gear, is the same as the face angle of pinion; and, inversely, the cutting angle of pinion,  $23^{\circ} 22'$ , is the same as the face angle of gear. This gives a parallel clearance.

*Attention.* — If the face is  $\frac{3}{8}$  of the apex distance, all dimensions at the small ends of teeth will be  $\frac{1}{8}$  of the large end.

## CUTTING BEVEL GEAR

**29. To cut bevel gear and pinion with milling machine, Fig. 11.**

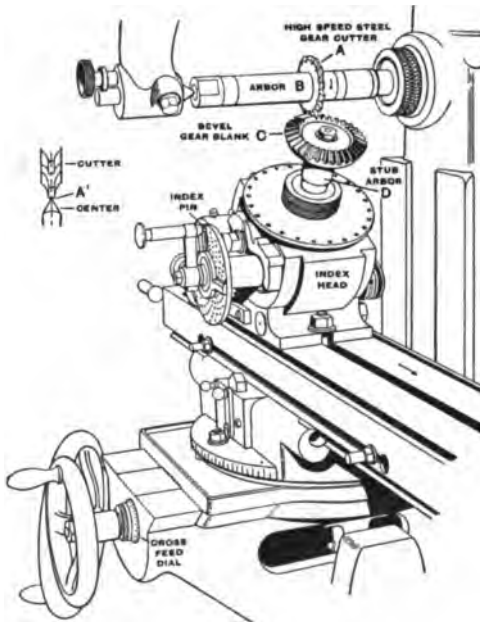


FIG. 11. — CUTTING BEVEL GEAR.

## SPECIFICATIONS

NAME.	GEAR.	PINION.	NAME.	GEAR.	PINION.
Material . . .	C. iron	C. iron	Thickness of tooth at P. L. large end. . . . .	.196"	.196"
W — Web. . .	Web	Plain	Thickness of tooth at P. L. small end. . . . .	.137"	.137"
Style. . . . .	Bevel	Bevel	Depth of tooth at P. L. large end. . . . .	.125"	.125"
Hole. . . . .	1"	$\frac{3}{4}$ "	Depth of tooth at P. L. small end. . . . .	.0866"	.0866"
O. dia. . . . .	4.111"	2.224"	Chordal thickness at large end. . . . .	.1961"	.1961"
Face. . . . .	$\frac{1}{8}$ "	$\frac{1}{8}$ "	Chordal thickness at small end. . . . .	.1358"	.1358"
Hub dia. . . .	1 $\frac{1}{2}$ "	1 $\frac{1}{2}$ "	Corrected addendum at large end. . . . .	.1261"	.1293"
Hub proj'n. .	$\frac{1}{4}$ "	$\frac{1}{8}$ "	Corrected addendum at small end. . . . .	.0873"	.0895"
Teeth. . . . .	32	16	Center angle. . . . .	63° 26'	26° 34'
Diametral pitch. . . . .	8	8	Face angle. . . . .	23° 22'	60° 14'
P. dia. . . . .	4"	2"	Cutting angle. . . . .	60° 14'	23° 22'
Depth of tooth at large end. . . . .	.2696"	.2696"	Apex distance at P. L. . . . .	2.2363"	2.2363"
Depth of tooth at small end . . . . .	.1867"	.1867"	Cutter marked	#3-8 P.	#5-8 P.
Approx. set-over . . . . .	.037"	.037"	Speed. . . . .	1st or 2d speed or 60 F.P.M.	
Approx. index setting	4 holes in 20-hole circle	4 holes in 20-hole circle	Feed. . . . .	Medium power feed — .007" per cutter revolution	
			Keyway. . . . .	$\frac{1}{8}$ " × $\frac{1}{8}$ "	$\frac{1}{8}$ " × $\frac{1}{8}$ "
			Lubricant. . . . .	Dry	Dry

*Attention.* — It is best to leave bevel-gear hubs long to allow for squaring to place.

## SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS FOR GEAR

**I. Preparatory adjustments.** Place cutter *A* on arbor *B* to cut in direction of arrow so as to cut from small end to large end of tooth, then clamp hard. Fasten index head in table. Set swivel table at zero.

**II. Set cutter central.** Place pointed center in index head and set cutter central, as at *A'*, Fig. 11, and cross-feed dial at zero.

**III. Mount trial blank on arbor.** Remove center and mount trial blank *C* on stub arbor *D* and drive arbor lightly into index-head spindle.

**IV. Arrange index.** Arrange index for 32 teeth and set index head at angle  $60^{\circ} 14'$ .



FIG. 12. — MARKING DEPTH ON BEVEL-GEAR BLANK.

**V. Obtain depth of teeth.** Mark depth line *A* with gage *B*, Fig. 12, for large end of teeth. Start machine, elevate knee and with power feed cut first space to depth, two or three cuts. Adjust table dog to trip feed at end of cut. Move blank back until clear of cutter, index and cut second

space. Cutting two spaces central produces a tooth that is a little too thick.

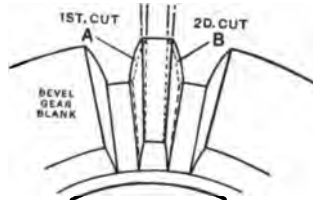


FIG. 13. — DOTTED LINES SHOWING WHERE TO TRIM BEVEL-GEAR TOOTH.

**VI. Trimming bevel-gear tooth.** Move table back until blank is clear of cutter. Move cross slide inward  $.037''$ , revolve blank outward toward cutter, 4 holes in 20-hole circle and trim first side of tooth. Move blank back clear of cutter and cross-slide back to zero; index to first space, then move outward  $.037''$  and revolve blank inward toward cutter, 4 holes; then 4 holes more and cut through, trimming second side of tooth.

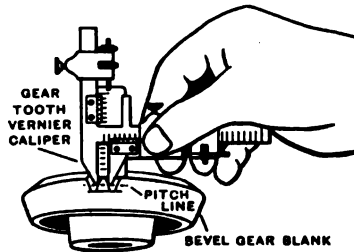


FIG. 14. — MEASURING THICKNESS OF BEVEL-GEAR TOOTH WITH VERNIER CALIPER.



VII. Test thickness of tooth. Caliper tooth at both ends with gear-tooth vernier, Fig. 14, or gage, Fig. 15. To measure thickness of gear tooth with vernier, Fig. 14, adjust until vertical scale is the addendum distance from ends of jaws, then adjust sliding jaw to tooth and the horizontal scale will show thickness of tooth at pitch line. See Vernier Principle, pp. 211, 212.

Make corrections if necessary by changing setover or index setting, or both, and take trial cuts until tooth is correct at both ends.

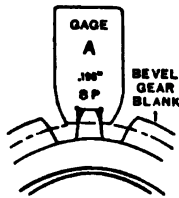


FIG. 15.—TESTING THICKNESS OF BEVEL-GEAR TOOTH.

VIII. Cut 32 teeth. Remove trial blank from arbor and mount

gear blank. Move cross slide inward .037" off center, or the amount found to be correct, and cut all around blank. Move table back until blank is clear of cutter. Move cross slide outward the same amount on other side of center, revolve blank inward toward cutter 8 holes and cut all around second time, which completes gear.

*Warning.*—To avoid error, move cross slide back and forth and note amount of back-lash in screw and allow for it when making setover.

*Information.*—For coarse pitches or very accurate gears, allowance should be made for the curve of the pitch circle when measuring thickness of tooth by obtaining the "corrected addendum" and "chordal thickness."

*Attention.*—The data for setover and rotation of blank given in schedule for trimming the teeth are for Nos. 3 and 5 cutters only. If other cutters are used to cut these gears, as Nos. 2 and 6, new data will be needed.

30. To obtain data for cutting bevel gears.—As the setover is not readily calculated and the first tooth is experimental, it is best for a student to use a trial blank and make a record of data obtained. Cut two spaces, then take as a trial distance for set over from one-sixth to one-eighth thickness of tooth on pitch line at large end. Rotate blank and move table until stationary cutter enters space and touches side of tooth at small end and cuts through, then return and index.

Move cutter same amount out of center on other side and rotate blank until cutter touches other side of tooth at small end. Cut through and measure tooth at both ends. If tooth is too

thick but proportional, rotate blank and make trial cuts until tooth is of correct thickness at both ends. If too thick at large end and right at small end, *increase* set over; if too thick at small end and right at large end, *decrease* set over.

*Warning.* — Movements made on one side of tooth must be made on other side, otherwise tooth will not be central.

*Attention.* — On large gears, 5 pitch and coarser, it is necessary to take three cuts, — a central cut all around, then two trimming cuts, one on each side of teeth. On small gears after amount of set over and blank rotation is obtained, take two cuts only. First cut all around with blank set over to *right* of central line, then take second cut all around with blank set to *left* of central line with proper crank rotation.

31. To file bevel-gear teeth. — Use 5" or 6", number 0 or 1, Barrette (smooth-back), or half-round 2d cut or bastard file. Assume that the tooth curve, *AB*, Fig. 16, at the large end is correct, and the small end, *CD*, is correct up to pitch line. File both sides of each tooth circular and tapering, as at *AE* and *A'E'*, from top at large end down to, or nearly to, pitch line at small end.

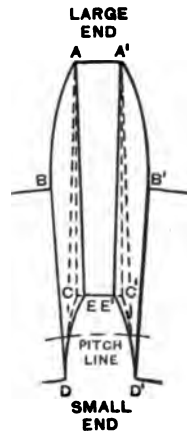


FIG. 16. — DOTTED LINES SHOWING WHERE TO FILE BEVEL-GEAR TOOTH.

Mount gears in testing machine or fit two shafts to an angle plate. Place gears on shafts and run by hand. Use a little of mixture of red lead and oil on teeth and make further corrections by filing high places as indicated by bearing. Repeat process until bearing is along pitch line, then fit the gears to place in machine by squaring off hubs.

32. To cut bevel gears in an automatic gear-cutting machine. — The information given in the Schedule for cutting bevel gear in a milling machine is needed when cutting a similar bevel gear in an automatic gear-cutting machine, and is, practically, used in the same manner.

## WORM GEARING

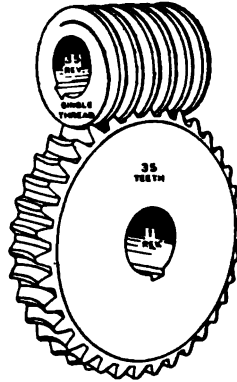


FIG. 17. — WORM GEARING. RATIO 35 TO 1.

33. Worm gears are used to transmit rotary motion from one shaft to another not parallel and usually at right angles, Fig. 17. They are used where the load is heavy and the ratio of the speed is low. The thread on the worm, Fig. 18, is similar to the  $29^\circ$  thread. The tooth curves on the worm gear are the same as those on spur gears of the same pitch. The teeth are cut at an angle with the center line of the shaft which is dependent on the lead of the worm. For index heads and dividing engines, the teeth are drop-cut with straight faces by gashing with a single cutter. The most useful forms are gashed and hobbed or hobbed only.

Gears which are gashed only, have a rather uncertain path of contact; but hobbed gears bear on the worm thread the full length of the teeth.

Worm gears may be found in the power feed driving mechanisms of many machine tools including engine lathes, drill presses, and boring mills. They are also used for worm wheel drives for automobiles and trucks, steering mechanisms, and for other purposes where a large reduction in speed is desired. By increasing the pitch and number of threads, this mechanism becomes one of spiral gears.

34. Specifications for worm and worm gear

NAME.	WORM.	PINION.	NAME.	WORM.	PINION.
Material . . .	Machine steel (C. H.)	Phosphor bronze	Pitch dia. . . . .	1.5378"	3.7137"
Hole . . . . .	$\frac{3}{4}$ "	1"	Throat dia. . . . .	.....	3.9259"
O. dia. . . . .	1 $\frac{1}{2}$ "	4.1035"	Lead . . . . .	.3333"	.....
Face . . . . .	2"	1"	Axial pitch . . . . .	.3333"	.....
Threads per 1" . . . . .	3 R. H. single	.....	Angle of pitch with axis . . . . .	86° 3' 10"	.....
No. of teeth . . . . .	.....	35	Gashing angle. . . . .	.....	3° 56' 50"
Width of finishing tool at point . . . . .	.1033"	.....	Center distance . . . . .	2.6258"	2.6258"
Root dia. . . . .	1.3243"	.....	Cutter marked . . . . .	.....	#3 gashing $\frac{1}{4}$ P.
Whole depth . . . . .	.2289"	.2289"	Hob marked . . . . .	.3333" P. single R.H.	.....
Addendum . . . . .	.1061"	.1061"	Keyway . . . . .	$\frac{3}{16}$ " $\times$ $\frac{1}{16}$ "	$\frac{1}{4}$ " $\times$ $\frac{1}{4}$ "
Thickness of tooth at P. L. . . . .	.1667"	.1667"	Lubricant . . . . .	Lard oil	Dry or lard oil
Nor. thickness . . . . .	.1663"	.1663"	.....	.....	.....

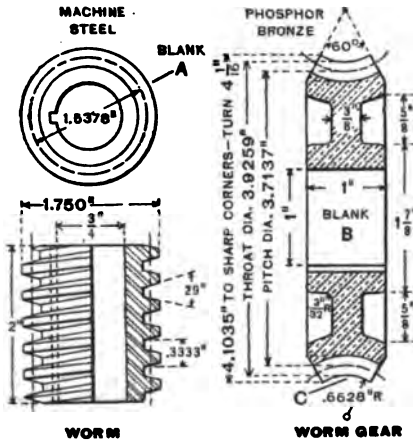


FIG. 18. — WORM AND WORM GEAR.

## MAKING WORM

35. To make worm  $1\frac{3}{4}'' \times 2''$ , 3 threads to 1''; material, machine steel (to be case-hardened), Fig. 18. — True blank in chuck, drill, ream, press mandrel into hole, mount on centers, square and turn to size. Arrange gears for 3 threads to 1''. As worm is same angle as  $29^\circ$  thread, rough thread with  $29^\circ$  rough-threading tool similar to square thread tool. To finish thread, use  $29^\circ$  finish-threading tool, with point .1033'' wide. Cut keyway.

*Attention.* — Worm threads are also milled in milling machines or thread millers with formed cutters.

## PREPARING WORM GEAR BLANKS

36. To prepare worm-gear blank  $1'' \times 4.1035''$  diameter, 35 teeth; material, phosphor bronze. Fig. 18. — True casting in chuck, drill, ream, press mandrel into hole, mount on centers, square and turn to size. Turn concave surface, or throat, with forming tool, or rough out and finish with hand tools to templet. Bevel corners and cut keyway.

## GASHING WORM GEAR

37. To gash worm gear, universal milling machine. Fig. 19.

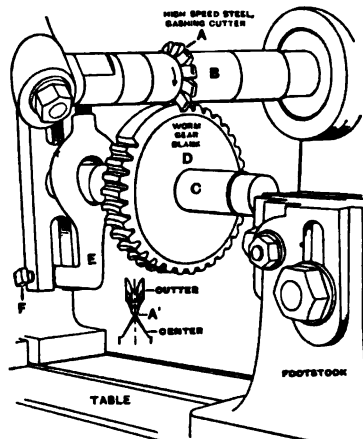


FIG. 19. — GASHING WORM GEAR.

**Specifications:** Material phosphor-bronze worm-gear blank, finished  $1'' \times 4.1035''$  diameter for 35 teeth.

**Machines and tools:** Universal milling machine, index head and centers, gashing cutter.

Speed: 2d or 3d speed, or 60 F.P.M. Hand vertical feed.

Lubricant: Dry or lard oil.

### SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS

**I. Preparatory adjustments.** Place gashing cutter *A* on arbor *B* to cut in direction of rotation and clamp hard. Fasten index head and footstock in horizontal alinement on table..

**II. Set cutter central.** Set swivel table at zero and cutter central, as *A'*, Fig. 19.

**III. Arrange index.** Arrange index for 35 teeth.

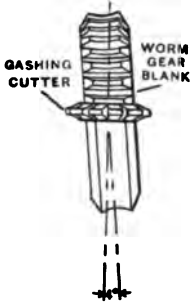


FIG. 20.—SETTING SWIVEL TABLE TO GASHING ANGLE FOR WORM GEAR.

**IV. Mount gear blank on centers.** Press mandrel *C* into blank *D* and mount on centers, securing dog *E* in driver by screw *F*. Raise knee and move table until cutter fits concave part of blank. Lower knee and set swivel table at  $4^\circ$ , the angle of teeth. Clamp table.

**V. Gash blank.** Start machine and raise knee until gear blank touches revolving cutter. Set vertical dial at zero, raise knee slowly, sinking cutter to depth of roughing cut  $.220''$ . Set vertical stop. Lower knee, index and raise knee to stop and cut next gash. Continue process until all teeth are gashed.

*Attention.* — If the machine has a vertical stop, set it for depth of gash after the first cut and feed up against it for each gash; otherwise, use the vertical dial to obtain the depth.

### HOBBING WORM GEAR

**38. To hob worm gear, universal or plain milling machine.** Fig. 21.

**Specifications:** Material, phosphor-bronze worm-gear blank, finished  $1'' \times 4.1035''$ , with 35 teeth gashed.

**Machines and tools:** Universal or plain milling machine, index head and centers.  $1\frac{1}{4}'' \times 2''$  right-hand hob, 3 threads per  $1''$ .

Speed: 1st or 2d speed, or 40 F.P.M.

Lubricant: Dry or lard oil.

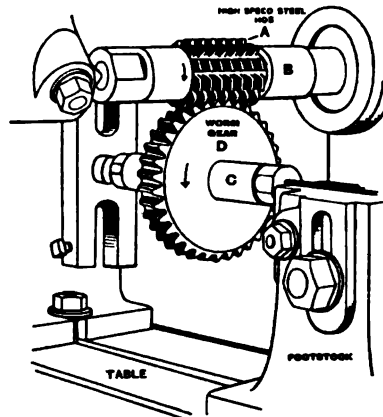


FIG. 21. — HOBGING WORM GEAR.

## SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS

**I. Preparatory adjustments.** Place hob *A* on arbor *B* to cut in direction of rotation, and clamp hard. Fasten index head and footstock in horizontal alinement on table. Set swivel table at zero. Set top of knee to center line on vertical slide which alines the index centers with machine spindle, then set vertical dial at zero.

**II. Mount gear blank on two dead centers.**

Press mandrel *C* into blank *D*, oil both center holes, lower knee and mount on two dead centers without dog so that hob will drive gear.

**III. Set hob central.** Raise knee and adjust table by long. and

cross feeds until hob is central by measurement with gashed gear, then clamp long. and cross feeds.

**IV. Obtain depth of teeth.** Start machine and raise knee slowly until hob begins to cut and after each revolution of gear raise knee a little. Repeat until distance between top of knee and center on vertical slide equals center distance of worm and gear. This distance may be measured with a rule from top of knee to center line on vertical slide or, more accurately, with rule for the 2" and vertical dial for the decimal .6258".

*Information.* — Hobs are obtainable to order only, with relieved teeth same as formed milling cutters. Depth of teeth equals working depth of worm plus twice clearance, which allows for grinding.

*Attention.* — In Fig. 21, gear is driven by hob making it necessary to gash gear, but on gear-hobbing machines or attachments where gear is driven by hobbing-machine spindle, gashing may be omitted.

## SPIRAL GEARING

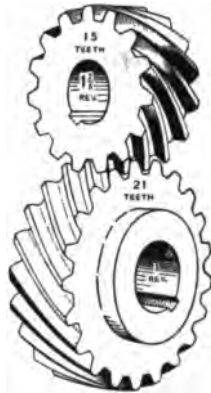


FIG. 22. — SPIRAL GEARS. RATIO  $1\frac{1}{4}$  TO 1.

**39.** Spiral gears are used to transmit rotary motion from one shaft to another not parallel, and have teeth like a screw, Fig. 22. They are desirable for high speeds where the load is light and smooth and noiseless action is a factor; for this reason, spiral gears are often used instead of bevel gears. The absence of noise is due to the sliding action between the teeth. The tooth curves are the same as those used in spur gearing, but the teeth are so placed that their center lines are sections of helices. The lead or pitch of these helices is dependent on the angle between the shafts. They should be designed so that they may be cut with standard spur-gear cutters. Spiral gears may be cut with a milling machine, Fig. 23, spiral gear-cutting machine, gear-hobbing machine or spiral-gear generator.

Examples of spiral gears may be found in automobile and stationary gas engine timing gears, and in centrifugal machinery including extractors, separators, and dryers.

Spiral bevel gears are used in the drive of automobiles.



## CUTTING SPIRAL GEAR

40. To cut spiral gear and pinion, universal milling machine, Fig. 23.

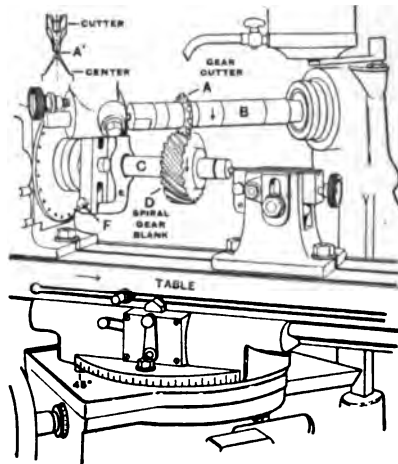


FIG. 23. — CUTTING SPIRAL GEAR.

## SPECIFICATIONS

NAME.	GEAR.	PINION.	NAME.	GEAR.	PINION.
Material.....	Phosphor bronze	Machine steel	Exact lead of spiral.....	11.662"	8.330"
Hole.....	1"	1"	Approx. lead of spiral.....	11.667"	8.333"
O. dia.....	3.962"	2.902"	Center distance.	3.182"	3.182"
Face.....	1½"	1½"	Keyway.....	¼" × ¼"	¼" × ¼"
Teeth.....	21 R.H.	15 R.H.	Gears for spiral		
Pitch dia....	3.71"	2.65"	Gear on worm.	56	48
Cir. pitch....	.555"+	.555"+	1st gear on stud.	32	32
Angle of teeth with axis..	45°	45°	2d gear on stud.	48	40
Normal P'...	.393"	.393"	Gear on screw..	72	72
Normal S....	.125"	.125"	Cutter marked High-speed steel.....	#2-8 P.	#3-8 P.
Normal T...	.196"	.196"	Speed.....	1st or 2d speed, or 60 F.P.M.	
Depth of space....	.2696"	.2696"	Feed.....	Medium power feed — .007" per cutter revolution	
			Lubricant.....	Lard oil	

## SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS FOR GEAR

**I. Preparatory adjustments.** Place cutter *A* on arbor *B* in direction of rotation, and clamp hard. Fasten index head and footstock in horizontal alinement on table.

**II. Set cutter central.** Set swivel table at zero and cutter central, as at *A'*, Fig. 23, and clamp cross slide.

**III. Arrange gears and index.** Arrange gears for spiral, set index for 21 teeth, withdraw stop so that index plate can revolve.

**IV. Mount gear blank on centers.** Press mandrel *C* hard into blank *D* and mount on centers securing dog *E* in driver by screw *F*.

**V. Set machine for depth of teeth.** Start machine; move table by hand long feed until blank *D*, is under revolving cutter *A*. Hold .001" tissue paper on top of blank and raise knee until revolving cutter cuts paper. Then set vertical dial at zero and move blank back until clear of cutter. Stop machine. Set swivel table at 45° and clamp. Raise knee .2696", depth of space, and again set vertical dial at zero.

**VI. Mill trial tooth.** Start ma-

chine; move table by hand long feed until cutter nearly touches blank, then throw in power feed, and mill tooth, one cut. Set table dog to trip feed when center of cutter has passed far corner of gear blank. At end of cut, lower knee and move table back until blank is clear of cutter. Raise knee to zero, index and cut next tooth. Measure tooth and make correction, if necessary.

**VII. Mill all teeth by same process.**

*Information.* — Before first cut, raise knee until revolving cutter touches blank, then move table by hand to trace spiral line on work which will show if lead and angle are correct.

*Warning.* — Press mandrel harder into blank for spiral milling as the tendency to slip by pressure of cut is greater.

*Attention.* — Cut pinion by same process as gear.

*Note.* — To obtain information for designing spur, bevel, worm and spiral gearing, consult standard hand books and treatises on gearing.

## BEVEL PROTRACTOR

**41. Bevel protractor.** — *A*, Fig. 24, is used to establish and test angles. It is graduated into 360 divisions called degrees. The degree is the unit of angular measurement,  $\frac{1}{360}$  part of a circle. For calculation a degree is divided into 60 parts called minutes and a minute is sub-divided into 60 parts called seconds.

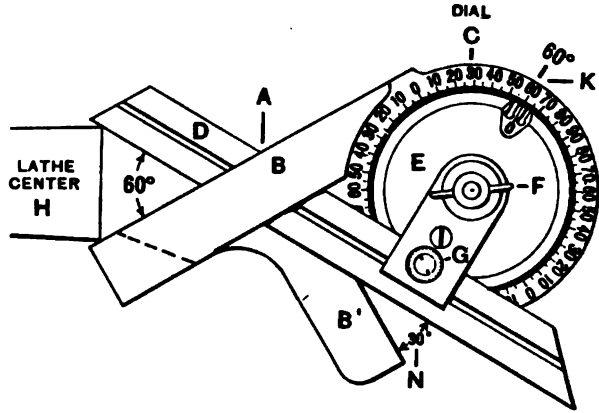


FIG. 24. — MEASURING ANGLE OF LATHE CENTER. BEVEL PROTRACTOR.

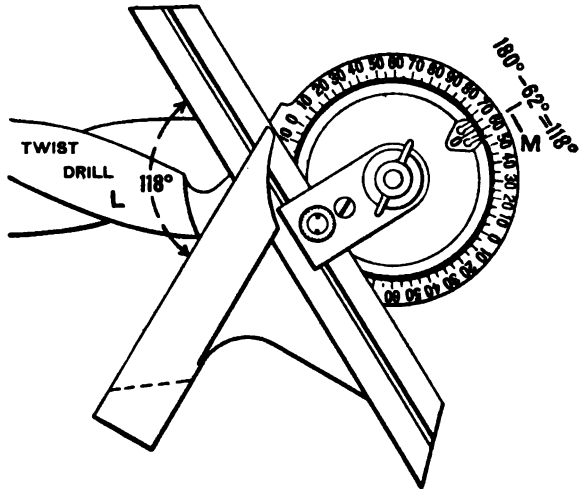


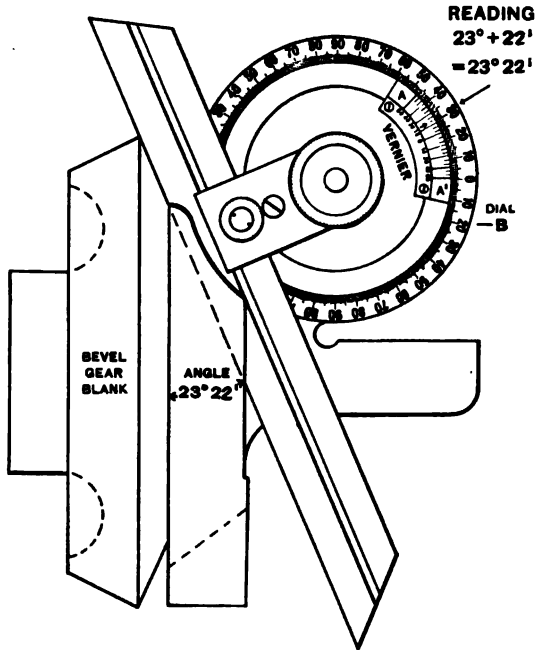
FIG. 25. — MEASURING ANGLE OF TWIST DRILL. BEVEL PROTRACTOR.

The protractor consists of beam *B*, graduated dial *C* and blade *D* which is connected to rotating disk *E* by thumb-nut *F* and clamp *G*. Disk *E* carries zero point (0). Blade *D* is adjustable and reversible and may be clamped at *G*. Dial *C* is divided into four quadrants of 90°. When zero lines

on dial *C* and disk *E* coincide, the beam and blade are parallel and the angle is 180°.

**42. To measure angle with bevel protractor.** — For included angles less than 180° and greater than 90°, loosen thumb-nut *F* slightly and bring beam *B* and blade *D* in contact with work, as twist drill *L*, Fig. 25, and subtract reading from 180°, as at *M*. For angles less than 90°, as at the center *H*, Fig. 24, read directly as at *K*.

Supplementary beam *B'*, Fig. 24, is convenient for measuring small angles, the angle being obtained by subtracting reading from 90°, as  $90^\circ - 60^\circ = 30^\circ$ , as at *N*, Fig. 29.



**43. Vernier bevel protractor,** Fig. 26, is

FIG. 26. — MEASURING ANGLE OF BEVEL GEAR BLANK WITH VERNIER BEVEL PROTRACTOR. READS TO 5 MINUTES OR  $\frac{1}{12}$  OF DEGREE.

used to measure parts of a degree. *A, A'* is a double vernier divided into 12 equal parts each side of zero. When reading angles less than 180° and greater than 90°, vernier *A* is used; for angles less than 90°, vernier *A'* is used.

The 12 divisions on vernier occupy same space as 23° on dial *B*. This divides a degree into 12 parts, each part equals  $60 \div 12 = 5$  minutes. See Vernier Principle, pp. 211, 212.

44. Table of tapers per foot with corresponding angles and tapers per inch.

TAPER PER FOOT.	INCLUDED ANGLE.		ANGLE WITH CENTER LINE.		TAPER PER INCH.	TAPER PER INCH FROM CENTER LINE.
	DEG.	MIN.	DEG.	MIN.		
$\frac{1}{8}$	0	36	0	18	.0104	.0052
$\frac{1}{6}$	0	54	0	27	.0156	.0078
$\frac{1}{4}$	1	12	0	36	.0208	.0104
$\frac{3}{8}$	1	30	0	45	.0260	.0130
$\frac{1}{2}$	1	48	0	54	.0312	.0156
$\frac{5}{8}$	2	6	1	3	.0365	.0182
$\frac{3}{4}$	2	24	1	12	.0417	.0208
$\frac{7}{8}$	2	42	1	21	.0469	.0234
$1$	3	0	1	30	.0521	.0260
$1\frac{1}{8}$	3	16	1	38	.0573	.0286
$1\frac{1}{4}$	3	34	1	47	.0625	.0312
$1\frac{3}{8}$	3	52	1	56	.0677	.0338
$1\frac{1}{2}$	4	10	2	5	.0729	.0365
$1\frac{5}{8}$	4	28	2	14	.0781	.0391
$1\frac{3}{4}$	4	46	2	23	.0830	.0417
$1\frac{7}{8}$	5	58	2	59	.1042	.0521
$2$	7	10	3	35	.1250	.0625
$2\frac{1}{8}$	8	20	4	10	.1458	.0729
$2\frac{1}{4}$	9	32	4	46	.1666	.0833
$2\frac{3}{8}$	11	52	5	56	.2083	.1042
$2\frac{1}{2}$	14	16	7	8	.2500	.1250
$2\frac{5}{8}$	16	36	8	18	.2916	.1458
$2\frac{3}{4}$	18	56	9	28	.3333	.1667
$2\frac{7}{8}$	21	14	10	37	.3750	.1875
$3$	23	32	11	46	.4166	.2083

45. To find angles for given taper per foot. —

*Rule:* Divide one-half the taper in inches per foot by 12 for the tangent of the angle with the center line. The included angle is twice the angle with the center line.

*Example.* — Given 6" taper per foot. To find angle.

*Solution.* —  $\frac{6}{2 \times 12} = .25000$  tangent of angle with center line.

The angle whose tangent is .25000 (see Table of Tangents in any Engineers' Handbook) equals  $14^{\circ} 2'$ . Included angle =  $14^{\circ} 2' \times 2 = 28^{\circ} 4'$ .

46. To find taper per inch. — Divide taper per foot by 12 for included angle and by 24 for angle with center line.

COMPOUND REST

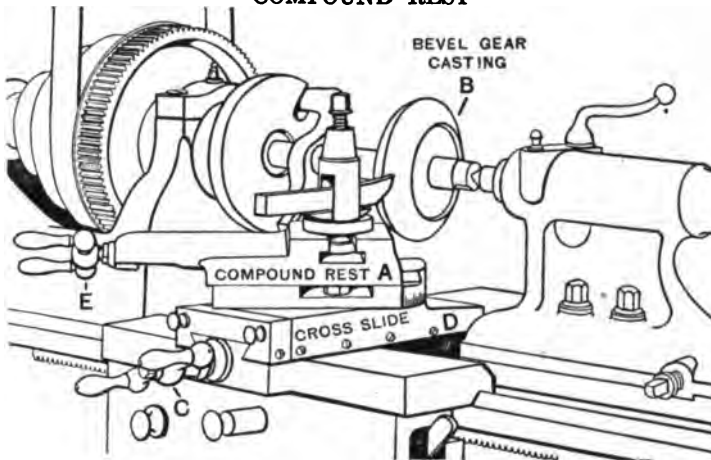


FIG. 27. — TURNING AN ANGLE WITH COMPOUND SLIDE REST.

**47. Compound rest, Fig. 27,** is used to turn or bore steep tapers or large angles. It may be a permanent part of cross slide, as in Fig. 27, or an attachment to interchange with tool block. When the zero lines coincide, as at *F*, Fig. 28, it is in the same plane as regular cross slide. To set at other angles, find whether angle is measured from per-

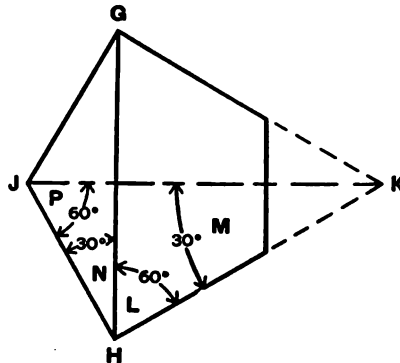


FIG. 29. — DIAGRAM FOR READING ANGLES.

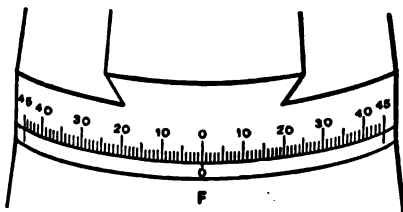


FIG. 28. — COMPOUND SLIDE REST GRADUATION.

pendicular to axis, as line *GH*, Fig. 29, or parallel to axis, as line *JK*. If from perpendicular, as angle *L*, set rest at  $60^\circ$ . If parallel, as angle *M*, set at  $90^\circ - 30^\circ = 60^\circ$ . If  $30^\circ$ , as at *N*, set direct. If  $60^\circ$ , as at *P*, set at complimen-

tary angle  $30^\circ$ . If angle or bevel on drawing is not given in degrees, measure with protractor or transfer angle with universal bevel. Hold head of bevel against face plate of lathe and adjust slide of compound rest to coincide with blade of bevel.

**48. To set compound rest to turn taper or bore taper hole when taper is given in inches per foot. —**

*First Method.* — Consult table of tapers and angles and find angle corresponding with desired taper.

*Example.* — To bore short taper hole  $\frac{1}{8}$ " taper per foot.

*Solution.* — Angle with center line for taper  $\frac{1}{8}$ " per foot =  $1^\circ 30'$ . Complement of angle is  $90^\circ - 1^\circ 30' = 88^\circ 30'$  which is setting for this taper.

*Second Method.* — In absence of table set rest approximately, and take trial cuts until exact taper is obtained.

**49. To make bevel gear blank 8 pitch, 32 teeth. —** For specifications, see Figs. 10 and 27, and pp. 1113–1119. True casting in chuck, drill, ream, press mandrel into hole, mount on centers, square and turn to size. Set compound rest *A*, Fig. 27, for angle of face *B* which is  $23^\circ 22'$  from line perpendicular to axis, therefore, set compound rest *A* at  $23^\circ 22'$  directly. Move carriage under blank and with handle *C* move cross slide *D* to approximate depth of cut and clamp carriage. Take one or two cuts operating compound rest by handle *E*, then test bevel with bevel protractor, as in Fig. 26, and if necessary, adjust compound rest and repeat cuts. Set compound rest to  $63^\circ 26'$  and turn outside bevel on back of gear and with same setting turn inside bevel to make face *B*  $\frac{1}{4}$ " wide. Set compound rest at zero. Filing and polishing may be omitted.

**50. Fine tool adjustments with compound rest. —** While a finer tool adjustment is obtained with the compound rest than with the cross slide due to its finer actuating screw, a still finer adjustment may be obtained by setting the compound rest at an angle. For example, we assume that the compound rest is set at  $30^\circ$ . If the tool is moved .001", according to the micrometer dial, the actual distance the tool moves into the work is in proportion to the cosine of the angle or  $.001 \times \cos 30^\circ = .001 \times .87 = .00087"$ . At  $45^\circ$  the depth is .00071", and at  $60^\circ$  the depth is .0005".

# ADVANCED MACHINE WORK

## SECTION 12

### TOOL MAKING

**Introduction. Making Mandrel. Testing Lathe Work With Indicators. Thread Micrometer Calipers. Making Taps. Making Plain Milling Cutter. Making Hand Reamer. Lapping. Making Plug Gage. Measuring Machine. Spiral Milling. Cutting Teeth In Spiral Mill. Grooving Twist Drill. Making Twist Drill. Precision Methods of Locating Holes For Jigs and Accurate Machine Parts — Plug Method, Button Method. Sine Bar.**

#### INTRODUCTION

1. **Tool making** is the fine art of machine building and manufacturing. It consists of designing, making and repairing small tools, such as taps, dies, reamers, twist drills, mandrels, arbors, counterbores, milling cutters and gages.

Standard small tools are obtainable, but many others, special in diameter, length or shape including punches and dies, jigs and fixtures, needed in machine building, manufacturing and experimental work, are not obtainable and must be *made* to meet the requirements.

The processes of making tools and making machine parts are similar, but greater knowledge and accuracy are generally required in making tools than in making machine parts.

While schedules of making a number of different types of tools are given in this section, a large number of tool-making processes may be found in other sections of both books (*Principles of Machine Work* and *Advanced Machine Work*), such as Hardening and Tempering, Accurate Filing and Scraping, Drilling, Internal, Surface, and Cutter Grinding, Planing, Grooving and Fluting Taps and Reamers, and Cutting Teeth In Milling Cutters.

2. **Selecting sizes of steel for tools.** — As the surface of carbon-steel bar stock is decarbonized to some extent, and will not harden properly, select annealed carbon steel  $\frac{1}{8}$ " to  $\frac{1}{2}$ " large for tools that are to be hardened, and high-speed steel  $\frac{1}{8}$ " to  $\frac{1}{2}$ " large.



MAKING MANDREL

3. To prepare  $\frac{1}{8}$ " standard mandrel blank for hardening, tempering, and grinding, Fig. 1.

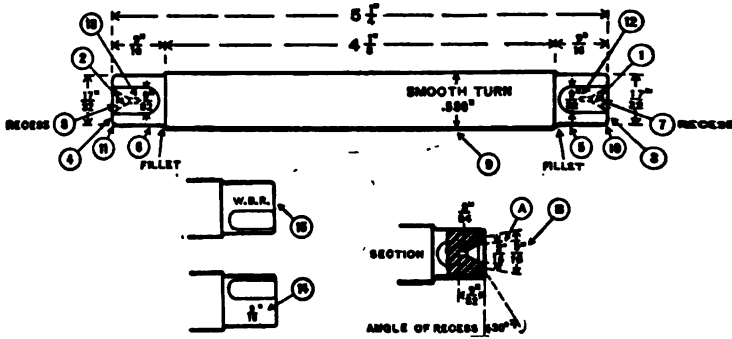


FIG. 1. — SCHEDULE DRAWING.

Specifications: Material, annealed carbon steel  $\frac{1}{8}$ " large; weight, 8 oz. Hardness, 22 to 23 (scleroscope).

True live center. Set dead center in approximate alinement.

Machine dry or use lard oil.

High-speed steel or stellite cutting tools.

Time: Study drawing and schedule in advance, 5 min. — Oil lathes, 6 min. — Prepare blank, 55 min. — Harden, 10 min. — Polish and color temper, 25 min. (or oil temper, 5 min.) — Lap center holes, 8 min. — Clean lathes, 5 min. — Total, 1 h. 54 min.

SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS, MACHINES AND TOOLS

OPERATIONS.	MACHINES, SPEEDS, FEEDS.	TOOLS.
Center to $\frac{1}{8}$ " (1), (2). See (A), Fig. 1.	Centering machine. Drill 1000 R. P. M., countersink 400 R.P.M.	$\frac{1}{8}$ " drill, or combination drill and countersink, 60°. Lard oil.
Rough square to $5\frac{1}{2}$ " + $\frac{1}{8}$ " (3), (4).	Engine lathe, 12" to 16", 2d or 3d speed, or 35 F.P.M. Hand feed.	Dog, side tool, or holder and cutter, 30° rake, calipers, rule.
Recenter to $\frac{1}{8}$ " (1), (2).	Speed lathe, 2d or 3d speed.	Drill, countersink lard oil.
Finish square to length, (3), (4).	Engine lathe, 3d or 4th speed, or 50 F. P. M.	Dog, side tool or holder and cutter, 30° rake, calipers, rule.

Rough turn reduced portions to  $\frac{1}{4}$ " +  $\frac{1}{4}$ " (5), (6), one or two cuts. Do not square shoulders but leave fillets as shown to avoid cracking in hardening.

Recess countersinks to  $\frac{1}{8}$ ". Angle 20°, (7), (8). See (B), Fig. 1.

Recenter to  $\frac{1}{8}$ ", (1), (2).

Finish turn reduced portions, (5), (6), one cut.

Smooth turn body to .580". Turn half way, reverse, and turn other half. (9), one or two cuts.

Round corners, (10), (11).

File reduced portions.

Polish reduced portion, also ends and recesses except countersinks, (5), (6). See pp. 432-434.

Mill or file and polish flats, (12), (13).

Stamp size  $\frac{1}{16}$ " (14).

Stamp name or initials (15).  
(File off burr.)

2d or 3d speed, or 30 F.P.M. Medium power feed — 80 to 1".

3d or 4th speed, or 50 F.P.M. Speed lathe, 2d or 3d speed.

Engine lathes, 3d or 4th speed, or 50 F.P.M. Fine power feed — 140 to 1".

2d or 3d speed, or 30 F.P.M. Fine power feed — 140 to 1".

Speed lathe, 3d or 4th speed, or 200 F.P.M.

3d or 4th speed, or 175 F.P.M.

Speed lathes, highest speed.

Milling machine, 3d speed, medium power feed.

Vise.

.....

Copper under set screw of dog, diamond-point tool, or holder and cutter, 30° rake, calipers, rule.

Side tool or drill and special countersink.

Drill, countersink.

Copper under set screw of dog, diamond-point tool, or holder and cutter, 30° rake, calipers, rule.

Micrometer, copper under set screw of dog, diamond-point tool, or holder and cutter, 30° rake, calipers, rule.

Graver or file.

6" or 8" mill bastard file.

Lard oil, 90 and 120 emery cloth, polishing stick.

To mill, use milling machine vise, parallel piece, 1" end mill, rule, lead hammer, oil.

To file, use 8" or 10" hand smooth and 5" half-round, 2d cut files.

To polish, use oil, 90 and 120 emery cloth.

$\frac{1}{16}$ " steel figures,  $\frac{1}{4}$ " chisel, hammer, copper jaws.

Steel name stamp.

Harden in water (test with file). See p. 1217 and <i>Principles of Machine Work</i> .	Gas furnace or forge, 1325° F. to 1350° F.	Tongs, water, dead-smooth file.
Temper in oil, or Polish reduced portions and ends and temper to dark straw.	Oil, tempering furnace, 425° F. to 435° F.	
To lap center holes, see p. 1228. To grind, see p. 1206.	Gas furnace or forge.	Red-hot iron rings, tongs.

*Important.* — The hardness of both hardened and tempered work should be tested with a fine file; or preferably given a scleroscope or Brinell hardness test. See *Principles of Machine Work*.

*Attention.* — The hand tools may be carbon steel.

*Note.* — If not equipped with cylindrical grinding machine, harden and temper ends only, turn body slightly taper and file to fit standard hole.

4. Table of standard mandrel dimensions.

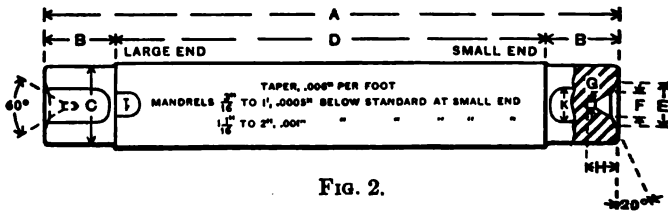


FIG. 2.

NOMINAL DIAM.	TOTAL LENGTH.	LENGTH OF ENDS.	DIAM. OF ENDS.	LENGTH OF TAPER.	DIAM. OF RECESS.	DIAM. OF COUNTERSINKS.	DRILL SIZE FRACTION AND NUMBER.	DEPTH OF DRILLED HOLE.	WIDTH OF FLAT.
	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	K
$\frac{1}{8}$	$3\frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{1}{8}$	$2\frac{1}{8}$	.....	$\frac{5}{16}$	.....	$\frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{1}{8}$
$\frac{1}{4}$	$3\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{1}{8}$	$2\frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{5}{16}$	$\frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{1}{8}$
$\frac{3}{8}$	4	$\frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{1}{8}$	$3\frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{3}{8}$	$\frac{5}{16}$	$\frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{1}{8}$
$\frac{1}{2}$	$4\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{1}{8}$	$3\frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{5}{16}$	$\frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{1}{8}$
$\frac{5}{8}$	$4\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{1}{8}$	$3\frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{5}{16}$	$\frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{1}{8}$
$\frac{3}{4}$	5	$\frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{1}{8}$	$3\frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{7}{8}$	$\frac{5}{16}$	$\frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{1}{8}$
$\frac{7}{8}$	$5\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{1}{8}$	$4\frac{1}{8}$	$1$	$\frac{5}{16}$	$\frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{1}{8}$
1	$5\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{1}{8}$	$4\frac{1}{8}$	$1\frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{5}{16}$	$\frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{1}{8}$
$1\frac{1}{8}$	6	$\frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{1}{8}$	$4\frac{1}{8}$	$1\frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{5}{16}$	$\frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{1}{8}$
$1\frac{1}{4}$	$6\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{1}{8}$	$4\frac{1}{8}$	$1\frac{3}{8}$	$\frac{5}{16}$	$\frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{1}{8}$
$1\frac{3}{8}$	$6\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{1}{8}$	$4\frac{1}{8}$	$1\frac{5}{8}$	$\frac{5}{16}$	$\frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{1}{8}$

NOMINAL DIAM.	TOTAL LENGTH.	LENGTH OF ENDS.	DIAM. OF ENDS.	LENGTH OF TAPER.	DIAM. OF RECESS.	DIAM. OF COUNTERSINKS.	DRILL SIZES FRACTION AND NUMBER.	DEPTH OF DRILLED HOLE.	WIDTH OF FLAT.
	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	K
$1 \frac{1}{8}$	$6 \frac{1}{4}$	$7 \frac{1}{4}$	$1 \frac{1}{8}$	5	$1 \frac{1}{8}$	$9 \frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{3}{32}$ 42	$\frac{1}{16}$	$1 \frac{1}{8}$
1	7	$7 \frac{1}{4}$	1	$5 \frac{1}{4}$	$1 \frac{1}{8}$	$9 \frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{3}{32}$ 42	$\frac{1}{16}$	$1 \frac{1}{8}$
$1 \frac{1}{16}$	$7 \frac{1}{4}$	1	$1 \frac{1}{16}$	5	$1 \frac{1}{16}$	$9 \frac{1}{16}$	$\frac{3}{32}$ 42	$\frac{1}{16}$	$1 \frac{1}{16}$
$1 \frac{1}{8}$	$7 \frac{1}{4}$	1	$1 \frac{1}{8}$	$5 \frac{1}{8}$	$1 \frac{1}{8}$	$9 \frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{3}{32}$ 42	$\frac{1}{16}$	$1 \frac{1}{8}$
$1 \frac{1}{16}$	8	1	$1 \frac{1}{16}$	$5 \frac{1}{16}$	$1 \frac{1}{16}$	$9 \frac{1}{16}$	$\frac{3}{32}$ 42	$\frac{1}{16}$	$1 \frac{1}{16}$
$1 \frac{1}{8}$	8	1	$1 \frac{1}{8}$	6	$1 \frac{1}{8}$	$9 \frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{3}{32}$ 42	$\frac{1}{16}$	$1 \frac{1}{8}$
$1 \frac{1}{16}$	$8 \frac{1}{4}$	1	$1 \frac{1}{16}$	$6 \frac{1}{4}$	$1 \frac{1}{16}$	$9 \frac{1}{16}$	$\frac{3}{32}$ 42	$\frac{1}{16}$	$1 \frac{1}{16}$
$1 \frac{1}{8}$	$8 \frac{1}{4}$	$1 \frac{1}{8}$	$1 \frac{1}{8}$	$6 \frac{1}{8}$	$1 \frac{1}{8}$	$9 \frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{3}{32}$ 42	$\frac{1}{16}$	$1 \frac{1}{8}$
$1 \frac{1}{16}$	9	$1 \frac{1}{16}$	$1 \frac{1}{16}$	$6 \frac{1}{16}$	$1 \frac{1}{16}$	$9 \frac{1}{16}$	$\frac{3}{32}$ 42	$\frac{1}{16}$	$1 \frac{1}{16}$
$1 \frac{1}{8}$	$9 \frac{1}{4}$	$1 \frac{1}{8}$	$1 \frac{1}{8}$	7	$1 \frac{1}{8}$	$9 \frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{3}{32}$ 42	$\frac{1}{16}$	$1 \frac{1}{8}$
$1 \frac{1}{16}$	$9 \frac{1}{4}$	1	$1 \frac{1}{16}$	6	$1 \frac{1}{16}$	$9 \frac{1}{16}$	$\frac{3}{32}$ 42	$\frac{1}{16}$	$1 \frac{1}{16}$
$1 \frac{1}{8}$	$9 \frac{1}{4}$	$1 \frac{1}{8}$	$1 \frac{1}{8}$	$6 \frac{1}{8}$	$1 \frac{1}{8}$	$9 \frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{3}{32}$ 42	$\frac{1}{16}$	$1 \frac{1}{8}$
$1 \frac{1}{16}$	10	$1 \frac{1}{16}$	$1 \frac{1}{16}$	6	$1 \frac{1}{16}$	$9 \frac{1}{16}$	$\frac{3}{32}$ 42	$\frac{1}{16}$	$1 \frac{1}{16}$
$1 \frac{1}{8}$	$10 \frac{1}{4}$	$1 \frac{1}{8}$	$1 \frac{1}{8}$	$7 \frac{1}{4}$	$1 \frac{1}{8}$	$9 \frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{3}{32}$ 42	$\frac{1}{16}$	$1 \frac{1}{8}$
$1 \frac{1}{16}$	$10 \frac{1}{4}$	$1 \frac{1}{16}$	$1 \frac{1}{16}$	8	$1 \frac{1}{16}$	$9 \frac{1}{16}$	$\frac{3}{32}$ 42	$\frac{1}{16}$	$1 \frac{1}{16}$
$1 \frac{1}{8}$	$10 \frac{1}{4}$	$1 \frac{1}{8}$	$1 \frac{1}{8}$	$8 \frac{1}{4}$	$1 \frac{1}{8}$	$9 \frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{3}{32}$ 42	$\frac{1}{16}$	$1 \frac{1}{8}$
2	11	$1 \frac{1}{2}$	1	$8 \frac{1}{2}$	$1 \frac{1}{2}$	$9 \frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{3}{32}$ 42	$\frac{1}{16}$	$1 \frac{1}{2}$

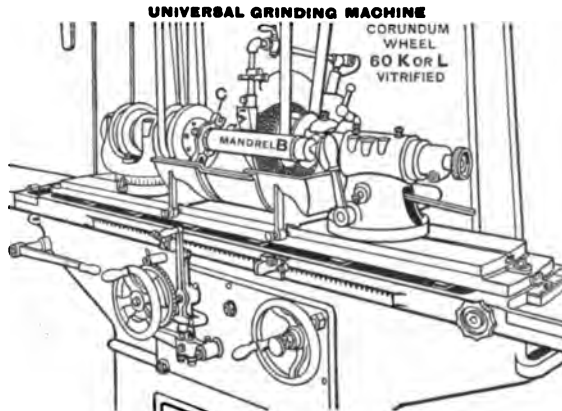


FIG. 3. — GRINDING A MANDREL.

5. To grind  $\frac{3}{8}$ " standard mandrel, taper .006" to 1', on two dead centers, Figs. 3, 4.

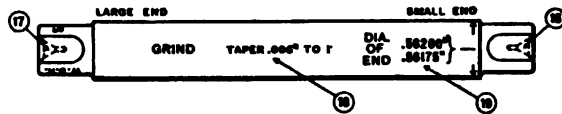


FIG. 4. — SCHEDULE DRAWING.

**Specifications:** Mandrel blank, carbon steel smooth turned .580" diameter. Stamped, hardened and tempered. Center holes (16), (17), lapped.

**Machines and tools:** Universal grinding machine.

Grinding wheel 12"  $\times$   $\frac{1}{2}$ ", No. 60, Grade *K* or *L*, vitrified, grinding dog. Speed of wheel, 5000 F.P.M. Speed of work, 50 F.P.M.

Feed  $\frac{1}{4}$  width of wheel per revolution.

Oil bearings and two dead centers with machine oil.

Lubricant, solution of sal soda and water.

**Time:** Study drawing and schedule in advance, 5 min. — Oil machine and true wheel, 7 min. — Grind mandrel with machine "set up," 20 min. — Clean grinder, 3 min. — Total, 35 min. ("Set up" machine to grind correct taper, 20 min. extra.)

#### SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS

**I. Preparatory Adjustments.** True wheel (see p. 709) and centers (see p. 710). Set zero lines on headstock and swivel table to grind desired taper approximately. See p. 712. Arrange water guards. See Fig. 10, p. 715. Move grinding wheel back with hand cross-feed wheel 8, to allow space to mount work. Mount mandrel on centers with grinding dog on stamped end and without dog on copper under screw. Start

grinding wheel, work and feed, 1, 2, 3, and adjust table dogs 6, 7, to obtain length of stroke and avoid wheel striking dog or footstock. Set automatic cross feed 11, 12, to feed .001" (4 teeth on ratchet) at each end of stroke.

**II. Grind Trial Diameter (19),** Fig. 4. (Grind out tool marks only.) Move grinding wheel to cut revolving work lightly with hand cross-feed wheel 8. Turn

on water and throw in feed pawl 9 to mesh with ratchet wheel 10, and allow automatic cross feed to take three or four trial cuts whole length of work to grind out tool marks. Then throw out pawl 9 and, without moving cross feed allow wheel to pass over work several times until cutting nearly dies out.

Stop wheel, work and feed 1, 2, 3, with wheel at footstock end.

**III. Correct Taper (18), Fig. 4.** Measure work at two places 4" apart with 1" micrometer, and if taper is not .002" in 4", move swivel table (see p. 712). Take one or two cuts with automatic cross feed. Measure, and repeat until taper is correct. If there is danger thereby of grinding mandrel too small, use trial piece same length.

**IV. Find Amount Oversize.** Measure small end, subtract .562" + .002" for finishing from reading of micrometer.

For example, reading of micrometer may be .574", then  $.574" - .564" = .010"$ , or 40 teeth for rough grinding.

**V. Set Automatic Cross Feed.** Raise perpendicular latch 13, in head 14, throw in pawl 9 and without moving cross feed, move shield 15 to right or left until end of shield and pawl are 40 teeth apart, then drop latch 13 in ratchet wheel 10.

**VI. Rough Grind (18), .002" Large,** as follows: Start wheel, work and feed 1, 2, 3, and rough grind automatically until shield 15 lifts pawl 9. Then lock latch head 14 with horizontal latch 16. Throw out pawl 9 and allow wheel to pass over work several times until cutting nearly dies out. Stop work with wheel at footstock end and measure. From reading subtract .562". ( $.564" - .562" = .002"$ )

**VII. Finish Grind (18), Fig. 4,** with pinch feed ( $\frac{1}{1000}$ " in diameter of work), as follows:

Start work. Take two cuts  $\frac{1}{1000}$ " each (two pinches at each end of work). Stop work and measure (.5635"). Take one cut  $\frac{1}{1000}$ " (one pinch at footstock end of work) and measure, and repeat until work measures .562".

Limit .56200" to .56175".

Clean machine with waste.

*Attention.*—Machine steel is often used for making mandrels. To prevent the center holes wearing excessively, the ends are case-hardened after which the mandrel may be ground or turned and filed to size. Large mandrels are frequently made without hardening. To avoid excessive wear at the center holes, the ends of the mandrel may be drilled to receive hardened plugs which contain the center holes.

6. To make  $\frac{1}{4}'' \times 13$  U. S. S. nut mandrel. See Fig. 5.

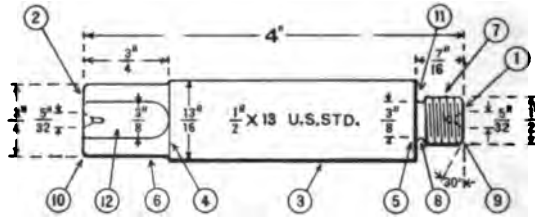


FIG. 5. — SCHEDULE DRAWING.

**Specifications:** Material, machine steel  $\frac{1}{8}''$  to  $\frac{1}{4}''$  large; weight, 12 oz.

Hardness, 15 to 18 (scleroscope).

High-speed steel, or stellite cutting tools.

**Time:** Study drawing and schedule in advance, 5 min. — Oil lathe, 4 min. — Make mandrel blank, 1 h. 13 min. — Case-harden and polish, 10 min. — Clean machine, 3 min. — Total, 1 h. 35 min.

#### SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS, MACHINES AND TOOLS

OPERATIONS.	MACHINES, SPEEDS, FEEDS.	TOOLS.
<p><b>Center.</b> See that live center is nearly true and dead center in approximate alinement. Rough square <math>\frac{1}{4}''</math> long, (1), (2).</p>	<p>Engine lathes, 12" to 16".  3d or 4th speed, or 50 F.P.M. Hand feed.</p>	<p>Dog, holder and cutter 35° rake, calipers, rule.</p>
<p><b>Recenter.</b> Finish square (3), (1). Rough turn <math>\frac{1}{4}''</math> large, (3), one cut. Turn half way, reverse and turn other half.</p>	<p>2d or 3d speed, or 50 F.P.M. Medium power feed — 80 to 1".</p>	<p>Holder and cutter 35° rake, copper, calipers, rule.</p>

Finish turn (3), one cut. Turn half way, reverse and turn other half.	3d or 4th speed, or 70 F.P.M. Fine power feed — 140 to 1".	
Draw lines (4), (5), for length of reduced parts (6), (7).	Vise, copper jaws.	Copper sulphate, rule, scriber.
Rough and finish turn (6), one or two cuts. Do not square shoulder, leave fillet.	Engine lathe, 3d or 4th speed, or 70 F.P.M. Fine power feed — 140 to 1".	Copper, holder and cutter 35° rake, calipers, rule.
Cut groove (8), to $\frac{3}{8}$ " diameter and within $\frac{1}{4}$ " of line (5).	1st or 2d speed, or 30 F.P.M. Hand feed.	$\frac{1}{8}$ " round end grooving-tool, calipers, rule, oil.
Rough and finish turn (7), terminating in groove (8), three cuts.	3d or 4th speed, or 70 F.P.M. Fine power feed — 140 to 1".	
Chamfer end to 30°, (8).	3d speed, or 70 F.P.M.	Center gage.
File (3), (6), and round corner (10).	4th speed, or 175 F.P.M.	8" or 10" mill-bastard file, file card.
Thread (7), to fit $\frac{1}{2}$ " $\times$ 13 U. S. S. nut.	Arrange for 13 threads. 1st or 2d speed, or 20 F.P.M.	13 pitch U. S. S. thread tool, center gage, thread calipers, rule, oil.
Rechamfer end (9).		
Finish square shoulder (11).	3d speed, or 70 F.P.M. Hand feed.	Holder and cutter 35° rake.
Mill flat (12), or	Milling machine. 3d speed. Medium power feed.	1" end mill, milling machine centers or vise, oil.
File flat, (12).	Vise, copper jaws.	8" or 10" hand-smooth and 5" half-round 2d-cut files, file card.
Stamp size $\frac{1}{2}$ " $\times$ 13 U. S. S. and on opposite side stamp name.	Vise, copper jaws.	$\frac{1}{8}$ " and $\frac{1}{4}$ " steel figures and letters, hammer.
File (3), to remove burr from stamping.	Hold mandrel in hand or vise.	8" or 10" hand-smooth file, file card.
Case-harden (6), (7) and clean. (Polish (3) optional.)	Gas furnace or forge, 1325° F. to 1350° F.	Tongs, cyanide of potassium or prussiate of potash, water, hand-smooth file, waste.

*Exception.* — Finish turn and file (3) may be omitted and ground after case-hardening.



### TESTING LATHE WORK WITH INDICATORS

**7. Test Indicators**, as in Figs. 6, 7, are used to determine the degree of accuracy of machine parts by enlarging the error by a multiplying mechanism so that  $\frac{1}{1000}$ " will register about  $\frac{1}{16}$ " on scale or dial which is easily read and fractions thereof readily estimated.

They are used to test the truth and alinement of machine parts on either interior or exterior work; as, the truth of live centers, the alinement of dead centers to turn straight or taper, the truth of mandrels and arbors, to set finished work in chuck by hole or side, to set jig work on face plate of lathe, to test eccentricity of shaft in straightening, to set cathead on shaft to turn spot for steady rest, to test taper hole in lathe or other spindles, to aline lathe heads in machine building, to aline cross rail of planer, to aline work on planer table, to test the accuracy of table with drill spindle, to test the truth of milling machine arbor, to aline angle plates and vises on milling and planing machines, to set center punch mark on work true to axis of rotation on face plate of lathe.

*Attention.* — In alining and setting machine tool fixtures for very accurate work, such as fine tool and jig making, the vernier height gage and the universal sine bar are used. See pp. 1249, 1263-1265.

**8. Lathe test indicators.** — Fig. 6 shows an indicator testing the truth of a mandrel mounted on lathe centers. Holder *A* is held in tool post *B*, the cross slide is moved inward until feeler or contact point *C* touches mandrel *D* as it is being revolved by hand and the pointer indicates on the scale *E* the amount, if any, in thousandths of an inch or fraction thereof, that the mandrel is out of true. Feeler *C* is for testing mandrels, centers, etc., and is removable.

Feeler *F* is for testing interior or exterior work and registers either a horizontal or perpendicular movement. Feeler *G* is broad faced and is used for testing the accuracy of a shaft when filing. Feeler *H* is for small work, either internal or external, and for narrow spaces.

*Important.*—When setting the indicator, it is best to move feeler *C* against the work until the pointer on the scale is at zero (0).

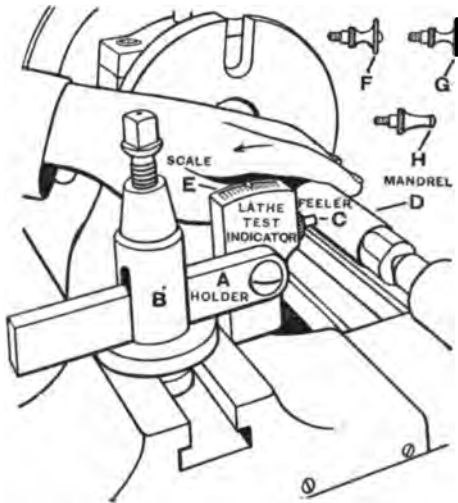


FIG. 6. — TESTING THE TRUTH OF A MANDREL WITH A LATHE TEST INDICATOR.

Fig. 7 shows the method of setting a center punch mark on work true to the axis of rotation. The work is clamped lightly to the face plate in an approximate position. Spring plunger *A* is inserted in center punch mark *B* and mounted on dead center *C*. The work *D* is revolved by hand and the truth of the plunger is tested with the indicator. The work is adjusted by rapping until plunger *A* is motionless when the work is revolved.

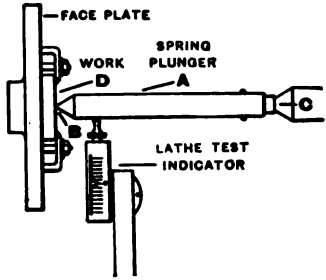


FIG. 7. — SETTING A CENTER PUNCH MARK TRUE TO AXIS OF ROTATION WITH LATHE INDICATOR.

9. Dial test indicator.—Fig. 8 shows a dial test indicator. To enlarge the hole in gear *A* which is mounted in chuck *B*,

the indicator is used to test the truth of hole preparatory to boring and reaming. Holder *C* is held in tool post *D*. The long feed is moved and the rise and fall rest adjusted until feeler of hole attachment *E* touches wall of hole in gear *A*. The gear is revolved by hand and the pointer on dial *F* indicates the axial truth of gear. The gear is adjusted in chuck and wall of hole tested until pointer on dial *F* is motionless or within a reasonable limit, as 1000 of an inch or a fraction thereof. The face of the gear is also tested by using indicator without attachment *E*. The dial is divided into 125 spaces of one-half thousandth of an inch each.

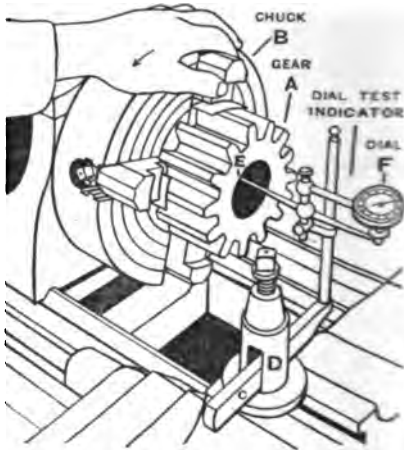


FIG. 8. — TRUING UP A GEAR IN A CHUCK WITH A DIAL TEST INDICATOR.

Different feelers, as at *G* and *H*, are for various classes of work. Clamp *J* is to fasten indicator to lathe and planer tools and milling machine arbors.

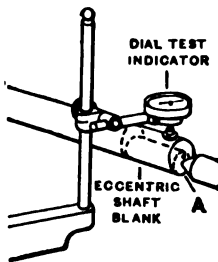


FIG. 9. — COMPARING THE THROW OF BOTH ENDS OF AN ECCENTRIC SHAFT BLANK WITH A DIAL TEST INDICATOR.

Fig. 9 shows a dial test indicator comparing the throw of an eccentric shaft. The diameter of shaft must be the same at both ends. One end is tested, then shaft is reversed and second end tested. Slight corrections are made by scraping eccentric center holes, one of which is shown at *A*, with center scraper. See p. 631.

*Attention.* — To test side of gear, remove hole attachment *E*, Fig. 8, set dial vertical and use indicator direct.

10. The lathe axis indicator, shown at *A* in Fig. 10, is used to test the axial truth of a center punch mark on work held in a chuck or bolted to a face plate such as the engine crank shaft center fixture *B*, which is laid out and marked at *C* and *D* to be drilled, bored, and reamed exactly at these points.

The fixture is bolted to the face plate with mark *C* approximately central and counterbalance *E* opposite. The point of indicating needle *F*, which is pivoted in the universal joint *G*, is placed in center mark *C*.

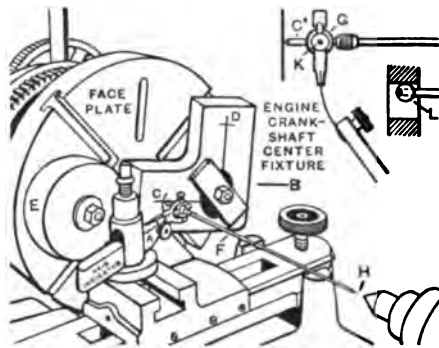


FIG. 10.—TESTING AXIAL TRUTH OF CENTER PUNCH MARK WITH INDICATOR.

As the lathe is rotated by hand, the needle point at *H* will revolve in a circle, exaggerating the error at *C*. The fixture is moved by tapping until needle point *H* remains stationary, when the lathe is rotated.

This indicator may be used to locate holes as well as center marks by first tightening nut *K*, which converts the universal into a single joint with a vertical movement, and then placing spherical head *L* upon point *C*, and using it against the upper wall of the hole. In this way the fixture may be used also to test the truth of a live center or a shaft turning on centers.

*Attention.*— Paper is sometimes placed between the face plate and smooth work to prevent the work slipping.

ADVANCED MACHINE WORK  
 THREAD MICROMETER CALIPERS

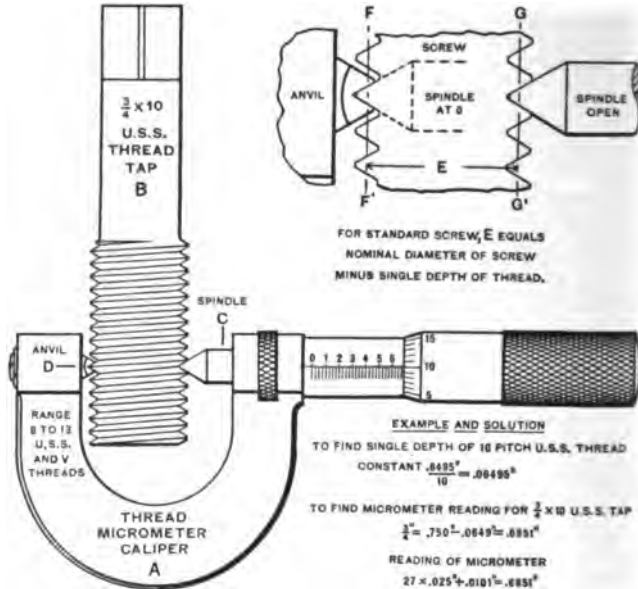


FIG. 11. — MEASURING WITH THREAD MICROMETER.

11. **Thread micrometer caliper**, Fig. 11, is used to measure U. S. S. and V thread screws, taps, thread gages, etc., as tap B. Spindle C and anvil D are relieved at points so that contact is only on sides of thread and measures diameter of screw thread independently of outside diameter of thread.

12. **Principle of thread micrometer.** — When spindle is in contact with anvil, reading is zero; when opened and applied to screw, it measures pitch diameter of screw thread E as shown by lines FF' and GG'. For a standard screw, reading for E is nominal diameter of screw minus single depth of thread.

13. **To find depth of thread and reading for micrometer.** — Divide constant by number of threads to 1" and subtract quotient from nominal diameter of tap. Remainder is reading for micrometer.

TABLES OF THREAD MICROMETER READINGS **1215**

Constant for single depth of U. S. S. thread, .6495; V thread, .866. See *Example* and *Solution*, Fig. 11. Spindle *C* is suited to a wide range of pitches but anvil *D* is limited, different anvils being substituted for each range of pitches.

**14. Tables of thread micrometer readings for U. S. S. and V threads.**

U. S. STANDARD THREADS.				V THREADS.			
DIAM.	PITCH.	CALIPER READING OR PITCH DIAM.	THREAD, DEPTH.	DIAM.	PITCH.	CALIPER READING OR PITCH DIAM.	THREAD, DEPTH.
D	P	D — $\frac{.6495}{P}$	$\frac{.6495}{P}$	D	P	D — $\frac{.866}{P}$	$\frac{.866}{P}$
$\frac{3}{8}$	24	.1604	.0270	$\frac{3}{8}$	24	.1514	.0360
$\frac{1}{2}$	20	.2176	.0324	$\frac{1}{2}$	24	.2139	.0361
$\frac{3}{4}$	18	.2765	.0360	$\frac{3}{4}$	20	.2067	.0433
$1\frac{1}{8}$	16	.3344	.0406	$1\frac{1}{8}$	20	.2692	.0433
$1\frac{1}{4}$	14	.3911	.0464	$1\frac{1}{4}$	18	.2644	.0481
$1\frac{3}{8}$	13	.4501	.0499	$1\frac{3}{8}$	18	.3269	.0481
$1\frac{1}{2}$	12	.5084	.0541	$1\frac{1}{2}$	16	.3209	.0541
$1\frac{3}{4}$	11	.566	.0590	$1\frac{3}{4}$	16	.3834	.0541
$2$	10	.6851	.0649	$2$	14	.3756	.0619
$2\frac{1}{8}$	9	.8029	.0721	$2\frac{1}{8}$	14	.4381	.0619
$2\frac{1}{4}$	8	.9188	.0812	$2\frac{1}{4}$	13	.4334	.0666
$2\frac{3}{8}$	7	1.0322	.0928	$2\frac{3}{8}$	12	.4278	.0722
$2\frac{1}{2}$	7	1.1572	.0928	$2\frac{1}{2}$	14	.5006	.0619
$2\frac{7}{8}$	6	1.2668	.1082	$2\frac{7}{8}$	12	.4903	.0722
$3$	6	1.3918	.1082	$3$	11	.5463	.0787
$3\frac{1}{8}$	5½	1.507	.1180	$3\frac{1}{8}$	10	.5384	.0866
$3\frac{1}{4}$	5	1.6201	.1299	$3\frac{1}{4}$	10	.6009	.0866
$3\frac{3}{8}$	5	1.7451	.1299	$3\frac{3}{8}$	10	.6634	.0866
$3\frac{1}{2}$	4½	1.8557	.1443	$3\frac{1}{2}$	9	.7788	.0962
$3\frac{3}{4}$	4	2.3376	.1624	$3\frac{3}{4}$	8	.8918	.1082
$4$	3½	2.8145	.1855	$4$	8	1.0168	.1082
	3¼	3.3002	.1998		7	1.1263	.1237
	3	3.7835	.2165		6	1.3557	.1443

**MAKING TAPS**

**15. The thread on taps must be smooth.** — A forged or, preferably, a spring threading tool holder and cutter may be used as in Fig. 12.

The top face of cutter *E* must not be set above top of shaft. The cutter can be removed, ground and replaced without disturbing holder and it will resume its cut.

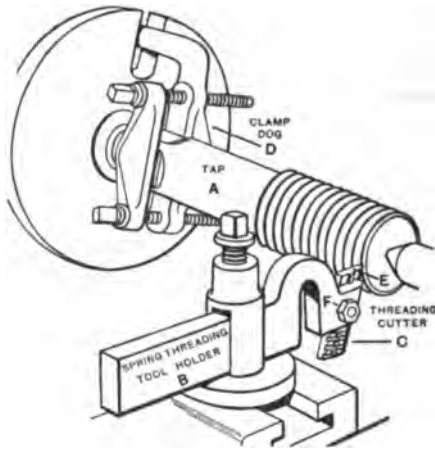


FIG. 12.—CUTTING THREAD ON TAP BLANK WITH SPRING THREADING TOOL.

Taps contract in length in hardening. For accurate pitch United States standard, *V*, and  $29^\circ$  thread taps are threaded oversize and lapped to size with a disk charged with emery and driven from a drum countershaft.

*Attention.* — Avoid deep center holes, large countersinks and square corners, which might cause a tap or other tool to crack in hardening.

16. Outside and inside U. S. S. thread gages, Fig. 13. for standardizing taps and dies. They are hardened, then thread is ground by a method which leaves pitch, angle, and size correct. Plug *A* is the standard to which the outside gage is adjusted. The top of the thread is truncated, according to the U. S. standard; the bottom is left sharp to give clearance. Part *B* is the standard root diameter of thread.

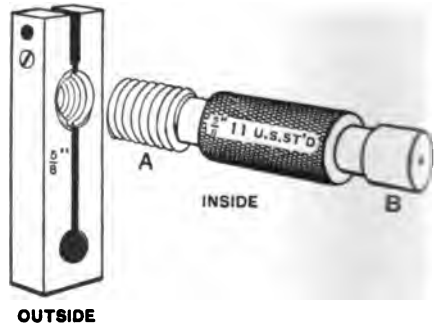


FIG. 13.—STANDARD THREAD GAGES.

## 17. To straighten hardened and tempered tools. Fig. 14.

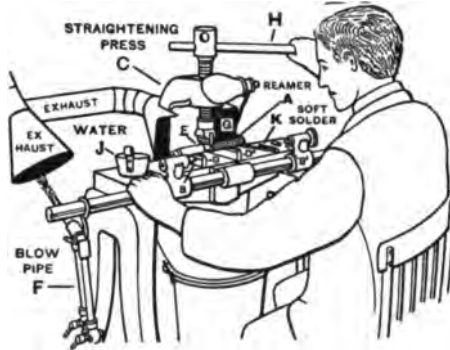


FIG. 14. — STRAIGHTENING HARDENED AND TEMPERED WORK.

## SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS

Taps, reamers, drills, mandrels, gages, and work of that class, often spring in hardening and tempering and have to be straightened.

*Example.* — Mount hardened and tempered reamer *A* on centers *B, B'* of straightening press *C*. Rotate with fingers, test with chalk, and note eccentricity.

Place reamer on supports *D, D'* with eccentric side up, and heat at most eccentric part *E* with blowpipe *F*.

Apply pressure with screw *G* operated by handle *H* to force

reamer straight or slightly beyond straight as it may spring back some, then cool under tension with water from cup *J* or wet waste. Again test on centers, and repeat process if needed until reamer is true within grinding limit.

*Caution.* — To avoid drawing the temper while heating, test temperature occasionally by touching reamer with soft solder *K*. (Soft solder melts at 370° F.) If the solder melts readily, cool with water, for the temperature must not exceed 430° F.

*Attention.* — Large lots of tools of the above classes may be straightened rapidly by heating in an oil-tempering gas furnace to a temperature from 350° to 400° F. This temperature is not high enough to draw the temper, but is high enough to permit the work to be easily and safely straightened in a press.



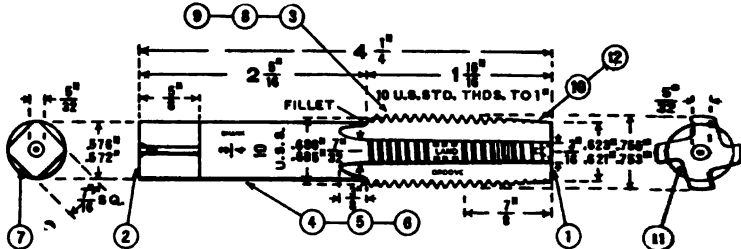
18. To make  $\frac{1}{8}'' \times 10$  United States Standard tap, Fig. 15.

FIG. 15. — SCHEDULE DRAWING.

**Specifications:** Material, annealed carbon steel  $\frac{1}{8}''$  to  $\frac{1}{4}''$  large; weight, 12 oz. Hardness, 20 to 25 (scleroscope).

High-speed steel, or stellite cutting tools.

**Time:** Study drawing and schedule in advance, 5 min. — Oil machines, 10 min. — Prepare blank, 1 h. 12 min. — Thread and turn taper, 38 min. — Mill grooves (with machine "set up"), file clearance, stamp and polish, 48 min. — Harden, 10 min. — Polish and color temper, 27 min. (or oil temper and polish, 15 min.) — Clean machines, 10 min. — Total, 3 h. 40 min.

## SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS, MACHINES AND TOOLS

OPERATIONS.	MACHINES, SPEEDS, FEEDS.	TOOLS.
<b>Center.</b> See that live center is nearly true and dead center in approximate alinement.	Engine lathe, 12" to 16".	
<b>Rough square (1), (2).</b>	3d or 4th speed, or 40 F.P.M. Hand feed.	Dog, holder and cutter 30° rake, calipers, rule.
<b>Recenter.</b> <b>Finish square, (2), (1).</b> <b>Rough turn to .755" + .015", (3), one or two cuts.</b> Turn half way, reverse and turn other half.	2d or 3d speed, or 40 F.P.M. Medium power feed — 80 to 1".	Holder and cutter 30° rake, 1" micrometer.
<b>Rough turn to .576" + .015", (4), two cuts.</b> <b>True live center. Set dead center in accurate alinement.</b>	3d speed, or 60 F.P.M. Fine power feed — 140 to 1".	
<b>Finish turn to .576" + .003", (5), one cut.</b>	Speed lathe, highest speed.	8" or 10" mill-bastard file, 60 and 90 emery cloth, polishing clamps, 1" micrometer, oil.
<b>File and polish (6) to limit.</b>		

<p><b>Mill square (7)</b>, hold in chuck by shank or body, see p. 1028, or index in lathe and</p> <p><b>File square (7)</b>. See p. 352.</p>	<p>Vise, copper jaws.</p>	<p>8" or 10" hand-smooth file.</p>
<p><b>Finish turn to .755" + .003"</b>, file to limit (8).</p>	<p>Engine lathe, 3d or 4th speed, or 60 F.P.M. Fine power feed — 140 to 1".</p>	<p>Clamp dog, holder and cutter 30° rake, 8" or 10" mill-bastard file, 1" micrometer.</p>
<p><b>Thread (9)</b>. To thread micrometer size .686" to 685", eight cuts .005" each, four cuts .004" each, three cuts .002" each, two cuts .001" each, one cut .0005", clean, oil, test and repeat cuts of .0005" until thread fits gage, or measures within limit. Depth of thread .067".</p>	<p>Arrange for 10 threads. 1st speed, or 25 F.P.M.</p>	<p>10 pitch U. S. S. spring-thread tool and gage, center gage, thread micrometer (see pp. 1214-1216), oil.</p>
<p><b>Turn taper on tap 1 1/4" to 1"</b> (10).</p>	<p>.....</p>	<p>Rule, dividers.</p>
<p><b>Set over footstock 1/8"</b>, or use taper attachment.</p>	<p>3d speed, or 60 F.P.M. Fine power feed — 140 to 1".</p>	<p>Holder and cutter 30° rake.</p>
<p><b>Turn taper to bottom of thread at end (10)</b>, four cuts.</p>	<p>.....</p>	<p>No. 5 double angle tap-grooving cutter, oil.</p>
<p><b>Mill grooves (11)</b>. See pp. 1031-1033. Mill grooves beyond thread 1/4".</p>	<p>Vise, copper jaws.</p>	<p>2d cut three-square file.</p>
<p><b>File off burr produced by milling</b>.</p>	<p>Blow pipe or gas furnace.</p>	<p>Tongs.</p>
<p><b>Heat tap to blue</b>, or coat with copper sulphate.</p>	<p>Vise, copper jaws.</p>	<p>6" to 8" pillar file No. 3, or smooth cut.</p>
<p><b>File clearance of 6° to 7° on top of taper threads only</b>, (12).</p>	<p>.....</p>	<p>Hammer, 1/8" and 1/4" steel figures, and letters.</p>
<p><b>Stamp size and name on shank</b>.</p>	<p>.....</p>	<p>Tongs, water.</p>
<p><b>Harden in water</b>. See <i>Principles of Machine Work</i>.</p>	<p>Gas furnace or forge 1325° F. to 1350° F.</p>	<p>(Red-hot ring or collar).</p>
<p><b>Temper in oil</b> (or polish and temper to straw color).</p>	<p>Oil-tempering furnace, 425° F. to 435° F.</p>	<p>.....</p>
<p><b>Test hardness with scleroscope</b>, or dead-smooth file.</p>	<p>Speed lathe, highest speed. Vise, copper jaws.</p>	<p>90 emery cloth, polishing clamps, oil, 5" half-round file.</p>
<p><b>Polish shank and grooves after oil tempering</b>, or before color tempering.</p>	<p>.....</p>	<p>.....</p>

*Information.* — Threads of taps are often given "body clearance" by setting the lathe to thread about .001" to 1" smaller at the shank.

*Attention.* — Grooves of taps may be ground after hardening and tempering, to remove scale and sharpen teeth. See p. 825.

19. To make  $1\frac{1}{4}'' \times 5$  Square thread tap, Fig. 16.

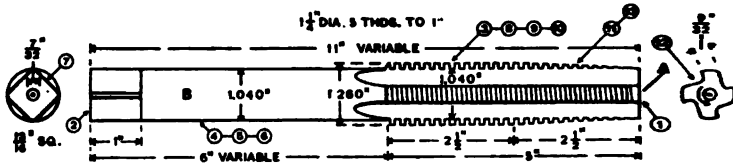


FIG. 16. — SCHEDULE DRAWING.

**Specifications:** Material, annealed carbon steel  $\frac{1}{8}''$  to  $\frac{1}{4}''$  large weight, 4 lbs. 8 oz. Hardness, 20 to 25 (scleroscope).  
 High-speed steel, or stellite cutting tools.  
 Time: 10 h.

SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS, MACHINES AND TOOLS

OPERATIONS.	MACHINES, SPEEDS, FEEDS.	TOOLS.
<b>Center.</b> See that live center is nearly true and dead center in approximate alinement.	Engine lathe, 12" to 16".	
<b>Rough square (1), (2).</b>	2d or 3d speed, or 40 F.P.M. Hand feed.	Dog, holder and cutter 30° rake, calipers, rule.
<b>Recenter.</b> Finish square to length (3), (1). Rough turn to $1.260'' + .015''$ , (3).	1st or 2d speed, or 40 F.P.M. Medium power feed — 80 to 1".	Holder and cutter 30° rake, 2" micrometer.
<b>Rough turn to <math>1.040'' + .015''</math>, (4), one or two cuts.</b> <b>True live center. Set dead center in accurate alinement.</b>		
<b>Finish turn to <math>1.040'' + .003''</math>, (5), one cut.</b>	3d speed, or 60 F.P.M. Fine power feed — 140 to 1".	
<b>File and polish (6), <math>1.040''</math> to <math>1.038''</math>.</b>	Speed lathe, highest speed.	8" or 10" mill bastard file, 60 and 90 emery cloth, polishing clamps, oil.
<b>Mill square (7). See p. 1028.</b> <b>Finish turn to <math>1.260'' + .004''</math>, (8).</b>	Engine lathe, 3d speed or 60 F.P.M. Fine power feed — 140 to 1".	Clamp dog, holder and cutter 30° rake, 2" micrometer.
<b>File (8), <math>1.260''</math> to <math>1.262''</math>.</b>	4th speed.	8" or 10" mill bastard file.

<p><b>Rough thread to 1.040" + .010", (9), twenty-one cuts .005" each. Depth of thread .105".</b></p>	<p>Arrange for 5 threads. 1st speed, or 25 F.P.M.</p>	<p>Square thread roughing tool, width .090", or holder and cutter, thin calipers, rule, oil.</p>
<p><b>Set finishing tool to cut on both sides of groove, (9).</b></p>	<p>.....</p>	<p>Square thread finishing tool, width .099", or holder and cutter.</p>
<p><b>Finish thread to 1.040", (10), twenty cuts .005" each, two cuts .002" each, six cuts .0005" each. Depth of thread .110".</b></p>	<p>1st speed, or 25 F.P.M.</p>	<p>Thin calipers, rule, oil.</p>
<p><b>Turn taper on tap <math>1\frac{1}{32}</math>" to 1', (11).</b></p>	<p>.....</p>	<p>Rule, dividers.</p>
<p><b>Set over footstock <math>\frac{1}{2}</math>", or use taper attachment.</b></p>	<p>.....</p>	<p>Holder and cutter 30° rake.</p>
<p><b>Turn taper to bottom of thread at end (11), three or four cuts.</b></p>	<p>2d or 3d speed, or 60 F.P.M. Fine power feed — 140 to 1".</p>	<p>No. 6 tap grooving cutter, index centers, rule, oil.</p>
<p><b>Mill grooves (12). Lower index head spindle one-third degree below horizontal to produce taper lands. See pp. 1031-1033.</b></p>	<p>Universal or plain milling machine. 1st speed or 50 F.P.M. Medium power feed — .007" per cutter revolution.</p>	<p>.....</p>
<p><b>File off burr.</b></p>	<p>Vise, copper jaws.</p>	<p>8" or 10" hand-smooth file, 6" warding file.</p>
<p><b>Heat tap to a blue.</b></p>	<p>Blow pipe or gas furnace.</p>	<p>Tongs.</p>
<p><b>File clearance on top of taper threads only, (13).</b></p>	<p>Vise, copper jaws.</p>	<p>8" or 10" hand smooth file.</p>
<p><b>File clearance on sides of threads.</b></p>	<p>.....</p>	<p>6" warding file with teeth ground off one side and one edge.</p>
<p><b>Stamp size and name on shank.</b></p>	<p>Vise, copper jaws.</p>	<p>Hammer, <math>\frac{1}{8}</math>" and <math>\frac{1}{4}</math>" steel figures and letters.</p>
<p><b>Harden in water.</b></p>	<p>Gas furnace or forge, 1325° F. to 1350° F.</p>	<p>Tongs, water.</p>
<p><b>Temper in oil (or polish and temper to straw color.)</b></p>	<p>Oil-tempering furnace, 425° F. to 435° F.</p>	<p>(Red-hot ring or collar.)</p>
<p><b>Test hardness with scleroscope, or dead-smooth file.</b></p>	<p>.....</p>	<p>.....</p>
<p><b>Polish shank and grooves after oil tempering, or before color tempering.</b></p>	<p>Speed lathe, highest speed. Vise, copper jaws.</p>	<p>90 emery cloth, polishing clamps, oil; 5" half-round file.</p>

*Attention.* — The set over for taper is correct for this length of tap only.

20. To make  $1\frac{1}{8}'' \times 5$  29° thread tap, Fig. 17.

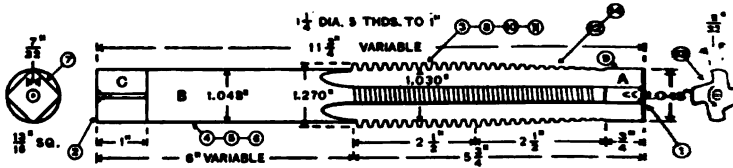


FIG. 17. — SCHEDULE DRAWING.

**Specifications:** Material, annealed carbon steel  $\frac{1}{8}''$  to  $\frac{1}{4}''$  large weight, 5 lbs. Hardness, 20 to 25 (scleroscope).  
 High-speed steel, or stellite cutting tools.  
 Time: 10 h.

SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS, MACHINES AND TOOLS

OPERATIONS.	MACHINES, SPEEDS, FEEDS.	TOOLS.
<p><b>Center.</b>                      See that live center is nearly true and dead center in approximate alinement.</p> <p><b>Rough square, (1), (2).</b></p>	<p>Engine lathe, 12'' to 16''.</p> <p>2d or 3d speed, or 40 F.P.M. Hand feed.</p>	<p>Dog, holder and cutter 30° rake, calipers, rule.</p>
<p><b>Recenter.</b>                      Finish square to length, (3), (1).                      Rough turn to <math>1.270'' + .015''</math>, (3).</p>	<p>1st or 2d speed, or 40 F.P.M. Medium power feed — 80 to 1''.</p>	<p>Holder and cutter 30° rake, 2'' micrometer.</p>
<p><b>Rough turn to <math>1.048'' + .015''</math>, (4), one or two cuts.</b>                      True live center. Set dead center in accurate alinement.</p>	<p>3d speed, or 60 F.P.M. Fine power feed — 140 to 1''.</p>	<p>8'' or 10'' mill-bastard file, 60 and 90 emery cloth, polishing clamps, oil.</p>
<p><b>Finish turn to <math>1.048'' + .003''</math>, (5), one cut.</b>                      File and polish, (6), 1.048'' to 1.046''.</p>	<p>Speed lathe, highest speed.</p>	<p>Clamp dog, holder and cutter 30° rake, 2'' micrometer.</p>
<p><b>Mill square, (7). See p. 1028.</b>                      Finish turn to <math>1.270'' + .004''</math>, (8).</p>	<p>Engine lathe, 3d speed, or 60 F.P.M. Fine power feed — 140 to 1''.</p>	<p>8'' or 10'' mill-bastard file.</p>
<p><b>File, (8), 1.270'' to 1.272''.</b></p>	<p>4th speed.</p>	<p>8'' or 10'' mill-bastard file.</p>

<p><b>Rough and finish turn and file leader 1.048" to 1.048", (9).</b></p>	<p>2d, 3d and 4th speeds. Medium and fine power feeds.</p>	<p>Holder and cutter 30° rake, 8" or 10" mill-bastard file, 2" micrometer.</p>
<p><b>Rough thread to 1.030" + .010", (10), twenty-three cuts .005" each. Depth of thread .115."</b></p>	<p>Arrange for 5 threads. 1st speed, or 25 F.P.M.</p>	<p>Square thread roughing tool width .060", or holder and cutter, thin calipers, rule, oil. 29° thread tool, 29° thread tool gage.</p>
<p><b>Set finishing tool to cut on both sides of groove, (10).</b></p>	<p>.....</p>	<p>29° thread micrometer or gage, oil.</p>
<p><b>Finish thread to size, (11), twenty-one cuts .005" each, two cuts .002" each, two cuts .001" each, one cut .0005", clean, oil, and measure and repeat cuts of .0005" until thread fits gage. Depth of thread .120".</b></p>	<p>1st speed, or 20 F.P.M.</p>	<p>.....</p>
<p><b>Turn taper 1 1/2" to 1', (12).</b></p>	<p>.....</p>	<p>Rule, dividers.</p>
<p><b>Set over footstock 1/4", or use taper attachment.</b></p>	<p>.....</p>	<p>Holder and cutter 30° rake.</p>
<p><b>Turn taper to diameter of leader (12), three or four cuts.</b></p>	<p>2d or 3d speed, or 60 F.P.M. Fine power feed — 140 to 1".</p>	<p>No. 6 tap grooving cutter, oil, index centers, rule.</p>
<p><b>Mill grooves, (13). Lower index head spindle one-third of a degree below horizontal to produce taper lands. See pp. 1031-1033.</b></p>	<p>Universal or plain milling machine. 1st speed, or 50 F.P.M. Medium power feed — .007" per cutter revolution.</p>	<p>.....</p>
<p><b>File off burr.</b></p>	<p>Vise, copper jaws.</p>	<p>8" or 10" hand-smooth file, 6" warding file.</p>
<p><b>Heat tap to a blue.</b></p>	<p>Blow pipe or gas forge.</p>	<p>Tongs.</p>
<p><b>File clearance on top of taper threads only, (14).</b></p>	<p>Vise, copper jaws.</p>	<p>8" or 10" hand smooth file.</p>
<p><b>File clearance on sides of threads.</b></p>	<p>.....</p>	<p>6" warding file with teeth ground off one side and one edge.</p>
<p><b>Stamp size and name on shank.</b></p>	<p>Vise, copper jaws.</p>	<p>Hammer, 1/8" and 1/4" steel figures and letters.</p>
<p><b>Harden in water.</b></p>	<p>Gas furnace or forge, 1325° F. to 1350° F.</p>	<p>Tongs, water.</p>
<p><b>Temper in oil (or polish and temper to straw color.)</b></p>	<p>Oil-tempering furnace, 425° F. to 435° F.</p>	<p>(Red-hot ring or collar.)</p>
<p><b>Test hardness with scleroscope or dead-smooth file.</b></p>	<p>.....</p>	<p>.....</p>
<p><b>Polish shank and grooves after oil tempering or before color tempering.</b></p>	<p>Speed lathe, highest speed. Vise, copper jaws.</p>	<p>90 emery cloth, polishing clamps, oil.</p>

*Attention.* — The set over for the taper is correct for this length of tap only.

## MAKING PLAIN MILLING CUTTER

21. To make  $2\frac{1}{2}'' \times \frac{1}{4}''$  plain milling cutter, Fig. 18.

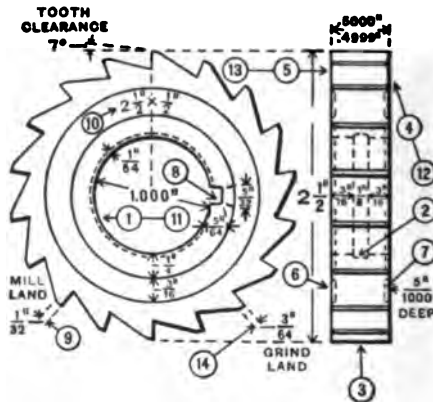


FIG. 18. — SCHEDULE DRAWING.

**Specifications:** Material, annealed carbon or high-speed steel disk  $\frac{1}{8}''$  large; weight, 14 oz. Hardness, 20 to 25 (scleroscope).

High-speed steel, or stellite cutting tools.

**Time:** Study drawing and schedule in advance, 5 min. — Oil machines, 12 min. — Chuck and jig ream, 26 min. — Turn, face, and cut grooves, 51 min. — Mill teeth with machine "set up" and stamp, 52 min. — Harden, 10 min. — Lap, 25 min. — Polish and color temper, 15 min. (or oil temper and polish, 7 min.) — Grind teeth twice around with machine "set up," 6 min. — Clean machines, 11 min. — Total, 3 h. 33 min.

## SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS, MACHINES AND TOOLS

OPERATIONS.	MACHINES, SPEEDS, FEEDS.	TOOLS.
Chip or file stem off side of disk. Set dead center in approximate alignment. Mount disk in chuck, smooth side out; true up, and chuck hole (1).	Engine lathe, 12" to 16". 2d speed, or 40 F.P.M. Hand feed.	Independent or universal chuck, $\frac{1}{4}''$ or $\frac{1}{8}''$ twist drill or flat chucking drill, boring tool 30° rake, fluted chucking reamer .005" under size, oil.

Cut groove (2). See Attention.	.....	$\frac{1}{4}$ " grooving tool, rule, oil.
Mount blank on mandrel.	.....	Special mandrel, machine oil.
Rough turn diameter to $2\frac{1}{2}$ " + .015", (3), two or more cuts.	1st speed, or 40 F.P.M. Medium power feed—80 to 1".	Holder and cutter 30° rake, 3" micrometer, oil.
Rough square sides to $\frac{1}{4}$ " + .010", (4), (5). Square an equal amount from each side.	.....	Holder and cutter 30° rake, 1" micrometer, oil.
Cut groove .025" deep to allow for grinding sides (6), (7).	2d speed, or 40 F.P.M. Hand feed.	Forming tool, micrometer depth gage, rule, oil.
Cut keyway (8).	Keyway cutter, planer or shaper, vise.	Hub keyway tool, rule, oil.
Mill teeth (9). See pp. 1036, 1037.		
Remove burr from sides.	Engine lathe, 2d speed.	8" or 10" mill-bastard file.
Stamp size at (10), and name in same groove diametrically opposite.	Lead block, sheet copper or thick paper on anvil.	$\frac{1}{8}$ " and $\frac{1}{4}$ " steel figures and letters, hammer.
Harden in water.	Gas furnace or forge 1325° F. to 1350° F.	Tongs, water.
Temper in oil (or polish and temper to straw color).	Oil-tempering furnace 425° F. to 435° F.	(Red-hot shaft.)
Test hardness with scleroscope, or dead-smooth file.		
Grind hole (1) to size + .001" .0015".	Grinding machine, internal grinding attachment, universal, special or magnetic chuck.	Grinding wheel No. 90 L, vitrified, 1" standard plug gage.
Grind sides to limit (4), (5). Grind equal amount from each side, concave cutter .002" on each side.	Grinding machine, special or magnetic chuck, or draw-in chuck.	Grinding wheel No. 90 I, vitrified, 1" micrometer.
Grind teeth for clearance 7°, (14), diameter of cutter not important. See pp. 814, 815.		

*Information.* — If not convenient to use a grinding machine to grind hole and sides, the cutter blank may be prepared as follows:

After power reaming, jig ream with a standard reamer and reaming jig. After rough squaring sides (4), (5), finish square dry with light cuts to dimensions (4), (5). See p. 1226. Then groove .020" deep (6), (7). After hardening and tempering, lap hole to size (11), and polish sides.

*Attention.* — Some prefer to defer grooving (2) until the sides are squared, when the blank may be placed in a universal chuck and the groove cut central.

*Note.* — Diameter of cutter is important only when used in gangs.



22. To rough face large work in steel, as milling cutter disk B, Fig. 19. — Use holder and high-speed steel cutter Grind point of cutter as at C for clearance and rake. Use oil and feed by power or hand in direction of arrow D.

To finish face, use high-speed steel cutter A or side to Fig. 20. Grind point of tool about  $\frac{1}{32}$ " flat as at C' with clearance as at C', and set parallel to cut or to drag slightly. Take light cuts (.0005" to .0020"), without oil, in direction of arrow D. Use very fine power or hand feed, and same speeds as for filing, — 3d or 4th speed for  $2\frac{1}{2}$ " disk.

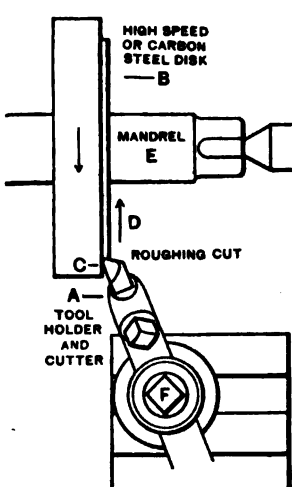


FIG. 19 — ROUGH FACING MILLING-CUTTER DISK.

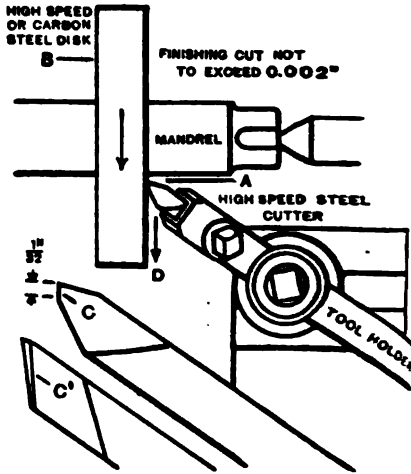


FIG. 20. — FINISH FACING MILLING-CUTTER DISK.

MAKING HAND REAMER

23. To make hand reamer, Fig. 21.

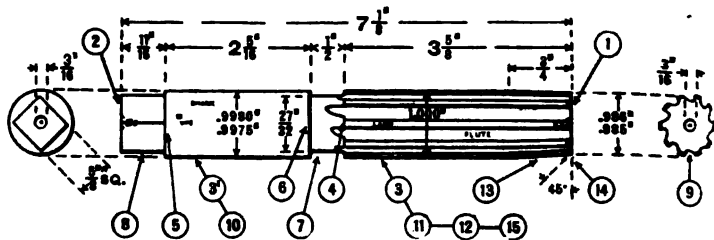


FIG. 21. — SCHEDULE DRAWING.

**Specifications:** Material, annealed carbon steel  $\frac{1}{8}$ " to  $\frac{1}{4}$ " large; weight, 1 lb. 14 oz. Hardness, 20 to 25 (scleroscope).

High-speed steel, or stellite cutting tools.

**Time:** 3 h. 40 min. which includes 15 min. for milling head square and 50 min. for milling flutes.

SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS, MACHINES AND TOOLS

OPERATIONS.	MACHINES, SPEEDS, FEEDS.	TOOLS.
<p><b>Center.</b> True live center. Set dead center in approximate alignment. <b>Rough square (1), (2).</b></p>	<p>Engine lathe, 12" to 16".  2d or 3d speed, or 40 F.P.M. Hand feed.</p>	<p>  Holder and cutter 30° rake, calipers, rule.</p>
<p><b>Recenter.</b> <b>Finish square (2), (1).</b> <b>Rough turn to 1.010" (2), (3'),</b> one or two cuts. Turn half way (2), reverse and turn other half (3'). <b>Draw lines for length of flutes (4), square end (5), and shank (6).</b> <b>Rough and finish turn reduced part (7).</b> Leave fillets at beginning and end of cut.</p>	<p>1st or 2d speed, or 40 F.P.M. Medium power feed — 80 to 1". Vise, copper jaws.  Engine lathe, 1st or 2d speed, or 40 F.P.M. Fine power feed — 140 to 1". 4th speed, or 175 F.P.M.</p>	<p>Holder and cutter 30° rake, 1" micrometer.  Copper sulphate, rule, scriber.  Calipers, rule.  5" half-round 2d-cut file.</p>
<p><b>File reduced part (7).</b>  <b>Mill square to <math>\frac{1}{8}</math>" (8).</b> See p. 1028. File slight bevel on edges of squared end to remove burr. <b>Stamp size and name on shank (3').</b> <b>Mill flutes (9).</b> See pp. 1034-1036. <b>Harden in water.</b></p>	<p>Vise, copper jaws.</p>	<p>  <math>\frac{1}{8}</math>" steel figures and letters, hammer.</p>
<p><b>Temper in oil (or polish and temper to straw color).</b></p>	<p>Gas furnace or forge, 1325° F. to 1350° F. Oil-tempering furnace, 425° F. to 435° F.</p>	<p>Tongs, water.  (Red-hot ring or collar.)</p>
<p><b>Test hardness with scleroscope, or dead-smooth file.</b> <b>Lap center holes (1), (2).</b> See p. 1228. <b>Grind shank to size (10).</b> Grind fluted part, cylindrically, to 1.0004", (11).</p>	<p>Speed lathe, highest speed. Universal grinding machine.</p>	<p>Copper lap, flour emery, oil. Dog, grinding wheel No. 60 K or L, vitrified. 1" micrometer.</p>

Grind clearance 4° on teeth to a cutting edge (13). Elevate center of wheel spindle $\frac{1}{8}$ " above centers. See pp. 811, 812.	Cutter grinder, tooth rest, centering gage.	8" grinding wheel No. 60 I, vitrified bevel protractor.
Grind 1° taper and 4° clearance on end (13). Measurement at end .986" to .985." Grind bevel on end of teeth to 45° with 7° clearance and $\frac{1}{8}$ " wide.	Vise, copper jaws.	Fine oil stone, oil.
Oil stone reamer (15). See pp. 821, 822.		

*Information.* — If the reamer springs in hardening and tempering an amount in excess of that allowed for grinding, it should be carefully straightened before grinding. See p. 1217.

*Attention.* — As grooving the first reamer is largely experimental, the student should prepare a machine-steel trial blank and use it to obtain setting of cutter for milling flutes, and also to become familiar with the process of irregular spacing.

### LAPPING

**24.** Lapping may be called refined grinding as it is used for the final finishing of hardened and unhardened work where smooth and accurate work is required.

A lap of lead, cast iron, copper or brass is made the desired shape and charged with emery and oil, the lathe revolved at a high speed and the work passed back and forth over lap, or inside of lap.

**25.** To make lap for center holes. — Place short piece of round copper rod

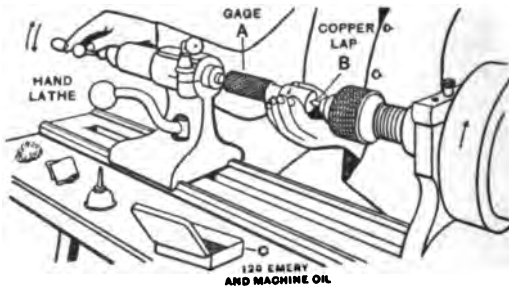


FIG. 22. — LAPPING CENTER HOLES.

in drill chuck of speed or hand lathe, and turn with graver to 60°. Test with center gage, and file smooth.

**26.** To lap center holes in hardened gage A,

Fig. 22. — Shift belt to highest speed. Wipe center holes clean.

Start lathe. With the finger, spread on lap *B* a little of mixture of 120 grain emery and machine oil from box *C*. Mount work on dead center, with left hand slowly revolve work in opposite direction to revolution of lathe, and with right hand operating footstock handle, advance and recede work slightly to avoid cutting grooves in work. Wipe center hole and examine. Continue until center hole is clean and smooth. Repeat in opposite center hole.

**27. To lap standard plug gage, Fig. 23.**

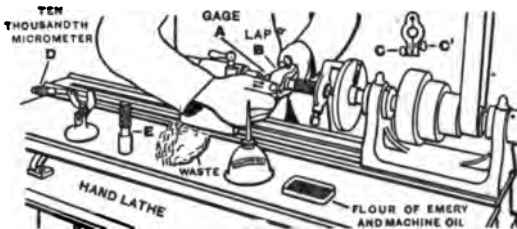


FIG. 23. — LAPPING STANDARD PLUG GAGE.

**Specifications:** Standard plug gage ground to 1.0004".

**Machines and tools:** Speed or hand lathe, 1" cast-iron outside lap, flour of emery, measuring machine or standard gage and ten-thousandth micrometer. Lubricant, machine oil.

**Time:** Study Fig. 23 and schedule, 5 min. — Oil lathe, 2 min. — Lap and measure gage, 50 min. — Clean lathe, 3 min. — Total, 1 h.

#### SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS

Oil hand lathe and shift belt to highest speed.

Place dog on gage *A* with copper under set screw.

With the fingers spread a little machine oil and flour of emery on gage *A*.

Adjust cast-iron lap *B* to running fit on gage with screws *CC'*.

Mount freely on centers. Start lathe, and move lap back and forth as shown by arrows.

First lap gage straight, then lap to size. Wipe clean with

waste, cool in water and measure.

*To measure gage*, use measuring machine, Fig. 29, or ten-thousandth micrometer *D* and 1" standard reference gage *E*.

When within 1/10,000" of diameter wipe lap and gage clean, oil gage and lap with machine oil; adjust lap closely and finish lapping without adding more emery, and a good finish will be obtained.

Limit 1.0000" + or - 1/50,000".

Clean lathe with waste.

*Attention.* — Gages are standardized at 62° F., therefore, heat produced by lapping, and heat of hands, will interfere with true size of gage. This is overcome by cooling in water or by leaving near measuring machine over night before taking final measurement.

*Note.* — For fine finish and for detecting soft spots on gage, (defective hardening) use lead-lined lap.

28. To make lead lap for ring gages, Fig. 24. — Make lead lap A by turning a taper of  $\frac{1}{2}$ " to 1' on piece of steel or cast iron, as mandrel B. Then mill groove C entire length. Set mandrel central in iron or wood mold and pour in molten lead. Turn to size. When lap wears, force mandrel into lead and turn to size.

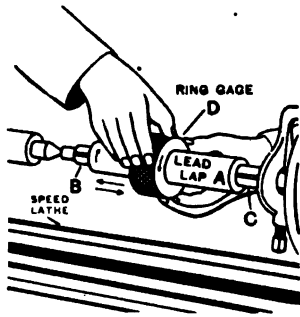


FIG. 24. — LAPPING HOLE IN 1" STANDARD RING GAGE.

Move gage slowly back and forth on lap and rotate slowly backward as indicated by arrows. To test, wipe hole clean and test with two plug gages — one small and the other standard.

When within  $\frac{1}{10000}$ " of diameter, wipe lap and gage clean, apply machine oil to both and continue lapping to size and to obtain fine finish. Limit  $1.0000'' \pm$  or  $-1/50000''$ .

*Information.* — As lapping has a tendency to make a hole larger at ends, a projection or lip is sometimes left on each end of gage which is ground off after lapping.

30. To lap hole in milling cutter A, Fig. 25. — Make lap B by turning and filing piece of cast iron to fit hole in cutter. Fasten dog and place cutter on lap, then mount loosely on centers. Spread mixture of 120 grain emery and machine oil from box C on lap.

29. To lap 1" standard ring gage (hole .9996"). — Fasten dog. Place ring gage D on lap and mount freely on centers. Spread a little of mixture of flour emery and machine oil on lap and run lathe at high speed.

Rotate cutter slowly in opposite direction of revolution of lathe and at same time press hard with thumbs and move cutter slowly back and forth as indicated by arrows. Wipe hole in cutter, clean and test with plug gage *D* or with inside micrometer *E*. Repeat until gage fits hole freely.

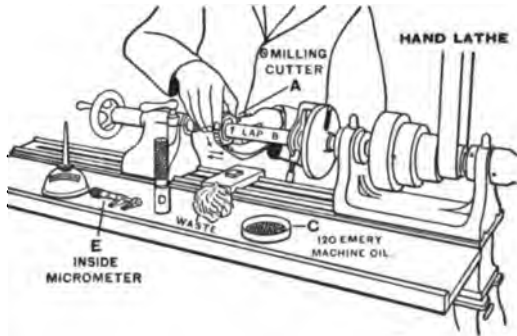


FIG. 25. — LAPPING HOLE IN MILLING CUTTER.

*Attention.*—

Holes in milling cutters shrink in hardening. In manufacturing cutters in large lots, the holes are usually ground.

*Warning.*—By placing cutter on lap with teeth toward back of lathe, injury to hands may be avoided.

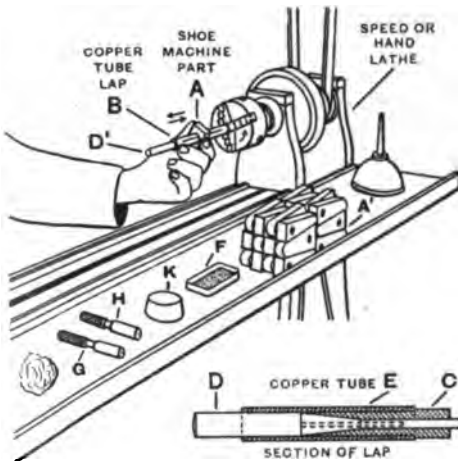


FIG. 26. — LAPPING HOLES IN MACHINE PARTS. COMMERCIAL LAPPING.

**31. Lapping holes in machine parts.** Commercial lapping, *A*, *A'* Fig. 26.—Holes in machine parts are often lapped to correct errors of under size, roughness, roundness, taper, etc. Make lap *B* as in detail. Turn and bore *C* and striker *D*. Saw

three slots in *C* also copper tube *E*. Grip *C* in chuck and run lathe at high speed. Charge lap with 120 grain emery and machine oil from box *F* and lap hole to size by passing

work back and forth on lap. Test work with limit gage *G*, *H*. When lap wears, expand by striking *D'* light blow with Babbitt block *K*.

### MAKING PLUG GAGE

32. To prepare standard plug-gage blank for grinding. Fig. 27.

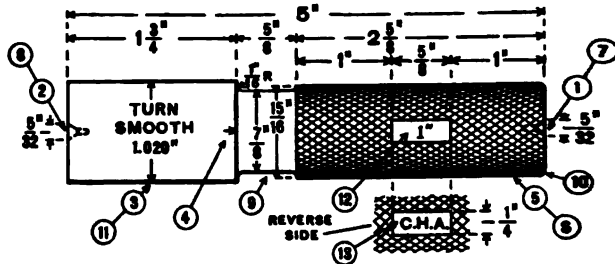


FIG. 27. — SCHEDULE DRAWING.

Specifications: Material, annealed carbon steel  $\frac{1}{8}$ " large; weight, 1 lb. 8 oz. Hardness, 20 to 25 (scleroscope).

High-speed steel, or stellite cutting tools.

Time: Study drawing and schedule in advance, 5 min. — Oil lathe, 4 min. — Prepare gage blank, 1 h. 10 min. — Harden, 20 min. — Lap center holes and polish, 10 min. — Clean machines, 6 min. — Total, 1 h. 55 min.

### SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS, MACHINES AND TOOLS

OPERATIONS.	MACHINES, SPEEDS, FEEDS.	TOOLS.
Center to $\frac{9}{32}$ " (1), (2). See that live center is nearly true and dead center in approximate alinement.	Engine lathe, 12" to 16".	
Rough square $\frac{1}{8}$ " long (1), (2).	2d or 3d speed, or 40 F.P.M.	Dog, holder and cutter 30° rake, calipers, rule.
Recenter to $\frac{9}{32}$ ". Rough turn whole length to $1\frac{1}{32}$ " (3), one cut. Turn half way, reverse and turn other half.	1st or 2d speed, or 40 F.P.M. Medium power feed — 80 to 1".	Holder and cutter 30° rake, copper, calipers, rule.
Draw line (4), $1\frac{1}{32}$ " from gage end.	Vise, copper jaws.	Copper sulphate, rule, scriber.

<b>Rough and finish turn handle (5), two cuts.</b>	2d or 3d speed, or 40 F.P.M. Medium power feed — 80 to 1".	
<b>Nurl (6). See p. 636.</b>	2d speed, or 40 F.P.M. Medium power feed — 80 to 1".	Medium nurling tool, oil.
<b>True live center. Recenter <math>\frac{1}{8}</math>" (7), (8).</b>	Speed lathe, 3d speed, or 400 R.P.M.	Drill chuck, combination drill and countersink.
<b>Finish square to length 5" (1), (2).</b>	Engine lathe, 3d or 4th speed, or 60 F.P.M. Hand feed.	
<b>Rough and finish turn reduced part (9), two or three cuts.</b>	3d speed, or 40 F.P.M. Fine power feed — 140 to 1".	
<b>File (9).</b>	4th speed, or 175 F.P.M.	7" or 8" pillar-smooth file.
<b>Round (10).</b>	.....	8" or 10" mill-bastard file.
<b>Turn gage part (11), 1.020", one or two cuts.</b>	3d speed, or 60 F.P.M. Medium power feed — 80 to 1".	2" micrometer.
<b>Polish ends (1), (2), and reduced part (9).</b>	Speed lathe, highest speed.	90 and 120 emery cloth, thin polishing stick, oil.
<b>File flats on opposite sides (12), (13), or Mill flats (12), (13).</b>	Vise, copper jaws.	7" or 8" pillar-smooth file.
<b>Stamp size and name (12), (13).</b>	Milling machine, 3d speed. Medium power feed.	$\frac{1}{8}$ " milling cutter, milling machine vise or $\frac{1}{4}$ " end mill, index head with centers, rule.
<b>Harden gage. See Information.</b>	Vise, copper jaws.	$\frac{1}{4}$ " steel figures and letters, hammer.
<b>To lap center holes, see p. 1228. Clean and polish ends (1), (2), reduced part (9), and flats (12), (13). To grind, see p. 1234.</b>	Gas furnace, or forge. 1325° F. to 1350° F.	Tongs, water, sperm oil, hand-smooth file.

*Information.* — To make a plug gage glass hard and the handle jet black, heat gage to a bright red and dip endwise (gage part only) in water and move about for eight seconds. Time may be estimated by counting as follows: one-thou-zan-one, one-thou-zan-two, one-thou-zan-three, one-thou-zan-four, one-thou-zan-five, one-thou-zan-six, one-thou-zan-seven, one-thou-zan-eight. Then plunge *whole* gage into oil and move about until cold.



33. To grind standard plug gage on two dead centers, Fig. 28.

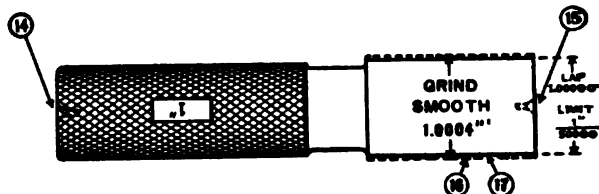


FIG. 28. — SCHEDULE DRAWING.

**Specifications:** Plug gage blank, carbon steel turned 1.020" diameter, stamped, hardened and handle black.

Center holes, (14), (15), lapped.

**Machines and tools:** Universal grinding machine.

Grinding wheel 12" × 1/4", No. 80 K, vitrified, grinding dog.

Speed of wheel, 5000 F.P.M. Speed of work, 50 F.P.M.

Feed 1/4 width of wheel per revolution.

Oil bearings and two dead centers with machine oil.

Lubricant, solution of sal soda and water.

**Time:** Study drawing and schedule in advance, 5 min. — Oil machine and true wheel, 7 min. — Grind gage, 25 min. with machine "set up." — Clean machine, 3 min. — Total, 40 min. ("Set up" machine to grind straight, 25 min. extra.)

#### SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS

**I. Preparatory Adjustments.** True wheel (see p. 709) and centers (see p. 710). Set zero lines on headstock and swivel table to grind approximately straight. See p. 712. Arrange water guards. See p. 715. Move grinding wheel back with hand cross-feed wheel 8 to allow space to mount work. Use grinding dog with copper under set screw. Mount work on centers. Start grinding wheel, work and feed, 1, 2, 3, and adjust dogs 6, 7, to length of stroke. Set automatic feed 11, 12, to feed .001" (four teeth) at each end of stroke.

**II. Grind Trial Diameter (16),**

Fig. 28. (Grind out tool marks only.) Move grinding wheel to cut revolving work lightly with hand cross-feed wheel 8. Turn on water and throw in feed pawl 9 to mesh with ratchet wheel 10 and allow automatic cross feed to take four or five trial cuts whole length of work to grind out tool marks. Then throw out pawl 9 and without moving cross feed, allow wheel to pass over work several times until cutting nearly dies out.

Stop wheel, work and feed, 1, 2, 3, with wheel at footstock end.

**III. Correct Straightness.** Measure work at both ends with 2"

micrometer and if not straight, move swivel table (see p. 712). Take one or two cuts with automatic cross feed. Measure and repeat until machine grinds straight. If there is danger thereby of grinding gage too small, use trial pieces same length.

**IV. Find Amount Oversize.** Measure work with 2" micrometer. Subtract rough diameter of work 1.0040" from reading of micrometer. For example, reading of micrometer may be 1.0140", then  $1.0140'' - 1.0040'' = .0100''$  or 40 teeth for rough grinding.

**V. Set Automatic Cross Feed.** Raise perpendicular latch 13 in head 14, throw in pawl 9 and without moving cross feed, move shield 15 to right or left until end of shield and pawl are 40 teeth apart, then drop latch 13 in ratchet wheel 10.

**VI. Rough Grind (16), .0040" Large, Fig. 28, as follows:** Start wheel, work and feed 1, 2, 3, and rough grind automatically until shield 15 lifts pawl 9. Then lock latch head 14 with horizontal latch 16, throw out pawl 9 and allow wheel to pass over work several times until cutting nearly dies out. Stop work with wheel

at footstock end and measure. For example, work may measure 1.004".

**VII. Finish Grind (17), Fig. 28, with pinch feed ( $\frac{1}{1000}''$  in diameter of work), as follows:** Start work. Take two cuts  $\frac{1}{1000}''$  each (two pinches at each end of work). Stop wheel, work and feed 1, 2, 3, and measure gage. It may measure 1.0030". Also measure gage at both ends for straightness with micrometer, or take gage out of machine and measure with special measuring machine, pp. 1236, 1237. Start wheel work and feed and pinch twice at footstock end. Measure = 1.0025". Pinch twice and let wheel pass over work several times. Measure = 1.0015". Pinch twice and let wheel pass over work several times and measure (1.0010"). As there is some vibration in machine, it is best to grind to size as follows: Take one cut and measure 1.0007". Then let wheel pass over work without moving cross feed and it may measure 1.0004". If still large, again let wheel pass over work without moving cross feed. Limit 1.0004" to 1.0003". Clean machine with waste.

*Attention.* — A gage hardened, ground and lapped without seasoning may shrink about one-twenty-thousandth of an inch in six months. To season properly a gage should be hardened, then laid away from six months to a year to relieve internal stresses, and allowed to shrink; but if gage must be finished at once, heat to about 400° F. after hardening and cool in water. Do this three times.

*Note.* — Gages are often made as follows: Rough ground to 1.004", seasoned, then finished ground to 1.0004" and lapped to size.

## MEASURING MACHINE

**34. Twenty-four-inch standard measuring machine, Fig. 29.** This instrument is for originating standard gages and for other measurements of precision.

*The bed* is supported on three points, with *V* ways for the sliding and fixed heads; the spindles are provided with measuring faces.

**35. The sliding head** carries the spindle Precision Screw, linear scale and graduated index wheel. The Precision Screw on some machines has 50 threads per inch, on others 25 threads.

**36. For Precision Screw with 50 threads** the turns of index wheel are indicated on linear scale graduated into 50 divisions to the inch; each  $20/1000'' = .020''$ . The fractional part of a turn is indicated by graduations on index wheel which has 400 divisions, each  $1/20,000''$ .

**37. For Precision Screw with 25 threads** the turns of index wheel are indicated on linear scale graduated into 25 divisions to the inch; each  $40/1000'' = .040''$ . The fractional part of a turn is indicated by graduations on index wheel which has 400 divisions, each  $1/10,000''$ .

By estimation, a division may be subdivided to indicate one-half, one-quarter or one-fifth of a division. Variation within a limit of  $1/100,000''$  may be determined.

**Fixed head.** — In the fixed head is a sliding spindle kept in place by a helical spring. This spindle carries one of the auxiliary jaws while the other jaw is fastened to the head.

*Contact indicators.* — To indicate when contact is made between measuring faces and work, a small cylindrical gage is placed between the auxiliary jaws in a horizontal position. When measurement is obtained, gage drops to a vertical position.

In Fig. 29 the auxiliary jaws are connected with an electrical buzzer which announces contact of work and measuring faces.

*To clean machine.* — With a soft woolen cloth wipe oil and dirt from finished parts, and other parts with waste. Benzine may be used to clean plugs in reference bar, followed by

kerosene to prevent rusting. To remove dust from polished surfaces of graduated plugs use a camel's-hair brush. The lenses are cleaned with alcohol and chamois skin. When setting and measuring clean measuring faces with paper.

**38. To measure standard plug gage with 24" standard measuring machine. Precision Screw, 50 threads to 1", Fig. 29.**

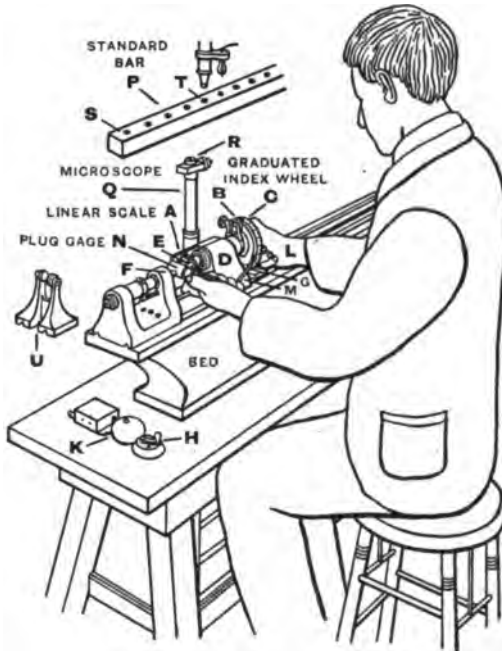


FIG. 29. — MEASURING  $\frac{3}{8}$ " STANDARD PLUG GAGE.

#### SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS

Oil slides and bearings with machine oil and *Precision Screw* with porpoise oil.

To set at zero.

Clean measuring faces with paper.

Run screw to zero of linear scale A, Fig. 29.

Adjust pointer B, graduated index wheel C, nearly to zero and slide head D until measuring faces E, F, are nearly in contact. Clamp fine adjustment G, throw in switch H which operates buzzer K, and adjust sliding head with screw L (not shown), until buzzer

shows tendency to stop. Clamp sliding head with lever *M* and adjust index wheel until buzzer stops, then set pointer at zero on graduated index wheel.

Clean gage *N* and place it between cleaned measuring faces of machine.

Throw in switch and adjust index wheel until buzzer stops. Count whole number of divisions on linear scale and multiply by .020" then add divisions on index wheel multiplied by  $1/20000''$  or .00005" and the result will be the size.

For example: There are 37 divisions on the scale which gives  $37 \times .020'' = .740''$ . Then we read 201 divisions on index wheel which give  $201 \times 1/20000''$ .  $201 \times .00005'' = .01005''$ , adding we have  $.740'' + .01005'' = .75005''$ , or  $.750'' + 1/20000''$ .

*Attention.* — A variation of temperature of 1° in a 1" gage will change its size about  $1/100000''$ .

For example: Holding a 1" gage a few minutes in the hand may increase its temperature 10° and its size  $1/10000''$ .

**39. To test  $5\frac{1}{2}''$  end-measuring rod with 24" standard measuring machine. Precision Screw, 25 threads to 1", Fig. 29.**

#### SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS

Adjust machine as for one inch. Raise cover from standard bar *P* attached to back of machine and clean plug *T* with benzine.

To focus, lower microscope *Q* to stop collar, and clamp.

Adjust hair line in eyepiece *R* to coincide with hair line on hardened steel plug *S*.

Unclamp sliding head and move to fifth plug *T* without disturbing eyepiece. Clamp fine adjustment *G* and adjust sliding head with screw *L* until hair line in eyepiece coincides with hair line on bar. Clamp head with lever *M*.

Place end-measuring rod between measuring faces and read, as follows: To the reading on standard bar (5") add the following: Count number of whole

divisions on linear scale (12 divisions) and multiply by .040". Count divisions on index wheel (200 divisions) and multiply by  $1/10000''$  or .0001" and result will be the length.

*Example.* —  $5'' + (12 \times .040'') = .480'' + (200 \times .0001'') = .0200''$ . Adding we have  $5'' + .480'' + .0200'' = 5.500''$ .

*Attention.* — Two supports are provided for long work, as at U.

*Information.* — English machines are standard at 62° F. and metric machines at 0° C. For practical work, it is not necessary to use these machines at these temperatures as variations caused by heat or cold affect machine and work alike.

SPIRAL MILLING

40. Spirals are used on twist drills, milling cutters and counterbores, and in machine construction for spiral gears, cams, etc. To cut a spiral, the work requires rotative and longitudinal motion at the same time and also to be set at an angle to cutter.

41. To find angle to set saddle for cutting spirals either graphically, by simple calculation, or approximately from spiral line drawn upon work:

**Graphically.** — Draw a right triangle, *ABC*, to scale, Fig. 30. Draw *AB* equal to the lead, *AC* at right angle to *AB*, equal to circumference; connect *CB*. The angle *ABC* or *X* is the required angle. Measure angle with protractor.

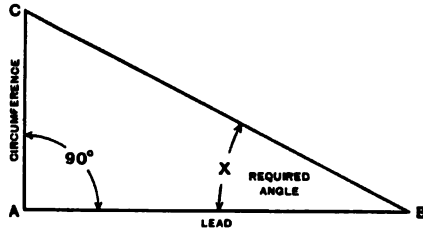


FIG. 30. — ANGLE DIAGRAM FOR TWIST DRILL.

*Example.* — Twist drill 1" in diameter, 6" lead, to find angle.

*Solution.* — *AB* = lead = 6", *AC* = circumference = 3.1416; connect *CB* and measure; required angle *X* = 27½°.

**By calculation.** — Divide the circumference by the lead for the tangent. In table of tangents find the angle that corresponds to tangent.

*Example.* — Twist drill 1" in diameter, 6" lead, to find angle.

*Solution.* —  $\tan X = 1 \times \frac{3.1416}{6} = .5236$ . In table of tan-

gents .5236 corresponds to 27°38' or 27½°, the required angle.

**Approximately.** — Raise the knee until cutter touches work and with hand feed trace a light line upon the work, with the table set straight, and the machine geared for the spiral. Then swing table until spiral line is parallel to cutter.

**Important.** — As cutting the first tooth in a spiral mill or grooving the first drill is largely experimental, the student should prepare a machine-steel trial blank and use it to obtain correct setting of cutter.

*Attention.* — For right spirals, swivel the table to the *right*; and for left spirals, swivel to the *left*, and use an extra intermediate gear.

**42. To calculate compound gears used in cutting spiral.**

*Example.* — 1" twist drill; 6" lead, worm gear in dividing head 40 teeth, lead screw 4 P., lead of machine equals  $\frac{1}{4}$ " = 10".

$$\text{Solution. — } \frac{6}{10} = \frac{3 \times 2}{2 \times 5},$$

$$\frac{3}{2} \times \frac{24}{24} = \frac{72}{48} = \frac{\text{gear on worm } G}{\text{1st gear on stud } H},$$

$$\frac{2}{5} \times \frac{20}{20} = \frac{40}{100} = \frac{\text{2d gear on stud } J}{\text{gear on screw } K}.$$

When there is a fraction in the lead as in the case of spiral gears, as 8.333":

$$\text{Solution. — } 8.333" = \frac{8\frac{1}{3}}{10} = \frac{25}{30} = \frac{5}{6} \text{ and proceed as above.}$$

*Information.* — If the fraction will not simplify easily, approximate the lead as follows: Exact lead 2.517"; approximate, 2.514." This is allowable for leads of cutters, drills and counterbores. For mechanical motions, as spiral gears, change the diameter rather than lead.

**43. To obtain lead for spiral milling cutter, given diameter and angle.** —

$$\text{Formula. — } \frac{\text{diameter} \times 3.1416}{\text{natural tangent of angle}} = \text{lead.}$$

From lead calculate compound gears.

*Attention.* — Use above formula when changing pitch diameter of spiral gears to bring approximate lead within .005" of exact lead.

**44. Cutters for spiral mills** are obtainable with either 40°, 48°, or 53° angle on one side and 12° on the other.

**45. Cutters for two-groove twist drills** are obtainable for drills  $\frac{1}{8}$ " to 2½" in diameter.

CUTTING TEETH IN SPIRAL MILL

46. To cut teeth in spiral mill, universal milling machine.  
Fig. 31.

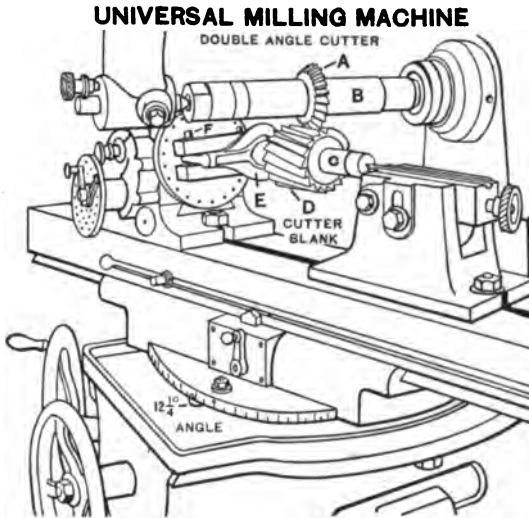


FIG. 31. — CUTTING TEETH IN SPIRAL MILL.

SPECIFICATIONS

Material.....	Carbon-steel cutter blank	Gears for spiral	
Hole.....	1"	Gear on worm..	72
Diameter of mill.....	2 1/4"	1st gear on stud	32
Length of mill.....	2 1/2"	2d gear on stud	64
No. of teeth.....	18 R. H.	Gear on screw..	40
Width of land.....	1/2"	Speed .....	1st or 2d speed or 60 F.P.M.
Lead.....	36"	Feed.....	Medium power feed — .007" per cutter revo- lution
Angle of spiral.....	12 1/4°	Lubricant.....	Lard oil
Double-angle high-speed steel cutter.....	53° × 12° R. H.		
Amount of set over.....	.208"		



## SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS

**I. Preparatory adjustments.** Place cutter *A* on arbor *B* to cut in direction of rotation, and clamp hard. Fasten index head and footstock in horizontal alinement on table.

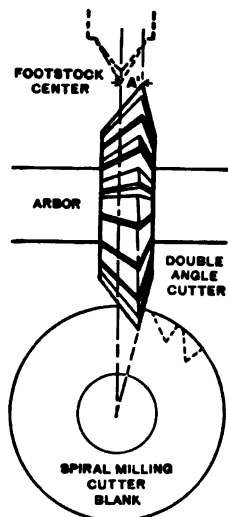


FIG. 32.—SETTING DOUBLE-ANGLE CUTTER RADIAL.

**II. Set cutter radial.** Set swivel table at zero, cutter central, and cross-feed dial at zero. Move cross slide inward  $\frac{1}{8}$  diameter of blank (.208") to give radial teeth, as at *A'*, Fig. 32, then clamp cross slide.

**III. Arrange gears, index and table.** Arrange gears for spiral, set index for 18 teeth, withdraw stop

so that index plate can revolve, set swivel table at  $12\frac{1}{2}^\circ$ , Fig. 31, and clamp.

**IV. Mount gear blank on centers.** Press mandrel *C* firmly into blank *D* and mount on centers, securing dog *E* in driver by screw *F*.

**V. Obtain width of land by trial cuts.** Start machine, raise knee and with power feed, take short trial cut less than required depth, then throw out power feed and stop machine. Set vertical dial at zero, lower knee, move table back until blank is clear of cutter and index for next tooth. Raise knee to zero and take another short cut.

Lower knee, move table back until blank is clear of cutter and measure width of land with rule.

If land is too wide, raise knee a little higher than before; repeat process until land is correct ( $\frac{3}{16}$ " wide). Reset vertical dial at zero after each correction.

**VI. Mill 18 teeth.** With setting correct and table dog set to trip feed at end of cut, mill teeth all around blank, one cut each.

*Warning.*—To avoid cutter scraping work by back-lash in screw and gears, after obtaining depth of cut in spiral milling, set vertical dial at zero and at the end of each cut, lower knee and move table back to starting point, then raise knee to zero for next cut.

GROOVING TWIST DRILL

47. To groove twist drill, spiral milling, universal milling machine. Fig. 33.

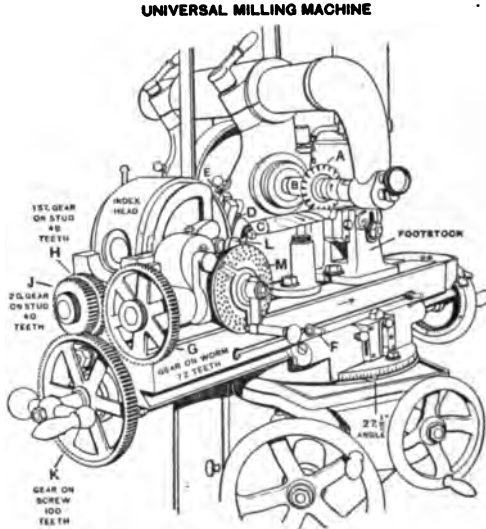


FIG. 33. — GROOVING TWIST DRILL.

SPECIFICATIONS

Material.....	carbon-steel drill blank	Angle to set swivel bed for clearance of lands.....	1°
Diameter of drill.	1.012"	Depth of clearance	1/4"
Length of drill..	11 1/2"	<b>Gears for spiral</b>	
Length of grooves	6 3/4"	Gear on worm G..	72
No. of grooves...	2	1st gear on stud H.	48
Thickness of point	1/8"	2d gear on stud J.	40
Lead .....	6"	Gear on screw K..	100
Angle of spiral...	27 1/2°	Speed.....	3d speed, back gears in or 25 F.P.M.
Cutter.....	Special	Feed.....	.007" per cutter revolution
Amount of set over	1/16 of dia. (.100")	Lubricant.....	Lard oil
Angle to lower index head.....	2°	Time { grooving ..	1 h.
		{ clearance ..	30 min.

## SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS

**I. Preparatory adjustments.** Place cutter *A* on arbor *B* to cut in direction of rotation, and clamp hard. Fasten index head and footstock in horizontal alinement on table. Lower index head center  $2^\circ$  and clamp; this is to thicken web and strengthen drill which has a tendency to twist when in use.

**II. Set cutter radial. Set swivel**

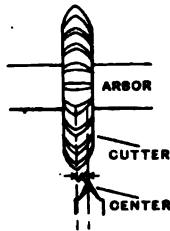


FIG. 34. — SETTING CUTTER OFF CENTER FOR GROOVING TWIST DRILL.

table at zero, cutter central, and cross-feed dial at zero. Move cross slide inward  $\frac{1}{8}$  diameter of blank (.100"), as at *A*, Fig. 34, and clamp.

**III. Arrange gears, index and table.** Arrange gears for spiral, place index pin in any hole, then withdraw stop *L* so that index plate *M* can revolve; set swivel table at  $27\frac{1}{2}^\circ$ , and clamp. See Fig. 35.

**IV. Mount gear blank on centers.** Mount blank *C* on centers and secure dog *D* in driver by screw *E*. Adjust *V* rest under middle of blank to prevent springing. Set table dog to trip feed at desired length of groove.

**V. Obtain thickness of point.** Start machine, raise knee and take short trial cut *less* than required depth. Set vertical dial at zero, lower knee, move table back until blank is clear of cutter, index one-half revolution, raise knee to zero and take another short cut. Repeat until point is  $\frac{1}{4}$ " thick.

**VI. Mill grooves.** Reset vertical dial at zero and mill grooves, one cut each.

**VII. Mill land clearance.** Mount drill *A*, Fig. 36, on centers to mill lands *B*, with end mill *C*. Set swivel table  $1^\circ$  (angle shown by line *D*, *E*) to cut deepest at *F*, *F'*, and mill clearance  $\frac{1}{4}$ " deep leaving  $\frac{3}{8}$ " lands, one or more cuts.

*Information.* — Take trial cuts and if lands are wider at shank end of drill, raise index-head center  $1^\circ$  or  $2^\circ$  to make lands even width. Oxidize small drills to enable cut and land to be readily seen.

*Note.* — Manufacturers of twist drills use a special cutter for milling land clearances.

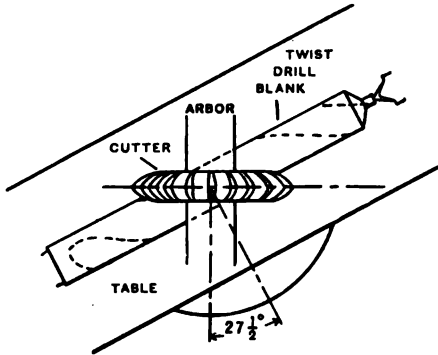


FIG. 35. — SETTING SWIVEL TABLE TO GROOVING ANGLE OF TWIST DRILL.

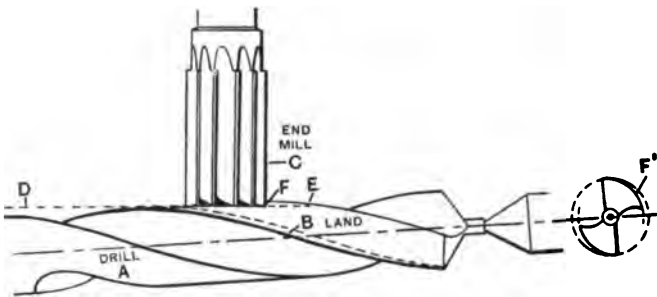


FIG. 36. — MILLING LAND CLEARANCE ON TWIST DRILL.

MAKING TWIST DRILL

48. To make taper shank twist drill, Fig. 37.

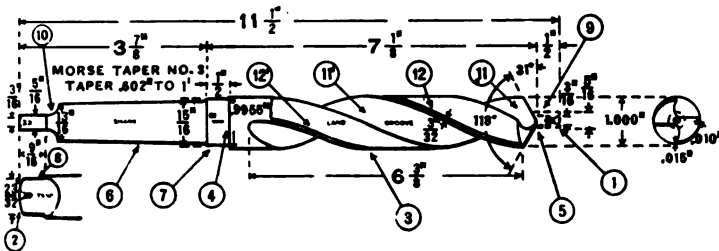


FIG. 37. — SCHEDULE DRAWING.

**Specifications:** Material, annealed high-speed or carbon steel  $\frac{1}{8}$ " to  $\frac{1}{4}$ " large; weight, 2 lb. 3 oz. Hardness, 20 to 25 (scleroscope).

High-speed steel, or stellite cutting tools.

**Time:** 4 h. 45 min. which includes 15 min. for milling tang, 1 h. for milling spiral grooves and 30 min. for milling clearances.

### SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS, MACHINES AND TOOLS

OPERATIONS.	MACHINES, SPEEDS, FEEDS.	TOOLS.
<b>Center.</b>		
True live center. Set dead center in approximate alignment.	Engine lathe, 12" to 16".	
Rough square to $11\frac{1}{2}$ ", (1), (2).	2d or 3d speed, or 40 F.P.M. Hand feed.	Dog, holder and cutter 30° rake, calipers, rule.
<b>Recenter.</b>		
Omit finish square.		
Rough turn to 1.012", (3), one or two cuts. Turn half way, reverse and turn other half.	1st or 2d speed, or 40 F.P.M. Medium power feed — 80 to 1".	Holder and cutter 30° rake, 1" micrometer.
Draw lines for length of shank and body (4), (5).	Vise, copper jaws.	Copper sulphate, rule, scriber.
Turn taper shank .002" to 1', (6).		
Set over footstock $\frac{2}{3}$ ", or use taper attachment.	Engine lathe.	Rule, dividers.
Rough turn taper (6) to $\frac{1}{4}$ " at small end, one or two cuts.	1st or 2d speed or 40 F.P.M. Medium power feed — 80 to 1".	Holder and cutter 30° rake, calipers, rule.
Take a light trial cut about .004" to .005". To correct this taper, see Schedule of Operations, p. 229.	3d speed or 60 F.P.M. Fine power feed — 140 to 1".	Holder and cutter 30° rake, Morse taper-ring gage No. 3, chalk or Prussian blue.
Rough turn to .753" + .020" for grinding (7), one cut.	Medium power feed — 80 to 1".	1" micrometer.
Rough and finish turn reduced part (7), one or two cuts.	Fine power feed — 140 to 1".	Calipers, rule.
Finish turn tang (8), one cut.		
Round end and corner (2).	Hand feed.	Forming tool.

SCHEDULE OF OPERATIONS, MACHINES AND TOOLS, *Concluded*

OPERATIONS.	MACHINES, SPEED, FEEDS.	TOOLS.
<b>Rough turn stem</b> $\frac{1}{4}$ " long (9), four or five cuts. Set tool at 59° and form point.	1st or 2d speed, or 40 F.P.M. Medium power feed — 80 to 1".	Calipers, rule, and bevel protractor.
<b>Stamp size and name on reduced part</b> (7).	Vise copper, jaws.	$\frac{1}{4}$ " steel figures and letters, hammer.
<b>Mill tang</b> (19).	Universal milling machine, 2d or 3d speed, or 50 F.P.M. Medium power feed — .007" per cutter revolution.	Index centers, 1" end mill, calipers, rule, oil.
<b>Mill grooves</b> (11), (11'). See pp. 1243-1245.	Universal milling machine.	1" end mill or special cutter, rule, oil.
<b>Mill land clearance</b> $\frac{1}{4}$ ", (12), (12'). See pp. 1244, 1245.	Gas furnace or forge 1325° F. to 1350° F. Oil-tempering furnace 425° F. to 435° F.	Tongs, water.  (Red-hot ring or collar).
<b>Harden in water.</b>	Universal grinding machine.	Grinding wheel No. 60, K, vitrified, Morse taper-ring gage, No. 3, chalk or Prussian blue, 1" micrometer.
<b>Temper in oil</b> (or polish and temper to straw color).	Twist drill grinder.	Cup grinding wheel No. 46 K, vitrified, bevel protractor.
<b>Test hardness</b> with scleroscope, or dead-smooth file.		
<b>Grind taper</b> (6) to .753" at end, or to fit Morse tapering gage. See pp. 712, 726, 830.		
<b>Set grinding machine to grind the taper for body clearance.</b> Grind body to 1.000" at point of drill. See pp. 1206, 712.		
<b>Nick stem</b> (9), with grinding wheel; break off and grind point to 118°. See <i>Principles of Machine Work</i> .		

*Attention.* — If the drill springs in hardening and tempering an amount in excess of that allowed for grinding, it should be carefully straightened before grinding. See p. 1217.

*Information.* — If not convenient to use a cylindrical grinding machine, the taper shank may be turned and filed to fit a Morse taper-ring gage, No. 3. The body may also be turned and filed to size.

PRECISION METHODS OF LOCATING HOLES FOR JIGS  
AND ACCURATE MACHINE PARTS

49. The precise location of holes in jigs, fixtures, master plates and accurate machine parts is obtained by the plug method for large work and by the button method for small work. For ordinary machine work where an error of  $\frac{1}{10000}$ " to  $\frac{1}{1000}$ " is permissible, the usual method of locating holes with surface gage, dividers, rule, and center punch, and then drilling the drill, is sufficiently accurate. See *Accurate Drilling, Principles of Machine Work*. To locate holes of precision in jigs and fixtures where errors greater than  $\frac{1}{1000}$ " are not permissible and an accuracy of  $\frac{1}{10000}$ " is often required, the plug or button method is used.

50. Jigs and fixtures are usually designed by the draftsman and made by the toolmaker. Many toolmakers, however, are well-qualified to both design and make jigs and fixtures. The shape and other requirements of the work determine whether a plate, solid, box, or rotary type of jig is required. See *Drilling Jigs*, pp. 601-610. The jig is designed by making a drawing having two or three views and the details. As an element of safety, it is best to make the design of such shape that it would be impossible to place the jig on the work or the work in the jig the wrong way.

After the position of the work in the jig is arranged, the locations of the holes and the clamping devices are determined. Wooden patterns are then made for the jig body and other parts that are to be made of cast iron and iron castings obtained.

51. Plane, mill or grind jig castings accurately. — The working surfaces of jigs and fixtures that are to be bored by precision methods must be planed, milled, or ground accurately and smoothly, and all sharp edges slightly beveled with a file. Box jigs and similar fixtures must have two or more surfaces or spots, exactly at right angles, from which all measurements are taken.

**52.** The vernier height gage, as shown in Figs. 40, 42, 43, 50 and 54, is a combination tool. As a height gage it is used for accurately measuring heights and spaces. As a caliper, it may be used in the same manner as the vernier caliper, see pp. 211, 212. It is an indispensable instrument for locating holes in jigs and fixtures by the plug or button method.

While the vernier height gage may be set to a ten-thousandth of an inch, accurate measurements and the comparison of distances and sizes also depend on the sense of touch or "feel" which is obtained by pressing the gage or caliper over or between the points being measured with a uniform pressure.

#### PLUG METHOD OF LOCATING HOLES

**53.** The plug method is a process of precisely locating the axis of the hole to be made with the axis of a standard plug held in the spindle of a universal or precision boring mill, or milling machine. With either machine the process is the same except for the variation in movements peculiar to the different makes of machines. The principle of the plug method of alining work in a boring mill is shown in Fig. 38. Measurements are taken from the

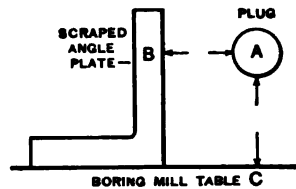


FIG. 38. — THE PRINCIPLE OF THE PLUG METHOD OF LOCATING HOLES.

hardened and accurately ground plug *A*, held in the spindle to the accurately scraped angle plate *B* which is clamped to the table parallel to the spindle, and from plug *A* to the table *C*.

**54.** To locate angle plate accurately on boring mill table. — To set angle plate *A*, Fig. 39, parallel to axis of spindle (assuming that the table is true) first place it in approximate position on table, test it with square, and clamp lightly. Then place drill chuck in spindle and fasten test indicator *B* in chuck. Test angle plate vertically with indicator by moving spindle up and down, and longitudinally by moving spindle in and out and adjusting angle plate by rapping it



lightly with lead hammer. When angle plate is true, clamp hard and test again, as hard clamping has a tendency to change the location of angle plate.

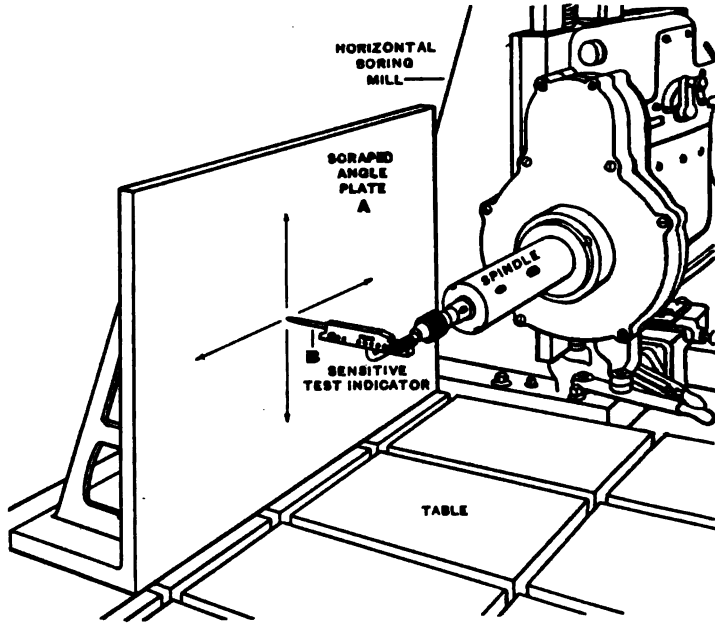


FIG. 39. — LOCATING ANGLE PLATE ACCURATELY ON BORING MILL TABLE.

*Attention.* — Vertical adjustments are made on some types of boring mills by raising or lowering spindle, see Fig. 39; and on others, by raising or lowering table, see p. 616.

**55. To aline jig to angle plate.** — Place drilling jig *A*, Fig. 40, against the tongue blocks *B* and *C*, clamp lightly and set parallel to the angle plate *D* by taking measurements at *E* and *F* with vernier height gage *G*. Make corrections by rapping jig lightly with soft hammer, then clamping it hard.

**56. To true plug in spindle.** — Taper shank plug *A*, Fig. 41, is placed in spindle *B* and tested with indicator *C* to see if it runs true. If the plug is hardened and ground accurately,

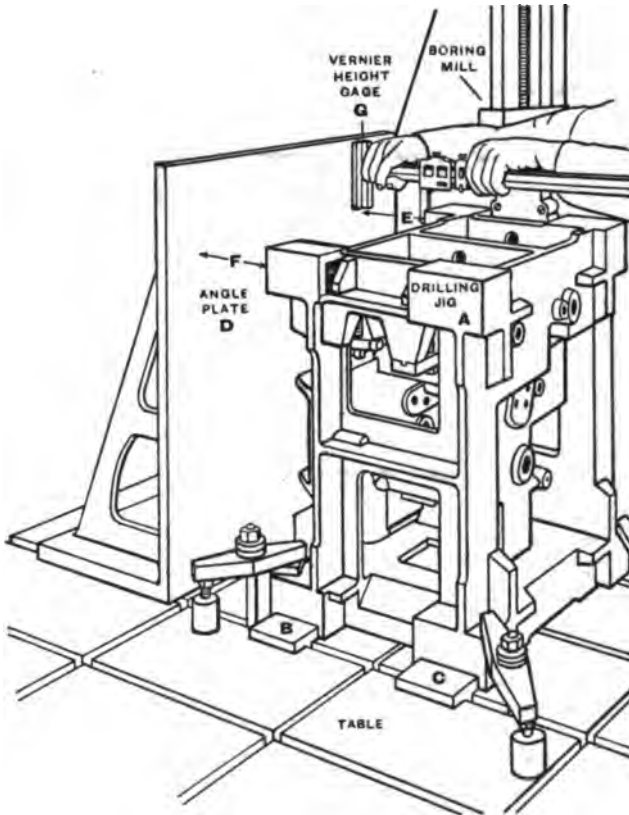


FIG. 40. — ALINING JIG TO ANGLE PLATE.

and care is used in placing it in the same position in the socket each time, it should run true; but, if it runs out a slight amount, the error is often corrected by removing and replacing the plug. When the plug runs true, the jig is lined up to it.

**57. To set axis of the hole to be bored true to axis of the plug, two measurements are necessary. First set vernier height gage *A*, Fig. 42, the distance called for on the drawing from center of hole in boss *B* to bottom of jig *C* or to table *D*, minus one-half the diameter of plug *E*, then adjust spindle *F*,**

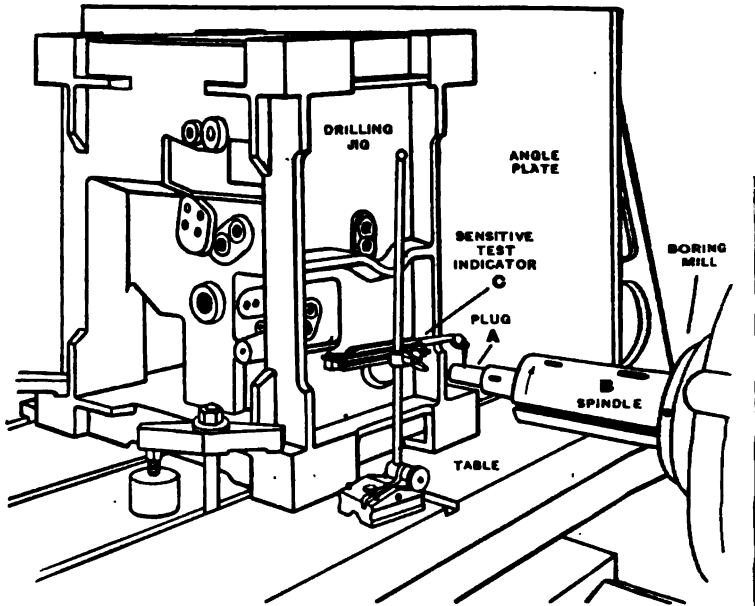


FIG. 41. — TRUING PLUG IN SPINDLE.

up or down, until distance is correct as determined by the vernier height gage *A*, Fig. 42.

Second, set vernier height gage *A*, Fig. 43, the distance called for on drawing from center of hole in boss *B* to side of jig *C* plus distance from jig *C* to angle plate *D* minus one-half diameter of plug *E*, then adjust table *F* until this distance is correct as determined by vernier height gage *A*, Fig. 43.

**58. To bore hole in jig.** — Place short drill *A*, Fig. 44, in the spindle and spot the work to make a true cavity, as at *A'*, see also p. 409. Then use two or three drills, as at *B* and *C*, the largest being about  $\frac{1}{32}$ " smaller than the finished hole. Each drill removes but a small amount of stock, thus eliminating the danger of drilling the hole out of alinement.

After drilling, special boring tool *D* is used with a fine power feed. Several boring tools may be used with the cutter set in each to remove but a small amount of stock. The

cutter in the last boring tool is set to bore the hole to the required size. See also Adjustable Boring Tool, Fig. 47.

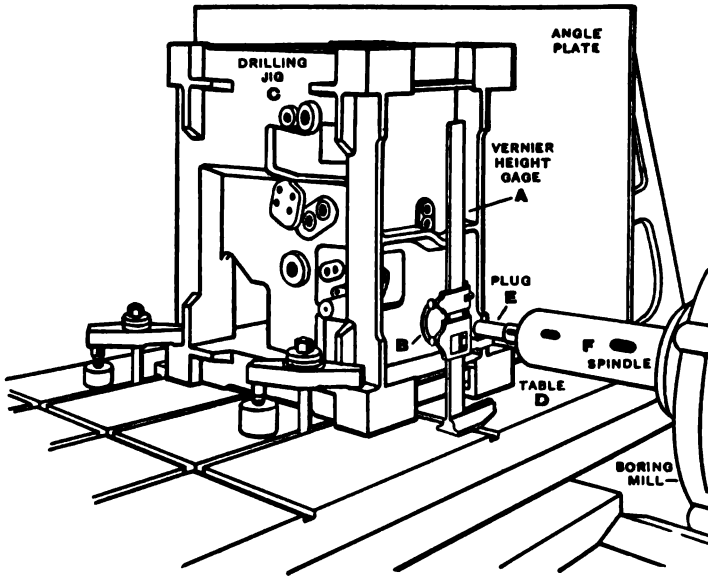


FIG. 42. — SETTING PLUG CORRECT DISTANCE FROM TABLE.

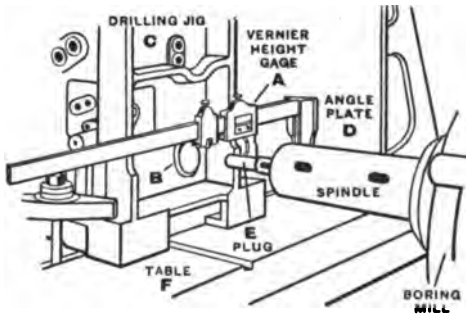


FIG. 43. — SETTING ANGLE PLATE CORRECT DISTANCE FROM PLUG.

Test hole with plug gage or measure with inside micrometer. Reamers are rarely used on this class of work as they have a tendency to throw the hole out of alinement. If the plug

gage fits rather tight after entering about halfway, a reamer is used to relieve the back end of hole. In this operation

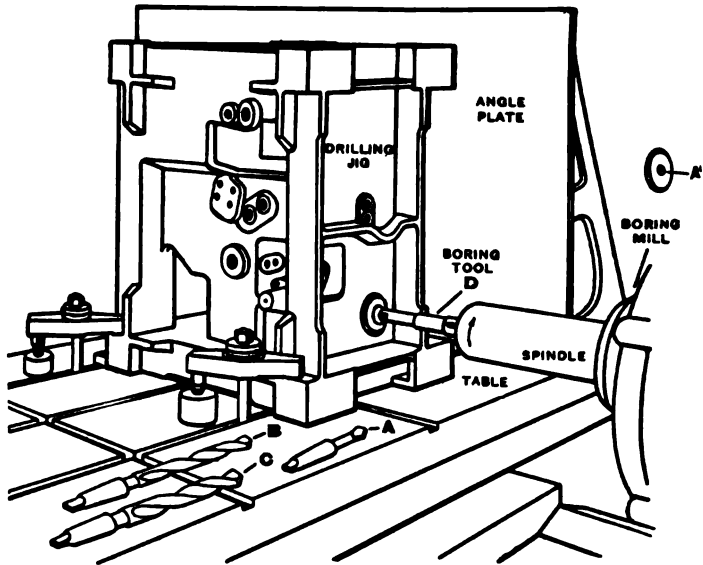


FIG. 44. — BORING HOLE IN JIG WITH SPECIAL BORING TOOL.

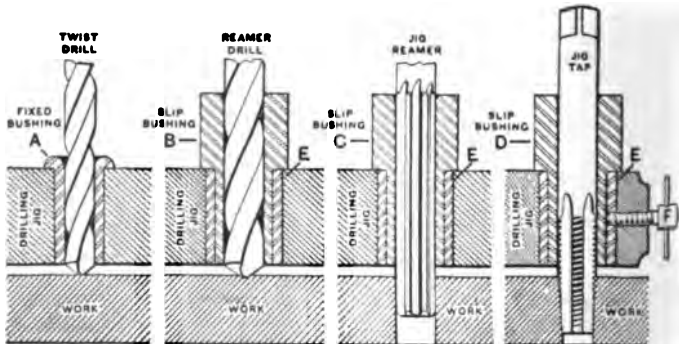


FIG. 45. — BUSHINGS FOR DRILLING JIGS.

the hole is not changed as the reamer removes so small an amount of metal that it burnishes but does not cut.

*Warning.* — After boring the hole and before removing the jig, place a plug in the hole and test the measurements from gage to angle plate and table.

*Information.* — Additional holes in jig may be located by the same method.

*Attention.* — In locating and boring holes which pass through two opposite faces of a box jig, the boring is carried through the first face. The work is then reversed, relocated, and the second face bored. This avoids the error that may be caused by the spring of a long boring tool.

**59. Bushings for drilling jigs.** — As holes in cast iron or machine steel would soon wear out of true by the action of the tools which pass through them, holes in jigs are lined with hardened and ground steel bushings. The fixed drilling bushing, as shown at *A*, Fig. 45, is made of carbon steel hardened and tempered. The hole is ground and lapped to the required size, and the outside diameter ground to about .002" larger than the bored hole and forced in with a press. Where more than one size of bushing must be used, they are called slip or removable bushings. A slip bushing for the drill is shown at *B*, for the reamer at *C*, and for the tap at *D*. The hole is also lined with a hardened and ground steel bushing as at *E*, forced in to receive the slip bushing. The tops of slip bushings are usually nurlled so that they may be readily removed with the fingers, and they are often held in place with a binding screw, as at *F*.

**60. To locate one hole accurately from another hole by the use of two plugs.** — This method is used on jigs, fixtures, and accurate machine parts in the boring mill or milling machine. To bore holes 1 and 2 in lugs *A* and *B*, in a machine part, Fig. 46, as shown in detail at *A'* and *B'*, clamp work to milling machine table, drill and bore hole 1 in lug *A*. Move table and place plug *C* in spindle, and plug *D* in hole 1, then adjust table and measure over plugs *C* and *D* with vernier caliper *E* or micrometer. This measurement should be the distance between centers of holes 1 and 2 plus half the diameter of each of the plugs *C* and *D*.

As holes 1 and 2 are not in horizontal alinement, measure distance *F* from plug *C* to the table with vernier height gage,

then raise table the difference in alinement of holes 1 and 2, as shown in detail at *G*, and again measure with vernier

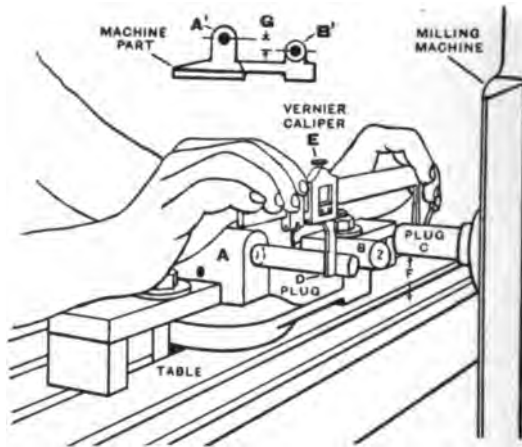


FIG. 46. — LOCATING ONE HOLE ACCURATELY FROM ANOTHER HOLE BY USING TWO PLUGS IN MILLING MACHINE.

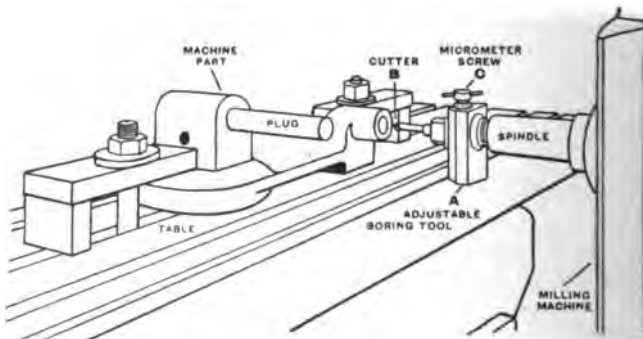


FIG. 47. — BORING WITH ADJUSTABLE TOOL.

height gage from plug *C* to table. This measurement should be distance *F* minus the difference in alinement. Hole 2 is then drilled and bored.

61. Adjustable boring tool shown at *A*, Fig. 47, is used for boring in milling machines, boring mills, drill presses and engine lathes.

The cutter *B* is adjusted by micrometer screw *C*, making it very useful for precision boring.

*Attention.* — If a milling machine is used, care must be taken to see that it is in good condition. If there is an appreciable sag of the knee, an allowance should be made in setting the work. In any machine used for accurate boring, the slides should be cleaned and oiled and the gib screws adjusted so that all movable parts fit closely but not too firmly.

BUTTON METHOD OF LOCATING HOLES

62. The button method is a process of precisely locating holes with hardened and ground buttons or collars often called toolmakers' buttons. It is a slower process than the plug method but it is used for small accurate work. It consists of three operations: First, locate the button precisely and clamp it to the face plate

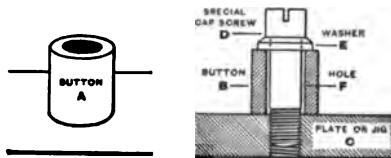


FIG. 48. — THE BUTTON, AND METHOD OF FASTENING THE BUTTON TO PLATE OR JIG.

or jig. Second, clamp the plate or jig to the face plate of the lathe, test the button with a sensitive test indicator and adjust plate or jig until the button is perfectly true to the axis of rotation. Third, drill and bore the hole.

The button used is shown at *A*, Fig. 48; it is about  $\frac{1}{2}$ " long, and ground to some exact diameter, as .300", .400" or .500", with perfectly square ends. Where only one hole is to be located, a button of an exact diameter is not important; but if two or more holes are to be located, they should all be of the same diameter. A sectional view of the button is shown at *B*, and the method of clamping to plate or jig *C* by special cap screw *D* and washer *E*.

The screw may be about  $\frac{1}{8}$ "  $\times$  40, and, to permit adjustment, hole *F* in the button is about  $\frac{1}{16}$ " larger than the screw.



**63. To locate the button on a plate.** — For hole *A*, Fig. 49 locate the button *B* on plate *C* the distances *D* and *E* from side and end of the plate by finding its approximate center with surface gage, rule, and square, and making a center punch mark. The center punch mark is usually within .010" of being correct. Next drill and tap for the screw, file off burr and fasten button tightly to the plate with the screw.

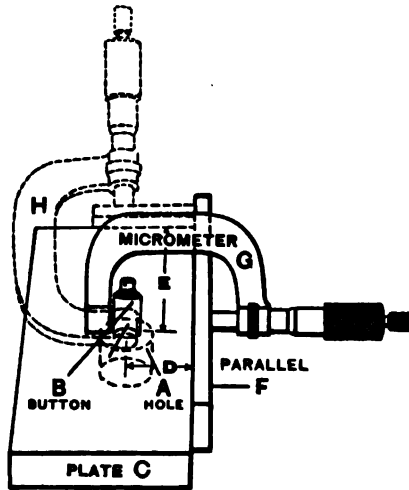


FIG. 49. — LOCATING THE BUTTON ACCURATELY ON A PLATE.

Then hold parallel *F* against side of plate, measure with micrometer caliper *G*, and adjust the button by rapping it lightly with a lead hammer until this measurement equals the distance *D* plus thickness of parallel, plus half the diameter of the button. Repeat the process for distance *E* with micrometer as shown dotted at *H*. Measure the distances *D* and *E* alternately, until button is precisely located, then fasten button down hard. Clamp the plate lightly to an accurate face plate of an engine lathe, and test the button with a sensitive test indicator held in the tool post, and adjust the plate until the button is perfectly true to the axis of rotation, see Art. 65, pp. 1259, 1260. To bore the hole, see Art. 66, pp. 1260, 1261.

**64. To locate the button on a drilling jig.** — Hole *A*, Fig. 50, is to be located halfway between the legs of drilling jig *B* and at a given distance from the face. Locate center of hole with surface gage, rule, square, and center punch. Drill and tap hole, file off burr, wipe clean and fasten button *C* to the jig. Clamp jig to the accurately scraped angle plate *D* to give larger working distances. Set vernier height gage *E* to give larger working distances. Set vernier height gage *E*

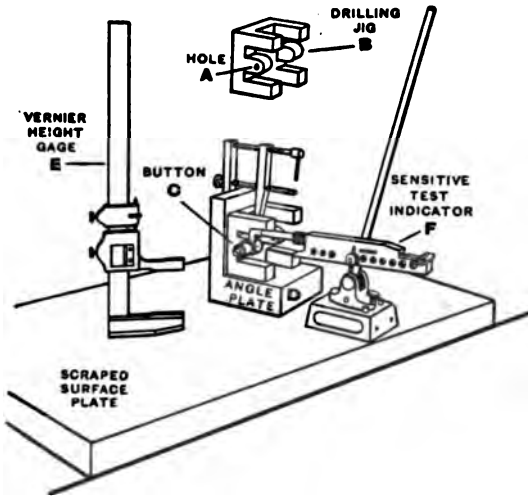


FIG. 50. — LOCATING THE BUTTON ON A DRILLING JIG.

to equal the distance from the edge of jig to the center of hole plus one-half the diameter of button plus thickness of the angle plate. Transfer this setting to sensitive test indicator *F*, with needle at center of scale. Adjust button until there is no change of needle-reading. Turn the jig down and repeat this process to locate button the correct distance from face of jig. Then fasten button on hard and test again, as hard clamping may change the position of button.

**65. To set button true to axis of rotation.** — Clamp drilling jig *A*, Fig. 51, lightly to a perfectly true face plate with button *B* approximately true to axis of rotation, then balance with counterweight *C*. See also pp. 407, 408. Rotate spindle by hand and test the location of button *B* by indicator *D*. Ad-

just jig by rapping it lightly with a lead hammer until the needle of indicator ceases to move, then tighten the clamping bolts. Test button again, as final clamping may change location of button.

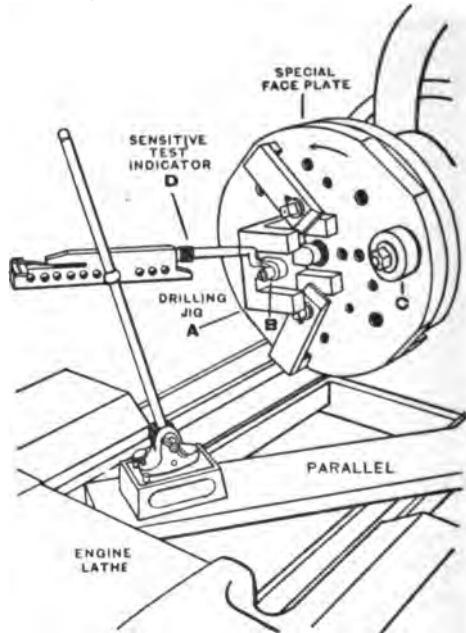


FIG. 51. — SETTING BUTTON TRUE TO AXIS OF ROTATION.

**66. To bore the hole in jig.** — Remove button and with flat drill *A*, Fig. 52 (or centering tool), held in a drill chuck fitted into footstock spindle, cut true cavity *B* to start drill. See also p. 409. Then use increasing sizes of drills until hole is within  $\frac{1}{32}$ " of size. Bore hole *C* exactly to size with boring tool *D* taking two or more cuts and using a fine power feed. Test hole with plug gage or measure with inside micrometer. See Bushings for Drilling Jigs, p. 1255.

*Warning.* — Care should be taken to see that the lathe spindle bearings are tight for any looseness will affect the truth of the bored hole. Also, see that the jig is accurately counterbalanced as the bored hole will be out of true if the jig has any springing or vibrating action.

If the shape of the work is such that the rotative speeds for drilling and boring will cause the spindle to spring and the work to vibrate, use the plug method and a boring mill, or milling machine, where the work will be stationary and the drills and boring tool will revolve.

*Attention.* — The true cavity starts the drill true and eliminates the eccentricity of the tapped hole.

*Information.* — The button method may be used in boring mill or milling machine by alining the button to a slip bushing on plug in the spindle.

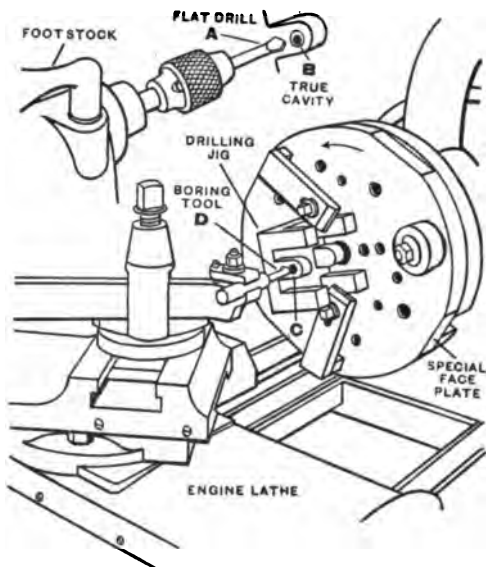


FIG. 52. — BORING THE HOLE IN JIG IN THE ENGINE LATHE.

67. To locate two holes by the button method usually requires that measurements be referred to the buttons themselves as well as to the edges of the work. In Fig. 53 button *A* for hole 1 is to be located with reference to edges *CD* and *DE* on plate *F*, and button *B* for hole 2, with reference to button *A* and edge *DE*. First locate both buttons approximately with reference to edges, by the method given on p. 1258.

The precise locations of buttons *A* and *B* are determined with micrometers, as shown in Fig. 53.

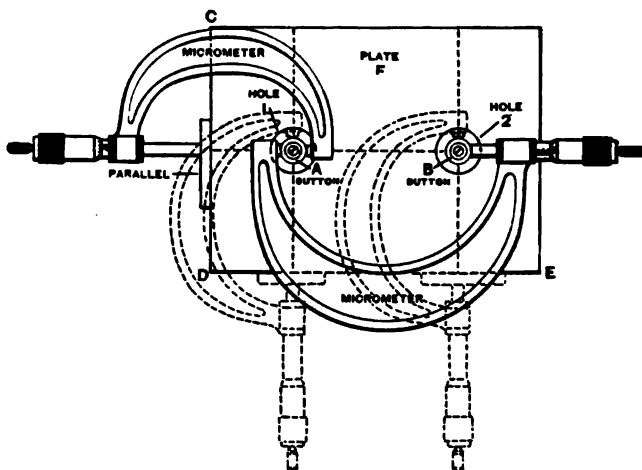


FIG. 53. — LOCATING TWO HOLES BY THE BUTTON METHOD.

68. To locate and bore holes an approximate distance apart with boring mill or milling machine. — On jigs and fixtures where the extreme accuracy of the plug or button method is not required, the holes may be located and bored approximately accurate a given distance apart by using the graduated dials, reading in thousandths of an inch, on the actuating screws of a boring mill or milling machine. See p. 616.

69. To locate and bore two or more holes an exact distance apart with boring mill or milling machine. — First, clamp the work to the table and adjust the table to move the work to the proper position, then drill and bore the first hole to the required size. Second, move the table by the actuating screw the required distance for the second hole as indicated on the micrometer dial. Third, drill and bore the hole  $\frac{1}{8}$ " small and place a plug or proof bar in each hole. Fourth, test the distance between the bored holes by measuring over both plugs with a micrometer. If after subtracting half the diameter of each plug from this reading, the result is not the required distance, correct by moving the actuating screw

the required number of thousandths of an inch or fraction of a thousandth, as indicated by the micrometer dial, then bore the hole to the required size.

## SINE BAR

**70. The sine bar** is used for the precision measurement of angles, and for locating work at precise angles. It consists of a hardened and ground bar with hardened and ground plugs placed at a precise and known distance (usually 10") apart, which by means of a vernier height gage and a table of sines and cosines may be set to any angle or used to measure any angle precisely. Some sine bars, as *A*, Fig. 54, are made with hardened bushings to which accurately ground removable plugs, *B* and *C*, are fitted; other sine bars, as *B*, Fig. 55, have fixed plugs, *C* and *D*.

*Information.* — The holes in the sine bar are located by either the plug method or the button method.

**71. To set adjustable angle plate with the sine bar.**— In Fig. 54 the sine bar *A* is used to set adjustable angle plate

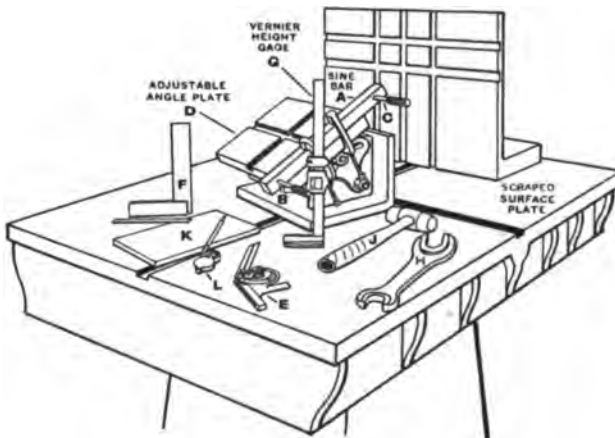


FIG. 54. — SETTING ADJUSTABLE ANGLE PLATE WITH THE SINE BAR.

*D* at a precise angle: First, place angle plate on the scraped surface plate and set it approximately by bevel protractor *E*,

then with square *F* set sine bar parallel to edge of angle plate, and clamp in position. Find difference in height of plugs *B* and *C* with vernier height gage *G* and obtain the precise angle. Adjust plate with wrench *H* and lead hammer *J* until difference in height of plugs is correct for the desired angle. For example, the angle plate is to be set at  $30^\circ$ . The sine of  $30^\circ$  is  $\frac{1}{2}$ . Therefore, with a 10" sine bar the difference in height of the plugs should be  $\frac{1}{2}$ " or 5".

*Attention.* — As each adjustment of angle plate changes the height of both plugs making the vernier readings difficult to remember, it is customary to make a record of the readings as suggested by the pencil and block of paper at *K*. The magnifying glass at *L* may be used to read the vernier.

**72. To measure and originate tapers with the sine bar.** — The sine bar may also be used for measuring and originating tapers.

In Fig. 55 plug gage *A* is to have a taper of .5161" per foot. While this is a standard taper (Brown & Sharpe, No. 10) it may be assumed that there is no ring gage or templet available and the sine bar is used instead of a gage. The plug is placed in the fixture on the scraped surface plate and the sine bar *B* adjusted to the taper gage and clamped in position. The difference in height of the plugs *C* and *D* is found by vernier

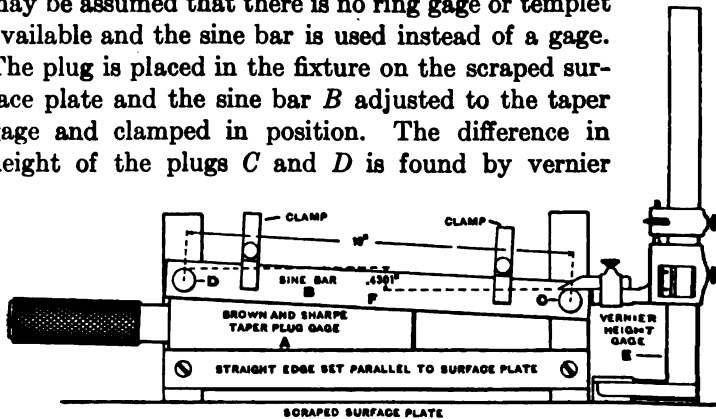


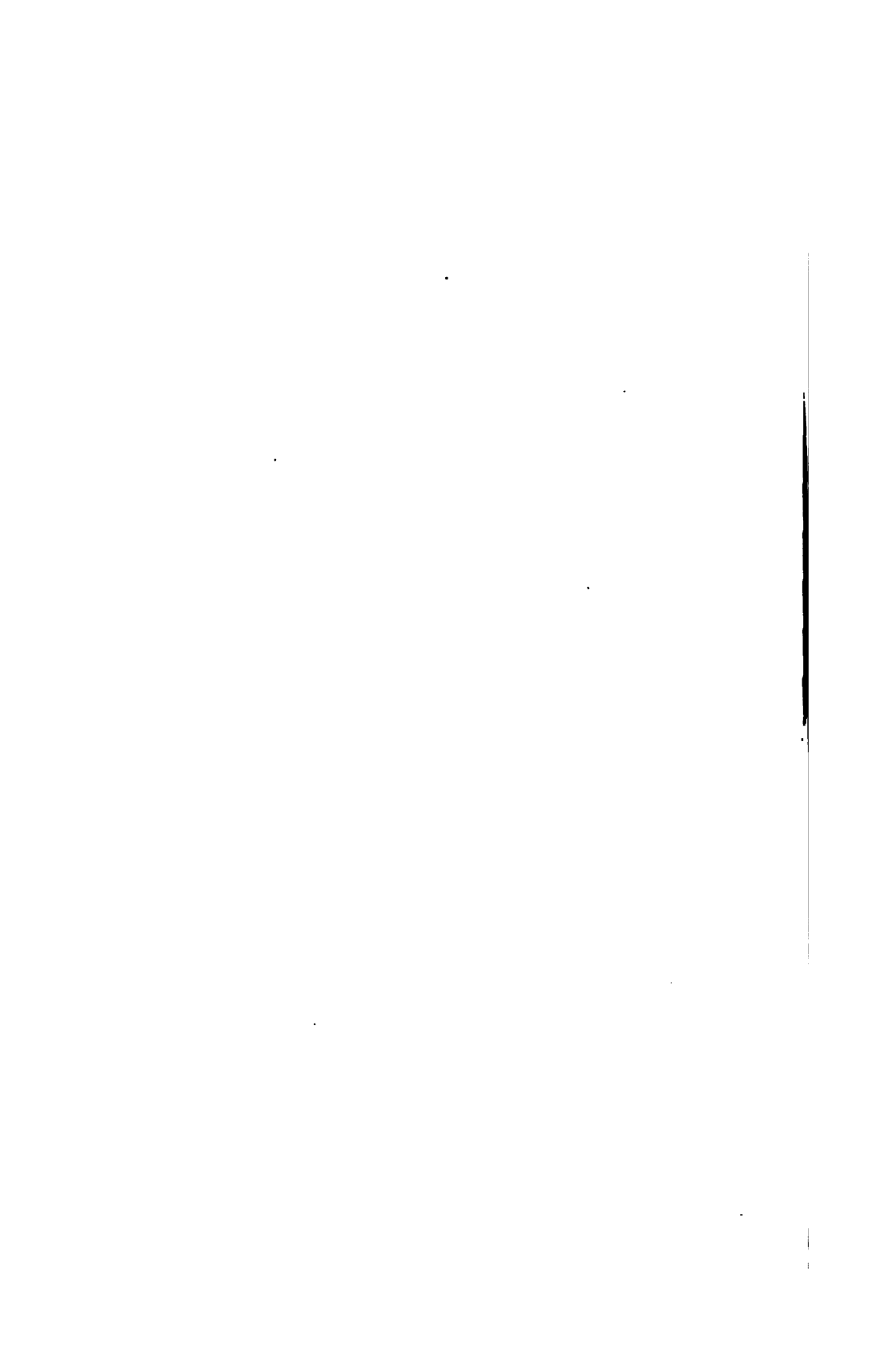
FIG. 55. — MEASURING A TAPER GAGE WITH THE SINE BAR.

height gage *E*. If the difference is not correct for the required taper, the gage is corrected by grinding or lapping and the process repeated. For example, gage *A* is to have a taper of .5161" per foot or  $.5161" \div 12 = .04301"$  per inch.

Assuming a 10" sine bar is used the difference in height of the plugs *C* and *D* should be  $.04301 \times 10$  or  $.4301''$ .

**73. Other uses for the sine bar.** — Besides being useful for the above processes, the sine bar is used for setting milling machine heads and tables, testing angle settings of vises, chucks, and other machine tools where precision is desired. It is also very useful in toolmaking for inspection purposes.





# GENERAL INDEX \*

## ↑ HOW TO FIND A SUBJECT

Each Section is a unit — a book in itself. In the General Index, Section numbers are joined with Page numbers, thus: 225. To find a subject, for example, "Limit gages": turn to Index and find "Limit gages . . . 225" which means that limit gages are in Section 2, page 25. Then find 225 (read two twenty-five) at top of page.

A	PAGE	PAGE
Accurate location of holes in jigs and machine parts . . . . .	1248-1263	Apron swivel . . . . . 910, 911, 916, 928, 929
Acme standard or Twenty-nine degree thread . . . . .	521-531	Apron, lathe . . . . . 107-109
Addendum of gear teeth . . . . .	1107	Arbor block or mandrel press. 220, 422, 423
Adjustable boring tool . . . . .	1256, 1257	Arbor, chuck . . . . . 401
planer tools . . . . .	905	Arbor, milling machine . . . . . 1004
reamers . . . . .	415, 416	Arbors or mandrels . . . . . 420-426
taps . . . . .	509	Attachment, automatic tapping . . . . . 607, 608
tongue fixture . . . . .	916	taper . . . . . 230, 231
Alignment and parallel boring, and reaming in horizontal boring machine . . . . .	616	Attachments for lathes, 110, 115, 230, 231, 626-629
drilling and tapping . . . . .	538, 539	Automatic sizing grinder . . . . . 724, 725
reaming with shell reamer, hand . . . . .	618	Automobile bolts, nuts, and screws. 354-356
reaming with jig, power . . . . .	618, 619	Automobile engine cylinder, grinding . . . . . 731, 732
Aligning crankshaft center fixtures . . . . .	633, 634	Automobile gear, grinding hole in. 727, 728
planer work with surface gage, without surface gage . . . . .	921	
Allowances for driving fits . . . . .	216	B
forcing fits . . . . .	217	Babbitt, machining . . . . . 419
grinding . . . . .	713	Back gears, lathe . . . . . 106, 107
reamed, ground and bored holes . . . . .	221, 222	Back lash . . . . . 332
reaming . . . . .	413	rests for grinding machines. . . . . 723-726
running fits . . . . .	214, 215	rests for lathes . . . . . 628, 629
shrinking fits . . . . .	221	Back plate with tap, to finish . . . . . 508-510
sliding fits . . . . .	216	Bearing cap, milling a . . . . . 1017
Aloxite . . . . .	432, 704	Bearings, care and use of . . . . . 151
Aluminum, feed for planing . . . . .	904	Belts, pushing on and pulling off . . . . . 151, 152
machining . . . . .	419	Bevel and miter gear cutters . . . . . 1113, 1114
milling . . . . .	1009, 1010	circular milling . . . . . 1044, 1045
Alundum grinding wheels . . . . .	704	gears . . . . . 1113-1119
Ampere . . . . .	626	Bevel gear and pinion, cutting . . . . . 1115-1118
Angle iron or angle plate, boring with . . . . .	408	Bevel gear teeth, filing . . . . . 1119
plate or angle iron, milling with . . . . .	1042	Bevel gears, cutting angle for . . . . . 1115
planing with . . . . .	915, 927	protractor . . . . . 1127-1129
Angle plate accurately on boring mill table, locating . . . . .	1249, 1250	protractor, vernier . . . . . 1129
Angles of lathe tools, 125, 126, 128-130, 132 planer tools . . . . .	906	Beveling thin planer work . . . . . 916, 917
milling cutters . . . . .	1006	Beveling end of castings for planing . . . . . 917
Angles for given taper per foot, finding . . . . .	1130	Binding post, making . . . . . 534-537
Angular milling cutters . . . . .	1005, 1006	Bits. See Holders and cutters.
planing . . . . .	909-911	Blanks, gear 1104, 1105, 1107-1109, 1122
Angular cutter, milling teeth of. 1037, 1038		Blocking, step . . . . . 913, 921, 922
Angular work, grinding . . . . .	804	Blocks, magnetized master . . . . . 803, 804
		Blue-print holder . . . . . 102
		Bolt and nut making . . . . . 339-345
		Bolt and nut, making finished . . . . . 342, 343
		Bolts and nuts, table of United States standard . . . . . 350
		Bolts, drilling for . . . . . 601-610
		making pair of spring . . . . . 344, 345
		planer . . . . . 914
		stud . . . . . 607, 608
		Book holder . . . . . 102

\* See Special Index at beginning of book for Schedules of Problems and Processes.

PAGE	PAGE
Bore to setting of inside calipers, adjusting tool to . . . . .	502
Boring bars . . . . .	510-518
Boring in the engine lathe with boring tool . . . . .	504-506
with boring bar . . . . .	511-513
tool holders and cutters . . . . .	506, 507
tools . . . . .	127, 504-507, 1252-1254, 1256, 1257
with angle iron or angle plate . . . . .	408
with adjustable boring tool . . . . .	1256, 1257
special boring tool . . . . .	1252-1254
Boring, squaring to shoulders in . . . . .	505, 506
vertical . . . . .	517
Boring machines, drilling, reaming and counterboring in horizontal . . . . .	515
portable . . . . .	513
Boring and reaming, alinement and parallel . . . . .	516
Boring tool, grinding . . . . .	141
Bosses, milling inside . . . . .	1045
Box jigs for drilling, reaming and tapping . . . . .	504-506
Box for lathe tools . . . . .	102, 109
Brass polishing . . . . .	434, 435
Brass turning in engine lathe . . . . .	533-537
Brass, cutting speed for . . . . .	504
reamers for . . . . .	534, 413
squaring . . . . .	533, 534
tapping . . . . .	534
tools for turning . . . . .	533
Bridges in hollow castings . . . . .	421
British Association standard threads . . . . .	318
Broach reamers . . . . .	418, 419
Broached holes, chart of . . . . .	544
Broaches . . . . .	543-548
Broaching lubricants for . . . . .	546
machine . . . . .	543-546
Broaching or drifting, hand . . . . .	546, 547
Bronze, planer cutting speed for . . . . .	504
grinding phosphor . . . . .	718
machining . . . . .	419, 539, 540
Brown & Sharpe tapers . . . . .	233, 235, 237-239
Buffing . . . . .	440
Bunters for planers, screw . . . . .	514
Burnt or hot centers . . . . .	202
Burr when squaring, to remove . . . . .	131, 132
Bushing, grinding jig . . . . .	829, 830
Bushings, making . . . . .	403, 404, 539, 540
Button method of accurately locating holes . . . . .	1248, 1258-1263
Buttons for precision drilling, tool-makers' . . . . .	1257-1263
on jig, locating . . . . .	1259
<b>C</b>	
Caliper gage, grinding . . . . .	828, 829
Caliper gages . . . . .	223
squares . . . . .	212, 213
Calipers, adjusting tool to bore to setting of inside . . . . .	502
adjusting tool to turn to setting of outside . . . . .	144
Calipers, divider . . . . .	121
inside . . . . .	501, 502
micrometer . . . . .	502-504
spring . . . . .	207-210
ten-thousandth micrometer . . . . .	143-145
213	
Calipers, thread . . . . .	21
micrometer . . . . .	1214, 1215
vernier . . . . .	211-213, 1117, 1118
Calipers to another, to transfer setting from one pair of . . . . .	165
Carbolite . . . . .	204
Carborundum grinding wheels . . . . .	704, 205
Carriage, lathe . . . . .	103-105
Castings, pickling and tumbling . . . . .	103
Castings with jigs, drilling . . . . .	501-503
Cast iron, diamond-point tool for finish turning . . . . .	134, 135
diamond-point tool for rough turning . . . . .	134
feed for planing . . . . .	504
finish facing . . . . .	435
planing . . . . .	505
squaring . . . . .	131, 132, 312
large square-nose tool for finish turning . . . . .	125
lathe tools for . . . . .	125-127
planer cutting speed for . . . . .	504
rough facing . . . . .	424
planing . . . . .	506, 507
squaring . . . . .	125
round-nose tool for finish turning . . . . .	134, 135
small square-nose tool for finish turning . . . . .	135
Cast-iron roll, grinding . . . . .	722
Cat head . . . . .	527, 528
Catching the thread in screw cutting . . . . .	336
Celluloid grinding wheels . . . . .	704, 705
Center-cut end mill . . . . .	1030, 1031, 1034
Center distance of gears . . . . .	1108
Center drill . . . . .	112
gage . . . . .	113
grinding machine . . . . .	115
height gage for cutter grinding . . . . .	810, 811
hole scraper . . . . .	631
holes in lathe work . . . . .	117-124
mandrels . . . . .	423
punch . . . . .	121, 122
reamers . . . . .	120, 122
Center, alinement of dead . . . . .	116, 117
dead . . . . .	113-115
drilling machine . . . . .	415
live . . . . .	113-115
Center drill, to remove broken . . . . .	122
fixtures, crankshaft . . . . .	632, 633
Center-hole dimensions, table of . . . . .	119
Center holes, lapping . . . . .	1226, 1229
Center for pipe turning, revolving dead . . . . .	421
Center for squaring, grooved dead . . . . .	131, 132
Center truing tool, lathe . . . . .	114
Centering machine . . . . .	123, 124
tool for chucking . . . . .	409
Centering, squaring, and straight turning . . . . .	203-205
Centering work, hand method of . . . . .	121, 122
machine method of . . . . .	123, 124
Centers, burnt or hot . . . . .	202
grinding . . . . .	115, 710, 711, 809, 831, 832
engine lathe . . . . .	115
lathe . . . . .	113-117
making engine lathe . . . . .	332-334
mounting work on lathe . . . . .	
testing angle of . . . . .	118, 119, 201-203
engine lathe live . . . . .	113

	PAGE		PAGE
Centers, truing engine lathe . . . . .	114, 115	Concave cutter . . . . .	1905
grinding machine, . . . . .	710, 711, 809	Convex cutter . . . . .	1905
Centers in alinement, setting grinding	712	grinding . . . . .	826, 827
machine . . . . .	712	Copper, machining . . . . .	419
Chamfering bolt heads, nuts and	341	Copper, milling . . . . .	1910
screws . . . . .	341	polishing . . . . .	434, 435
Change gear mechanism for screw cut-	110, 111	turning . . . . .	419
ting and feeds, rapid . . . . .	110, 111	Corundum grinding wheels . . . . .	704
Change gears . . . . .	104, 105, 326, 327, 330, 333, 1024	Cotter mill . . . . .	1907, 1930, 1931
Chart of gear teeth . . . . .	1102	Coulomb . . . . .	826
milling cutters . . . . .	1906	Counterboring . . . . .	610, 615
Chattering of tools . . . . .	305, 1905	Countershaft, engine lathe . . . . .	104-106
Chuck jaws . . . . .	401, 402	Countersinks . . . . .	120, 122, 123
Chuck, magnetic . . . . .	623, 625	Countersunk holes . . . . .	117-124
Chucking . . . . .	408-412	Counterweights for lathe work, . . . . .	407, 408, 634
an eccentric . . . . .	404	Counting threads . . . . .	320, 321, 321
a pulley . . . . .	411, 412	Crank shaper . . . . .	930
in speed lathe with a twist	540, 541	Crank, laying out holes in engine . . . . .	407, 408
drill . . . . .	540, 541	Crankshaft turning . . . . .	632-635
with drill holder and steady	410	center fixtures, laying out	632-634
rest . . . . .	410	two-throw 90° . . . . .	632-634
Chucking, centering tool for . . . . .	409	Crocus cloth, uses of . . . . .	434, 537
Chucking drills, flat . . . . .	410-412	Cross feed of lathe . . . . .	107-109
reamers, flat . . . . .	411	Crowning or tapering pulleys . . . . .	428-431
fluted . . . . .	417, 418	Crystolon . . . . .	704
Chucking with a flat drill and chucking	411-412	Cup grinding wheels . . . . .	707, 806, 813, 816
reamer in an engine lathe . . . . .	401-406	Curve turning . . . . .	435-437
Chucks . . . . .	405, 406	Cut meter . . . . .	126
Chucks, care of . . . . .	405, 406	Cut, finishing . . . . .	126
classes of . . . . .	402	roughing . . . . .	126
combination . . . . .	404	Cutter clearances, milling, . . . . .	811-815, 1006, 1224
draw-in . . . . .	405	Cutter grinding machine . . . . .	719, 808
drill . . . . .	122, 402	Cutter, face or plain milling . . . . .	1906
face-plate . . . . .	405	fly . . . . .	1907
independent . . . . .	402, 403	formed milling . . . . .	1906, 1103
magnetic . . . . .	623-625	grinding angular . . . . .	818, 819
mounting and removing . . . . .	406	convex . . . . .	826, 827
special . . . . .	404	flat . . . . .	825, 826
spring . . . . .	405	formed . . . . .	824
tapping back plates of . . . . .	508-510	gear . . . . .	823, 824
universal . . . . .	403, 404	hole in milling . . . . .	728, 729
Chucks to machine spindles, attach-	401, 507-510	inserted tooth mil-	815, 816
ing . . . . .	1040-1045	ing . . . . .	814, 815
Circular milling . . . . .	1105	plain milling . . . . .	816, 817
pitch for gearing . . . . .	339	radial teeth of side	819
Clamp dog . . . . .	341	milling . . . . .	816, 817
Clamp nut, making a . . . . .	406-408, 813-815, 823	spiral milling . . . . .	1010
Clamps . . . . .	822	Cutter by measurement, setting . . . . .	1010
Clamps, holding planer work with fin-	434	trial, setting . . . . .	1010
ger . . . . .	820	Cutter central, setting gear:	1112
polishing . . . . .	1107	(Accurate Method) . . . . .	1112
Cleaning planers . . . . .	125, 126	(Approximate Method) . . . . .	1111
Clearance of teeth . . . . .	811-815	Cutters for spiral mills . . . . .	1240
lathe tools . . . . .	820-822	two-groove twist drills . . . . .	1240
milling cutters . . . . .	1245	Cutters, angular milling . . . . .	1905, 1906
reamers, 413, 811-813, 820-822	1047	coarse tooth milling . . . . .	1103, 1111
Clearance on twist drill, milling land . . . . .	1047	epicycloidal gear . . . . .	1909
Coarse tooth milling cutters . . . . .	726	feed for milling . . . . .	1907
Collet, to grind taper . . . . .	1004	form milling . . . . .	1103
Collets, milling machine . . . . .	404	formed milling . . . . .	808-827
Combination chucks . . . . .	706	gear stocking . . . . .	1047, 1048
grinding wheels . . . . .	533-538	grinding milling . . . . .	1103
Comparator. See Measuring machine.	604	helical tooth milling . . . . .	1043, 1047
Composition, turning . . . . .	333-335	involute gear . . . . .	1905-1908
Composition, planer cutting speed for . . . . .	1131, 1132	milling . . . . .	1043, 1047
Compound gearing for threads, calcu-	1132	rake tooth milling . . . . .	1907
lating . . . . .	1132	right and left milling . . . . .	1908
Compound rest . . . . .	1132	selection and mounting of . . . . .	1906, 1011, 1047, 1048
Compound rest, fine tool adjustments	1132	spiral milling . . . . .	1906, 1011, 1047, 1048
with . . . . .	1132		



	Page
Engine lathe.....	101-109
Engine lathe with rapid system of change gears.....	110, 111
English standard (Whitworth) threads.....	337, 338
Epiicycloidal cutters.....	1103, 1111
gears.....	1101, 1103, 1111
Expanding mandrels.....	421, 425
Expansion of work while grinding.....	713, 714
turning.....	302
Expansion reamers. See Adjustable reamers.	
<b>F</b>	
Face milling.....	1011, 1012, 1043, 1947, 1048
Face-plate chucks.....	405
Face plates.....	406-408, 1259-1261
Facing disk held in a chuck.....	402
large cylinder.....	614
mill.....	1012
work in steel.....	1226
or front tool.....	533
Feed, star.....	614, 617
Feed or cut for planer work, direction of.....	917
Feed of planer work, time of.....	917
Feeds and speeds for grinding.....	708, 709
lathe work.....	145-148, 240, 241
milling.....	1008-1010
planing.....	904, 906-908
Fiber, machining hard rubber or.....	419, 420
Files, mill.....	305, 306
Filing bevel gear teeth.....	1119
lathe work.....	205, 206
Fillets of cast iron, scraping.....	426-428
Finishing out.....	126
Finishing out for boring, continuous.....	612
Fingers for holding planer work.....	314
Fits in machine construction.....	314
Fits, classes of.....	314
driving.....	316, 316, 317
forcing.....	316-321
grinding forcing.....	720, 721
running.....	716, 717
grinding.....	715-721
holes for.....	221, 222
press for forcing.....	318, 320
running.....	215, 231, 332
shrinking.....	219, 221
table of allowances for standard.....	322
turning and filing driving.....	314-317
turning and filing running.....	314-317
sliding.....	316
table of driving.....	316
forcing.....	317
tables of running.....	315
shrinking.....	221
sliding.....	316
taper forcing.....	317-319
running.....	314
Fits with caliper and gage, producing standard.....	322
Fits with micrometer, producing standard.....	222
Fitting, straight turning and.....	231, 232
Fixture, adjustable tongue.....	616
angle plate, 408, 615, 814, 615, 1042.....	727, 728
internal grinding.....	1013, 1014
shell milling.....	1013, 1014
Fixture for planer, Tee.....	616
tongue (or rib).....	615, 616

	Page
Fixtures, crankshaft center.....	632, 633
lathe.....	406-408, 612, 615
milling jigs and.....	1017-1019
string.....	625
Flange drilling.....	601-605
jigs.....	602-604
Flange, finishing face and scraping cast-iron (lathe work).....	425-428
making cast iron.....	426-428
rough facing cast iron.....	424
Flat chucking drills.....	410-412
Fluted chucking reamers.....	417, 418
Fluting reamers.....	1029, 1030, 1034-1036
Fly cutter.....	1007
Follower rests.....	628, 629
Footstock, engine lathe.....	116, 104
Footstock, index head and.....	1021, 1022
slitting lathe.....	1016
Forcing fits.....	316-321
press.....	318-320
Forgings, pickling and tumbling.....	1010
Form milling cutters.....	1007
Formed milling cutters.....	1005-1007, 1103
Forming tools.....	436, 905
Formulas for gears.....	1104-1107
screw threads.....	321-323, 351, 511, 512, 522
Fractional threads.....	332-335
Front or facing tool.....	533

G

Gage for grinding and setting Twenty-nine degree thread tools.....	525, 526
Gage, center.....	113
lapping standard plug.....	1329, 1330
making standard plug.....	1332-1335
square threading tool angle.....	513
Gage for cutter grinder, center height.....	810, 811
Gage blocks for planers.....	913
or pattern for setting planer tool.....	921, 922
special.....	323
Gages, caliper.....	1334, 1336
end-measuring rod.....	1117, 1118
gear tooth.....	1334, 1335
grinding plug.....	323, 325
hole.....	1330
lapping ring.....	325
limit.....	325
plug.....	223, 1329-1330, 1332-1335, 1337
reference disk.....	324
special.....	325
standard cylindrical-plug and ring.....	323
taper.....	328, 621
thread.....	113, 324, 325, 507, 526, 1216
vernier height.....	1249-1254, 1259, 1263, 1264
Gang mandrels.....	422
mills.....	1017
planer tools.....	905
Gashing worm gear.....	1122, 1123
Gear blanks.....	1104, 1105, 1107, 1109-1122
rule.....	1108
stocking cutters.....	1103
tooth vernier caliper.....	1117, 1118
Gear blanks, milling.....	1040, 1041
limits used in sizing.....	1104
Gear teeth, chart of.....	1102
Gear cutter central, setting (Accurate Method).....	1112

PAGE	PAGE
Gear cutter central, setting (Approximate Method).....	1111
cutter, formed.....	1103
cutters, bevel and miter.....	1113, 1114
headstock, engine-lathe.....	809
Gears, bevel.....	1113-1119
change.....	104, 105, 326, 327, 330, 333
epicycloidal.....	1101, 1103, 1111
formulas for.....	1104-1107
involute.....	1101, 1103
spiral.....	1125-1127
spur.....	1101-1113
worm.....	1120
Gibs, planer.....	903
Glass, drilling.....	150
Graduating dial.....	1040
Graver.....	437
Grinder, automatic sising.....	724, 725
universal tool.....	141, 142
wet-tool.....	140-142
Grinding angular cutter.....	818, 819
work.....	804
automobile engine cylinder, boring tool.....	731, 732
caliper gage.....	141
cast-iron roll.....	823, 829
centers.....	722, 723
convex cutter.....	115, 711, 809, 831-832
cutting-off tool.....	826, 827
diamond-point tool.....	138, 139
end mill.....	138, 141
fits.....	817, 818
flat cutter.....	715-721
forcing fits.....	825, 826
formed cutter.....	720, 721
gear cutter.....	824
hand reamer with Cup Wheel.....	823, 824
hand reamer with Disk Wheel.....	820
high-speed steel cutter.....	821
hole in automobile gear.....	140
milling cutter.....	727, 728
inserted tooth milling cutter.....	728, 729
jig bushing.....	815, 816
lathe tools.....	829, 830
mandrel.....	135-142
milling cutters.....	1205-1207
piston rings.....	808-827
plain milling cutter.....	807
plain surfaces.....	814, 815
plug gages.....	805-807
phosphor-bronze taper bushing.....	1234, 1235
radial teeth of side milling cutter.....	718
round-nose tools.....	816, 817
running fits.....	135, 136
side tool.....	716, 717
sides of slitting saw.....	136, 137
slender shaft.....	827
spiral milling cutter.....	723, 724
square threading tools.....	819
standard mandrel.....	138, 139
standard ring gage.....	1205-1207
straight edge.....	729, 730
taper reamers.....	828, 829
shank of end mill.....	822, 823
tapers.....	830, 831
thin machine parts.....	718, 721, 725, 726, 730, 731
to shoulder.....	802
Twenty-nine degree threading tools.....	721
.....	524, 526
Grinding United States standard or sharp V threading tools.....	140
with back rests.....	723-726
work square with magnetized master blocks.....	803
Grinding, allowances for.....	713
cutter.....	808-827
cylindrical.....	701-726
depth of cuts for.....	709
direction of rotation of work and wheel for.....	709, 727
expansion of work while.....	713, 714
internal.....	727-732
lubricants for.....	713
machine.....	701-726
measuring tools for.....	714
methods of driving work for.....	711, 712
rough and finish.....	713
setting swivel table for straight.....	712, 727, 809
setting swivel table for taper.....	712
speeds and feeds for.....	708, 709
surface.....	801-807
the finish of work by.....	713
wet and dry.....	712-714
width of face of wheel for.....	709
Grinding on two dead centers, principle of.....	701
Grinding machine, universal.....	702, 703
Grinding machine centers, truing.....	719-721
Grinding machines, care of, 710, 711, 714, 809	
classes of.....	702
cutter.....	719, 808
operating universal.....	715
plain.....	721-726
truing centers of, 710, 711, 809	
Grinding wheels.....	704-710, 809
Grinding wheels, alundum.....	704, 705
carborundum.....	704, 705
celluloid.....	704, 706
chart of.....	705
combination.....	706
corundum.....	704, 705
Cup.....	707, 806, 813, 816
Disk.....	707, 806, 813, 816
elastic.....	704-707
emery.....	704, 705
grades of.....	704, 707
mounting of.....	703
selection of.....	707
shapes of.....	705, 707
silicate.....	704-707
table of speeds for.....	708
tanite.....	704, 706
truing.....	709, 710
vitrified.....	704-707
vulcanite.....	704, 706
Grinding work, measuring.....	714
Grinding work of one diameter, end driving dog for.....	711, 712
Ground work, seasoning of.....	714
Grooving taps.....	1031-1033
twist drill.....	1243-1245

## H

Half diamond-point tools.....	127, 306
Hammer, lead.....	437

	PAGE		PAGE
Hammer, machinist's	121, 122	Indicator, axis	1213
rawhide	422	surface speed attachment	
Hammers for finished work, soft	422	for speed	146, 147
Hand broaching or drifting reamers,		thread	336
413-417, 1226		Indicators, dial-test	1211, 1212
reaming in engine lathe	416, 417	test	1210-1213, 1249, 1250,
reaming stand	415, 416	1251, 1252, 1259, 1260	
vertical drilling ma-		Inserted tooth milling cutter,	
chine	415	1905, 1906, 1919, 1943	
reaming in vise	414	Inserted tooth milling cutter, grind-	
turning	437-440	ing	815, 816
machine handle	438	Inside calipers	501, 502
Hand wheels, turning	438	Inside micrometer calipers	502, 504
Handles, making formed machine	437-440	Inside square threading tools	515, 516
Headstock, engine lathe	104-107	squaring	505, 506
Height of lathe cutting tools	128, 131-134	Inside threading tools, United States	
Helical tooth milling cutters	1047, 1048	standard or Sharp V	506, 507
Hexagonal, calculating diameter to		Inside Twenty-nine degree threading	
turn blank for milling or filing,		tools	525, 526
1025, 1026		Inside United States standard or Sharp	
High-speed steel milling cutters, cut-		V threading in the engine lathe	506-510
ting speeds for	1008	Interchangeable machine parts	601
High-speed steel lathe tools	304-310	Internal grinding	727-732
cutting speeds		fixture	727, 728
for	147	International and French standard	
Hobs, gear	1124, 1125	threads	351
Hobbing worm gear	1123-1125	Interrupted thread tap	509
Holders and cutters, lathe,		Involute gears	1101, 1103
306-312, 506-508, 514			
planer	905, 909	J	
Holding planer work by cementing or		Jacks, leveling	913, 921
gluing	920	Jarno tapers	236, 237
planer work with finger		Jig for duplicate milling machine parts	1919
clamps	922	Jig reamers	604, 605, 619, 820
Hole gages	223-225	Jig vise	608, 609
Holes, allowances for reamed, ground		Jig bushing, grinding	829, 830
and bored	221, 222	Jig, solid	601
broaching	543-548	Jigs for tapping	606
button method of accurately		Jigs, box	604-606
locating	1248, 1257-1263	drilling	601-610, 1248-1259
chart of broached	544	example of improvised	601, 602
countersunk	117-124	locating holes in drilling	1248-1263
plug method of accurately lo-		multiple	601
cating	1248-1257	planer	923
reamed	413-419	planing drilling	1248
stepping work for taper	620	plate (flange)	602
table of allowances and limits		rotary	601
for standard	222	Jigs and fixtures, milling	1917-1919
taper	619-623	Joule	626
Holes in jigs and accurate machine		Journals. See Bearings.	
parts, location of	1248-1263	K	
Holes in lathe work, center	117-123	Keyway in hub, planing straight	925
Holes with a boring mill, accurate bor-		Keyway in pulley or gear, planing	
ing of	1252-1258, 1262	taper	927
Holes with a lathe, accurate boring		Keyway in shaft, planing	924
of	1257-1261	Keyways, milling	1014, 1015, 1030, 1031
Holes with a milling machine, accurate		Knurling. See Nurling.	
boring of	1249-1255	L	
Horizontal planing	906-910	Lacquering	440
Hot centers, burnt or	302	Lands of reamers	413, 820-822, 1036
		Laps	1228-1231
I		Lapping	1228-1231
Independent chucks	402	center holes	1228, 1229
Index grinding for milling cutters	814-827	Lapping standard plug gage	1229, 1230
Index head and footstock	1021, 1022	Lard oil	148, 149
milling	1019-1040	Lathe apron	107-109
Indexing in the engine lathe	352	centers	113-117
Indexing, differential	1023-1025	dogs or drivers	118
plain	1021-1023	holders and cutters,	
rapid	1019-1021	305-312, 506-508, 514	
Indexing plate, use of	1022, 1023	tools for cast iron	125-133
Indexing hand reamers, principle of	1034		



PAGE	M	PAGE
Lathe tools for steel or wrought iron, 301-314	Machine tools, origin of . . . . .	101
Lathe with rapid change-gear mechanism . . . . .	Machinists' hammer . . . . .	121, 122
Lathe, electrically-driven engine . . . . .	Magnetic chucks . . . . .	623-625
engine . . . . .	Magnetised master blocks . . . . .	802-804
swing of . . . . .	Mandrel or arbor block . . . . .	422
Lathe bed, milling . . . . .	making . . . . .	1202-1209
planing . . . . .	or arbor press . . . . .	220, 423, 425
centers, grinding, . . . . .	Mandrel, eccentric . . . . .	632
115, 711, 809, 831, 832	making standard . . . . .	1202-1207
mounting work on, . . . . .	making U. S. S. nut . . . . .	1208, 1209
118, 119, 201-203	soft hammers for driving . . . . .	422
truing engine . . . . .	stub . . . . .	621
114, 115	Mandrel dimensions, standard . . . . .	1204, 1205
Lathe spindle, making small . . . . .	Mandrels . . . . .	420-426, 1202-1209
Lathe tools, angles for, 125, 126, 128-130, 132	Mandrels, built-up . . . . .	422
box for . . . . .	bridges in hollow castings to	
chart of forged . . . . .	take place of . . . . .	421
clearance of . . . . .	center . . . . .	423
cutting angles of . . . . .	expanding . . . . .	421, 425
speeds of . . . . .	gang . . . . .	422
145-148	nut . . . . .	340, 1208, 1209
grinding . . . . .	standard solid . . . . .	420, 1204-1205
height of . . . . .	special . . . . .	422
128, 131-134	Manufacturing type of milling machine . . . . .	1018, 1019
high-speed steel . . . . .	Master blocks, magnetised . . . . .	802-804
rake of . . . . .	Material (stock), inspection and measurement of . . . . .	150
304-310	Measuring angles with sine bar . . . . .	1263-1265
125, 126	grinding work . . . . .	714
Lathe work, axis indicator for . . . . .	Measuring lathe work, . . . . .	
center holes in . . . . .	143-145, 207-209, 211, 212, 320, 501, 502	
driving . . . . .	milling work . . . . .	1010, 1011
filling . . . . .	planer work . . . . .	912
speeds and feeds for, . . . . .	tapers with sine bar . . . . .	1264
145-148, 240, 241	Measuring machine, twenty-four inch standard . . . . .	1236-1238
measuring, . . . . .	Meter, cut . . . . .	146
143-145, 207-209, 211, 212, 320, 501, 502	Metric threads . . . . .	318, 335
320, 501, 502	Micrometer, slining planer table with . . . . .	809
Lathe head and footstock, planing . . . . .	Micrometer calipers . . . . .	207-210
Lathe, attachments for, . . . . .	calipers, inside . . . . .	502-504
110, 115, 230, 231, 626-629	ten-thousandth . . . . .	213
classes of . . . . .	thread . . . . .	1214, 1215
requirements for successful use . . . . .	vernier . . . . .	211, 212
of engine . . . . .	Mill files . . . . .	205-207
113	Mill, center-cut end . . . . .	1030, 1031
Laying out holes in engine crank . . . . .	cotter . . . . .	1007, 1030, 1031
two-throw 90° crankshaft . . . . .	facing . . . . .	1012
center fixtures . . . . .	Milling cutters . . . . .	1005-1008
633, 634	bolt head and nut hexagonal in milling machine . . . . .	1026, 1027
Lead hammer . . . . .	in bolt head milling machine . . . . .	1020, 1021
Lead of screw threads . . . . .	dovetail . . . . .	1016
screws . . . . .	duplicate work . . . . .	1010, 1019, 1030
108, 109, 319	end of shaft square . . . . .	1028, 1029
Lead, machining . . . . .	inside booses . . . . .	1045
Left diamond-point planer tool . . . . .	irregular shapes . . . . .	1046
tools . . . . .	jigs and fixtures . . . . .	1017-1019
306	keyways or slots in shaft . . . . .	1014, 1015, 1018
side tool . . . . .	machine arbor . . . . .	1004
threads . . . . .	collets . . . . .	1004
319, 332, 510	Milling machines . . . . .	1001
Leveling jacks . . . . .	racks . . . . .	1112
taper work in milling machine . . . . .	radial teeth in side milling cutter . . . . .	1038, 1039
1039	square head with end mill . . . . .	1028, 1029
work on drilling table with surface gage . . . . .	teeth of angular cutter . . . . .	1037, 1038
221	plain milling cutter . . . . .	1036, 1037
Limits used in sizing gear blanks . . . . .		
1104		
Limit in milling . . . . .		
gages . . . . .		
1011		
225		
Line tapping. See Alignment drilling and tapping.		
Line reaming. See Alignment reaming.		
Lining lathe centers . . . . .		
116, 117		
Live center . . . . .		
114, 115		
Lock washers . . . . .		
356		
Long feed, lathe . . . . .		
107-109		
Long screws, threading . . . . .		
336, 337		
Lubricant for broaching . . . . .		
546		
milling cutters . . . . .		
1009		
Lubricants for cutting tools . . . . .		
148-150		
grinding . . . . .		
713		
Lubricating or oiling bearings . . . . .		
151		

	PAGE		PAGE
Milling, circular.....	1040-1045	Oil stones, India.....	143, 148
face.....	1011, 1012, 1043	Oilstoning tools.....	143, 322
index.....	1919-1040	Outside diameter of gear blank.....	1105
limits in.....	1011		
methods of holding work in.....		P	
plain.....	1011	Parallels, or wedges, planing taper.....	917
multiple.....	1018	planer.....	913
speeds and feeds for.....	1008-1010	Pickling and tumbling castings and forgings.....	1010
spiral.....	1239-1247	Pins, screw.....	914
vertical.....	1043-1045	taper.....	418, 419
Milling cutter, making plain.....	1224, 1225	Pipe tap, threading.....	324
Milling cutters, angles of.....	1806	turning, revolving dead center.....	
chart of.....	1806	for.....	421
coarse tooth.....	1947	Piston rings, turning.....	923
cutting speed for.....	1808	grinding.....	807
feed for.....	1809	Pitch diameter for gearing.....	1105
grinding.....	808-827	of threads.....	320
helical tooth.....	1047, 1048	Pitch, circular.....	1105
lapping holes in.....	1230	diametral.....	1104
lubricant for.....	1009	Pitch line, finding thickness of tooth.....	
milling teeth of.....		at.....	1107
1036-1039, 1224, 1225, 1241, 1242		Plain grinding machines.....	721-726
rake tooth.....	1043, 1047	indexing.....	1021-1023
Milling machine vise.....	1011	milling.....	1011, 1012
Milling machine, planer type.....	1016-1017	Planer.....	901-904
manufacturers' type.....		Planer bolts.....	914
of.....	1018, 1019	clamps.....	913-915, 923
Milling machines, cutting movements of.....	1007, 1008	forming tools.....	905
Milling machines, vertical.....	1043	head mechanism.....	903-904
Milling machine dogs for taper work, special.....	1039, 1040	holders and cutters.....	905, 909
Milling work, measuring.....	1010, 1011	jacks.....	913, 921
Mills, gang.....	1017	jigs.....	923
side or radial (shell-end).....	1006	parallels.....	913
Monel metal.....	834	shoe for holding work.....	923
Morse tapers.....	228-231, 233-235, 237-239	templets.....	928, 929
Motor-driven machine tools, examples of.....	112, 1002	tools and side heads, special.....	
Mounting work on lathe centers, 118, 119, 201-203		904, 921, 922, 924	
Multiple jigs.....	601	-type milling machine.....	1016, 1017
milling.....	1018	vices.....	926
Multiple-spindle drilling machines.....		Planer table, redressing.....	910
303, 604, 610		tool, left diamond point.....	906
319, 531, 532		special gage or pattern for setting.....	921, 922
Multiple-threaded taps.....	532	Planer tools, adjustable.....	905, 925
N		angles of.....	906
Nurling tools.....	635, 636	forged.....	905
Nurling, hand.....	635	gang.....	905
machine.....	636	special.....	924
Nut and bolt making.....	339-345	work, measuring.....	912
mandrel, making U. S. S.....	1208, 1209	spring of.....	920
Nut mandrels.....	340	work with surface gage, aligning.....	921
Nut in alignment, drilling and tapping a cross feed.....	538, 539	Planer work, beveling end of castings for.....	917
Nuts, clamp.....	341	direction of feed or cut for.....	917
fixed.....	538	slide rule for timing.....	936
nurled-head.....	536, 537	time of feed for.....	917
threading.....	319, 343, 506, 507, 538	Planer rail in alignment, setting.....	909
O		Planers, classes of.....	901
Ohm.....	626	cleaning.....	920
Oil, kerosene.....	149	oiling.....	920
lard.....	148, 149	Planing drilling jigs.....	1348
sperm.....	148	keyway in flange.....	926, 927
Oiling grinding machines.....	714	hub.....	925
planers.....	920	shaft.....	924, 925
Oil stones, Arkansas.....	143, 148	lathe bed.....	927-929
Carborundum.....	143	lathe head and footstock.....	929
		rectangular work clamped to table.....	918, 919
		rectangular work held in shaper vice.....	934, 935

	PAGE		PAGE
Planing taper keyway in pulley or gear . . . . .	227	Reamers, fluted chucking . . . . .	417, 418
parallels or wedges . . . . .	217	fluting . . . . .	1029, 1030, 1031-1036
work in a vise . . . . .	233	grinding taper . . . . .	222, 223
Planing, angular . . . . .	909-911	hand . . . . .	413-415
beveling end of castings for . . . . .	917	irregularly spaced teeth on . . . . .	413
horizontal . . . . .	906-910	jig . . . . .	604, 605, 619, 624
speeds and feeds for . . . . .	904, 906-908	lands of . . . . .	413, 820-823, 1035
Tee slot . . . . .	923, 924	principle of indexing hand . . . . .	1034
vertical . . . . .	909-911	rose chucking . . . . .	417
Plate jigs . . . . .	602	shell . . . . .	617
Plug gages . . . . .	223, 1228-1230, 1232-1235, 1237	taper . . . . .	618-623
Plug gages, grinding . . . . .	1234, 1235	Reaming stand . . . . .	415, 416
Plug method of accurately locating holes . . . . .	1248-1257	Reaming taper holes in a speed lathe by power . . . . .	418, 419
Polishing and buffing . . . . .	440	Reaming, allowances for . . . . .	413
brass . . . . .	434, 435	finish . . . . .	413
cast-iron flange . . . . .	433	rough . . . . .	413
clamps . . . . .	434	Reaming in engine lathe, hand . . . . .	416, 417
copper . . . . .	434, 435	power . . . . .	417-419
steel shaft . . . . .	434	Reaming in reaming stand, hand . . . . .	415, 416
stick . . . . .	433	vertical drilling machine, hand . . . . .	415
Polishing, abrasives, speeds, and machines to use for . . . . .	432, 433	Reaming in vise, hand . . . . .	414
order of applying emery cloth for . . . . .	432, 433	Reaming with jig, power alignment . . . . .	619
Power reaming in engine lathe . . . . .	417-419	Reaming with shell reamer, hand alignment . . . . .	618
tapping . . . . .	607, 608	Reference disks . . . . .	224
Precise location of holes in jigs and accurate machine parts . . . . .	1248-1263	Rest, compound . . . . .	1131, 1132
Precision Screws . . . . .	1236-1238	Rests, follower or back . . . . .	628, 629
Press fits. See Forcing fits.		steady or center . . . . .	626-628
Press, forcing . . . . .	218, 220	Revolutions of lathe . . . . .	146, 147
mandrel or arbor . . . . .	220, 422, 423	Rib (or tongue) fixture . . . . .	195
straightening . . . . .	1317	Right and left milling cutter . . . . .	1207
Profiling (Duplicating irregular forms) . . . . .	1046	Ring gage, standard . . . . .	223, 729, 730, 1230
Protractor, bevel . . . . .	1127-1129	Ring gages, taper . . . . .	228, 621
vernier bevel . . . . .	1129	Rolled threads . . . . .	319
Pulley, chucking . . . . .	411, 412	Rose chucking reamers . . . . .	415
schedule of operations for making . . . . .	430-432	Rotation for milling, correct direction of . . . . .	1007, 1008
Pulleys, locating set screws for . . . . .	432	incorrect direction of . . . . .	1007, 1008
tapering or crowning . . . . .	428-431	Rotary jigs . . . . .	601
Punch, center . . . . .	121, 122	Rouge . . . . .	440
Punching . . . . .	546, 547	Roughing cut . . . . .	126
		tools . . . . .	127, 130, 303, 304
		Round-nose tools . . . . .	129, 130, 134, 533, 634
		hand tools . . . . .	437
		Round-nose tools, grinding . . . . .	135, 136
Racks, milling . . . . .	1112	Rubber or fiber, machining hard . . . . .	419, 420
Radial drilling machines . . . . .	604-609	Rule, gear . . . . .	1103
facing cylinder ends . . . . .	614, 615	Rules, standard steel . . . . .	143, 201, 214
Rake of lathe tools . . . . .	125, 126	Running fits . . . . .	215, 231, 232
tooth milling cutters . . . . .	1043, 1047	Running fits, turning and filing . . . . .	214-217
Rapid indexing . . . . .	1019-1021	Rust or corrosion, prevention of . . . . .	151
Rawhide hammer . . . . .	422		
Rawhide machining . . . . .	420		
Reamed holes . . . . .	413-419		
Reamer wrench . . . . .	414		
Reamer, grinding taper . . . . .	822, 823	Saw, grinding sides of slitting . . . . .	827
making hand . . . . .	1226-1228	metal slitting . . . . .	1016
Reamer to size, stoning . . . . .	821, 822	Schedule of operations. See Special Index of Problems.	
Reamer with Cup Wheel, grinding hand . . . . .	820	Scraper, center hole . . . . .	631
Disk Wheel, grinding hand . . . . .	821	flat . . . . .	425
Reamers for brass . . . . .	413	round-nose . . . . .	426
Reamers, adjustable . . . . .	415, 416	Scraping cast iron in an engine lathe . . . . .	425, 426
broach . . . . .	418, 419	Scraping fillets of cast iron . . . . .	426-428
center . . . . .	120, 122	Screw bunters for planers . . . . .	914
clearance of, 413, 811-813, 820, 822 . . . . .	415, 416	pins for planers . . . . .	914, 915
expanding . . . . .	415, 416	Screw cutting. See Threading.	
flat chucking . . . . .	411	Screw threads. See Threads.	
		Screw threaded work, root diameter of . . . . .	320

# INDEX

11

	PAGE		PAGE
Screws, lead.....	108, 109, 319	Spur gears.....	1101-1113
Precision.....	1236-1238	Spur pinion and gear, cutting.....	1110, 1111
set.....	432	Square dog.....	339
Screws and stud bolts, drilling for.....	607, 608	Square-nose lathe tools.....	135
Seasoning of ground work.....	714	Square-nose planer tools.....	907
Shaft, grinding a slender.....	723, 724	Square, calculating diameter to turn	
making eccentric.....	629, 631	blank for milling or filing.....	1025, 1026
milling keyway in.....	1014, 1015	Square, milling end of shaft.....	1028, 1029
polishing.....	434	Square thread nut, making.....	519-521
turning a slender.....	627-629	Square thread screw, making.....	516-518
Shaft blanks for grinding fits, prepar-		Square thread screw and nut, sectional	
ing.....	314, 315	view of.....	511
Shaft blanks for turning and filing fits,		Square thread tap, making.....	1220, 1221
preparing.....	316, 317	Square thread taps.....	516, 1220, 1221
Shafting, rods and bolts, straightening,		Square threading tool angle gage.....	513
.....	124, 125	holders and cut-	
Shank, chuck.....	401	ters.....	514
Shaper, crank.....	930	Square threading tool, setting.....	514, 515
draw-cut.....	932	Square threading tools.....	512-516
geared.....	930	Square threading tools, grinding.....	138, 139
stroke of.....	930	Square threads.....	510-521
traveling-head.....	931, 932	Squares, caliper.....	212, 213
Shaper vice, swivel.....	932	Squaring brass.....	533, 534
Shapers.....	930	cast iron.....	129-132, 312
Sharpening tap.....	825	Squaring steel or wrought iron,	
Shear planer tool.....	908	301, 302, 306-309, 312	
Shell reamers.....	616-619	Squaring to shoulder.....	132, 339, 505, 506
Shoe, planer.....	923	with inside squaring tool,	
Shoulders, squaring.....	132, 339, 505, 506	.....	505, 506
Shrinking fits.....	219, 221	Squaring, grooved dead center for.....	131, 132
Side tools.....	130-132, 301, 302, 306-309	step method of.....	301, 302
tools, grinding.....	136-137	Standard and limit gages.....	223-225
Silicate grinding wheels.....	704-707	holes.....	221, 222
Sine bar.....	1263-1265	solid mandrels.....	420, 1204, 1205
Sine bar, measuring angles with.....	1263-1265	Standard measuring machine, testing	
tapers with.....	1264	end measuring rod with 24".....	1238
Slender shaft, grinding.....	722, 723	Star feed.....	614, 617
turning.....	627-629	Steady rests.....	626, 628, 1029, 1930
Slide rule for timing planer work.....	936	Steel rules, standard.....	143, 501, 514
Sliding fits.....	216	Steel for tools, sizes of.....	1201
fits, table of.....	216	Steel or wrought iron, cutting speed for	
Soap mixture for cutting tools.....	150	planing.....	904
Soda water for cutting tools.....	150	dian end-point	
Soft hammers for driving mandrel.....	422	tool for finish	
Solid jig.....	601	turning.....	304-306
Special planer clamps.....	923	dian end-point	
tools and side heads,		tool for rough	
.....	904, 921, 922, 924	turning.....	302
Speed for lathe filing.....	205, 206	facing large work	
Speed indicator, surface speed attach-		in.....	904
ment for.....	146, 147	feed for planing.....	904
Speed, measuring cutting.....	146	finish planing.....	906, 908
Speed of belts, changing.....	152	finish turning.....	304, 306
Speed lathe, chucking in.....	540, 541	lathe tools for.....	301-314
tapping in.....	540-542	planing.....	907, 908
threading in.....	542, 543	rough planing.....	907, 908
Speeds and feeds for grinding.....	708, 709	turning.....	302-304,
lathe work,		.....	307-309
milling.....	145-148, 241, 242	squaring.....	301, 302, 306-
planing.....	1008-1010	.....	309, 312
.....	904, 906-908	Stellite.....	310
Sperm oil.....	148	Step blocking.....	415, 913
Spiders for mandrels.....	422	method of squaring.....	301, 302
Spindle, making lathe.....	622, 623	Step-boring for taper holes.....	620
Spiral gears.....	1125-1127	Stock (material), cutting off.....	313, 314
Spiral milling.....	1239-1247	inspection and meas-	
cutters.....	1006, 1011, 1047, 1048	urement of.....	150
Spring calipers.....	143-145	Stoning reamer to size.....	821, 822
chuck.....	405	Straight edge, grinding.....	828, 829
of planer work.....	920	Straight grinding, setting swivel table	
tools.....	305, 907, 910, 1216	for.....	712, 727, 809
Spur-gear pinion, preparing blank for,	1108, 1109	Straight turning and fitting.....	231, 232
		Straightening press.....	124, 125, 1217

PAGE	PAGE		
Straightening hardened and tempered tools.....	1217	Taps, adjustable.....	609
Straightening shafting, rods and bolts.....	124, 125	grooving.....	1031-1033
Strapping work to planer table.....	914	making.....	324, 325, 1215-1223
String fixtures for planers.....	925	multiple-threaded.....	532
Stub mandrel.....	621	Square thread.....	516, 1220, 1221
Stud bolts.....	607, 608	threading pipe.....	324, 325
Stud, making.....	348, 349	Twenty-nine degree thread.....	526, 1222, 1223
Stud bolts and screws, drilling for.....	607, 608	United States standard.....	1218, 1219
Studs for driving large work.....	423	Tee fixture for planers.....	915, 916
Studs by power, setting.....	607, 608	slot planer tool lifter.....	923, 924
Surface grinding.....	801-807	Tee slots, milling.....	1042
machines.....	801	planing.....	923, 924
Surface gage, aligning planer work with.....	921	Templets.....	437, 438
without.....	921	Test indicators.....	1210-1213, 1249, 1250, 1251, 1252, 1259, 1260
Surface speed attachment for speed indicator.....	146, 147	Tensile test specimen, making.....	346, 347
Surface speed, table of number of revolutions required to obtain.....	240, 241	Thread calipers.....	320
Surface grinding (plane).....	801-807	gages.....	113, 324, 325, 507, 526, 1216
Swing of lathe.....	101	indicator.....	336
Swivel shaper vise.....	932, 933	micrometer caliper.....	1214, 1215
Swivel vise, graduated.....	1012	Thread to a shoulder in an engine lathe, cutting.....	332, 510
T		Threading dies.....	542, 543
Tanite grinding wheel.....	704, 706	Threading in engine lathe.....	318-338, 342-349, 506-532
Tap, interrupted thread.....	609	in speed lathe.....	542, 543
sharpening.....	825	long screws.....	336, 337
Taper forcing fits.....	217-219	nuts.....	319, 343, 506, 507, 535
gages.....	228, 621	taper work.....	342, 323
holes.....	619-623	tool holders and cutters.....	308, 514
pins.....	418, 419	with rapid change-gear mechanism.....	110, 111
reamers.....	618-623	Threading, calculating compound gearing for.....	333, 325
running fits.....	314	calculating simple gearing for.....	326, 327
turning.....	226-231, 622, 623, 1131, 1132	calculating gearing for fractional.....	323
turning with taper attachment.....	230, 231	calculating gearing for metric description of mechanism for.....	329-331
Taper, setting compound rest to turn.....	1132	formulas for.....	321-323, 351, 511, 512, 522
turning and fitting a.....	228, 229	operating lathe for.....	303, 331
Taper bushing, grinding.....	718	theory of.....	326, 327
collet, grinding.....	726	Threading in the engine lathe, inside.....	506-510
Taper grinding, setting swivel table for.....	712	Threading tool, spring.....	1216
Taper reamers, grinding.....	822, 823	Threading tools.....	308, 323-326, 338, 506-516, 521, 522, 524-526, 1216
Taper hole in spindle, grinding.....	730, 731	tools, grinding.....	138-140, 324-326, 515, 524-526
Taper holes in a speed lathe by power, reaming.....	418, 419	Threads per inch.....	320, 321
Taper parallels or wedges, planing.....	917	Threads, British Association standard.....	318
Taper pin reamers.....	418, 419	Threads, counting.....	320, 331, 331, 332
Taper shank of end mill, grinding.....	830, 831	double.....	531, 532
Taper shank twist drill, making.....	1245-1247	fractional.....	332-335
Taper work, setting tool to thread.....	324	French standard.....	351
Taper work in vise, planing.....	833	International standard.....	351
Tapering or crowning pulleys.....	428-431	lead of.....	320, 335
Tapers, Brown & Sharpe 233, 235, 237-239 calculating distance to set over footstock for.....	227, 228	left.....	332, 510
grinding 718, 721, 725, 726, 730, 731	236, 237	metric.....	318, 335
Jarno.....	236, 237	multiple.....	319, 531, 532
methods of grinding.....	712	pitch of.....	320
Morse, 228-231, 233-235, 237-239	226	right and left.....	319
standard and special.....	226	rolled.....	319
tables of footstock set overs for turning.....	237-239	Sharp V.....	318-343, 356, 506-510
use of patterns to obtain.....	228	Square.....	510-521, 1220, 1221
Tapping attachment.....	607, 608		
in engine lathe.....	508, 509		
speed lathe.....	540, 541		
Tapping, alignment drilling and.....	538, 539		
jigs for.....	606		
power.....	607, 608		

PAGE	PAGE
Threads, Twenty-nine degree, 521-531, 1222, 1223	United States standard threads, 318, 322, 325, 326, 331, 356, 506-510, 1218, 1219
United States standard, 318, 322, 323, 325, 326, 331, 356, 506-510, 1218, 1219	United States standard thread gage... 326
uses of different..... 319	United States standard and Sharp V threading tools... 308, 323-328, 506, 507
Whitworth (English) stand- ard..... 337, 338	United States standard screw, sectional view of..... 318, 323
Thumb nuts, making brass nurled, 536, 537	Units, electrical..... 626
Time element..... 301	Universal chucks..... 403
Toe dogs for planers..... 314	grinding machine..... 702, 703
Tongue (or rib) fixture for planers, 315, 316	milling machine..... 1002, 1003
Tool holders and cutters. See Hol- ders and cutters.	vise..... 1013
Tool making..... 1201	tool grinder..... 141, 142
Tooth rest for cutter grinding, 810-814, 824	Universal grinding machine, operat- ing..... 715
Tooth clearance, gear..... 1107	V
Tooth, working depth of gear..... 1107	Vernier bevel protractor..... 1129
Tooth at pitch line, thickness of gear, 1107	calipers..... 311-313, 1117, 1118
Traveling head shaper or traverse shaper..... 321, 322	height gage, 1249-1254, 1259, 1263, 1264
Triple threads..... 532	Vertical and circular milling attach- ments..... 1043, 1044
Tripoli..... 440	Vertical boring and reaming..... 617-619
Truing engine-lathe centers..... 114, 115	milling machines..... 1043-1045
grinding machine centers, 710, 711, 809	planing..... 909-911
wheels..... 709, 710	spindle surface grinding ma- chine..... 806
Tubing, cutting off..... 831	Vise, graduated swivel..... 1012
Tumbling castings, pickling, etc..... 1010	jig..... 608, 609
Turning aluminum..... 419	on table, setting milling machine, 1011
Babbitt..... 419	swivel shaper..... 932, 933
brass..... 533-538	universal..... 1013
bronze..... 419	Vises, planer..... 626
cast iron, 129-135, 144, 301-305, 312, 226-232	Vitrified grinding wheels..... 704-707
composition..... 533-538	Volt..... 626
copper..... 419	Vulcanite grinding wheels..... 704, 706
lead..... 419	Vulcanite, machining..... 419, 420
monel metal..... 534	V threads, sharp... 318-343, 356, 506-510
steel or wrought iron, 301-317, 339-349, 352, 353	W
Turpentine for machining glass..... 150	Washers, lock..... 356
Twenty-nine degree thread taps, 526, 1222, 1223	Water for grinding..... 712, 713
Twenty-nine degree thread tap, mak- ing..... 1222, 1223	guards for grinding machines, 713, 715, 716
Twenty-nine degree thread nut, mak- ing..... 529-531	Water for cutting tools, soda..... 150
Twenty-nine degree thread screw and nut, sectional view of..... 521	Watt..... 626
Twenty-nine degree thread screw, mak- ing..... 527-529	Wet tool grinder..... 140-142
Twenty-nine degree threading tool gage..... 525, 526	Wheels, cup..... 812, 813, 820
Twenty-nine degree threading tools, 522-525	disk..... 812, 813
Twenty-nine degree threading tools, grinding..... 524-526	grinding..... 704-710, 809
Twenty-nine degree threads..... 521-531	Wheels and belts, polishing with..... 440
Twenty-nine degree threads, formulas for..... 522	Whitworth (English) standard thread- ing tools..... 338
Twist drills, chucking with..... 409	threads..... 337, 338
making..... 1243-1247	Whitworth thread screw, sectional view of..... 337
Twist drill, three-groove..... 410	Wrench, socket or chuck screw, 546, 547
four-groove..... 410	Wrought iron, cutting speed for..... 304
U	feed for..... 304
United States standard tap, making 1218, 1219	planing..... 907, 908
United States standard threading tools, grinding..... 325, 326	squaring steel or, 301, 302, 306-309, 312
	turning..... 301-310
	Working depth of gear tooth..... 1107
	Worm gear, gashing..... 1122, 1123
	Worm gear, making..... 1121-1125
	Worm gear blank, preparing..... 1122
	Worm, making..... 1121-1122
	Worm gears..... 1120
	Z
	Zero lines..... 116



# SMITH BLUE-PRINT HOLDERS AND TEXT-BOOK HOLDERS

FOR SHOP AND SCHOOL

— PATENTED —

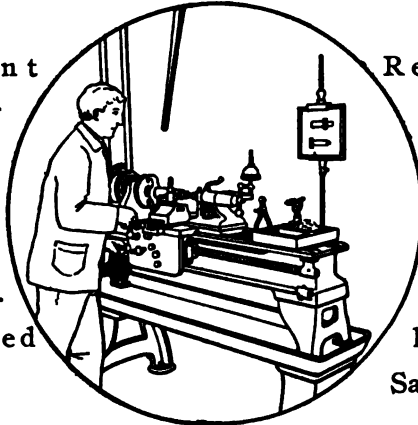
AN IMPORTANT ADVANCEMENT IN THE  
SCIENTIFIC MANAGEMENT OF TRADES, INDUSTRIES AND SCHOOLS

*Saves Time*

*Saves Blue Prints*

*Saves Eyesight*

Convenient  
location for  
rapid read-  
ing.  
Increases  
efficiency.  
Unobstructed  
view.

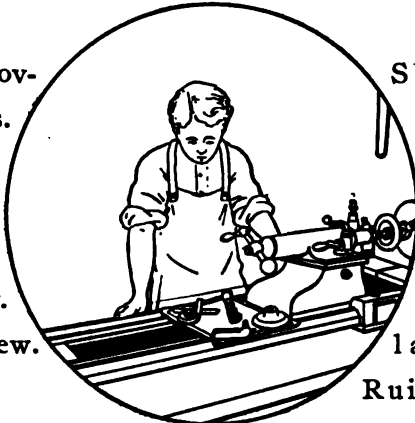


Reduces the  
motions of  
workmen.  
A Law of Op-  
tics obeyed;  
perpendicular  
line of vision.  
Saves eyesight.

**RIGHT WAY.**

**IMPROVED METHOD OF HOLDING BLUE PRINTS MOUNTED ON  
SHEET METAL OR CARDBOARD.**

Blue print cov-  
ered with tools.  
Soiled and  
damaged  
print.  
Slow reading.  
Obstructed view.



Slanting line  
of vision  
causes eye-  
strain.  
A Law of  
Optics vio-  
lated.  
Ruins eyesight.

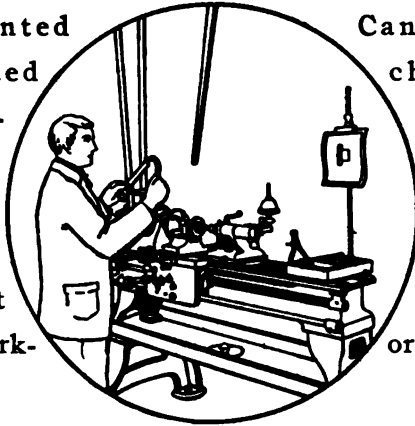
**WRONG WAY.**

**OLD METHOD OF HOLDING BLUE PRINTS.**

**INDUSTRIAL EDUCATION BOOK CO., Boston, U.S.A.**



Holds mounted or unmounted prints, drawings, tracings, sketches, or notes. Revolved to suit position of workman.

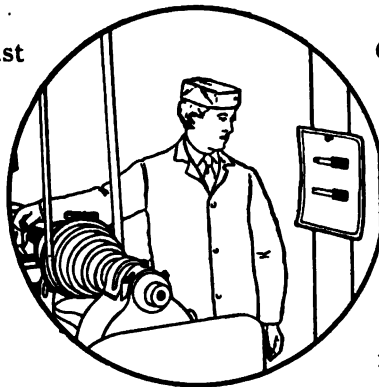


Can be quickly changed from mounted to unmounted prints. May be swivelled, raised, or lowered.

**RIGHT WAY.**

**IMPROVED METHOD OF HOLDING UNMOUNTED BLUE PRINTS.**

Workman must turn around to read drawing. Loss of time.

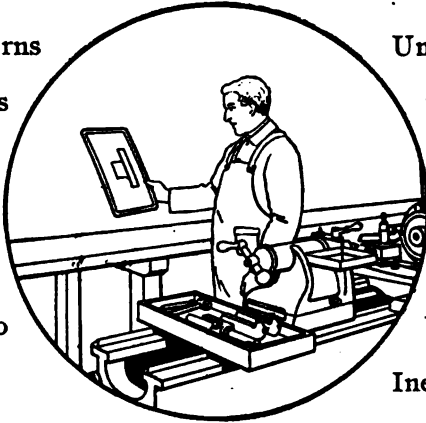


Often stops machine when turning around. Loss of efficiency.

**WRONG WAY.**

**CRUDE WAY OF HOLDING UNMOUNTED BLUE PRINTS.**

Workman turns round, picks up print, reads it, lays it down, turns back to lathe.

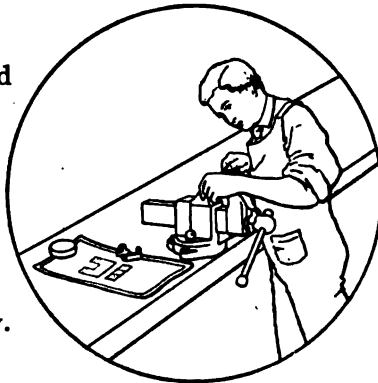


Unhandy, inconvenient location.  
Destructive to prints.  
Waste of time.  
Inefficient.

**WRONG WAY.**

**ANOTHER OLD WAY OF USING MOUNTED BLUE PRINTS.**

Print covered with chips, and often torn.  
Obstructed view.



Print soon becomes so soiled that it is difficult to read figures.

**WRONG WAY.**

**ANOTHER OLD WAY OF USING UNMOUNTED BLUE PRINTS.**

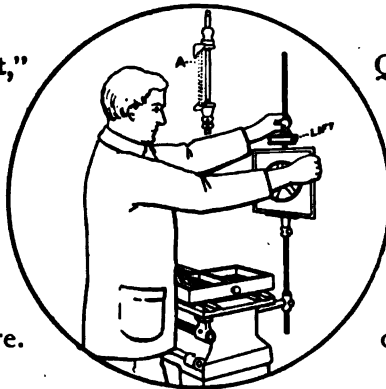
# How to Operate Blue-print Holder to Hold Mounted and Unmounted Prints.

*Up!*

*Down!*

*Presto!*

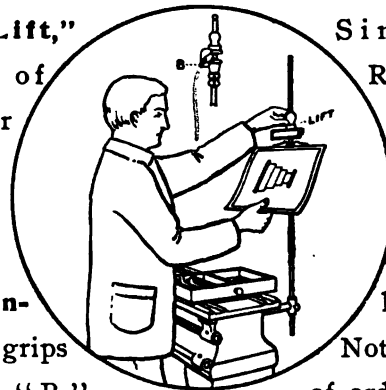
Lift the "Lift," insert print; lower "Lift," which secures print, as at "A." Simple fixture.



Quickly operated.  
Efficient.  
Neat.  
Print not soiled or damaged.

**INSERTING MOUNTED PRINT IN BLUE-PRINT HOLDER.**

Lift the "Lift," insert top of print, lower "Lift." Gravity of "Lift" and force of the "Inclined Plane" grips print as at "B."

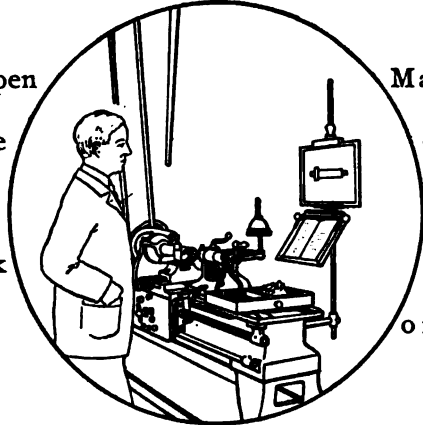


Simplicity.  
Rapidity.  
Print not soiled or torn.  
No clips, no springs, no hooks, no repairs.  
Nothing to get out of order.

**INSERTING UNMOUNTED PRINT IN BLUE-PRINT HOLDER.**

## Blue-print and Book Holder Combined.

Book held open  
at proper angle  
for reading.  
Keeps book  
clean.

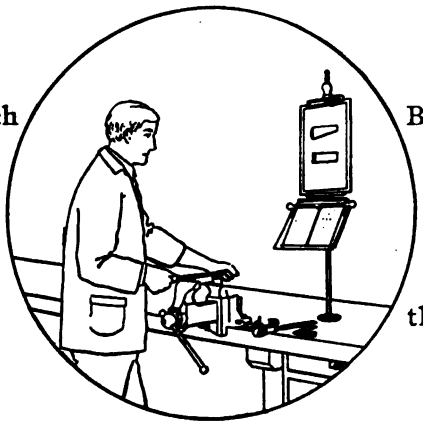


May be swiv-  
elled, raised,  
and lowered  
independently  
or together.

**A TEXT-BOOK HOLDER WITH TRANSPARENT CELLULOID COVER  
TO PROTECT OPEN BOOK, AND BLUE-PRINT HOLDER  
HOLDING MOUNTED PRINT.**

*Blue-print Holders and Book Holders may be used together or separately.*

Good at bench  
or machine.  
Will fit any-  
where.



Brings the in-  
formation  
convenient to  
the operation.

**TEXT-BOOK HOLDER FASTENED TO BENCH AND HOLDING BOOK  
OPEN, AND BLUE-PRINT HOLDER HOLDING MOUNTED PRINT.**

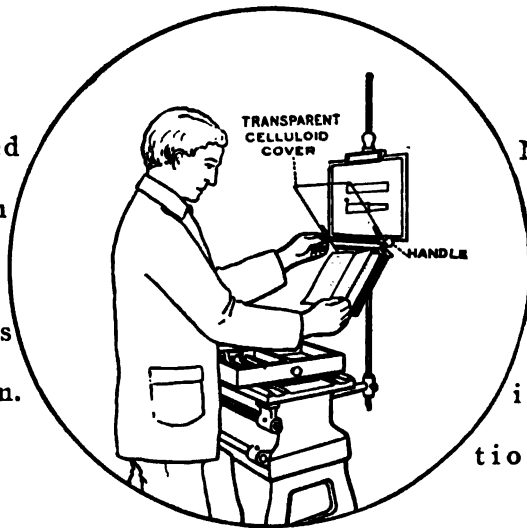
# How the Pages of a Book are Turned in the Book Holder.

*Simple!*

*Effective!*

*Rapid!*

Weighted  
hinge on  
top mar-  
gin, holds  
book open.

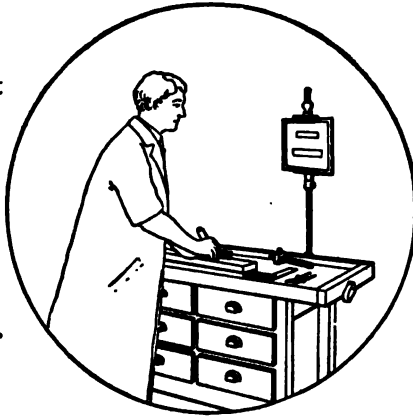


No closing  
of leaves  
just when  
you want  
informa-  
tion.

**OPERATING BOOK HOLDER.**

**SWING HINGED, TRANSPARENT CELLULOID COVER BACK BY HANDLE  
AT EITHER END OF HINGE AND TURN LEAVES OF TEXT-  
BOOK, THEN SWING COVER ON TO BOOK.**

A convenient  
 fixture for  
 drawings  
 when laying  
 out work.



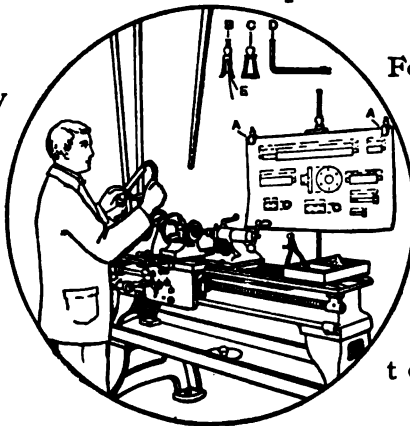
Out of the way  
 and not lying  
 on bench  
 covered with  
 stock and tools.

**BLUE-PRINT HOLDER ATTACHED TO PATTERN-MAKER'S OR WOOD-WORKER'S BENCH, HOLDING MOUNTED BLUE PRINT.**

**AT LAST.**

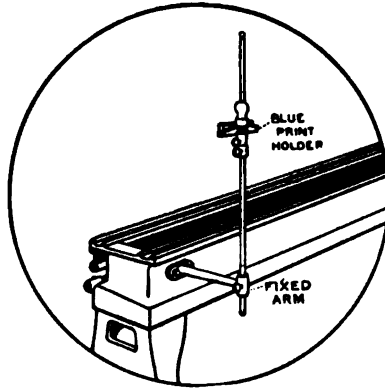
**Large Unmounted Blue Prints Taken Care of  
 in the Shop.**

Rods quickly  
 adjusted for  
 different  
 sizes of  
 prints.



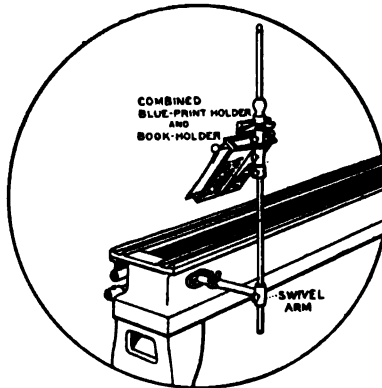
For small prints,  
 rods unneces-  
 sary; may be  
 removed  
 and kept in  
 tool-room.

**EXTENSION RODS ATTACHED TO CENTRAL DEVICE HOLDING LARGE UNMOUNTED BLUE PRINT WITH GRAVITY CLIPS  
 A, A. B IS AN END VIEW OF THE DEVICE,  
 C THE LIFT, AND D THE ROD.**



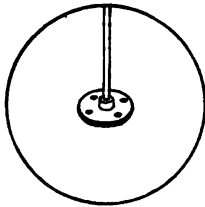
**METHOD OF FASTENING BLUE-PRINT HOLDER AND TEXT-BOOK HOLDER TO BED OF LATHE.**

or any machine, by a fixed arm bolted to bed by two hexagonal-head cap screws,  $\frac{3}{8}$ "  $\times$  16  $\times$  1 $\frac{1}{4}$ ".



**METHOD OF FASTENING BLUE-PRINT HOLDER AND TEXT-BOOK HOLDER TO BED OF LATHE.**

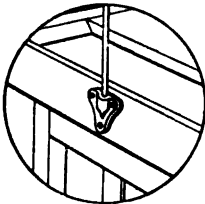
or any machine, by swivel arm bolted to bed by two hexagonal-head cap screws,  $\frac{3}{8}$ "  $\times$  16  $\times$  1 $\frac{1}{4}$ ".



**METHOD OF FASTENING BLUE-PRINT HOLDER AND TEXT-BOOK HOLDER TO THE TOP OF BENCH.**

by flange screwed to bench with four  $\frac{7}{8}$ "  $\times$  12 flat-head bright wood screws.

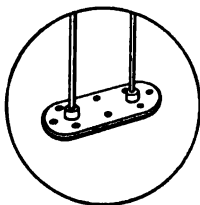
---



**METHOD OF FASTENING BLUE-PRINT HOLDER AND TEXT-BOOK HOLDER TO BACK OF BENCH.**

by flange with three  $\frac{7}{8}$ "  $\times$  12 flat-head bright wood screws.

---



**METHOD OF FASTENING TWO BLUE-PRINT HOLDERS AND TEXT-BOOK HOLDERS TO TOP OF DOUBLE BENCH.**

by double flange screwed to top of bench with eight  $\frac{7}{8}$ "  $\times$  12 flat-head bright wood screws.



*Smith's Text-books on Machine Work are Standard.*

---

**FIRST BOOKS ON MODERN INDUSTRIAL EDUCATION**  
**TEXT-BOOKS ON MACHINE WORK**

By **ROBERT H. SMITH**

*Massachusetts Institute of Technology*

For **Apprentice, Student, Specialist, Machinist,  
Shop, School, College**

---

*“They Cover a Field Heretofore Unoccupied”*



**Price \$2.00**

**AN EXPERT MACHINIST** says: “It has taken me a **lifetime** in the shop to **learn** what is in these books.”

**A MANUFACTURER** says: “Every apprentice, young machinist and machine specialist **should have** these books.”



**Price \$3.00**

**AN INSTRUCTOR OF MACHINE WORK** says: “For condensed and classified information and fine illustrations, they are the **most perfect** books ever written on machine construction.”

---

**The Finest Illustrated Text-books.**

## ***Read What Educators and Manufacturers Say About These Text-books:***

---

### **EXTRACTS FROM LETTERS**

**DR. RICHARD C. MACLAURIN, President Massachusetts Institute of Technology, Boston, Mass.:**

"You are dealing with matters that lie at the very basis of a great deal of the work for which the INSTITUTE stands. The labor involved in putting these books together must have been enormous."

**PROFESSOR EDWARD F. MILLER, Head of Department of Mechanical Engineering, Massachusetts Institute of Technology, Boston, Mass.:**

"Since the introduction of the Text-Books on Machine Work, the students ask fewer questions and less time is required by the instructor in the lecture room, thus making more time available for work at each exercise."

**PROFESSOR CHARLES F. PARK, Director of Mechanical Laboratories, Massachusetts Institute of Technology, Boston, Mass.:**

"These books have proved to be a valuable aid to the instruction in our Mechanical Laboratories. Much time has been saved by their introduction. The students follow the work understandingly and require less attention and a smaller amount of demonstrating. The value of the schedules of operations cannot be appreciated by one who has not used them."

**PROFESSOR PETER SCHWAMB, Massachusetts Institute of Technology, Boston, Mass.:**

"These are the first books that I have seen that embody the systematic teaching of the educational principles which should underlie industrial education."

**FROM BROWN & SHARPE MANUFACTURING COMPANY, Providence, R. I.:**

MR. VIAL: "The books are so practical and helpful that we shall urge upon our apprentices the purchase of them as a standard work."

MR. BURLINGAME: "I felt as soon as I looked these books over that they covered a field which up to the present time had been unoccupied."

**PROFESSOR FRANK E. SANBORN, The Ohio State University, Columbus, Ohio:**

"The books have been used in our classes in filing and machine tool practice and have been much liked. The many neat illustrations, well notated, the concise statements and instructions, and the tabulated matter give clearly and quickly the desired information. The arrangement of the books is logical and pleasing to me."

**STONE & WEBSTER, Boston, Mass.:**

MR. HENRY G. BRADLEE: "These books cover a field on which it is at present almost impossible to obtain any information in a written form. I believe they will be very helpful, not only to the young men who are studying machine work at Technology but also to all manufacturing concerns doing this character of work. I do not believe that a machine shop could do better for itself than to put copies of your books in the hands of each of its machinists."

**PROFESSOR ARTHUR M. GREENE, Jr., Rensselaer Polytechnic Institute (Russell Sage Foundation), Troy, N. Y.:**

"I believe the books are going to be very extensively used as I do not know of any books that quite cover the ground so well as these."

**MR. LESTER G. FRENCH, Editor Journal American Society of Mechanical Engineers, New York, N. Y.:**

"One not familiar with publication work can scarcely imagine how much labor is involved in the preparation of these volumes, but I know personally that the drawings alone represent literally years of work and a large expenditure of money from having kept in touch with your work."

**PROFESSOR ARTHUR C. JEWETT, University of Maine:**

"We have adopted your books as a required text for our classes in machine tool practice."

**UNITED SHOE MACHINERY COMPANY, Beverly, Mass.:**

MR. VOSE: "They will be of great service to us in our INDUSTRIAL SCHOOL."

**PROFESSOR CHARLES H. CHASE, Tufts College, Medford, Mass.:**

"The large number of concisely numbered paragraphs, the tabulated arrangement of the order of the work and the clear illustrations make the books unusually well fitted as text-books."

**MR. F. J. SCHULTE, Managing Editor Shop Notes Quarterly, Chicago, U. S. A.:**

"I wish to compliment you on the evident thoroughness with which these books have been prepared and to congratulate you especially on the excellence of the illustrations, which are the clearest and most helpful I have ever seen in books of this kind."

**MR. JOHN C. BRODHEAD, Assistant Director of Drawing and Manual Training, Boston, Mass.:**

"I am delighted with the multitude of pertinent illustrations, with the tables and with the simply worded text. I shall have the books put on the BOSTON AUTHORIZED LIST."

**MR. HAROLD P. RICHMOND, President American Emery Wheel Works, Providence, R. I.:**

"We have placed these books in the hands of the younger machinists in our factory. We notice an immediate improvement in the efficiency of the men who use them. Every apprentice should have copies of these books, and there are but few machinists of any age who would not profit greatly by their use."

**PROFESSOR HERBERT S. PHILBRICK, University of Missouri, Columbia, Mo.:**

"They are just what I have been looking for and they will save the instructor and his assistants much trouble in giving notes to the students."

**MR. WILLIAM H. DOOLEY, Lawrence Industrial School, Lawrence, Mass.:**

"Your books are the first books that I have seen that embody the educational principles that must govern vocational education."

**PROFESSOR FRANK M. LEAVITT, The University of Chicago (Founded by John D. Rockefeller):**

"I have examined these books with much interest and I am astonished at the thoroughness and amount of material which they contain. I can appreciate the experience which they represent. Our machine shop instructor says they are the best books he has seen."

**MR. ALLAN K. SWEET, Mechanic Arts High School, Boston, Mass.:**

"You have put into clear, concise and usable form a vast amount of information indispensable to the student and apprentice which only one who knows at first hand both the business of machine construction and the business of teaching could have selected. The illustrations are particularly satisfactory in character and execution. They tell many things far better than could be done by words."

**MR. W. H. MURRAY, Director Industrial Training, Newton, Mass.:**

"We are using the text-books on machine work in the Newton Independent Industrial School and in the Newton Technical High School."

**MR. S. S. JUDD, Director of Manual Training and Trade Schools, Saginaw, Michigan:**

"These books fill a long-felt want, — Text-books for the machine shop. I will most certainly have each of our shop boys provided with the two volumes."

**MR. LEO AMMAN, Instructor Machine Shop Practice, Stout Institute, Menomonie, Wis.:**

"We have decided to use these as text books in our classes and I have no doubt that we shall find them more than satisfactory."

**A. F. S. HITCHCOCK, Manual Training and Industrial School, New London, Conn.:**

"For clearness, accuracy and scope, they are the most perfect books on machine work ever published. We are using them in our classes in machine tool work."

**MR. FRANK CUSHMAN, Jr., Kansas City Manual Training High School:**

"They are splendid. There ought to be a great demand for such books."

**MR. ORIN A. RINGWALT, North High School, Minneapolis, Minn.:**

"These are the best books I have ever seen along the line of making machine work a teachable subject."

---

## *Read What the Technical Press Says About These Text-books:*

---

### EXTRACTS FROM REVIEWS

**MACHINERY, New York, N. Y., May, 1911.**

"At the present time when many so-called 'practical' books are making their appearance, it is seldom that one is published which is as thoroughly practical. These books represent a great deal of painstaking work on the part of the author and his endeavors should be crowned with success, for they meet the requirements of the class noted thoroughly, being expressed in a clear, intelligible manner."

**AMERICAN MACHINIST, New York, N. Y., May, 1911.**

"There are years of experience in teaching shop work behind these books besides the time previously spent in manufacturing, and we believe that many will find them a decided help either in learning or in teaching."

**SHOP NOTES QUARTERLY, THIRD QUARTER, 1911, CHICAGO, U. S. A.**

"Every technical student and apprentice should possess copies of these books which are quite the best of their kind that has yet appeared. The illustrations are a revelation, every one having been drawn especially for the volumes and so clearly lettered and captioned that they are practically self-explanatory of the processes or operations they represent. The very complete index is also a praiseworthy feature."

**CYCLE AND AUTOMOBILE TRADE JOURNAL, PHILADELPHIA, PA.,  
MAY, 1911.**

"These two books show an intimate acquaintance with all branches of machine tool work, combined with the knowledge of the teacher, and are undoubtedly the first books embodying the educational principles underlying machine work. The information contained in them is greater than that usually acquired during the life of even an expert machinist. The subject matter is arranged in such a logical order and so profusely and clearly illustrated, that even such a complex subject as that treated cannot help but be clear to any one who consistently follows the course of study as outlined. The books have already been adopted as text-books by many of the leading industrial schools and should be invaluable to ambitious young men engaged in machine work."

**THE SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, NEW YORK, N. Y., AUG. 12, 1911.**

"Not technical students alone, but every youth who runs a lathe or uses tools as a hobby, may benefit by adding these text-books to his working library."

**THE JOURNAL OF THE WORCESTER POLYTECHNIC INSTITUTE, WORCESTER, MASS.:**

"The books cannot fail to assist in any shop instruction, and they should prove invaluable as text-books in shop courses given in most of the schools and colleges of this country. There are no old cuts, copied from catalogues or previously printed shop books, used in either volume. All cuts are from original drawings, many of which are very dramatic in their execution and are illustrations in the true sense of the word."

**THE IRON AGE, NEW YORK, N. Y., APRIL, 1911.**

"These two books have been brought out in an effort to supply text-books covering the field of machine work, and the aim has been to give the beginner in these subjects the advantages of text-books similar to those used in studying the older subjects, so that the fundamental as well as the advanced principles may be quickly acquired in a logical, systematic and progressive manner. In both books the student is told how to do things and the theory connects principles and practice. Machines, mechanisms and tools are graphically illustrated by original mechanical and perspective drawings and condensed tables describe them briefly and systematically. Condensed schedules which name the materials, the operations, the machines, the jigs, the fixtures and the tools give operations in machining and standard and typical problems in machine construction."

**TECHNOLOGY REVIEW, MASSACHUSETTS INSTITUTE OF TECHNOLOGY, BOSTON, MASS., APRIL, 1911.**

"These two eminently practical treatises upon the operation of hand and machine tools, constitute a substantial advance in the literature of the machine shop. This series of books well illustrates the systematic teaching of the educational principle which underlies industrial education. They are the outcome of many years of faithful study and practice upon the part of the author. It is believed that they will be found equally useful in the school and in the shop."

**ALBANY AGE GAZETTE, New York, N. Y., APRIL, 1911.**

These volumes have been written in a series of two on machine work with the desire of placing text-books at the service of the student taking up this subject, either in the trade schools or colleges. They are, however, of value to both the student and the apprentice. The former will find them more of a necessity, as his study of the work is usually limited to a comparatively short time."

**CANADIAN ENGINEER, TORONTO, CAN., APRIL, 1911.**

"The aim of these books is to give the beginner in machine work a text-book in which he may acquire the fundamental principles in a logical, systematic and progressive manner. Machines, mechanisms and tools are illustrated graphically by means of perspective and mechanical drawings, and are briefly and systematically described by tables. Operations in machinery, standard and typical problems in machine construction are given in condensed schedules, which name the material, operating machines, speeds, feeds, jigs, fixtures and tools. These books tell how to do things with that theory which connects principles and practice, and no person can build or superintend the construction of machinery without consciously or unconsciously understanding these problems and applying these principles."

---

**INDUSTRIAL EDUCATION BOOK CO.**

**BOSTON, U. S. A.**





**CABOT SCIENCE LIBRARY**  
**CANCELLED**

DEC 02 1996

DEC 03 1996


This book is loaned to  
the Library of Congress  
stamped

A fine of five cents  
will be assessed for  
by retaining it beyond the  
time.

Please return promptly.



~~JUN 9 1944~~

~~DUJ JAN 22 '41~~

~~DUJ AUG 1 '41~~

~~DUJ AUG 15 '41~~

~~DUJ SEP 1 '41~~

~~DUJ AUG 19 '41~~

~~DUJ SER 17 '41~~

~~DUJ MAY 5 '42~~

~~DUJ JUL 17 '42~~

~~DUJ SEP 1 '42~~